

**Chief Architect®
Home Designer Suite® 2015**

Reference Manual

**Chief Architect, Inc.
6500 N. Mineral Dr.
Coeur d'Alene, Idaho 83815
www.HomeDesignerSoftware.com**

© 1990–2014 by Chief Architect, Inc. All rights reserved.

No part of this book or the accompanying software may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from Chief Architect, Inc.

Chief Architect® and Home Designer® are registered trademarks of Chief Architect, Inc.

This software uses the FreeImage open source image library. See <http://freeimage.sourceforge.net> for details. FreeImage is used under the FIPL license, version 1.0.

This software uses the Ruby open source library. See <http://www.ruby-lang.org/> for details.

This application incorporates Teigha® software pursuant to a license agreement with Open Design Alliance. Teigha® Copyright © 2003-2013 by Open Design Alliance. All rights reserved.

All other trademarks and copyrights are the property of Chief Architect, Inc. or their respective owners.

Created in the United States of America.

Contents

Chapter 1: Program Overview

Startup Options.....	20
The Home Designer Suite Environment	21
Using the Mouse	23
View and Side Windows	24
Toolbars and Hotkeys	26
Menus.....	26
Dialogs	27
The Status Bar.....	30
Message Boxes	30
Preferences and Default Settings.....	31
Drawing a Plan	31
Viewing Your Plan.....	33
Getting Help.....	34
About Home Designer Suite	34
Upgrade to Chief Architect	35
Home Designer Suite Trial Software	35

Chapter 2: File Management

Compatibility with Other Programs.....	38
Organizing Your Files.....	38
Home Designer Suite Data	39
Creating a New Plan	40

Saving, Exporting, and Backing Up Files	41
Thumbnail Images	44
Auto Archive	44
Undo Files	45
Opening and Importing Files	45
Searching for Plans	47
Backup Entire Plan	51
Closing Views and Files	52
Exiting Home Designer Suite	53

Chapter 3: Preferences and Default Settings

Default Settings vs Preferences	56
Dynamic Defaults	57
General Plan Defaults Dialog	57
Preferences Dialog	59
Angle Style Dialog	66

Chapter 4: Toolbars and Hotkeys

Toolbar Arrangement	69
Hotkeys	71

Chapter 5: Layers

Displaying Objects	74
Layer Sets	74
Display Options Dialog	75

Chapter 6: Creating Objects

Architectural vs CAD Objects	78
-------------------------------------------	-----------

Snap Behaviors.....	78
Object Snaps.....	78
Angle Snaps.....	79
Grid Snaps.....	79
Creating Objects.....	80
Copying and Pasting Objects.....	81

Chapter 7: Editing Objects

Selecting Objects.....	86
Editing Line Based Objects.....	88
Editing Arc Based Objects.....	90
Editing Open Polyline Based Objects.....	93
Editing Closed-Polyline Based Objects.....	96
Editing Box-Based Objects.....	98
Editing Spline Based Objects.....	100
Editing Circles, Ovals and Ellipses.....	102
Displaying Objects.....	104
Moving Objects.....	106
Aligning Objects.....	107
Resizing Objects.....	108
Reshaping Objects.....	109
Rotating Objects.....	110
Deleting Objects.....	111
Undo and Redo.....	113

Chapter 8: Walls, Railings, and Fencing

Wall Defaults.....	116
Wall Tools.....	116
Railing and Deck Tools.....	117
Fencing Tools.....	119

Exterior and Interior Walls	119
Foundation Walls	120
Room Dividers and Invisible Walls	120
Polygon Shaped Decks	121
Hatch Wall	121
Break Wall	122
Drawing Walls	122
Connecting Walls	124
Displaying Walls	125
Measuring Walls	126
Editing Walls	127
Editing Straight/Curved Wall Combinations	130
Aligning Walls	130
Roof Directives in Walls	131
Attic Walls	132
Wall Type Definitions	133
Wall Specification Dialog	134
Railing and Fencing Specification Dialogs	138
Wall Hatch Specification Dialog	141

Chapter 9: Rooms

Floor and Room Defaults	144
Room Definition	144
Selecting Rooms	145
Displaying Rooms	146
Editing Rooms	146
Room Types	147
Room Labels	149
Decks	151
Floor and Ceiling Heights	151

Stepped Floor and Ceiling Platforms	152
Special Ceilings	153
Room Specification Dialog	155

Chapter 10: Doors

Door Defaults	161
The Door Tools.....	162
Displaying Doors	164
Editing Doors	165
Changing Door Swings	166
Special Doors	169
Door Specification Dialog	170

Chapter 11: Windows

Window Defaults	178
The Window Tools	178
Special Windows.....	180
Grouped Windows	181
Displaying Windows	182
Editing Windows	183
Window Specification Dialog.....	184
Bay, Box, and Bow Windows.....	192
Bay, Box, Bow Windows and Roofs.....	194
Bay/Box and Bow Window Specification Dialogs	196

Chapter 12: Multiple Floors

Floor Defaults Dialog.....	200
Floor Tools	200
Adding Floors.....	201

Displaying Floors	202
Deleting Floors	202
Split Levels.....	203
The Current Floor	204
The Attic Floor	205
The Reference Floor	205

Chapter 13: Foundations

Foundation Defaults	208
Building a Foundation.....	208
Displaying Foundations.....	209
Editing Foundations	210
Deleting Foundations	211
Foundations and Rooms.....	211
Foundations and the Terrain	212
Fireplaces	213
Fireplace Specification Dialog.....	215
Library Fireplaces.....	217
Chimneys	217

Chapter 14: Roofs

Roof Defaults	220
The Roof Tools.....	220
Automatic Roofs	221
Build Roof Dialog.....	221
Editing Roofs	223
Gable Over Door/Window	224
Skylights.....	224
Skylight Specification Dialog	225
Dormers.....	227

Editing Auto Dormers.....	228
Dormer Specification Dialog.....	228
Roof Returns and Other Details	230
Roof Pitches in Degrees.....	231

Chapter 15: Stairs and Landings

Stair Defaults.....	233
The Stair Tools.....	234
Anatomy of a Staircase	234
Drawing Stairs.....	235
Displaying Stairs and Landings	237
Editing Stairs.....	237
Merging Stair Sections.....	238
Landings.....	240
Maintaining Tread Depth	242
Starter Treads.....	243
Wrapped Stairs.....	244
Other Special Railings and Stairs	245
Creating a Stairwell.....	245
Rooms Below Staircases	247
Staircase Specification Dialog.....	248
Stair Landing Specification Dialog.....	253

Chapter 16: Electrical

The Electrical Tools.....	258
Auto Place Outlets.....	259
Creating Wiring Schematics	260
Electrical Library Content	260
Displaying Electrical Objects.....	260
Editing Electrical Objects.....	261

Electrical Service Specification Dialog.....262

Chapter 17: Trim Tools

Trim and Molding Defaults.....266
Corner Boards266
Corner Board Specification Dialog267
Quoins267
Quoin Specification Dialog268
Editing Corner Boards and Quoins.....268
Millwork269

Chapter 18: Cabinets

Cabinet Defaults272
The Cabinet Tools.....272
Cabinet Fillers274
Placing Cabinets.....275
Displaying Cabinets276
Editing Cabinets277
Editing Cabinet Styles.....277
Special Cabinets278
Cabinet Specification Dialog280
Shelf/Partition Specification Dialog.....286

Chapter 19: Terrain

Terrain Perimeter289
Elevation Data Tools291
Terrain Modifier Tools294
Terrain Feature Tools295
Garden Bed Tools.....296

Water Feature Tools	297
Stepping Stone Tools	298
Terrain Wall and Curb Tools	298
Terrain Objects in the Library	299
Displaying Terrain.....	299
Editing Terrain Objects	300
Terrain Specification Dialog	301
Elevation Point Specification Dialog.....	303
Elevation Line/Region Specification Dialog	304
Hill / Valley Specification Dialog.....	304
Raised / Lowered Region Specification Dialog	305
Terrain Feature Specification Dialog	305
Garden Bed Specification Dialog	309
Terrain Path Specification Dialog.....	309
Importing Elevation Data.....	311
Import Terrain Assistant	311
Import GPS Data Assistant	313

Chapter 20: Roads, Driveways and Sidewalks

Road, Driveway and Sidewalk Tools.....	318
Displaying Road Objects.....	319
Editing Road Objects.....	319
Road Specification Dialog.....	320

Chapter 21: Plants and Sprinklers

Plant Tools.....	324
Plant Chooser Dialog.....	324
Hardiness Zones	326
Plant Image Specification Dialog	327

Chapter 22: Other Objects

General Shapes	331
Soffits	331
Special Applications for Soffits.....	332
Soffit Specification Dialog	334

Chapter 23: Architectural Blocks

Displaying Architectural Blocks.....	338
Editing Architectural Blocks.....	338
Architectural Blocks and Sub-Objects	338

Chapter 24: The Library

The Library Browser.....	342
Searching the Library.....	345
Library Content.....	346
Downloading Library Content	348
Importing Library Catalogs.....	349
Adding Library Content.....	350
Organizing the Library	351
Exporting Library Catalogs.....	353
Placing Library Objects	354
Select Library Object Dialog.....	356
Displaying Library Objects	357
Editing Library Objects	357
Symbol Object Specification Dialogs	359

Chapter 25: Materials

About Materials.....	361
----------------------	-----

The Material Painter	362
Materials Panel.....	364
Editing Materials	365
Creating Materials.....	366
Define Material Dialog	367
Material Defaults	369
Select Color Dialog	370

Chapter 26: View and Window Tools

View Tools	374
Zoom Tools.....	374
Undo Zoom	375
Fill Window	375
Panning the Display.....	375
Working in Multiple Views.....	376
Closing Views.....	379

Chapter 27: 3D Views

OpenGL and Hardware	382
Backdrop Dialog	382
3D View Tools.....	383
Creating Camera Views	383
Creating Overviews	384
Elevation Views.....	385
Displaying 3D Views	386
Repositioning Cameras.....	387
Editing 3D Views	391
Cross Section Slider	393
Working in 3D.....	394
Saving and Printing 3D Views	395

Camera Specification Dialog396

Chapter 28: 3D Rendering

Rendering Tips399
Lighting400
Displaying Lights.....401
Default Sun Light Specification Dialog.....402
Rendering Techniques402
Speeding up 3D View Generation403

Chapter 29: Dimensions

Dimension Unit Defaults405
Dimension Defaults Dialog405
The Dimension Tools408
Displaying Dimension Lines.....410
Editing Dimension Lines.....411
Editing Extension Lines413
Moving Objects Using Dimensions.....414
Dimension Line Specification Dialog.....415

Chapter 30: Text

Text Defaults417
Fonts and Alphabets418
The Text Tools419
Creating Text.....419
Displaying Text420
Rich Text Specification Dialog420
Text Specification Dialog423
Editing Text423

Copying and Pasting Text.....	425
Text Arrows	426
Text Styles.....	427
Object Labels	429

Chapter 31: CAD Objects

The CAD Drawing Tools	431
Line Specification Dialog	434
Arc Specification Dialog.....	436
CAD Circle/Oval/Ellipse Specification Dialog	437
Polylines	438
Polyline Specification Dialog.....	438
Box Specification Dialog	440
Splines	440
Displaying CAD Objects.....	442

Chapter 32: Project Planning

Space Planning	443
Plan Check.....	445
Loan Calculator.....	446

Chapter 33: Pictures, Images, and Walkthroughs

Picture Files vs Pictures and Image Objects	450
Images.....	450
Displaying Images	451
Editing Images	452
Image Specification Dialog	452
Pictures.....	454
Picture File Box Specification Dialog	455

Metafiles	455
Metafile Box Specification Dialog	456
PDF Files	457
PDF Box Specification Dialog	458
Displaying Pictures, Metafiles, and PDF Boxes.....	458
Editing Pictures, Metafiles, and PDF Boxes.....	458
Copy Region as Picture	459
3D Backdrops	460
Walkthroughs.....	462
Walkthrough Path Specification Dialog.....	465

Chapter 34: Importing and Exporting

Import Room Planner File	470
DXF File Format	470
Exporting 2D DXF Files	470
Additional 2D Export Information	471
3D Data Import Requirements	472
Importing 3D Symbols.....	473
3D Symbols and Materials	474

Chapter 35: Printing

Introduction to Printing.....	478
The Printing Tools	479
Drawing Sheet Setup Dialog.....	479
Print Preview	480
Printing to Scale	481
Printing Across Multiple Pages.....	482
Printing to a PDF File	483
Print View Dialog	483
Print Image Dialog	486

Print Model	487
-------------------	-----

Chapter 36: Materials Lists

The Materials List Tools	492
Creating an Accurate Materials List.....	493
Structural Member Reporting	493
Organizing Materials Lists	494
Materials List Display Options Dialog.....	495
Editing Materials Lists.....	496
Printing and Exporting the Materials List.....	497
Conditioned Area Totals	497

Appendix A: Additional Resources

Reference Manual	499
User's Guide.....	499
Online Help Videos	500
Home Designer Web Site	500
HomeTalk Online User Forum	500
Technical Support.....	500
Upgrade to Chief Architect	501

Appendix B: Technical Support Services

Reference and Training Resources.....	503
Troubleshooting Common Technical Issues	504
Troubleshooting Printing Problems.....	504
Error Messages	506
Contacting Technical Support.....	507
Program Paths Dialog	508

Program Overview

Home Designer Suite is designed to help home enthusiasts visualize, develop and share their design ideas. Home Designer Suite uses parametric design technology, which means that as you draw, a 3D model is created and is updated as you make changes. You can tile a floor plan view next to a 3D view and watch one update automatically as you draw in the other.

Chapter Contents

- Startup Options
- The Home Designer Suite Environment
- Using the Mouse
- View and Side Windows
- Toolbars and Hotkeys
- Menus
- Dialogs
- The Status Bar
- Message Boxes
- Preferences and Default Settings
- Drawing a Plan
- Viewing Your Plan
- Getting Help
- About Home Designer Suite
- Home Designer Suite Trial Software

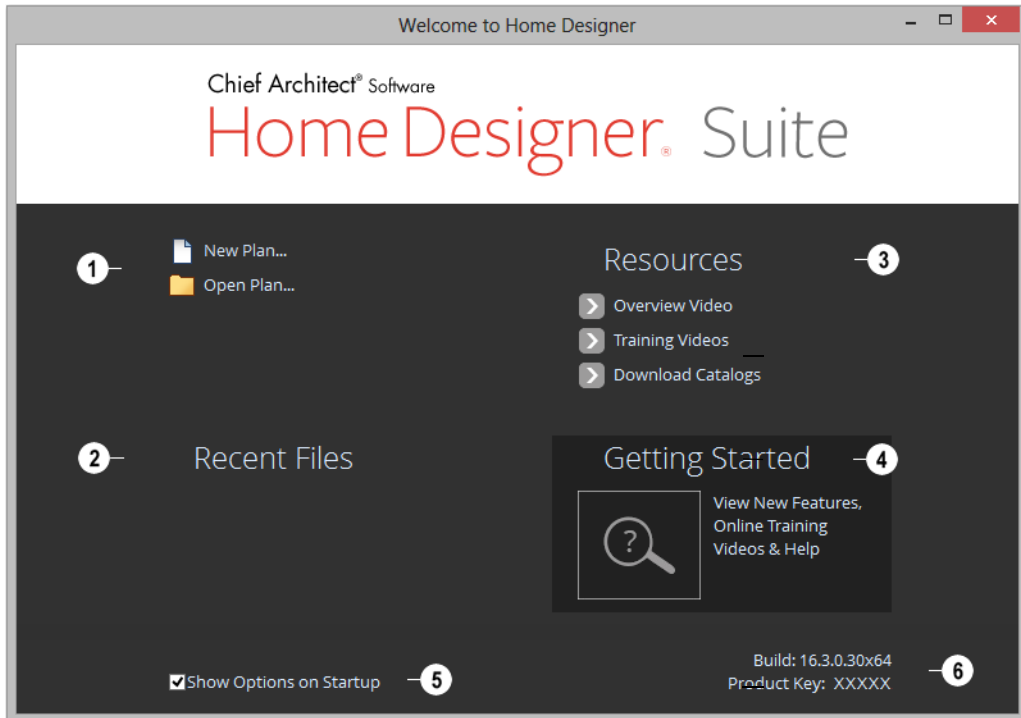
Startup Options



When Home Designer Suite opens, the **Startup Options** dialog displays, allowing you to choose how you want to begin working in the program or access useful resources.

The **Startup Options** dialog can be opened at any time by selecting **File> Startup**

Options



- 1 Select a **File** command to open a .plan file.
- Click **New Plan** to open a new, blank plan. See “Creating a New Plan” on page 40.
- Choose **Open Plan** to work on an existing plan file. See “Opening and Importing Files” on page 45.


- 2 **Recent Files** lists the names of the most recently opened files. Click on a name to open the file.
- 3 A selection of useful online **Resources** is available here. Select one to launch your default internet browser to a page on our web site, www.HomeDesignerSoftware.com.

- Select **Overview Video** to watch a browsable collection of videos outlining the software's features and uses.
 - Select **Training Videos** to access a searchable collection of videos focused on specific topics.
 - Select **Download Catalogs** to visit our 3D Library of downloadable bonus and manufacturer library catalogs. See "Downloading Library Content" on page 348.
- 4 Getting Started-** Click to launch your default internet browser to the Getting Started page on our web site. There, you will

find links to a variety of online resources to help you begin using the program.

- 5** Remove the check from **Show Options on Startup** if you do not want this dialog to display when you launch Home Designer Suite. Instead, the **Create New Plan** dialog opens.

To have the **Startup Options** dialog display at startup again, select **File> Startup**

Options  and place a check mark at **Show Options on Startup**.

- 6** Your software version's **Build** number and the first five characters of your **Product Key** display here for reference.

The Home Designer Suite Environment

Object-Based Design

Home Designer Suite's parametric, object-based design technology means you place and edit objects, rather than work with the many individual lines or surfaces used to represent them.

You can quickly select and edit the location, size, shape, style and other properties of objects as well as change the materials applied to their surfaces.

Use Home Designer Suite's editing capabilities to make the objects you place in a plan match the objects they represent in real life. For example, you can set up your windows and doors to match those available from your supplier.

3D Drafting

In Home Designer Suite, the entire drawing area is laid out on a Cartesian grid, a three dimensional coordinate system described using the X, Y, and Z axes. The current position of your mouse pointer displays in the Status Bar at the bottom of the program window.

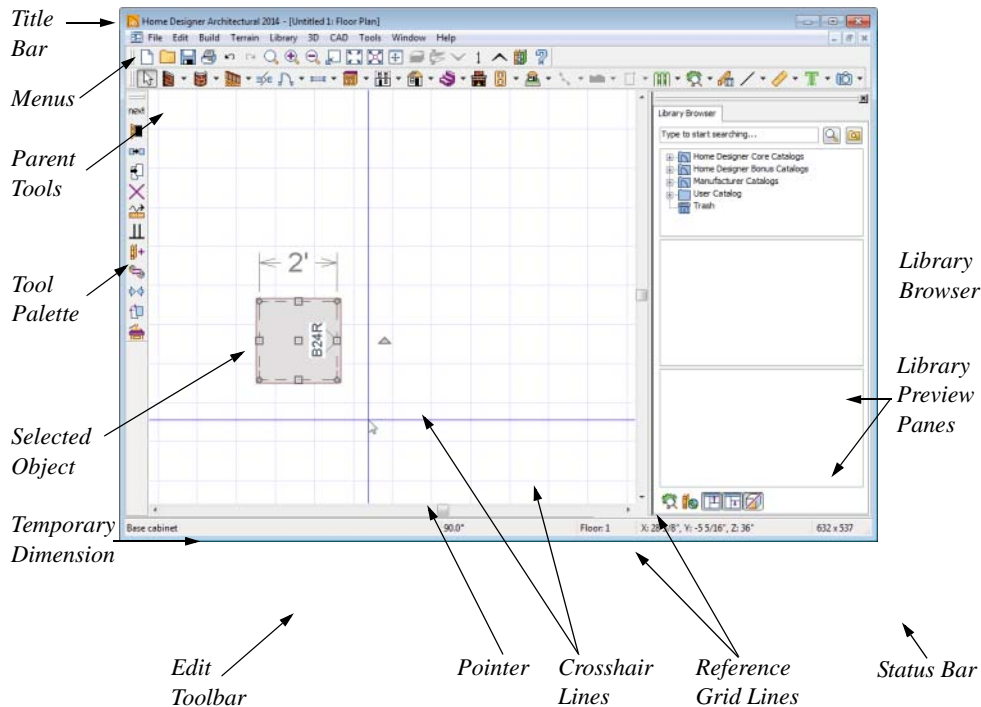
Architectural objects take up space in all three dimensions and their height, width and depth can be specified in Imperial or metric units. In addition, the location of objects can be precisely defined using coordinates, again specified in Imperial or metric units.

CAD objects such as lines and arcs take up space in two dimensions in the current view. Their dimensions can also be specified in Imperial or metric units and their locations precisely defined using coordinates.

Easy Access to Tools

You can access Home Designer Suite’s features in various ways using the mouse and keyboard.

- Menus provide access to most tools.
- Convenient toolbar buttons allow fast access to tools and let you customize the interface.
- Keyboard shortcuts are available for most tools.
- Contextual menus display with a right-click of the mouse.
- The Status Bar at the bottom of the screen provides tool descriptions and other information about the current task.

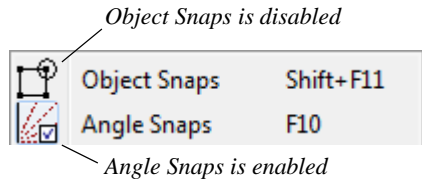


Interface Toggles

A number of useful drawing and editing behaviors, as well as the display of important elements in the interface, can be easily enabled and disabled using the menus. For example:

- Object Snaps, Angle Snaps, and Grid Snaps can be toggled on or off as needed. I See “Snap Behaviors” on page 78.
- Display Elements like Print Preview, Show Line Weights, and the Reference Display can be turned on when needed and then toggled off.

When a setting is turned on, its icon in the menu will display a small checkmark at its lower right corner and have a border around it in.



Many of these interface elements are global Preferences while others are file-specific default settings. See “Default Settings vs Preferences” on page 56.

Using the Mouse

Many objects, such as doors and cabinets, are created by clicking the left mouse button. Others, such as walls, stairs and dimension lines, are created by dragging the pointer from one end of the object to the other.




The **left button** is the primary button used in Home Designer Suite. Unless specified otherwise, Home Designer Suite documentation refers to the left mouse button.

Note: If you are left-handed and have re-programmed your mouse, reverse the instructions for left and right buttons in this manual.



The **Right button** has several uses. Right-click to select any object.

If, for example, the **Straight Exterior Wall**  tool is active, the left mouse button allows you to select only walls. You can select other object types such as cabinets with the right mouse button.

You can also use the right mouse button to open a context sensitive menu with additional editing commands.



The **Middle button** can be used to pan in floor plan view. To close a tabbed view window, click on its tab using the middle mouse button. You can also program it to work as a double-click.

If your mouse does not have a middle mouse button, in the Mac version of Home Designer Suite you can use the left button and the Command key to achieve the same results.



The **Mouse Wheel** can be used to zoom in and out in most views.

Edit Handles

When you select an object, its edit handles display.

When you pass the mouse over an edit handles, information about what the handle does displays in the Status Bar and the

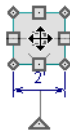
pointer changes to show how you can use that handle.

- A two-headed arrow indicates that the object, corner or edge can be moved in the direction of the arrows.
- A four-headed arrow indicates that the selected object or edge may be moved in multiple directions.
- A circular arrow indicates that the selected object can be rotated.

Resize handles display along the edges of the object are used to change the size. See “Resizing Objects” on page 108.



The Move handle at the object’s center lets you move the object. See “Moving Objects” on page 106.



The triangular Rotate handle lets you rotate the object. See “Rotating Objects” on page 110.



You can cancel any edit handle operation before it is completed by pressing the Esc key on your keyboard or by pressing any two mouse buttons at the same time.

The edit handles that display depend on the type of object selected, the current view, and how far you are zoomed out.

Edit handles do not resize as you zoom in or out. If you are zoomed out far enough, some edit handles may be hidden so that they do not stack over one another. As you zoom in, these handles become visible again.

Using a Trackpad

In addition to the standard trackpad gestures on your system, in Home Designer Suite you can pinch to zoom. Panning, however, is not supported in the Windows version of the software.

View and Side Windows

Home Designer Suite’s main program window has a number of important features that let you interact with the program, such as toolbars and menus. It also features two different kinds of windows: view windows and side windows.

View Windows

View windows are sometimes referred to as “the drawing area” because most of them are windows in which you can draw or place architectural and/or CAD objects. There are a number of different types of view windows in Home Designer Suite:

- Floor plan view

- Camera views and overviews
- Elevation views
- Materials Lists

View windows can be navigated by panning and zooming; and, they have scroll bars on the right side and on the bottom. You can turn off the display of the scroll bars by selecting **View > Scrollbars** . See “View Tools” on page 374.

Although only one view window can be active at any given time, there is no limit to the number of view windows that can be open. View windows can be tiled or tabbed, and you can navigate between them in a number of different ways. See “View and Window Tools” on page 373.

You can also tear a view window out of the main program window. This creates a second, separate program window complete with toolbars and menus. Individual view windows can be torn out and transferred between program windows.

Side Windows

Side windows provide access to a variety of tools and content that helps you add detail your drawings.

Side windows are so-named because they are typically docked to either the left or right side of the program window - although, they can also be docked to the top or bottom, or undocked entirely. There are several different types of side window:

- Child Tool Palette
- The Library Browser

Each of these side windows can be opened via the **View** menu or by clicking the toolbar

button associated with it. Similarly, each can be closed by clicking the **Close** button in its title bar or tab, via the **View** menu, or by clicking its toolbar button. See “View Tools” on page 374.

To undock a side window, either drag its title bar out into the drawing area or click the Undock button on its title bar. To dock a side window, drag its title bar to any side of the program window.

Two or more side windows can be docked together to form a shared side window, and can be tiled and/or tabbed within that shared window. To create a shared side window, begin by docking a side window to a side of the main program window, then:

- To create tabbed side windows, drag a second side window over the first. When the docked window becomes highlighted, release the mouse button.
- To create tiled side windows, drag a second side window over the first. When the docked window becomes highlighted, slowly drag the mouse towards one of its sides. When a highlighted space is created along that side, release the mouse button.

You can choose to disable **Side Window Drag Docking** in the **Preferences** dialog, and you can also enable **Top/Bottom Docking** See “Appearance Panel” on page 59.

Toolbars and Hotkeys

Using the toolbar buttons is the fastest, easiest way to access many program features. When you pass the pointer over a toolbar button, a “tool tip” displays the name of the tool and a more detailed description displays in the Status Bar at the bottom of the program window. When you see one of these tool tips, press the F1 key to get more information about that item. See “Getting Help” on page 34.

Home Designer Suite’s tools are organized into families of related tools which can be accessed using either of two styles of toolbar interface: the Child Tool Palette or Drop Down tools. You can select the interface that you prefer in the **Preferences** dialog. See “Appearance Panel” on page 59.

The Edit Toolbar

When you select an object, the edit toolbar appears. By default, it is located at the upper left side of the program window. The toolbar buttons that display can be used to edit the

selected object(s). Which buttons display depends on the type of object selected, the current view, and how you selected the object.



The edit toolbar buttons are the same as the options in the contextual menu when you right-click on an object.

Hotkeys

Many commands can be invoked from the keyboard. Press Alt on your keyboard and press the underlined letter in a menu name to access that menu, as well as items in the menus and submenus.

Other keys or key combinations will invoke a variety of program commands. If a Home Designer Suite menu item has a keyboard shortcut, or hotkey, associated with it, that hotkey will display to the right of its name in the menu.

Menus

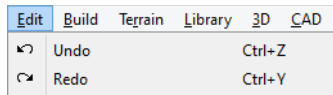
Home Designer Suite uses a standard Windows menu format. The menus are located below the title bar in the program window and can be used to access nearly all tools in the program. Click on a menu name to expand it, then click on a menu item to either activate that tool or access the item’s submenu. Items with a submenu have an arrow to the right of the name.

Menu items with an icon to their left have a toolbar button associated with them.

The menus can be accessed using the keyboard. Press the Alt key once to enable this functionality - one letter in each menu will become underlined. Press the key associated with one of these underlined letters to expand its menu - one letter in each menu item’s name will be underlined. Press the key associated with one of these letters to activate that tool or access the item’s submenu. Press the Esc key to undo your last

selection, or click with the mouse to exit out of this functionality.

Many tools in Home Designer Suite also have hotkeys associated with them. If a menu item has a hotkey, it will display to the right of the item's name. See "Hotkeys" on page 71.



Edit menu items with button icons to the left and hotkeys to the right

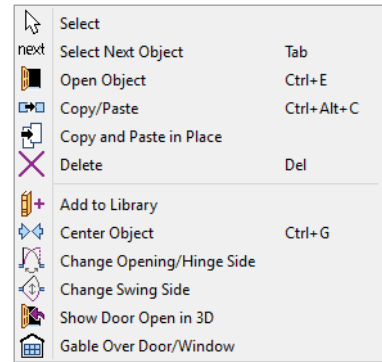
In the Home Designer Suite documentation, menu paths are written in this format: **Build> Window> Box Window** .

Contextual Menus

Contextual menus are context-sensitive menus that display tools relevant to a selected object or view. To open a contextual menu, right-click on an object, in an empty

space in a view window, or in a text field in a dialog box.

The options in an object's contextual menu are usually the same as those on an object's Edit toolbar. See "The Edit Toolbar" on page 26.



Contextual menus can be enabled or disabled in the **Preferences** dialog. When contextual menus are disabled, right-clicks perform generic object selection, much like when the

Select Objects  tool is active. See "Appearance Panel" on page 59.



Dialogs

Default settings, object specifications, display settings, and many other functions are accessed through dialog boxes.

Many dialogs have multiple panels, which are listed in a tree list on the left side of the dialog. Click on a panel name in the list to make it active, or navigate the list using the Up and Down arrow keys on the keyboard. By default, dialogs always open to the first panel in the list; if you prefer, you can choose to **Open Dialogs to the Last Panel Visited**. See "General Panel" on page 62,

Dialog panels and settings can be accessed using the mouse. You can also navigate the settings on a given dialog panel using the keyboard. For example:

- Line items in tree lists can be browsed using the arrow keys. Up and Down navigate the list, while Left and Right expand and contract categories.
- Press the Tab key to shift focus from the tree list to the first setting on the selected panel.

- Press the Tab key to shift focus from one setting to the next, or Shift + Tab to go in the reverse direction.
- A checkbox can be checked or cleared by pressing the Spacebar or the + or - keys, respectively, while it is in focus.
- Columns of radio buttons can be navigated using the Up and Down arrow keys; rows can be navigated using the Left and Right arrows. Select a radio button by pressing the Spacebar while it is in focus.
- Settings in list boxes can be navigated using the Up and Down arrow keys. When a checkbox is in focus, it can be checked or cleared by pressing the Spacebar.
- Drop-down lists can be browsed using the Up and Down arrow keys. When the mouse pointer is directly over the drop-down, the mouse scroll wheel can also be used. In Windows only, you can press Tab to select the highlighted item in the list and proceed to the next setting.
- Settings with spin control arrows  can be adjusted by typing in the text field or using the Up and Down arrow keys. When the mouse pointer is directly over the setting, the mouse scroll wheel can also be used.
- Slider bars  can be adjusted by typing in the text field or using the Left and Right arrow keys. When the mouse pointer is directly over the slider bar, the mouse scroll wheel can also be used.
- Line items in tables can be group selected using the Ctrl or Shift keys, or by pressing Ctrl+A.

- Press Enter on your keyboard to close most dialogs and apply your changes.

Note: Keyboard navigation in dialogs may vary somewhat depending on your computer platform.

The units of measurement used in dialogs are determined by your choice of template files. See “Creating a New Plan” on page 40.

The number format used in dialogs are set based on your operating system’s defaults.

Dialog Size and Position

Dialog boxes can be both moved and resized to suit your needs. By default, the program will remember both the position and size that you specify for a dialog and use it the next time you open it. You can specify whether the program does this always, per session, or never in the **Preferences** dialog. You can also reset the default sizes and positions. See “Reset Options Panel” on page 66.

- To move a dialog, position your mouse pointer within its title bar and then simply click and drag.
- To resize a dialog, position your mouse pointer on any edge or corner and then click and drag outward or inward. If you drag an edge, only that edge will move; if you drag a corner, the two adjacent edges will move.

When a dialog is resized, some elements within it may resize in response: for example, some list boxes and text fields. Some elements within a dialog box can also be resized independently. See “Dialog Panel Splitters” on page 29.


Note that all dialogs have a minimum size limitation but no maximum size. If a dialog opens on a monitor with resolution too low to display its full extents, it will have vertical and/or horizontal scroll bars.

Note: Some of the dialog box images in the software documentation have been resized smaller than their actual minimum size.

Specification Dialogs



Each object in Home Designer Suite has a unique specification dialog where you can enter size, style and other information specific to the selected object. To access it, select the object and click the **Open Object** edit button. You can also double-click on an object with the **Select**

Objects  tool active to open its specification dialog. See “Selecting Objects” on page 86.


Most objects also have a defaults dialog that lets you specify the initial values in the specification dialog.

Dialog Preview Panes


Many specification dialogs have a preview pane that shows how changes affect the selected object. This preview updates when you click in a different field or press the **Tab** key on your keyboard.


When you click in the preview pane, your mouse pointer changes to a four-headed arrow and you can rotate around the object as well as zoom in and out using the mouse

scroll wheel. Some objects, notably walls, doors, and windows, have Interior and Exterior labels to indicate which side is visible in the preview. Click the **Fill**

Window  button above the preview pane to zoom in or out so that the object fills the extents of the pane, maintaining the current rotation.


A selection of Rendering Techniques can be applied to the preview: Standard, and Glass House. You can also choose to display the object as it appears in floor plan view. See “Rendering Techniques” on page 402.

Click the **Color**  button to turn color in the preview off or on. Some objects have additional tools that affect object previews. For example, the **Cabinet Specification**

dialogs have a **Select Cabinet Face Item**  button. Object specific tools like this are discussed in the documentation for that object type.

Dialog Panel Splitters

Many dialog panels are divided into up to three sections: a list of panels on the left, an object preview on the right, and a central area where settings are located. The vertical splitters separating these sections each have a pale, dotted handle.

To resize the panel list or preview, as well as the area in the middle, move your mouse pointer over the vertical division line: when the splitter cursor  can be seen, click and drag to the left or right.

The Status Bar

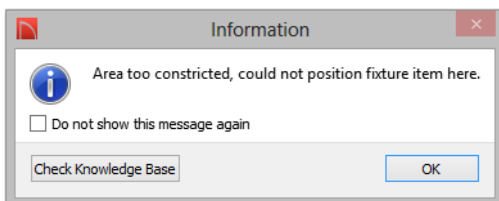
The Status Bar at the bottom of the main program window displays information about the current state of the program.

This information depends on a variety of conditions such as the type of object selected, and the current position of the pointer. The information may include the following:

- A brief description of the toolbar button or menu item highlighted by the mouse.
- A description of the selected object or of the edit handle that the pointer is over.
- The total number of objects currently group-selected.
- Basic information about a selected library object, folder, or catalog.
- The current floor.
- The length and/or angle of an object as it is being drawn.

Message Boxes

As you work in Home Designer Suite, the program will occasionally prompt you to examine your settings, alert you if you command it to do something that could potentially cause a problem, or notify you if it encounters a problem that needs your attention



Situations where such message boxes may display include:

- Closing a file without saving;
- Modifying an object that is set to rebuild automatically;
- A file referenced outside the program, such as an image or texture, is missing;
- Creating an object in a space too small to contain it.

As with dialog boxes, you can access the options in a message box using the mouse or navigate them using the keyboard.

A few messages have a **Send Report** button. Click this button to anonymously send details regarding the issue that prompted the message to Chief Architect via the internet.

Some message boxes include a “Remember my choice” or a “Do not show this again” checkbox. Check this box to prevent messages of this specific type from displaying in the future. When this box is checked, some options in the message box may become inactive.

To allow all message boxes to display again, click the **Reset Message Boxes** button in the **Preferences** dialog. See “Reset Options Panel” on page 66.

Preferences and Default Settings

Preferences and default settings control many aspects of the user interface and tool behavior in Home Designer Suite. You can use these settings to customize the program to suit your personal work style.

For more information about defaults and preferences, see “Preferences and Default Settings” on page 55.

Preferences



Preference settings let you change program behavior to suit your workflow. For example, you can:

- Turn certain display elements on or off.
- Choose background and editing feedback colors.
- Set rendering specifications to maximize efficiency and quality.

Preference settings are global, affecting all plan files.

Defaults

Most objects in Home Designer Suite derive their initial properties from their respective default dialogs.

For example, a newly placed **Window**  gets its initial values from the **Window Defaults** dialog and a newly placed **Hinged Door**  gets its initial values from the **Door Defaults** dialog.

Once an object is placed in a plan, its initial properties can be overridden, but setting up your defaults before you begin drawing can save you considerable time as you build a model in the program.

Default settings, unlike Preferences, are file specific.

Dynamic Defaults

Most default settings are static: if you change one, any objects of that type in the current file will not be affected. A few defaults, however, are dynamic: they are tied to existing objects in the drawing and if you change the default, those objects may be affected. See “Dynamic Defaults” on page 57.

Drawing a Plan

When you draw a plan in Home Designer Suite, you are placing 3D objects that represent building components. Home Designer Suite comes with predefined default settings so you can start drawing plans immediately. You should review these default settings to be sure they match your

drawing and building methods. See “Preferences and Default Settings” on page 55.

Set the Defaults

1. Specify the defaults for walls.

2. Set material defaults for roof, walls, and rooms.
3. Set style defaults for doors, windows, cabinets and other objects.

Draw the Floors

1. While the size of the drawing area in Home Designer Suite is limited only by the resources on your computer, it is best to begin your drawing near the origin, 0,0,0. See “3D Drafting” on page 21.
2. Draw the exterior walls on Floor 1. See “Drawing Walls” on page 122.
3. Adjust the perimeter shape and size as required. See “Using the Edit Handles” on page 127.
4. Place any first floor bearing walls.
5. Define types for special rooms such as garages and decks in the plan. See “Room Types” on page 147.
6. Place perimeter doors and windows. See “Doors” on page 161 and “Windows” on page 177.
7. Build additional floors. See “Adding Floors” on page 201.
8. Specify the default ceiling height for each floor as soon as it is created. See “Floor Defaults Dialog” on page 200.
9. Adjust the perimeter shape of additional floors as needed. See “Editing Walls” on page 127.
10. Align edited or moved walls with those above or below where appropriate. See “Aligning Walls” on page 130.

Entering Dimensions

When using Imperial units, enter distances as inches or feet and inches, in fractional or decimal form. Millimeters are the default unit for all metric distances. See “Dimensions” on page 405.

- To enter feet, include the (') marker or the program assumes inches.
- In most cases, the program allows precision to 1/16th of an inch. Fractions with denominators 2, 4, 8 and 16 are allowed.
- The program usually converts decimals to fractions.

Build the Foundation

1. Derive the foundation plan from the first floor. See “Building a Foundation” on page 208.
2. Adjust the foundation perimeter shape as needed.
3. Place interior foundation walls as needed for the first floor bearing walls.
4. Place any other foundation walls required.
5. **Align with Above** as needed. See “Aligning Walls” on page 130.

Add Structure and Details

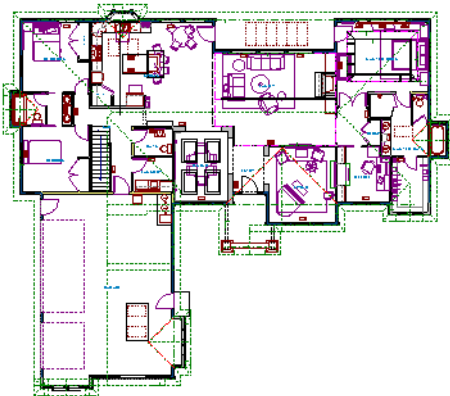
1. Build non-structural interior walls. Begin on floor one and work up in multiple story structures.
2. Add walls where needed to create features such as chimney chases, plumbing walls, or Open Below areas.

3. Finish the relevant interior structure including interior doors, doorways, cabinets, fixtures, and fireplaces.
4. Build the terrain and landscaping. See “Terrain” on page 289.

Viewing Your Plan

You can see your model in a variety of different 2D and 3D views. You can display more than one view at a time; and in any view, you can pan or zoom in or out. See “View and Window Tools” on page 373.

Floor plan view is a 2D view of the model and is most commonly used for drawing and editing. In floor plan view, each floor displays separately and you can only edit one floor at a time; however, you have extensive control over which objects display at any given time, can easily switch between floors, and can also display items on a second floor for reference. See “Multiple Floors” on page 199.



You can create interior and exterior 3D views of your model from any perspective. As in floor plan view, you can select and edit many objects in 3D views and control which objects are visible. See “3D Views” on page 381.



You can also create **Doll House Views** that show only the current floor plus any floors beneath it. Ceilings on the current floor are omitted so you can see the interior, visualize the relationships between spaces, and plan traffic flow.



Framing Overviews display framing in 3D. You can customize 3D views to serve special purposes such as this.



All views can be exported as a graphic image. See “To export a picture” on page 454.

Getting Help



There are many forms of help available in Home Designer Suite including: Tool Tips, the Status Bar, and the online Help menu.

All these forms of help assume you have a basic working knowledge of your operating system, including how to use a mouse, open, close and save files, copy, paste, and right-click to access contextual menus. Help also assumes you are familiar with basic computer terminology.

More information is available in the product documentation in electronic format and on Home Designer's official web site, www.HomeDesignerSoftware.com.

See "Additional Resources" on page 499.

Tool Tips

When you move the pointer over a toolbar button or menu item, a **Tool Tip** displays, offering a brief description of the tool. More information displays in the Status Bar at the bottom of the window.

Contextual Help



Online **Help** is a searchable menu that provides information about all of the

tools in Home Designer Suite. Select **Help> Launch Help** to open the program's Help and explore the table of contents, browse the Index, or Search for keywords.

The Help can also be used to provide instant information about toolbar buttons, menu items, and objects in your plan.

- When you move the cursor over a toolbar button or menu item, a brief summary of that tool displays in the Status Bar. Press the F1 key to open online Help to a page with more information about the tool.
- When an object is selected, edit handles display. Place the cursor over an edit handle and press **F1** to open online Help to a page with information about that handle.
- Press the **Help** button in any dialog box to open online Help to a page describing the options in that dialog.

Chief Architect strives to make our documentation as helpful as possible for all of our customers. Please send any questions, comments, or feedback to documentation@chiefarchitect.com.

About Home Designer Suite

Select **Help> About Home Designer Suite** in Windows[®] or **Chief Architect> About Chief Architect** in Mac OS X[®] to view information about your software license, the

program's version number, and its release date.

Contact information for Chief Architect, Inc. is available on the **More Information** panel.

Upgrade to Chief Architect

Select **Help> Upgrade to Chief Architect** to launch your default web browser to the Chief Architect web page, www.chiefarchitect.com, where you can learn about this powerful home design software for building professionals.

Chief Architect can open plans originally created in Home Designer, and offers an extensive set of drawing, editing and rendering tools that allows you to produce complete, professional working drawings.

Home Designer Suite Trial Software

Free Trial versions of some Home Designer programs are available for download at www.chiefarchitect.com.

The Trial software offers the same functionality as a purchased license with a few limitations:



- File Saving
- Printing
- File Exporting
- Recording of Walkthroughs
- Printing or Exporting of Materials Lists
- Library Browser restrictions

Full details can be found in the software's Help and at www.chiefarchitect.com.

Converting the Trial Version

An installation of the Home Designer Suite Trial software can be converted into a full working version of the program at any time by purchasing a software license. There are

several ways to begin this process in the Trial:

- Click the **Purchase Full Version Now** button in any Trial Restriction message box.
- Select **Help> Purchase Home Designer Suite** .
- Select **File> Startup Options**  and then click the **Purchase Full Version Now** button.

Once you have purchased a license, you can activate it while the Trial software is running.

To activate the full version

1. Select **Help> Activate Full Version**.
2. In the **Product Activation** dialog, type or paste the **Product Key** associated with your software license.
3. Click the **Activate** button.

File Management

Home Designer Suite saves the complete 3D model of a structure and surrounding terrain as well as any CAD data associated with the model in **.plan** files.

All commands related to opening, saving and closing plans are located in the File menu. You can also open plans from the **Startup Options** dialog. See “Startup Options” on page 20.

Just as with files created in other software applications, you should back up your plan files externally on a regular basis to avoid accidental loss of work.

Chapter Contents

- Compatibility with Other Programs
- Organizing Your Files
- Home Designer Suite Data
- Creating a New Plan
- Saving, Exporting, and Backing Up Files
- Thumbnail Images
- Auto Archive
- Undo Files
- Opening and Importing Files
- Searching for Plans
- Backup Entire Plan
- Closing Views and Files
- Exiting Home Designer Suite

Compatibility with Other Programs

Plans produced in the following programs can all be read by Home Designer Suite 2015.

- Chief Architect® X1 through X5 (limited editability if enabled)
- Chief Architect® 5.0 through 10.08 (read only)
- 3D Home Architect® 3.0 and 4.0
- Chief Architect® Home Edition 5.0
- All Better Homes and Gardens Home Designer® products, Interior Designer, and Landscaping and Deck Designer, Versions 6 through 8.
- All Chief Architect Home Designer® products, Interior Designer, and Landscaping and Deck Designer, Versions 9 through 2014.
- Trading Spaces® Design Companion™

Note: 3D Home Architect 5.0 was not developed by Chief Architect, Inc. Plans written using 3D Home Architect 5.0 or later cannot be read by Home Designer Suite software.

Files that have been opened and saved in Home Designer Suite 2015 cannot be read by any of the program versions listed above. To continue to read files in the program in which

they were created, be sure to create copies of your files before opening them in Home Designer Suite 2015.

Opening Chief Architect Plans in Home Designer Programs

Plans created in Chief Architect Versions 5 through X5 and Home Designer Pro Versions 6 through 2014 can be opened in the latest Home Designer programs for viewing and annotating, but not for general editing or drawing of architectural objects.

Plans created in Chief Architect, build 11.4 and later, and Home Designer Pro 2015 can be set to allow limited editability in other Home Designer programs. When this permission is enabled, a Home Designer user can use all of their program's drawing tools and can edit objects in the plan that those tools can create. If an object cannot be created in the Home Designer program, however, it will not be editable.

In addition, Chief Architect and Home Designer Pro have the ability to lock layers. Objects cannot be drawn on locked layers; objects on locked layers cannot be selected; and locked layers cannot be unlocked in the other Home Designer programs. See "Layers" on page 73.

Organizing Your Files

You should keep your plan files separate from the support files needed to run Home Designer Suite. To keep files organized, you

may find it helpful to create a new folder for each project.

Home Designer Suite files may use imported images, textures and other custom content saved in their own external data files. Consider storing copies of all external files in the same folder as the plan files that use them so that they are easily found.

Here is one way to organize your files:

- Create a folder in your Documents directory called “Home Designer Suite Plans” or another name you prefer. See your operating system’s Help to learn how to create folders.
- Inside this folder, make a new folder for each project. Save all the files for that

project inside this folder, including plan files and referenced external files. See “Saving, Exporting, and Backing Up Files” on page 41.

Bear in mind, though, that path names exceeding 260 characters cannot be opened by Home Designer Suite. As a result, it is a good idea to limit the number of embedded folders you use in your file organization method.

Once you understand the file management of Home Designer Suite, you can decide on a naming convention that suits your needs.

Home Designer Suite Data

When Home Designer Suite 2015 is installed, the program automatically creates a folder in the user Documents directory called **Home Designer Suite 2015 Data**. This folder contains important user-specific information saved in the following folders and files and should not be moved, renamed or deleted:

- **Archives** - A folder of automatically archived plan files. See “Auto Archive” on page 44.
- **Backdrops** - A folder of custom backdrop images. See “3D Backdrops” on page 387.
- **Images** - A folder of custom images. See “Adding Materials and Images” on page 350.
- **Database Libraries** - A folder of user library data. See “Library Content” on page 346.

- **Scripts** - A folder for custom Ruby scripts associated with Chief Architect plans.
- **Templates** - A folder of plan template files. See “Creating a New Plan” on page 40.
- **Textures** - A folder where you can save image files used to create custom material textures. See “Creating Materials” on page 366.
- **Toolbars** - A folder of toolbar files. See “Toolbar Arrangement” on page 69.



If the Home Designer Suite 2015 Data folder is renamed, moved or deleted, the program will automatically replace it using default information from the Home Designer Suite installation folder. When this occurs, customized user settings and custom user library content will not be available.

Because the Home Designer Suite 2015 Data contains custom user data, it is not deleted when the program is uninstalled. See


“Uninstalling Home Designer Suite” on page 17 of the User’s Guide.

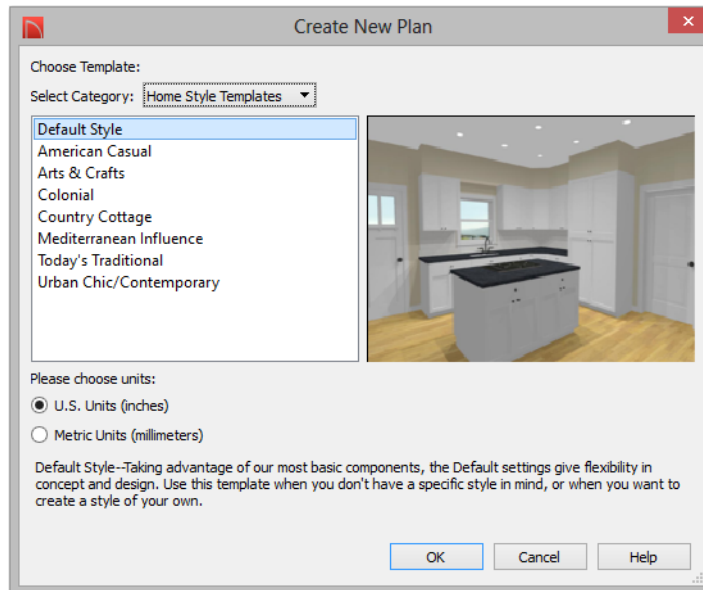
Creating a New Plan

 To open the **Create New Plan** dialog, select **File> New Plan**.

You can also choose **New Plan** in the **Startup Options** dialog. See “Startup Options” on page 20.

Template Plans

 When you select **File> New Plan** in Home Designer Suite, the **Create New Plan** dialog opens, letting you select a template for your new plan. The resulting new plan uses either metric or Imperial units of measurement and predefined default settings, layer settings, wall definitions, and page setup information.



Home Designer Suite includes a selection of plan templates, each with different default settings that allow you to begin working in a particular plan style quickly. See “Default Settings vs Preferences” on page 56.

Choose a category from the drop-down list, then select a style template from the scrollable list beneath it. If you are uncertain as to the right style for your plan, choose

Default, as you cannot change the plan style template once a plan has been created.

Select either **U.S. Units** or **Metric Units** of measurement, and click **OK**. The floor plan

view window opens, ready for you to begin drawing.

New, blank plans are called **Untitled.plan**. Unless these files are named and saved, they will be lost when closed.


Saving, Exporting, and Backing Up Files

Saving, exporting, and backing up your files are three separate tasks that accomplish different things:

- Saving a plan file retains your work so that it can be later opened in Home Designer Suite.
- Exporting a file allows you to save certain kinds of data in a format that can be used by a program other than Home Designer Suite.
- Backing up your files involves taking steps to make sure that your valuable data is protected and available when needed.

Whether you are saving, exporting, or backing up your data, it is important that you select a location on your computer for the files you create, and also specify a short, meaningful name that you will be able to identify in the future.

To save an untitled plan file

1. Select **File> Save**  to open the **Save File** dialog.
2. Specify a location on your computer where you would like to save the file. See “Organizing Your Files” on page 38.
3. In the **File name** text field, type a name for the file.

4. Home Designer Suite automatically assigns the **File of type** and file extension **.plan**.
5. When both the Save in location and File name are correct, click **Save**.







Although the program warns you if you try to exit without saving, you should get in the habit of saving plan files before exiting the program.



Saving Plan Files





When you first save a new, untitled file, you must select a location for it on your computer and give it a name. There are two options for saving plan files: **File> Save** and **File> Save As**.

Both **Save**  and **Save As**  can be used to save your plan files; however, they accomplish this in two different ways.

- **File> Save**  saves the current state of your plan file without changing its name and should normally be used for saving your work.
- **File> Save As**  opens the **Save File** dialog, allowing you to save the plan file using a different name or location on your computer.

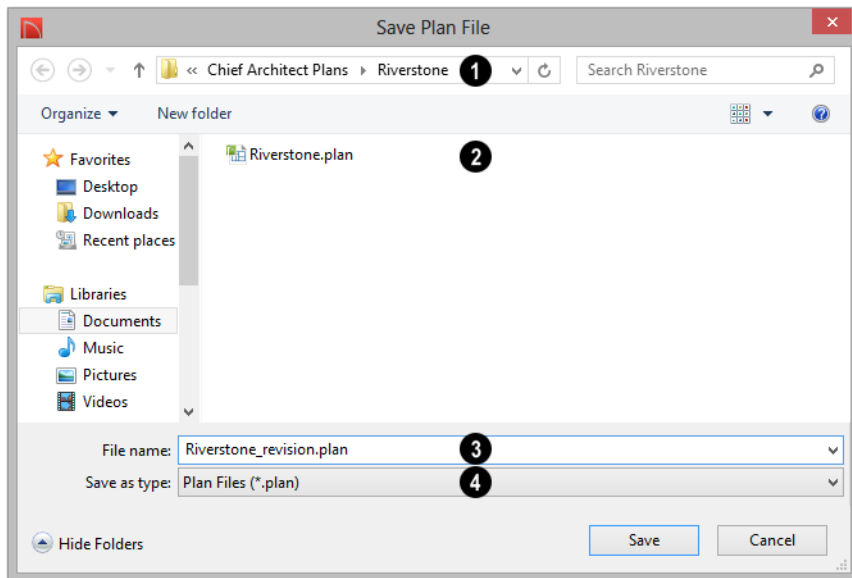
Initially, all **Open**  and **Save As**  operations go to the “My Documents” folder of your computer. After that, the location last visited is remembered and subsequent

Open  or **Save As**  commands default to the directory last used for that operation. This path is saved when the program exits. The next time Home Designer Suite is launched, these defaults are used.

Save File Dialog

The **Save File** dialog uses the operating system’s file save dialog format, and is also used when exporting files. The dialog name

may vary, depending on the type of file being saved or exported.



- 1 Choose a location on your local computer for the file you are saving.
- 2 Any existing folders and/or files in the current location display here.
- 3 In the **File Name** field, type a name for the file. If you select an existing file from the space above, its name will display here automatically.
- 4 When saving a file, the program will choose the appropriate file type from

the **Save as type** drop-down list. When exporting, you may need to choose a specific file type.

Saving Revision Files

Revisions are a common aspect of any design project. There are a number of possible strategies for organizing revision files:

- Prepending the file name;
- Appending the file name;

- Saving revisions in separate folders.

To avoid confusion and potential mistakes, it is recommended that you always give files unique names - including revision files. If you choose to organize your revisions by saving them in separate folders, you should also give each file a unique name that makes it impossible to confuse it with another file saved in a different folder.



Exporting Files

Home Designer Suite has a number of options for exporting and importing information out of and your drawings. See “Pictures, Images, and Walkthroughs” on page 449.


Often, file export dialogs are simply versions of the **Save File** dialog.

Similarly, file import dialogs are often similar to the **Open File** dialog. See “Importing Files” on page 47.

Backup Entire Plan

File > Save As  is a simple way to transfer a plan to a different location on your computer. Bear in mind, though, that plan files often reference external data files such as imported textures, images, and backdrops. These external files are not affected when **Save As**  is used.

If you transfer a plan file from one computer to another, the program will warn you of missing files if the external data files used by the plan cannot be found when you open it.

When transferring plans to another computer that does not have these external files, use the **Backup Entire Plan**  tool. See “Backup Entire Plan” on page 51.

Backing Up Your Files

It is always a good idea to create backup copies of all your important files on your computer.

It is strongly recommended, however, that you never save directly onto removable media such as a USB thumb drive, CD, or DVD. Instead, copy your files to such locations only after you have saved them on your computer’s hard drive and exited the program.

Archive folders are used by Home Designer Suite to manage prior versions of your files. You should not view these files as a substitute for your own backup routine, and should never save a file in an archive folder. See “Auto Archive” on page 44.

When backing up your Home Designer Suite files, consider backing up not only your **.plan** files, but your custom user data, as well - including library content, toolbar configurations, and textures. This custom data is all located in the Home Designer Suite Data folder, so it can be easily backed up. See “Home Designer Suite Data” on page 39.


You can, if you wish, create a folder inside the Data folder for your **.plan** files, as well. See “Organizing Your Files” on page 38.

Thumbnail Images

A thumbnail is a miniature image that helps identify a file in the **Open Plan File** dialog. Any view of a plan can be saved as the thumbnail. See “Searching for Plans” on page 47.

The program automatically creates a thumbnail image when you first save a new plan. You can choose to generate small or large thumbnails.

To create a custom thumbnail image


1. You must save the file and give it a name before you can save a thumbnail.
2. Create the 2D or 3D view that you want to use as a thumbnail for the current file.
3. With the desired view active, select **File> Save Thumbnail Image** .

Thumbnail images are saved in the plan file that they are associated with.

Auto Archive

The first time a plan is saved, Home Designer Suite creates an Archive folder in the Home Designer Suite Data folder. The Archive folder contains Auto Save and Archive files.

The program does not create Auto Save and Archive files for untitled plans. In order for these to be created, a file must have been previously saved and given a name and save location on your computer. Further, Archive files are only updated when you save your work.

Auto Save and Archive files should not be viewed as a substitute for regularly saving your work by selecting **File> Save**  or pressing Ctrl + S on the keyboard, nor should they be considered an alternative to your own file backup routine.

Auto Save Files

As you work, Home Designer Suite


Archive Files

Every time a drawing is saved, Archive files that keep a historical archive of your plan are automatically created or updated.




If you do not save your work regularly, your archive files will not be updated.

Plan files from previous versions of the program are automatically moved to the archive folder when the plan is opened and saved in Home Designer Suite.

Archive files are meant to be for emergency use only. If you must access an archive file, open it as you would any other file. See “Creating a New Plan” on page 40. As soon as the file is open, use **Save As**  to save this file to another location.

automatically creates Auto Save files at regular intervals when changes are made to a

file but not saved by selecting **File> Save** .


These Auto Save files are appended **_auto_save.plan** and are saved in the Archive folder.

When you close a file normally, its Auto Save file is retained until the next time the file is opened - at which time the Auto Save file is overwritten.

 JonesResidence_auto_save.plan


Auto Save file after normal shut-down

Auto save files created as a result of an improper program shutdown are appended **_auto_save_bak.plan**.

 JonesResidence_auto_save_bak.plan



Auto Save file after abnormal shut-down

If your computer shuts down accidentally, you can recover some of your work by opening the **_auto_save_bak** file.



 A file is auto saved only if you have saved it previously. Auto Save does not work for unnamed files.

When you reopen a file after a computer shut down or system crash, the program will notify you if an Auto Save file newer than the original file is found and give you the option to one that file.

Even with Auto Save, you should save your work manually on a regular basis using any of the following methods:

- Click the **Save**  button.
- Select **File> Save** .
- Press Ctrl + S on the keyboard.

Undo Files

Home Designer Suite stores a set number of copies of all open plan file changes, known as undo files. Undo files are referenced whenever you select **Edit> Undo**  or **Edit> Redo** . See “Undo and Redo” on page 113.

Undo files are stored in the Windows Temporary Directory. When you use Windows system cleanup features, these files can be deleted. Because of this, you should only use these type of utilities when Home Designer Suite is not running.

When Home Designer Suite is closed normally, any current Undo files are deleted.

Opening and Importing Files

Opening and importing files are often similar tasks, but accomplish two very different things:

- Opening a file refers to opening it in the program in which it was created. Only plan files can be opened in Home

Designer Suite. See “Compatibility with Other Programs” on page 38.

- Importing a file brings data that was created in a different program into Home Designer Suite. A number of different file types can be imported into Home Designer Suite.



Select **File> Open Plan** to open an existing **.plan** file located on your

computer. Home Designer Suite automatically browses to the directory last used.

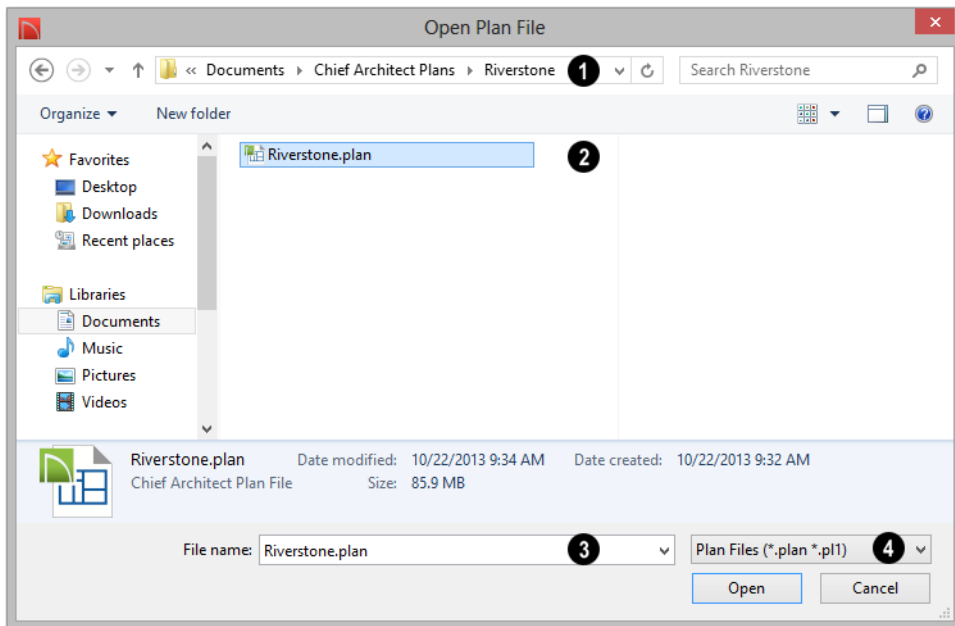


Never open a file located on a server or other computer on a network, or on a removable storage device. Copy such files to your local machine’s hard drive first, and then open the copy.

Open File Dialog

The **Open File** dialog uses the operating system’s file open dialog format, and is also used when importing files. The dialog name

may vary, depending on your operating system and the type of file being opened or imported.



- 1 Choose the location on your local computer for the file you are opening.
- 2 Any existing folders and/or files in the current location display here.

- 3 In the **File Name** field, type the file’s name. If you select the file in the space above, its name will automatically display here.

4 When opening or importing a file, the program will usually choose the appropriate file type from the **Save as type** drop-down list. When importing, you may need to choose a specific file type.

Plan files open to the floor that was active when the file was last saved and closed.

Importing Files

Home Designer Suite has a number of options for exporting and importing information out of and into your drawings. Often, file import dialogs are simply versions of the **Open File** dialog. See “Pictures, Images, and Walkthroughs” on page 449.

Similarly, file export dialogs are often similar to the **Save File** dialog. See “Exporting Files” on page 43.

Recently Opened Files

A list of recently opened and saved plan files can be accessed by selecting **File> Open Recent Files**. Select one of these files to open it without using the **Open File** dialog.

The names of recent files also display in the **Startup Options** dialog. Click on the name of a file to open it. See “Startup Options” on page 20.

Searching for Plans



Select **File> Search for Plans** to locate an existing, fully-editable sample plan or search a selection of non-editable plans by popular home designers. This command opens the **Find Plan Assistant**, which helps you search for plans based on parameters that you define.

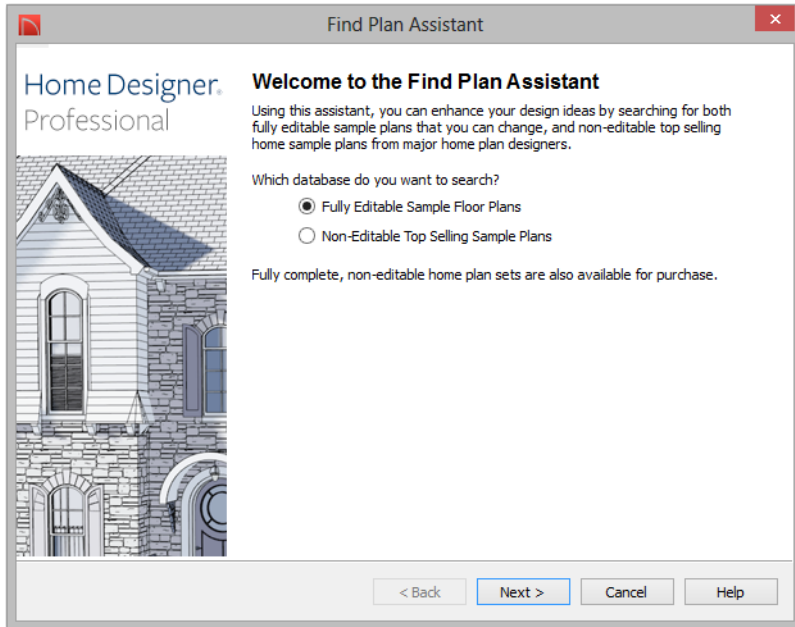
At the bottom of each page, the number of plans that match your current search parameters displays. As you modify the parameters, this number increases or decreases as matching plans are found.

On any page, click the **Back** button to modify any previously selected parameters.

Find Plan Assistant

The **Find Plan Assistant** can be used to search for plans using stored information about each plan, such as the square footage

and the number of bedrooms and other room types.



Begin by selecting either a database of
editable sample plans or a collection of house

plan drawings by popular home plan
companies, then click **Next** to continue.

House Style

House Style
Choose the style, number of floors, and number of bedrooms that you would like in your house.

1 — What style of home plan would you like? Choose All Styles if you are unsure.
Style of home: All Styles

2 — How many floors do you want in your house?
No more than: 3

3 — How many bedrooms do you need in your house?
At Least: 0
But no more than: 4

4 — 6 plans match your search.

< Back Next > Cancel Help

- 1 Select a style of house from the drop-down list.
- 2 Specify the maximum number of floors that you would like.
- 3 Specify the minimum and maximum number of bedrooms that you would like.
- 4 The number of plans in the database that match your search parameters thus far displays here for reference.
Click **Next** to continue.

House Size

House Size
Choose the number of bathrooms and size that you would like for your house.

1 — How many bathrooms do you want?
At Least: 0
But no more than: 4

2 — How big of a house do you want?
At Least: 0 sq ft
But no more than: 3500 sq ft

3 — 6 plans match your search.

< Back Next > Cancel Help

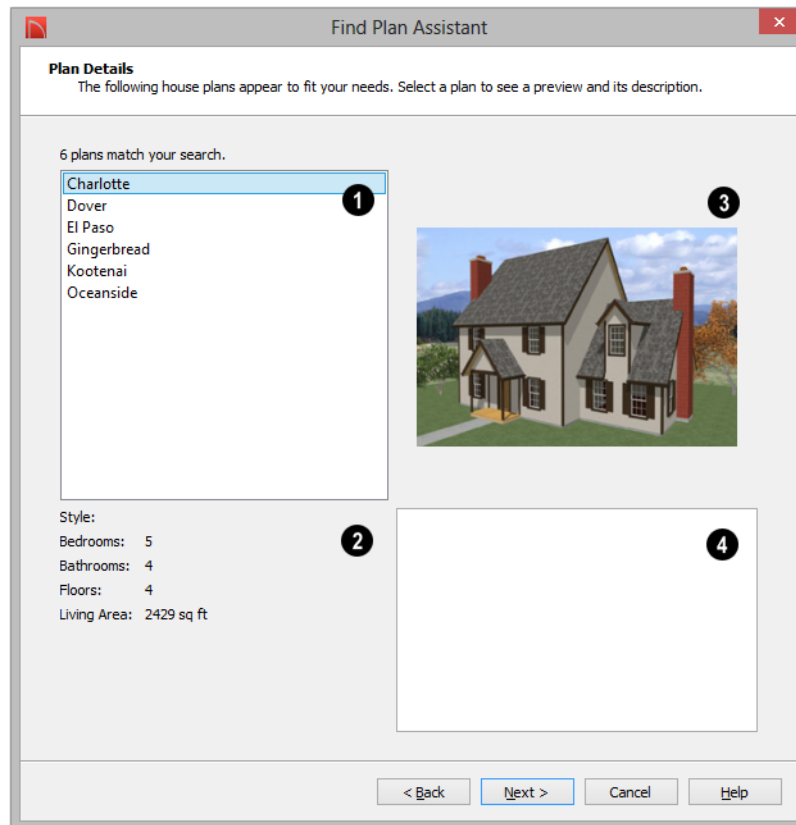
1 Specify the minimum and maximum number of bathrooms you would like.

2 Specify the minimum and maximum number of square feet that you would like.

3 The number of plans in the database that match your search parameters thus far displays here for reference.

Click **Next** to continue.

Plan Details



- 1 Click on the name of a plan to select it and view information about it.
- 2 Basic information about the selected plan display here.
- 3 A preview of the selected plan displays here.

- 4 A written description of the selected plan provides additional details displays here.

Click **Next** to continue, then click **Finish** to view the selected plan.

Backup Entire Plan



Because Home Designer Suite plans often contain many references to other


external files, it is necessary to copy all the associated files to a new location when a plan

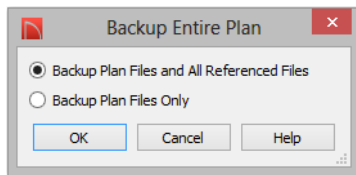
is moved. You can do this easily by selecting **File> Backup Entire Plan**.

Backing up an Entire Plan is important when:


- Migrating legacy files created in older program versions.
- Transferring files to another computer or sending them to another user.
- Archiving or backing up your work.

To back up a plan

1. To copy all associated plan files to a new directory, select **File> Backup Entire Plan** . The **Backup Entire Plan** dialog opens for you to choose what files are copied.



- Choose **Backup All Files** to copy all plan files and all externally referenced files such as linked plan files, inserted picture files, metafiles, and texture, image, and backdrop graphics files.
 - Choose **Backup Plan Files Only** to copy all associated plan files and any externally linked files and inserted picture files, but no graphics or texture files. This is best used only when transferring a file to a computer that already has the graphics files installed.
 - Click **OK**.
2. The **Select the Plan Backup Folder** dialog opens next. This is a typical Save File dialog. See “Saving, Exporting, and Backing Up Files” on page 41.
 3. Navigate to an empty folder on your system and select it. With the destination folder for the backup selected, click **OK**.

 You must select an empty folder for the Backup Entire Plan feature to work. If you select an existing folder that is not empty, the backup is cancelled.


Closing Views and Files

There are several ways to close a view window:

- Select **File> Close** to close the active window.
- Press **Ctrl + W** on the keyboard to close the active window.
- Click the **Close** button in the active view’s title bar or in any view’s tab.
- A tabbed view can be closed by clicking on its tab using the middle mouse button.

- Select **File> Close All** to close all currently open view windows instead of just the active window.

If a plan has only one view window open and you try to close it, the program will prompt you to save before closing if there are any unsaved changes.

 Although the program warns you if you try to exit without saving, you should get in the habit of saving plan files before exiting.

Exiting Home Designer Suite

Select **File> Exit** to exit the program. If you have not saved any open plans, you are reminded to do so. It is better to save your work before exiting than to save on exit.

When you exit from the program using **File> Exit**, all Autosave files and Undo files are automatically deleted.

On a Mac, if you click the program window's red **Close** button, the window will close but the program itself will continue to run. To close it down completely, right-click on its icon on the Dock and select **Quit** from the contextual menu.

Preferences and Default Settings

Preferences are global settings that affect the functionality and appearance of the Home Designer Suite environment, while default settings control what objects look like when they are initially created. You can save time by becoming familiar with these settings and customizing them before you begin a new drawing.

Chapter Contents

- Default Settings vs Preferences
- Dynamic Defaults
- General Plan Defaults Dialog
- Preferences Dialog
- Angle Style Dialog

Default Settings vs Preferences

Default and preference settings have important effects on how the tools in Home Designer Suite function. Default settings are file specific, while Preferences are global, taking effect regardless of what file is open.


Defaults and Preferences can be customized to suit your needs, so it is recommended that you become familiar with them and learn how you can use them to your advantage.

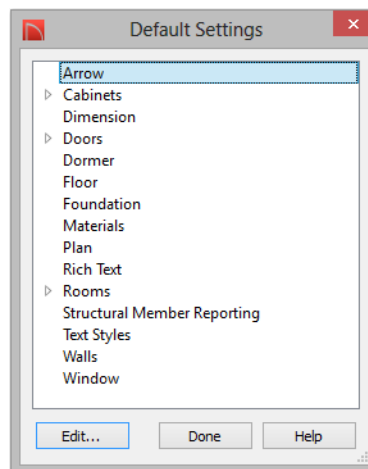
Default Settings



Default settings determine the initial characteristics of objects when they are first drawn. For example, when you place a base cabinet in a plan, its size, materials, front items, and hardware are determined by settings in the **Base Cabinet Defaults** dialog.

Defaults are file-specific, which means that any changes that you make to the default settings in one plan file will have no effect on other plans.

You can access a complete list of the various default settings in the current plan file by selecting **Edit> Default Settings**  from the menu.



- Click the + beside a category to expand it and access the defaults for items related to that category.
- To open the defaults dialog associated with an item in the list, double-click on the line item, or click on the item and then click the **Edit** button.

Preferences



Preference settings influence the overall environment of the program, such as what the interface looks like and how the tools are accessed. See “Preferences Dialog” on page 59.

Unlike default settings, preferences are global, which means that any changes that you make to them will take effect in all plan files.

To access the **Preferences** dialog, select **Edit> Preferences**  from the menu.

Dynamic Defaults

Dynamic defaults are values that can be changed globally throughout a model.

- If you change a dynamic default value in a defaults dialog, all objects of that type that are set to use the default will update automatically to use the new value.
- Any objects of that type that are not using the default value because of editing will not be affected if you change the default.

Dynamic defaults are found in the default dialogs of a variety of objects, including dimension lines, walls, doors, cabinets and rooms.

Materials are another example of an attribute that uses Dynamic Defaults. See “Material Defaults” on page 369.

In object specification dialogs, dynamic defaults are followed by either a (D) in the value field or a Default checkbox.

To edit a dynamic default, delete the (D) or remove the check from **Default** box and type the desired value.

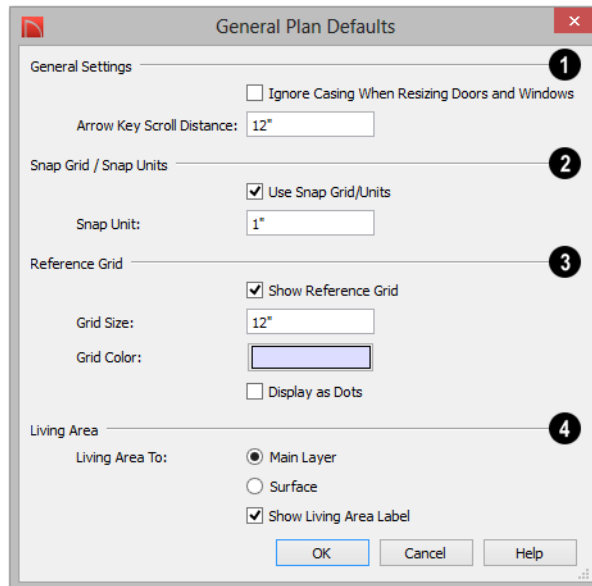
To reset a value back to the dynamic default, type the letter D in the field or click the Default checkbox.

General Plan Defaults Dialog

The settings in the **General Plan Defaults** dialog control basic features of the Home Designer Suite environment in plan files. Just as with other default settings, they are file specific, which means that they can be

set differently in individual plan files. To open this dialog, select **Edit> Default**

Settings , select **Plan**, and click the **Edit** button.



1 **General Settings** - Specify the default functionality for a variety of general behaviors in the program.

- Casing is the trim that surrounds a door or window. When you resize a door or window, its sides are kept away from intersecting walls by the width of the casing. Check **Ignore Casing for Opening Resize** to allow wall openings to be positioned against an intersecting wall. Clear this box retain sufficient space for the opening's specified trim width.
- The **Arrow Key Scroll Distance** setting determines how far to scroll in floor plan view when you press an arrow key. The initial default is 12 inches (300 mm). See "Using the Arrow Keys" on page 376.

2 The **Snap Grid** allows you to snap objects to specific points on-screen as

they are moved or resized. See "Grid Snaps" on page 79.

- Check **Use Snap Grid/Units** to enable Grid Snaps.
- Specify the **Snap Unit** you wish to use. The initial default is 1 inch (10 mm).

3 Specify the display of the **Reference Grid**.

- Check **Show Reference Grid** to display the Reference Grid, the virtual graph paper used to create a sense of scale in floor plan view.
- Specify the **Reference Grid Size**.
- Check **Display as Dots** to display the Reference Grid using dots rather than lines.

4 Specify how the **Living Area** label is calculated and whether it displays in

floor plan view. Not available in layout files. See “Living Area” on page 150.

- Select **Main Layer** to have the Living Area calculation measure from the walls’ Main Layer.
- Select **Surface** to have the Living Area calculation measure from the walls’ exterior surface.
- Uncheck **Show “Living Area”** to disable the display of the Living Area label.

Preferences Dialog



The settings in the **Preferences** dialog are global: they apply to all plan files and are preserved between sessions. To access this dialog, select **Edit> Preferences.** in Windows® or **Chief Architect> Preferences** in Mac OS X®.

The **Preferences** dialog consists of panels which are accessed by clicking on the names in the Category tree along the left side.

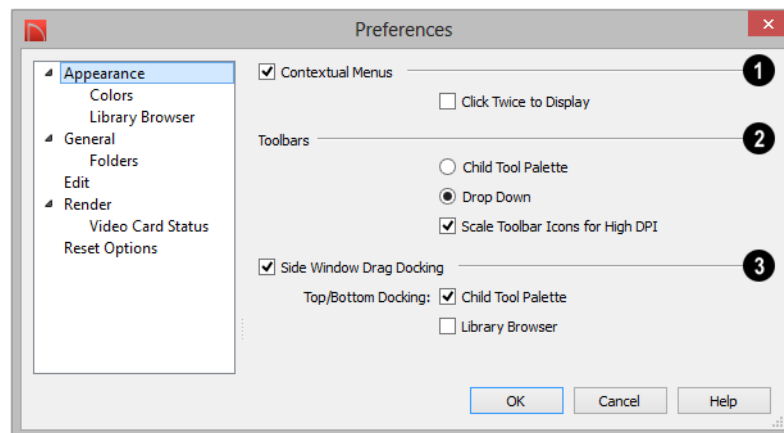
The category tree structure is similar to other Windows programs. A “+” next to a category indicates that it has subcategories. Click the “+” to make the subcategories visible; to hide them, click the “-.”

The program remembers which panel you last accessed and opens to that panel the next time you open the dialog.

Preferences dialog panels:

- Appearance Panel
- Colors Panel
- Library Browser Panel
- General Panel
- Folders Panel
- Edit Panel
- Render Panel
- Video Card Status Panel
- Reset Options Panel

Appearance Panel



1 Check **Contextual Menus** to activate contextual menus that display when you right-click. See “Contextual Menus” on page 27.

- Check **Click Twice to Display** to require two right-clicks on an object before the contextual menu displays. This allows the first right-click to be used for object selection. See “Selecting Objects” on page 86.

In 3D views, the two clicks must be on the same object surface in order for the contextual menu to display: Clicking on two different surfaces of the same object is treated like two single-clicks.

2 Specify how **Toolbars** present child tools when a parent button is clicked.

- Choose **Parent-Child** to display child tools as buttons at the end of the toolbar where the parent button resides.

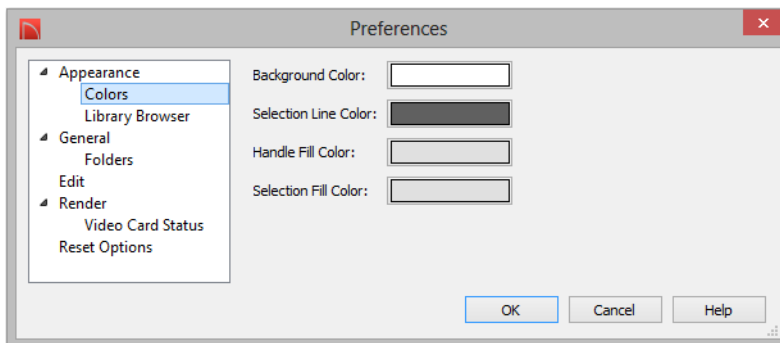
- Choose **Drop Down** to display child tools when the drop-down arrow to the right of the parent button is clicked.

- Uncheck **Scale Toolbar Icons for High DPI** to prevent toolbar icons from becoming larger on systems using high DPI resolution. When checked, toolbar buttons will increase in size when high DPI is used.

3 Uncheck **Side Window Drag Docking** to prevent undocked side windows from docking when moved using the mouse. See “View and Side Windows” on page 24.

- **Top/Bottom Docking** - Check the box beside a side window’s name to allow it to dock on the top and bottom edges of the program window. Does not affect docking to the left and right sides.

Colors Panel



Click a color bar to open the **Select Color** dialog. See “Select Color Dialog” on page 370.

- Specify the **Background Color** for floor plan view.

The background color for 3D views that do not use or a backdrop image is set in the **3D Backdrop** dialog. See “Backdrop Dialog” on page 382.

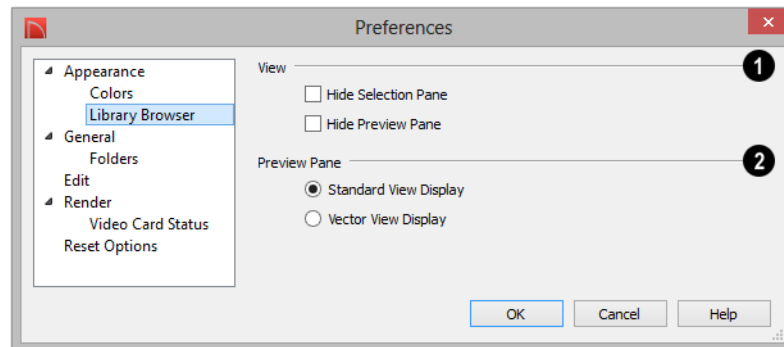
- Specify the **Selection Line Color**, which is the color of the lines that represent object(s) and their edit handles when they are selected.
- Specify the **Handle Fill Color**, which is the fill color of the edit handles for selected objects.
- Specify the **Selection Fill Color**, which is the fill color for selected objects. Note

that depending on the fill assigned to a selected object, its Selection Fill color may vary.

Note: If the Selection Line and Handle Fill Colors are similar, it may be difficult to distinguish between active and inactive CAD Points.

Library Browser Panel

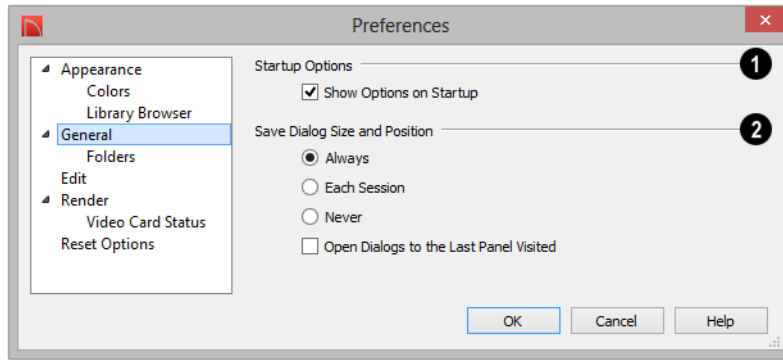
The Library Browser panel controls the appearance of the Library Browser window. See “The Library Browser” on page 342.



- 1 **View** options control the display of the main sections of the Library Browser.
 - Check **Hide Selection Pane** to hide the pane that displays objects in a selected library or library folder.
 - Check **Hide Preview Pane** to hide the pane that shows a preview of a selected object.
- 2 Specify how selected library items look in the **Preview Pane**.
 - **Standard View Display** - Library items previews display textures and appear as they do in 3D views.
 - **Vector View Display** - Library item previews are line-based and display patterns.

To restore the original size and position of the Library Browser and other side windows, click the **Restore Side Windows** button on the Reset Options Panel.

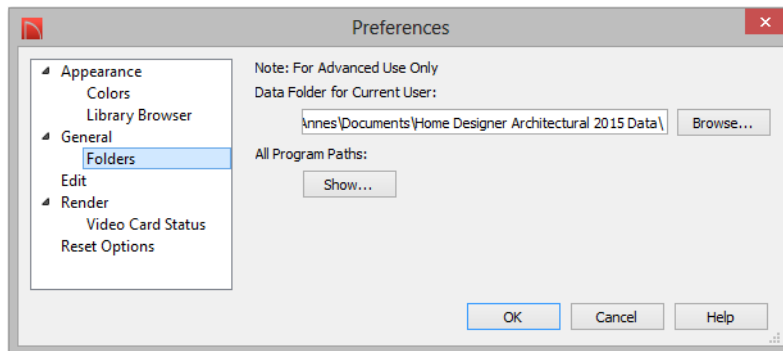
General Panel



Check **Show Options at Startup** to open the **Startup Options** dialog when Home

Designer Suite is launched. See “Startup Options” on page 20.

Folders Panel



Important user-specific information is saved in a folder on your computer called **Home Designer Suite 2015 Data**. This folder contains custom library content, toolbars, template files, archive files, and other important data and is located in My Documents by default. See “Home Designer Suite Data” on page 39.

While you cannot change the name of this directory, you can change its location. To

avoid unexpected results, it is best to use a location on your local hard drive.

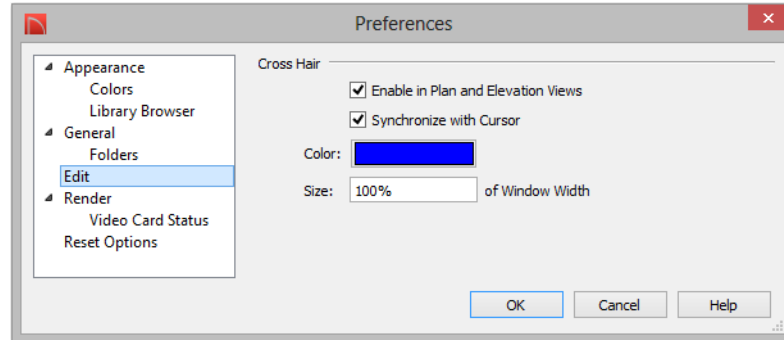
If you move this folder on your computer without specifying its location here, the program will automatically replace it using default information from the Home Designer Suite installation folder. The same result will occur if you specify a location on a network or removable device and this location becomes inaccessible. When this occurs,

customized user settings will not be used and custom library content will not be available.

All Program Paths - Click the **Show** button to open the **Program Paths** dialog, where

you can find the location of files that may be needed for troubleshooting purposes. See “Program Paths Dialog” on page 508.

Edit Panel



You can use a cursor with **Cross Hairs** and control its appearance.

- Check **Enable in Plan and Elevation Views** to use a cross hair cursor in floor plan and elevation views. This option is checked by default.
- When **Synchronize with Cursor** is checked, the mouse pointer and cross hairs always move together on screen. If you feel that they do not keep up with

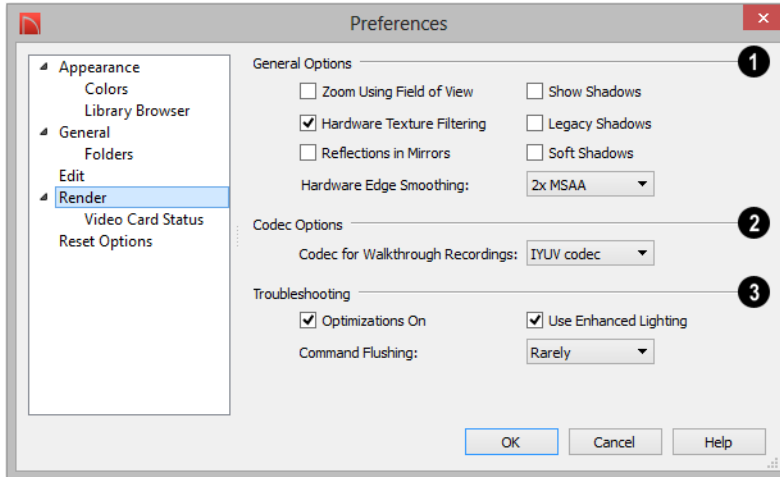
your mouse movements, try unchecking this option.

- Click the **Color** bar to open the **Select Color** dialog and specify the color of the cross hairs.
- Cross hair **Size** is specified as a percentage of the view **Window Width**. Specify the **Size** as 100% to extend the cross hairs across the entire screen.

Render Panel

The Render panel settings control how 3D views are generated, particularly Render


Previews and Final Views. See “Previews vs Final Views” on page 400.



1 The **General Options** settings affect both Render Previews and Final Views.

- **Zoom Using Field of View** directs the program to zoom in 3D views by adjusting the camera’s Field of View, which can result in perspective distortion. See “Field of View” on page 392.
When **Zoom Using Field of View** is unchecked, zooming in 3D views is done by cropping or expanding the view’s extents. See “Zooming” on page 392.
- **Hardware Texture Filtering** uses your video card to filter textures and improve their appearance: noticeably, on surfaces angled away from the camera. In some rare instances, this may slow rendering time somewhat. Not supported by some video cards.
- **Reflections in Mirrors** allows flat surfaces using a Mirror material to display reflections of other objects in the scene. Reflections may slow program performance in 3D views, particularly when multiple mirrors are present. By default,

this is checked for Final Views but not for Previews. See “Reflections” on page 399.

- **Show Shadows** controls whether or not shadows display. in Previews.
- Check **Legacy Shadows** to generate shadows using the method used in version X5 and prior. Legacy shadows are significantly slower than standard shadows, but are often of higher quality with smoother edges.
- **Soft Shadows** displays shadows with soft edges instead of hard edges in **Final Views with Shadows** . See “Rendering Tips” on page 399.
- **Hardware Edge Smoothing** uses the video card to remove the jagged edges that sometimes result along surface edges, producing cleaner lines. Select an MSAA (Multi Sample Anti-Aliasing) multiplier from the drop-down list: the higher the multiplier, the smoother the surface edges and longer the rendering time. Not avail-

able if your video card does not support this feature.

2 Select a **Codec for Walkthrough Recordings** from the drop-down list. By default, “Cinepak codec” is selected in the 32-bit Windows version of the software, “IYUV codec” in the 64-bit Windows version, and “H.264” in the Mac version; but any other codecs that you may have installed on your system will also display in the list. See “Walkthroughs” on page 462.

3 The **Troubleshooting** settings can be used to troubleshoot performance in 3D views.

- **Optimizations On** saves rendering data to your video card, which speeds up rendering time. This option may cause problems if the rendering data for your model exceeds the video card’s memory. If the program stops responding when rendering, try unchecking **Optimizations On**. This slows down rendering time con-

siderably, though, so if the problem is not solved, leave this checkbox selected.

Note: If your video card does not support this feature, **Optimizations On** may be unchecked automatically to avoid problems.

- When **Use Enhanced Lighting** is checked, Standard rendered views generate lighting effects that require a video card that supports OpenGL 2.0. Unchecking this box may speed up Standard rendering times somewhat; however, the quality of lighting effects will be reduced. Not available if your video card does not support OpenGL 2.0. See “OpenGL and Hardware” on page 382.
- **Command Flushing** - Select an option from the drop-down list to control how often the program flushes cached video memory. “Rarely” is selected by default and will produce fastest rendering times on most systems, but “Frequently” may be helpful for older video cards.

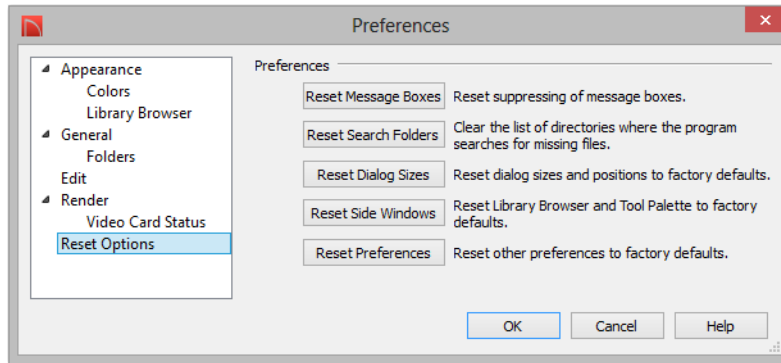
Video Card Status Panel

The Video Card Status panel displays information about your video card, including the vendor and the OpenGL version it uses. See “OpenGL and Hardware” on page 382.

This information may be important if you are having problems generating 3D views.

Notice the **Max Lights** value. This indicates how many lights can be rendered in a 3D view. This value should be 8 or higher, depending on your video card. See “Lighting” on page 400.

Reset Options Panel



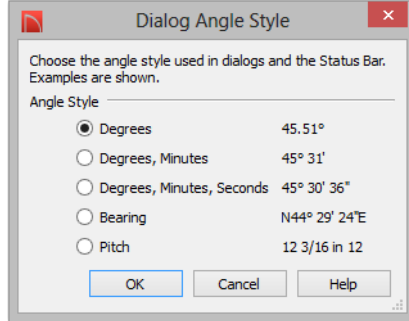
- If message boxes have been suppressed, you can make them display again by clicking **Reset Message Boxes**. See “Message Boxes” on page 30.
- Home Designer Suite retains a list of locations where you have located missing files in the past. If you find that the program takes a long time to search for files before informing you that they are missing, you can click the **Reset Search Folders** button to clear this list.
- Click the **Reset Dialog Sizes** button to restore all dialog boxes to their original sizes and positions. See “Dialogs” on page 27.
- Click the **Reset Side Windows** button to restore all side windows to their original sizes and positions. See “Side Windows” on page 25.
- Click the **Reset Preferences** button to restore all preferences to those that originally came with the program. For the reset to take effect, you will need to restart the program.

Angle Style Dialog

At the bottom of the **Terrain Specification** dialog, you can click the **Angle Style** button to open the **Angle Style** dialog. See “Terrain Specification Dialog” on page 301.

The selection in this dialog is global, affecting all plans during the current program session, and controls the format of angles in dialog boxes as well as in the Status Bar. See “The Status Bar” on page 30.

Although this setting controls the format of values used in dialogs, it does not limit how you can enter these values. For example, if you set your Number Style to use Inches, values will display using fractional inches. You can, however, enter values using decimal inches, inches and feet, or even decimal feet. When the dialog you’re typing in updates, the value will be converted to fractional inches.



Angles can be displayed using one of five methods:

- **Degrees/Minutes/Seconds** - Measured counterclockwise from a line drawn horizontally to the right of the angle's vertex. Useful for most drawing tasks. Select the level of accuracy that you require.
- **Bearings** - Measured from a vertical line representing North/ South, Quadrant Bearings use directional bearings in their measurements. Useful for site drawings.
- **Pitch** - Defined as a ratio of vertical rise to horizontal run. In Imperial units, the run is always 12"; in metric units it is 1000 mm.

Toolbars and Hotkeys

Two of the most efficient ways to access Home Designer Suite's tools are the toolbars and keyboard shortcuts, also referred to as hotkeys.

Chapter Contents

- Toolbar Arrangement
- Hotkeys

Toolbar Arrangement


Home Designer Suite's toolbars provide fast access to the program's most commonly used tools, and are organized so that related tools are grouped together and easy to find.

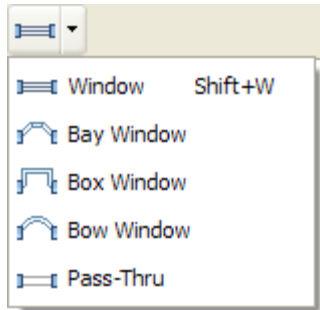
The toolbars that display in a given view depend on the view type. For example, the toolbars that are available in floor plan and 3D views are not available in Materials Lists.

Many of Home Designer Suite's tools are organized into families of related tools which can be accessed using either of two styles of toolbar interface: the **Child Tool Palette** or **Drop Down** tools. You can select the interface that you prefer in the **Preferences** dialog. See "Appearance Panel" on page 59.

Drop-Down Tools

Click on the arrow to the right of a button to display a drop-down list of related tools. For example, click the arrow to the right of the

Window  button to display a drop-down list of the other Window Tools.




The most recently selected tool displays in the toolbar.

Child Tool Palette


An alternative to Drop-Down toolbars is the Parent button and Child Tool Palette interface. Parent toolbar buttons have a blue triangle in the lower right corner. When you select a Parent button, its Child tools display in the Child Tool Palette. If the Child Tool Palette has been closed, it will open.




You can open the Tool Palette at any time, even when Drop Down tools are enabled, by selecting **View> Tool Palette**. See “View Tools” on page 374.

When you click the **Window Tools**  Parent button, for example, its Child buttons display in the Child Tool Palette.



By default, the Child Tool Palette is docked on the left side of the program window; but it can be undocked and moved, as well as resized and closed, just like other side windows. See “Side Windows” on page 25.

Click the **Palette Options**  button at the bottom of the palette to select how the tools within it are presented:

- Select **Fit Palette**  to resize the palette so that it is one row wide.
- Select **Grid View**  to display only the button icons of the child tools in a grid that may have multiple rows, depending on the width of the palette side window.
- Select **List View**  to display child tools in a vertical list with each tool’s button icon and name in a row.

As long as it is open, the Child Tool Palette will also display the members of a selected tool’s family when the Drop Down interface is active. If you select a tool that does not belong to a family, the previously selected tool’s family will continue to display in the Tool Palette.

Moving Toolbars



You can move any toolbar to a different location by clicking and dragging its dotted grab bar. Toolbars can be docked to any side of the program window, or they can be undocked and left floating.

Undocked toolbars can be moved outside of the program window, and they can be closed completely. They can also be reshaped; however, they cannot be resized in such a manner that any buttons become hidden.


The location of moved toolbars is not saved between program sessions. The next time you use Home Designer Suite, the toolbars will be back in their original locations.

Hotkeys

Many Home Designer Suite tools have a keyboard shortcut, or hotkey, associated with them. If such a hotkey exists, it will display to the right of the tool's name in the menu.

Edit	Build	Terrain	Library	3D	CAD
 Undo					Ctrl+Z
 Redo					Ctrl+Y

Edit menu items with button icons to the left and hotkeys to the right

To use a hotkey, simply press the appropriate key or combination of keys on your keyboard instead of selecting the menu item or clicking the toolbar button. For example, press the Ctrl and Z keys at the same time to perform an **Undo** .

Layers

Layers are used to organize and manage the display of all objects in all views. A layer can be thought of as a transparency sheet with objects placed on it for viewing. Nearly all views use multiple layers, like a stack of transparencies put together to show different types of objects.

You can customize how each layer displays in a particular view in the **Display Options** dialog.

Multiple layers are organized into Layer Sets, which allow you to control which objects display in different views.

Chapter Contents

- Displaying Objects
- Layer Sets
- Display Options Dialog

Displaying Objects

The display of objects in different views is controlled by layer sets and layers in the **Display Options** dialog. See “Display Options Dialog” on page 75.

Primary and Secondary Layers

Every object is placed on a layer which controls whether it displays in a given view. This layer is referred to as the object’s primary layer.

In addition, some objects have secondary layers which may alter the appearance of objects on the primary layer, but do not control whether the objects display or not.

For example, the primary layer for base cabinets is “Cabinets, Base”. In addition, base cabinets have a number of secondary layers that control the display of the countertop, face indicators, door opening indicators, module lines and labels.

Note: If an object’s primary layer is turned off, information on its secondary layers will not display - even if those layers are turned on.

All layers with a check in the “Disp.” column display when the current layer set is active.

Objects that are not displayed cannot be seen or selected. If you try to place or draw an object on a layer that is hidden, the program asks if you want to turn the layer on.

Name	Disp
Architectural Blocks	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Architectural Blocks, Labels	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Audio/Video	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Auto Dormers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Cabinets, Base	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Some objects cannot stand alone in a drawing: they can only be inserted into another object. If the display of an object that contains an inserted object is turned off, the display of the inserted object will be turned off, as well. For example, if the display of a wall is turned off, any doors and windows in that wall will not display either. See “Inserted Objects” on page 355.

The **Color** attribute assigned to a layer determines how the lines representing objects on that layer appear in floor plan and Elevation views.

Many objects, including CAD and text objects, allow you to override the line color without changing the layer’s color attribute.

Layer Sets

Layer Sets are used to control the layer settings for different views in a plan file.

A layer set consists of a complete list of the layers in the current plan along with the

display settings for each layer as set for a particular type of view. These display settings can be modified, and can be different for each type of view. See “Display Options Dialog” on page 75.


Layer sets are file specific, which means that changes made in one plan file have no effect on the settings in other files.

Home Designer Suite uses a different layer set for the each type of view of your plan:

- Floor plan view.
- Camera views and Overviews. See “3D View Tools” on page 383.
- Elevation views. See “Elevation Views” on page 385.
- Framing Overviews. See “Framing Overview” on page 385.
- Reference Floor. See “The Reference Floor” on page 205.

- Print Model. See “Print Model” on page 487.

While any view is active, select **Tools>**

Display Options  to make changes to the layer set used for that view type.

Any changes made to settings in the **Display Options** dialog for one particular view will affect all views using that same layer set. For example, if you make changes for a camera view, all camera views and overviews in the current plan will be affected. See “Display Options Dialog” on page 75.

Unlike other layer sets, the Print Model layer set cannot be modified.

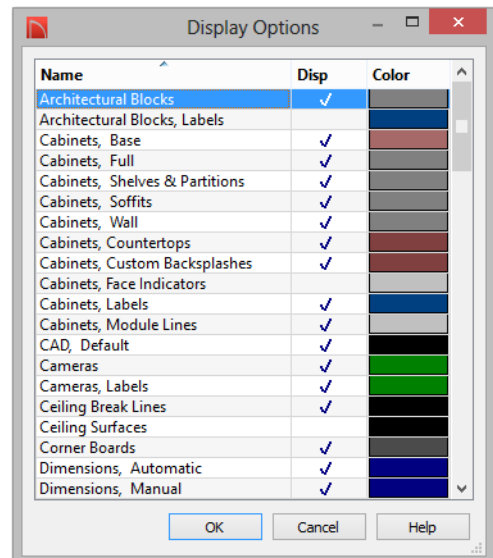
Display Options Dialog



The display of objects in all views is controlled in the **Display Options** dialog. To make changes to the display settings for a particular type of view, open a view of that type and select **Tools> Display Options**.

If the display of a particular layer is turned off and an object assigned to that layer is placed in the plan, the program will automatically ask you if the layer should be turned on so that the new object will be visible. After you make your choice, the object will be created - even if you select “No.”

Only displayed objects are included when DXF and EMF files are exported, and only displayed objects print.



- Remove the check from the “Disp.” column to turn off the display of a category of objects.

- Click a color bar to open the **Select Color** dialog and set the display color for objects on that layer in floor plan and Elevation views. See “Select Color Dialog” on page 370.
- Click on a column header to sort all layers by that column. Click again to sort in reverse order.
- Click the size grip at the lower right corner and drag to resize the dialog box.

Note: Not all objects display in all views. For instance, invisible walls do not appear in camera views or materials lists.

Creating Objects

There are a wide variety of objects in Home Designer Suite that you can use to create 3D models and plan drawings. Although these objects are sometimes very different from one another, the methods used to create them are similar.

Once an object is created, it can be selected and edited to meet the requirements of your project. The editing characteristics common to most objects are described elsewhere. See “Editing Objects” on page 85.

Chapter Contents

- Architectural vs CAD Objects
- Snap Behaviors
- Object Snaps
- Angle Snaps
- Grid Snaps
- Creating Objects
- Copying and Pasting Objects

Architectural vs CAD Objects

There are two broad categories of objects in Home Designer Suite: architectural objects and CAD objects.



CAD objects such as lines, arcs, text, and dimensions are 2D objects that can be created and edited in floor plan view and but do not display in 3D camera views and overviews. See “The CAD Drawing Tools” on page 431.


In contrast, architectural objects such as walls, cabinets, doors, windows, and stairs display in 2D and 3D views.

Some architectural objects, such as terrain features, have some behaviors in common with CAD objects and are referred to as CAD-based.

Snap Behaviors

There are three categories of snap behavior in Home Designer Suite that affect how objects are created and how they can be edited:

- **Object Snaps** , which snap CAD and architectural objects to other objects.
- **Angle Snaps** , which snap objects at specific angles.

- **Grid Snaps** , which snap objects to points on a grid.

You can select **Edit> Snap Settings** to quickly turn Object, Angle and Grid Snaps on or off.

To temporarily disable Snap Behaviors and other move restrictions, press the Ctrl key while dragging an edit handle. See “Moving Objects” on page 106.

Object Snaps

Object Snaps allow you to position objects precisely relative to each other; for example, to position lines so that their endpoints meet.

Object Snaps can be turned on or off by selecting **Edit> Snap Settings> Object Snaps**.

There are many locations on an object that other objects can snap to.

- Object endpoints and corners
- The midpoints of object edges

- Object center points
- Intersection points where an object drawn at an allowed angle meets another object.

In addition, **On Object** snapping occurs anywhere on an object’s edges and is most noticeable when Angle and Grid Snaps are turned off.

When multiple objects are selected, the selection set’s only snap point is its midpoint.

Extension Snaps

Extension snaps allow you to snap to a point that is not actually on an object. Instead, these snaps locate points that are either colinear to the end of a wall or orthogonal (at a 90° angle) to it.



Extension snaps function when you are drawing or editing walls and create a “sticky point” where the wall being drawn reaches a point that is either colinear or orthogonal to another wall’s end point. See “Drawing Walls” on page 122.

Angle Snaps



It is often important that objects be drawn at exact angles. This can be accomplished using **Angle Snaps**. Angle Snaps allow you to draw walls, lines, and other objects at angles in 7.5° increments. Angle Snaps also affect the way objects rotate, the radius of arcs, and a variety of other operations.

Angle Snaps can be turned on or off by selecting **Edit> Snap Settings> Angle**


Snaps . When Angle Snaps are disabled, the Angle Snaps  icon will display near the mouse pointer.


Grid Snaps



Grid Snaps allow you to snap objects to points on an on-screen grid. This grid cannot be seen directly, but as you draw, move or resize an object, you can sometimes see it snapping at regular increments. The size of this Snap Grid can be controlled in the **Plan Defaults** dialog. See “General Plan Defaults Dialog” on page 57.

It is recommended that you draw and position the exterior walls of your plan with

Grid Snaps  enabled. Once these walls are in place, you may choose to turn Grid Snaps off to finish the rest of the drawing.

Grid Snaps are turned on and off by selecting **Edit> Snap Settings>Grid Snaps**  or in the **Plan Defaults** dialog.

In addition to the Snap Grid, the **Reference Grid** is provided to give you a visual sense of scale. The Reference Grid is composed of 12” x 12” squares and is useful for zooming in and out, or for general layout guidelines, but is not used for snapping. The Reference Grid can be toggled on and off by selecting **View> Reference Grid**. See “View Tools” on page 374.

Grid Snaps and Angle Snaps

Of the three snap behaviors, Grid Snaps have the lowest priority and are overridden by Angle Snaps and Object Snaps.

When Grid snaps and Angle Snaps are both enabled, objects are drawn and edited using Polar Coordinates. For example, if the grid **Snap Unit** is set to 12" (1 foot), drawing a

new wall at an Allowed Angle snaps the wall length to 0", 12", 24", and so on.



To draw a line or wall at an Allowed Angle but with unrestricted length, disable Grid Snaps and leave Angle Snaps on.

Creating Objects

In Home Designer Suite, there are three ways to create objects: by clicking to place an object, by clicking and dragging to draw an object, or by importing custom symbols, pictures or metafiles.

If you create an object using any of these methods and the layer it will go on is turned off, the program will ask you if you want to display the layer. See “Object Creation and Layers” on page 81.

While the size of the drawing area in Home Designer Suite is limited only by the resources on your computer, it is best to begin your drawing near the origin, 0,0,0. The current position of your mouse pointer displays in the Status Bar at the bottom of the program window. See “3D Drafting” on page 21.

Click-to-Create


Many objects, including doors and windows, cabinets, library symbols, terrain objects, text, pictures and images are created by clicking. Select a or library object, then click in the drawing area to place the object at that location.

Continue clicking to place the selected object until another tool is selected.

If you click at a location where there is not enough room for the object to be placed, one of two things may happen:

- Some objects, notably cabinets, doors, and windows, will resize smaller to fit into the space.
- Most objects cannot resize in this manner, so the program will present a warning message indicating that there is not sufficient space at the current location.

When most drawing tools are active or library symbols selected for placement, a preview outline follows your mouse pointer, indicating the size and shape of the object to be created. If your pointer is positioned at a location where the object cannot be placed, this preview outline will not display.

As you move the mouse pointer, the center point of the object’s back edge will snap to active snap points when **Grid Snaps**  or **Object Snaps** are enabled. See “Snap Behaviors” on page 78.

Many architectural objects can be created in floor plan view or any 3D view. In order to place a stand-alone, click-to-create object in 3D, it is necessary to click near a wall or within the Terrain Perimeter as these objects help orient the new object within the 3D space.

Clicking and Dragging

Other objects, including walls and railings, straight stairs, and CAD and CAD-based objects are created by clicking and dragging

to define either a path or an enclosed area. Select a tool, then click and drag in the drawing area to draw an object between your start and end points.

Continue drawing the selected object until another tool is selected.

You can temporarily slow the movement of the mouse as you drag by holding down the Shift key on your keyboard..

You can cancel any click-and-drag drawing operation before it is completed by pressing the Esc key on your keyboard, or by pressing any two mouse buttons at the same time.

Importing Objects

Custom symbols, pictures and metafiles can be imported into the program and placed in the drawing area with a click. See “Importing

and Exporting” on page 469 and “Pictures, Images, and Walkthroughs” on page 449.

Object Creation and Layers


When it is created, every object is placed on a layer which controls whether and how it displays. See “Layers” on page 73.

If you try to create an object on a layer that is not set to display in the current view, the program will ask if you want to turn that layer on. See “Message Boxes” on page 30.

- Click **Yes** to create the object and turn on its layer in the current view.
- Click **No** to create the object but leave its layer turned off in the current view.
- Click **Cancel** to not create the object and leave the layer turned off.

Copying and Pasting Objects

New objects can also be created by cutting, copying, and pasting existing objects, either individually or in groups. Objects can be copied from one floor to another, one view window to another, and one file to another. Because copying uses the Windows Clipboard, some objects can be pasted into other applications, as well.

 Objects created in an Imperial plan should not be pasted into a metric file, or vice versa. See “Template Plans” on page 40.

Objects cannot be pasted into any views that they cannot be created in normally. For example, CAD objects cannot be pasted into a 3D camera view or overview.

A few objects, such as Terrain Perimeters and camera symbols, cannot be copied.

Cut



Select **Edit> Cut** to remove the selected object(s) from the file and save them in the Windows Clipboard. To paste the selection in Home Designer Suite or another application, select **Edit> Paste** or press **Ctrl + V** while in that application to enable the Paste function.

Copy



Select **Edit> Copy** to copy the selected object(s) to the Windows Clipboard. To paste the selection in Home

Designer Suite or another application, select **Edit> Paste** or press **Ctrl + V** while in that application to enable the Paste function.

Paste




Select **Edit> Paste** to enable Paste mode, then left- or right-click in the current view to paste the selected object(s) previously copied to the Windows Clipboard at that location.


Once pasted, these object(s) are selected. Objects pasted in 3D views are selected on their top surfaces.



If the selection being pasted consists of text, it is placed in a Text object.

Copy/Paste




Click the **Copy/Paste** edit button to copy the selected object(s) to the Windows Clipboard and immediately enable the **Paste**  function in Home Designer Suite.



The **Copy/Paste**  edit button activates Paste mode in which each available edit tool and handle makes a copy in addition to its primary function and four new edit buttons display on the edit toolbar.

- Click the **Sticky Mode**  edit button remain in the current mode and place multiple copies of the selected object(s).
- Click the **Main Edit Mode**  edit button or press the Esc key to return to the selected objects's main edit toolbar.



If you paste a selection in a file other than its original source file, when you return to the original, Paste mode is still enabled.

The **Copy/Paste**  edit button can be used with the edit handles in either of two ways: by clicking or by dragging an edit handle.

To Copy/Paste by clicking

1. Select an object or objects to copy.
2. Click the **Copy/Paste**  edit button, select **Edit> Copy**  from the menu or press **Ctrl + C** to copy and then **Ctrl + V** to activate the Paste functionality. The cursor displays the Copy/Paste icon.
3. If you wish to paste the copy in a different view or program window, open that window.
4. If your cursor does not display the Copy/Paste icon, select **Edit> Paste** from the menu or press **Ctrl + V**.
5. Left- or right-click once to paste a copy of the object at that location.

To Copy/Paste by dragging




1. Select an object or objects to copy.
2. Click the **Copy/Paste**  edit button, select **Edit> Copy**  from the menu or press **Ctrl + C**. The cursor displays the Copy/Paste icon.
3. Drag an edit handle:
 - Drag the Move edit handle to position the copy at a new location.
4. You can position the copy accurately with respect to the original by watching the moved distance in the Status Bar at the bottom of the screen.

Sticky Mode



Normally, after an action is performed using the edit tools or handles while in an edit mode such as Paste mode, you return to the Main Edit Mode. Click the **Sticky Mode** edit button to remain in Paste mode and continue pasting copies of the selected object(s).

To exit Paste mode and return to the main edit toolbar for the selected object, click the


Main Edit Mode  edit button or press the Esc key on your keyboard. If you have not pasted a copy of the selected object and immediately click **Copy/Paste**  after returning to the Main Edit Mode, **Sticky Mode**  is still enabled.

Copy and Paste in Place



Click the **Copy and Paste in Place** edit button to create a copy of the selected object(s) at the same location as the original. The copy remains selected so you can perform additional operations.

Because multiple walls, railing and fencing cannot share the same space, the **Copy and**

Paste in Place  edit button is not available for these objects.



Paste Hold Position



When copying between different floors or view windows, you can paste a copy at the same absolute position as the original selection using **Paste Hold Position**.

To use Paste Hold Position

1. Select the object(s) to be copied.

2. Click the **Copy/Paste**  edit button.
3. Switch to the desired floor or plan file and select **Edit> Paste> Paste Hold Position** .
4. A copy is placed at the same X, Y coordinates on the new floor or in the new plan as the original's position.

Paste Special




The **Paste Special** tool allows you to choose a representation for the selection to be pasted.

Selections can be pasted as:

- Enhanced Windows Metafiles (EMF). See “Metafiles” on page 455.
- Device Independent Bitmaps (BMP). See “Importing Pictures” on page 454.
- Unformatted non-unicode text (TXT).
- File Name (a path to a file). Depending on the file type, it will be either opened or imported (if supported).
- Unformatted text (HTML). Pastes as text.
- Model Objects - Home Designer Suite format, not compatible with other programs.

To use Paste Special

1. Select an object, image, text or file on your computer and copy it.
2. Switch to the desired Home Designer Suite view window and select **Edit> Paste> Paste Special** .
3. In the **Paste Special** dialog, select the desired representation for the selection and click OK.

4. Click in the drawing area to place the copy at that location.

screen and save it as a picture. See “Copy Region as Picture” on page 459.

Copy Region as Picture



The **Copy Region as Picture** tool allows you to copy any portion of the

Editing Objects

Just as the methods used to create different objects in Home Designer Suite are similar, the options for moving, rotating, resizing, and otherwise editing them are also alike.

Edit handles allow objects to be resized, relocated, or rotated using the mouse. Edit toolbar buttons and the contextual menus access edit tools relevant to the selected object(s). Most objects have a specification dialog that allows you to edit it in ways that are specific to that type of object.

The editing characteristics common to most objects are described in this chapter. Unique, object-specific editing behaviors and the specification dialogs are covered in their respective chapters.

Chapter Contents

- Selecting Objects
- Editing Line Based Objects
- Editing Arc Based Objects
- Editing Open Polyline Based Objects
- Editing Closed-Polyline Based Objects
- Editing Box-Based Objects
- Editing Spline Based Objects
- Editing Circles, Ovals and Ellipses
- Displaying Objects
- Moving Objects
- Aligning Objects
- Resizing Objects
- Reshaping Objects
- Rotating Objects
- Deleting Objects
- Undo and Redo

Selecting Objects

“Select” refers to selecting an object for editing. An object must be selected before it can be edited.

In order for an object to be selected, it must be visible in the current view. See “Layers” on page 73.

When an object is selected, it displays edit handles and a grey selection fill color. In 3D views, a selected object will also display lines representing the selected edge or surface. The size of the edit handles does not change as you zoom in or out. To prevent them from stacking on one another, some edit handles may not display as you zoom away from the selected object.

When an object is selected, its edit toolbar also displays, typically on the upper left side of the Home Designer Suite program window. See “The Edit Toolbar” on page 26.

Information about the selected object or objects may also display in the Status Bar. See “The Status Bar” on page 30.

A selected object remains selected until another object is selected, a different tool is activated, the Esc key on the keyboard is pressed, or any two mouse buttons are pressed at the same time.



Select Objects



Any object created using Home Designer Suite can be selected using the **Select Objects** tool. Select **Edit> Select Objects**, click the toolbar button or press the **Space** bar on your keyboard to activate this tool, then click on an object to select it.

You can also select objects or open context sensitive menus using the right mouse button when any tool is active.

Selecting Similar Objects

If a tool other than **Select Objects**  is active, you can only select objects of that type using the left mouse button. For example, if the **Straight Exterior Wall**  tool is active, you can only select walls using the left mouse button.

This can be useful for selecting an object when many objects of a different type occupy the same space in floor plan view.

Objects can be selected using the right mouse button, regardless of which tool is active.

Right-Clicking

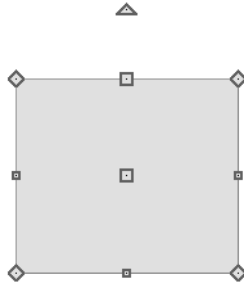
Regardless of which tool is active, you can select an eligible object by right-clicking on it once. When you right-click to select an object a contextual menu also appears, displaying the object’s edit tools. See “Contextual Menus” on page 27.

If a drawing tool is active and you right-click to select an object, you can unselect it by left-clicking in an empty space in the drawing area. Although a drawing tool is active, it is not used. If you then left-click a second time, the active tool will be used.

Selected Edge

When you click on a polyline- or box-based object, the edge that you click nearest becomes the selected edge and displays an

edit handle larger than those on other edges. The handle on this edge may also display at the point where you clicked to select it.




This edge can be edited on the Selected Line or Selected Arc panel of the object's specification dialog. See "Moving Objects Using Dimensions" on page 414, "Line Panel" on page 434 and "Arc Panel" on page 436.

Select Next Object




If there is more than one object in a particular space, it may be difficult to select the desired object. When a nearby object is selected, click the **Select Next Object** edit button or press the Tab key until the desired object becomes selected. This function cannot be applied to groups of selected objects.

Marquee Select

Groups of objects can be selected by holding down either the Shift or Ctrl key when the **Select Objects**  tool is active and then dragging a marquee around the objects to be selected. An object does not need to be completely enclosed by the marquee to be selected: it will be selected if the marquee includes only a small portion of it.

If an object is currently selected and a selection marquee is drawn around it, that object becomes de-selected. If an object is currently selected and a marquee is drawn around other objects, the original object remains selected and the other objects are added to the selection set.

When using the marquee-select method, both CAD and architectural objects included in the marquee are selected. To remove an object from the selection set, hold down the Shift key and click it.

The Shift key can also be used to marquee-select objects of a similar type. For example, click the **Hinged Door**  child button, hold down the Shift key, drag a marquee, release the mouse button, and only door objects within the marquee are selected. The Ctrl key will always marquee-select objects of all types, regardless of the active tool.



To make marquee selection easier, you can turn off the display of objects you do not want to include in your selection set. See "Displaying Objects" on page 74.

Shift and Ctrl Select

You can select a group of objects by adding them to the selection set one by one. Select an object, hold down either the Shift or Ctrl key, and click additional objects to select them.

More than one type of object can be selected using this method, but the ability to edit the group-selected items is limited to attributes that all selected objects have in common.

To remove an object from a selection set, click it once more - again, with either the Shift or Ctrl key pressed.

The Shift and Ctrl keys can be used to select multiple items in a variety of contexts, such as: the Library and Project Browsers, lists in dialog boxes, and files to be imported.

Edit Area



The **Edit Area** tool allows you to quickly define an area of your plan and select the objects in that area. Once selected, they can then be repositioned, rotated, or deleted. Select **Edit> Edit Area**,

then click and drag a rectangular marquee around the area that you would like to move.

Unlike other selection methods, the **Edit Area** tool cuts walls, railings and fencing where the selection marquee intersects them, allowing you to edit only the selected portion of these objects.

Some objects, such as cabinets, are included in the selection only if more than half of the object is contained within the marquee.

Editing Line Based Objects

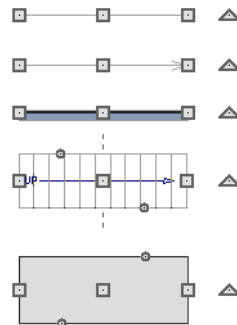
Objects are considered line-based when they can be edited similar to CAD lines using their edit handles.

CAD lines, straight walls and railings, straight stairs and straight roads are examples of line-based objects.

Most line-based objects can be connected to other like objects to form polylines or polyline-based objects. See “Editing Open Polyline Based Objects” on page 93 and “Editing Closed-Polyline Based Objects” on page 96.

Some objects, notably walls, have line-based editing behavior only when selected on certain surfaces. See “Editing Walls” on page 127.

Wall openings such as doors and windows have line-based editing behavior in floor plan view only but cannot be rotated, reversed or converted to an arc. See “Editing Doors” on page 165 and “Editing Windows” on page 183.

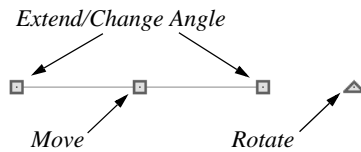


Other objects, such as stairs and roads, have additional edit handles that allow you to concentrically adjust the object’s width.

Using the Edit Handles

When selected, a typical line-based object displays four edit handles.

Any action performed using the edit handles can be cancelled by pressing the Esc key or any two mouse buttons at the same time.




Move

- Movement may be limited or stopped by other objects or Snap Behaviors. Move restrictions can be overridden by holding down the Ctrl key while dragging. See “Unrestricted Movement” on page 106.

Rotate

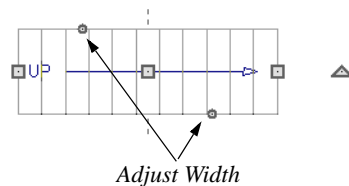
- The **Rotate** handle is used to rotate the object about its center. See “Rotating Objects” on page 110.

Extend/Change Angle

- Drag an end handle parallel to the selected line to change its length.
- Drag an end handle at an angle to the selected line to change its angle. When **Angle Snaps**  are on, the line snaps to Allowed Angles. See “Angle Snaps” on page 79.

Adjust Width

Some line-based objects, such as stairs and roads, have additional handles that allow the width of the object to be adjusted.



- Click and drag a small, round **Expand** handle to increase or decrease the

object’s width. By default, objects are resized in 1" increments. This Snap Unit is defined in the **Plan Defaults** dialog. See “General Plan Defaults Dialog” on page 57.

Using Dimensions



Dimensions can be used to position line-based objects relative to other objects. See “Moving Objects Using Dimensions” on page 414.

Dimensions cannot, however, be used to adjust the length of line-based objects, or the width of line-based objects such as stairs.

Using the Specification Dialog












Line-based objects can be edited using their specification dialogs. See “Line Specification Dialog” on page 434.

Using the Edit Toolbar

A selected line-based object can be edited in a variety of ways using the buttons on the edit toolbar.

The following toolbar buttons may display on the edit toolbar for a selected line-based object:

- Click the **Select Next Object**  edit button to select nearby objects instead of the selected object. See “Selecting Objects” on page 86.
- Click the **Open Object**  edit button to open the specification dialog for the selected object(s). See “Specification Dialogs” on page 29.

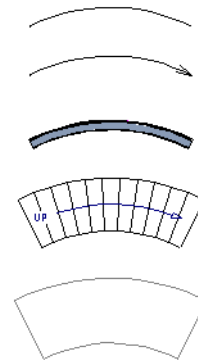
- Click the **Copy/Paste**  edit button to copy the selected object(s) to the Windows Clipboard so they can be pasted elsewhere. See “Copying and Pasting Objects” on page 81.
- Click the **Copy and Paste in Place**  edit button to create a copy of the selected object(s) at the same location as the original. See “Copy and Paste in Place” on page 83.
- Click the **Delete**  edit button to delete the selected object(s). See “Deleting Objects” on page 111.
- Click the **Center Object**  edit button to center an object along a wall within a room or relative to a cabinet fixture. See “Using Center Object” on page 107.
- Click the **Move to Front of Group**  edit button to display the selected object in front of other objects in the same drawing group. See “Move to Front of Group” on page 105.
- Click the **Break Line**  edit button to add a new corner or pivot point to the selected object. See “Break Line” on page 109.
- Click the **Change Line/Arc**  edit button to change a line-based object to an arc, or vice versa. See “Change Line/Arc” on page 110.

Editing Arc Based Objects

Objects are considered arc-based when they can be edited similar to CAD arcs using their edit handles.

CAD arcs, curved walls and railings, curved stairs, and curved roads are examples of arc-based objects.

Most arc-based objects can be connected to other like objects to form polylines or polyline-based objects. See “Editing Open Polyline Based Objects” on page 93 and “Editing Closed-Polyline Based Objects” on page 96.



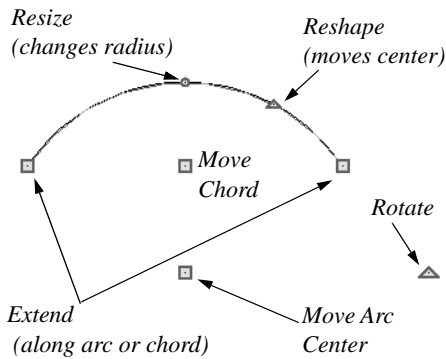
Some objects, notably curved walls, have arc-based editing behavior only when selected on certain surfaces. See “Editing Walls” on page 127.

Other objects, such as curved stairs and roads, have additional edit handles that allow you to concentrically adjust the object's width.

Using the Edit Handles

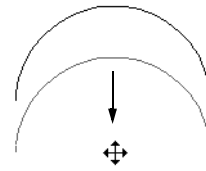
When selected, a typical arc-based object displays seven edit handles.

Any action performed using the edit handles can be cancelled by pressing the Esc key or any two mouse buttons at the same time.



Move

- Two Move edit handles allow the arc to be relocated without changing its shape. One is located at the center of the chord and the other, at the arc center.
- Movement may be limited or stopped by other objects or Snap Behaviors. Move restrictions can be overridden by holding down the Ctrl key while dragging. See “Unrestricted Movement” on page 106.




Move edit handle

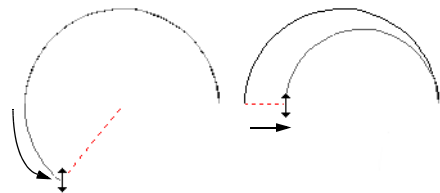
Rotate

- The **Rotate** handle is used to rotate the arc about its center. See “Rotating Objects” on page 110.

Extend

- The end edit handles expand or contract the arc when moved along the arc radius or chord.
- If you follow the path of the arc, the end edit handles allow you to adjust the arc length.
- The angle formed by the center point of the arc and its two endpoints is referred to as the Included Angle. If **Angle**

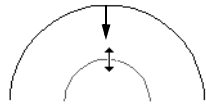
Snaps  are on, the Included Angle of the arc can be rotated at Allowed Angles. See “Angle Snaps” on page 79.



Extend edit handles

Resize

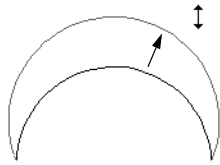
- Drag the small, round **Resize** edit handle to change the radius and included angle of the arc while maintaining its center.



Resize edit handle

Reshape

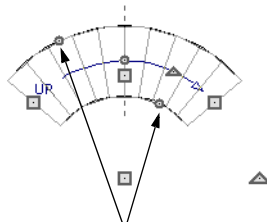
- Drag the small triangular **Reshape** handle to change the length and location of the center without moving the endpoints.



Reshape edit handle

Adjust Width

Some arc-based objects, such as stairs, have additional handles that allow the width of the object to be adjusted.



Adjust Width

- Click and drag a small, round edit handle to increase or decrease the object's width. By default, objects are resized according to the Snap Unit defined in the **Plan Defaults** dialog. See "General Plan Defaults Dialog" on page 57.

Using Dimensions



Dimensions can be used to position arc-based objects. Dimension lines typically locate tangent extension lines and any extension lines that may be parallel to those lines rather than the arc itself. See "Moving Objects Using Dimensions" on page 414.

Using the Specification Dialog












Arc-based objects can be edited using their specification dialogs. See "Arc Specification Dialog" on page 436.

Using the Edit Toolbar

A selected arc-based object can be edited in a variety of ways using the buttons on the edit toolbar.

The following toolbar buttons may display on the edit toolbar for a selected arc-based object:

- Click the **Select Next Object**  edit button to select nearby objects instead of the selected object. See "Selecting Objects" on page 86.
- Click the **Open Object**  edit button to open the specification dialog for the selected object(s). See "Specification Dialogs" on page 29.
- Click the **Copy/Paste**  edit button to copy the selected object(s) to the Windows Clipboard so they can be pasted elsewhere. See "Copying and Pasting Objects" on page 81.

- Click the **Copy and Paste in Place**  edit button to create a copy of the selected object(s) at the same location as the original. See “Copy and Paste in Place” on page 83.
- Click the **Delete**  edit button to delete the selected object(s). See “Deleting Objects” on page 111.
- Click the **Center Object**  edit button to center an object along along a wall within a room or relative to a cabinet fixture. See “Using Center Object” on page 107.
- Click the **Move to Front of Group**  edit button to display the selected object in front of other objects in the same drawing group. See “Move to Front of Group” on page 105.
- Click the **Break Line**  edit button to add a new corner or pivot point to the selected object. See “Break Line” on page 109.
- Click the **Change Line/Arc**  edit button to change an arc-based object to a line, or vice versa. See “Change Line/Arc” on page 110.

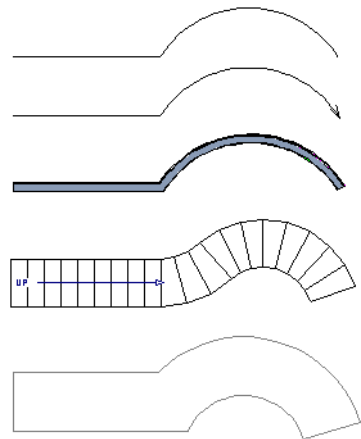
Editing Open Polyline Based Objects

Open polyline-based objects are composed of individual line- and arc-based objects that are connected at their end points but do not form an enclosed area. See “Polylines” on page 438.

Objects are considered open polyline-based when they can be edited similar to open CAD polylines using their edit handles.

Open CAD polylines, connected walls, stairs, and roads are examples of open polyline-based objects.

For information about editing closed polyline-based objects, see “Editing Closed-Polyline Based Objects” on page 96.



Other objects, such as connected stair and road segments, have additional edit handles that allow you to concentrically adjust the width of all segments of the object.

Using the Edit Handles

A polyline can be composed of many segments. See “Polylines” on page 438.

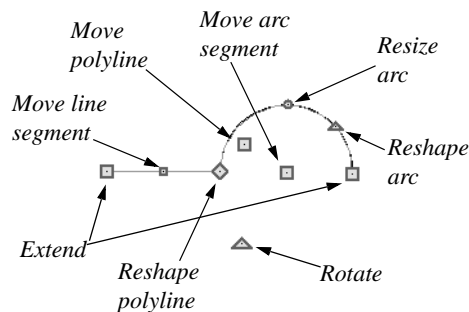
When selected, an open polyline-based object displays a Move handle, a Rotate handle, a Reshape handle at the intersection of each segment, and an Extend handle at each end.

Each straight, line-based segment also has a Move edit handle along its length.

Each curved, arc-based segment has its own Move handle at the center of its chord, a Resize handle and, if it has an unlocked center, a Reshape handle. See “Editing Arc Based Objects” on page 90.

When a polyline is selected, the edge that you click nearest is called the selected edge, and certain operations affect only this edge. The Move handle of the selected edge is larger than that of other edges. It displays along the length of a line segment, or at the center of the chord on an arc segment. See “Selected Edge” on page 86.

Any action performed using the edit handles can be cancelled by pressing the Esc key or any two mouse buttons at the same time.



Move

- Click and drag the Move handle to move the object.
- Movement may be limited or stopped by other objects or Snap Behaviors. Move restrictions can be overridden by holding down the Ctrl key while dragging. See “Unrestricted Movement” on page 106.

Rotate

- The **Rotate** handle is used to rotate the object about its center. Its position varies depending on which edge is currently selected. See “Rotating Objects” on page 110.

Extend

- Click and drag an Extend handle to lengthen or shorten the unconnected end of the selected line or arc segment, or to change the radius of the selected arc. See “Editing Arc Based Objects” on page 90.

Reshape

- Click and drag a Reshape edit handle to change the angle and/or length of the segments on either side of it, or the size of the object.

Move Line Segment

- The **Move Line Segment** edit handle is found on straight segments of open polylines and moves the straight section perpendicular to itself. Adjacent segments may extend or contract in their original directions to maintain their connections.

Move Arc

- Click and drag the Move Arc edit handle to change the radius and/or chord length or position. Adjacent segments may

extend, contract, or change angle to maintain their connections.

Resize Arc

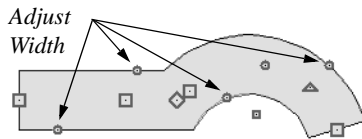
- Click and drag the Resize Arc edit handle to change the radius, chord length and chord position of the arc segment. Adjacent segments may extend, contract, or change angle to maintain their connections.

Reshape Arc

- Click and drag the Reshape Arc edit handle to change the radius of the arc without moving its end points.


Adjust Width

Some arc-based objects, such as stairs and roads, have additional handles that allow the width of the object to be adjusted.




- Click and drag a small, round edit handle to increase or decrease the object's width. By default, objects are resized in 1" increments. This Snap Unit is defined in the **Plan Defaults** dialog. See "General Plan Defaults Dialog" on page 57.

Using Dimensions

 Dimensions can be used to move or reshape polyline-based objects. See "Moving Objects Using Dimensions" on page 414.






Using the Specification Dialog






 Open polyline-based objects can be edited using their specification dialogs. See "Polyline Specification Dialog" on page 438.

Using the Edit Toolbar

A selected open polyline-based object can be edited in a variety of ways using the buttons on the edit toolbar.

The following toolbar buttons may display on the edit toolbar for a selected open polyline-based object:

- Click the **Select Next Object**  edit button to select nearby objects instead of the selected object. See "Selecting Objects" on page 86.
- Click the **Open Object**  edit button to open the specification dialog for the selected object(s). See "Specification Dialogs" on page 29.
- Click the **Copy/Paste**  edit button to copy the selected object(s) to the Windows Clipboard so they can be pasted elsewhere. See "Copying and Pasting Objects" on page 81.
- Click the **Copy and Paste in Place**  edit button to create a copy of the selected object(s) at the same location as the original. See "Copy and Paste in Place" on page 83.
- Click the **Delete**  edit button to delete the selected object(s). See "Deleting Objects" on page 111.

- Click the **Center Object**  edit button to center an object along a wall within a room or relative to a cabinet fixture. See “Using Center Object” on page 107.
- Click the **Move to Front of Group**  edit button to display the selected object in front of other objects in the same drawing group. See “Move to Front of Group” on page 105.
- Click the **Break Line**  edit button to add a new corner or pivot point to the selected object. See “Break Line” on page 109.
- Click the **Change Line/Arc**  edit button to change a line-based polyline edge to an arc, or vice versa. See “Change Line/Arc” on page 110.
- Click the **Record Walkthrough Along Path**  edit button to record a walk-through video of your model along the path defined by the selected polyline. See “Walkthroughs” on page 462.

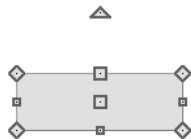
Editing Closed-Polyline Based Objects

Closed polyline-based objects are composed of individual line- and arc-based objects joined end-to-end and forming an enclosed area. See “Polylines” on page 438.

Objects are considered closed polyline-based when they can be edited similar to closed CAD polylines using their edit handles.

Closed CAD polylines and terrain features are examples of closed polyline-based objects.

For information about editing open polyline-based objects, see “Editing Open Polyline Based Objects” on page 93.



Some objects, such as connected road segments, have additional edit handles that

allow you to concentrically adjust the width of all segments of the object.

Using the Edit Handles

A polyline can be composed of many segments. See “Polylines” on page 438.

When selected, a closed polyline-based object displays a Move handle, a Rotate handle, and a Reshape handle at the intersection of each segment.

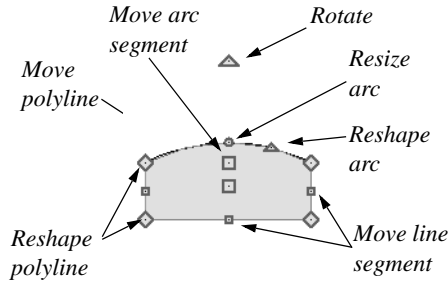
Each straight, line-based segment has a Move edit handle along its length.

Each curved, arc-based segment has its own Move handle at the center of its chord, a Resize handle and a Reshape handle. See “Editing Arc Based Objects” on page 90.

When a polyline is selected, the edge that you click nearest is called the selected edge, and certain operations affect only this edge. The Move handle of the selected edge is larger than that of other edges. It displays

along the length of a line segment, or at the center of the chord on an arc segment. See “Selected Edge” on page 86.

Any action performed using the edit handles can be cancelled by pressing the Esc key or any two mouse buttons at the same time.



Move

- Click and drag the Move handle to move the object.
- Movement may be limited or stopped by other objects or Snap Behaviors. Move restrictions can be overridden by holding down the Ctrl key while dragging. See “Unrestricted Movement” on page 106.

Rotate

- The **Rotate** handle is used to rotate the object about its center. Its position varies depending on which edge is currently selected. See “Rotating Objects” on page 110.

Reshape

- Click and drag a Reshape edit handle to change the angle and/or length of the segments on either side of it, or the size of the object.

Move Line Segment

- The **Move Line Segment** edit handle is found on straight segments of closed

polylines and moves the straight section perpendicular to itself. Adjacent segments may extend or contract in their original directions to maintain their connections.

Move Arc

- Click and drag the Move Arc edit handle to change the radius and/or chord length or position. Adjacent segments may extend, contract, or change angle to maintain their connections.

Resize Arc

- Click and drag the Resize Arc edit handle to change the radius, chord length and chord position of the arc segment. Adjacent segments may extend, contract, or change angle to maintain their connections.

Reshape Arc

- Click and drag the Reshape Arc edit handle to change the radius of the arc without moving its end points.

Using Dimensions



Dimensions can be used to move or reshape closed polyline-based objects. See “Moving Objects Using Dimensions” on page 414.

Using the Specification Dialog













Closed polyline-based objects can be edited using their specification dialogs. See “Polyline Specification Dialog” on page 438.

Using the Edit Toolbar

A selected closed polyline-based object can be edited in a variety of ways using the buttons on the edit toolbar.

The following toolbar buttons may display on the edit toolbar for a selected closed polyline-based object:

- Click the **Select Next Object**  edit button to select nearby objects instead of the selected object. See “Selecting Objects” on page 86.
- Click the **Open Object**  edit button to open the specification dialog for the selected object(s). See “Specification Dialogs” on page 29.
- Click the **Copy/Paste**  edit button to copy the selected object(s) to the Windows Clipboard so they can be pasted elsewhere. See “Copying and Pasting Objects” on page 81.
- Click the **Copy and Paste in Place**  edit button to create a copy of the selected object(s) at the same location as the original. See “Copy and Paste in Place” on page 83.
- Click the **Delete**  edit button to delete the selected object(s). See “Deleting Objects” on page 111.
- Click the **Center Object**  edit button to center an object along a wall within a room or relative to a cabinet fixture. See “Using Center Object” on page 107.
- Click the **Move to Front of Group**  edit button to display the selected object in front of other objects in the same drawing group. See “Move to Front of Group” on page 105.
- Click the **Break Line**  edit button to add a new corner or pivot point to the selected object. See “Break Line” on page 109.
- Click the **Change Line/Arc**  edit button to change a line-based polyline edge to an arc, or vice versa. See “Change Line/Arc” on page 110.
- Click the **Record Walkthrough Along Path**  edit button to record a walk-through video of your model along the path defined by the selected polyline. See “Walkthroughs” on page 462.

Editing Box-Based Objects

Objects are considered box-based when they can be edited similar to CAD boxes using their edit handles.

Box-based objects are similar to closed polyline-based objects, but must always have four sides with right-angled corners.

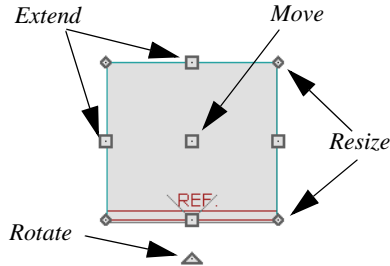
In addition to the CAD Box tools, Text objects, many library symbols, pictures and images are examples of box-based objects.

Using the Edit Handles

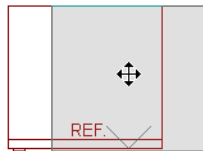
When selected, a box-based object displays ten edit handles. Unlike polylines, boxes

must always have four sides with right-angled corners.

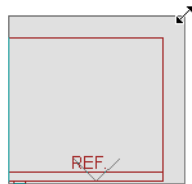
Any action performed using the edit handles can be cancelled by pressing the Esc key or any two mouse buttons at the same time.



- Click and drag the Move handle to move the object.
- Movement may be limited or stopped by other objects or Snap Behaviors. Move restrictions can be overridden by holding down the Ctrl key while dragging. See “Unrestricted Movement” on page 106.



- The four **Resize** handles located at each corner are used to increase or decrease the size of the object.

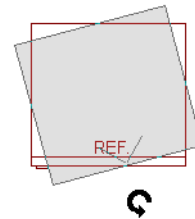


- The four **Extend** handles display along each edge. If you select an object on an

edge, the Extend handle displays at the point where you clicked; otherwise, it displays at the center of the edge.



- The triangular **Rotate** handle located near the selected edge of the object is used to rotate it about its center. The pointer changes to a circular arrow when moved over this handle. See “Rotating Objects” on page 110.



Using Dimensions



Dimensions can be used to move or reshape box-based objects. See “Moving Objects Using Dimensions” on page 414.

Using the Specification Dialog










Box-based objects can be edited using their specification dialogs. See “Box Specification Dialog” on page 440.

Using the Edit Toolbar

A selected closed polyline-based object can be edited in a variety of ways using the buttons on the edit toolbar.

The following toolbar buttons may display on the edit toolbar for a selected closed polyline-based object:

- Click the **Select Next Object**  edit button to select nearby objects instead of the selected object. See “Selecting Objects” on page 86.
- Click the **Open Object**  edit button to open the specification dialog for the selected object(s). See “Specification Dialogs” on page 29.
- Click the **Copy/Paste**  edit button to copy the selected object(s) to the Windows Clipboard so they can be pasted elsewhere. See “Copying and Pasting Objects” on page 81.
- Click the **Copy and Paste in Place**  edit button to create a copy of the selected object(s) at the same location as the original. See “Copy and Paste in Place” on page 83.
- Click the **Delete**  edit button to delete the selected object(s). See “Deleting Objects” on page 111.
- Click the **Center Object**  edit button to center an object along along a wall within a room or relative to a cabinet fixture. See “Using Center Object” on page 107.
- Click the **Move to Front of Group**  edit button to display the selected object in front of other objects in the same drawing group. See “Move to Front of Group” on page 105.

Editing Spline Based Objects

A Spline is a curve that passes smoothly through a set of points, or vertices. Splines are typically used in situations where an irregular, free-flowing curve is needed.

Objects are considered spline-based when they can be edited similar to CAD splines using their edit handles. See “Splines” on page 433.

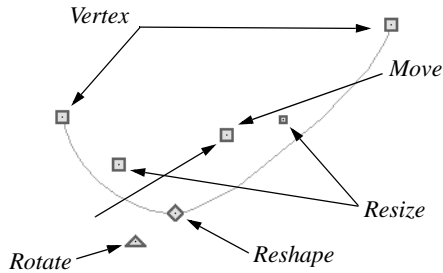
Sprinkler lines, spline terrain curbs, spline terrain walls and both round and kidney-shaped terrain features are spline-based objects. See “Terrain” on page 289.



Using the Edit Handles

When a spline is selected, several different types of handles display.

Any action performed using the edit handles can be cancelled by pressing the Esc key or any two mouse buttons at the same time.



Move

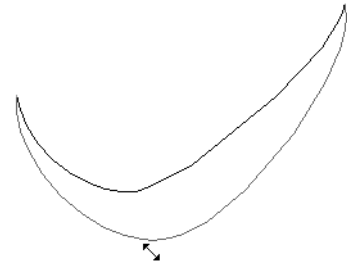
- Click and drag the Move handle to move the object.
- Movement may be limited or stopped by other objects or Snap Behaviors. Move restrictions can be overridden by holding down the Ctrl key while dragging. See “Unrestricted Movement” on page 106.

Rotate

- Click and drag the Rotate edit handle to rotate the entire spline.

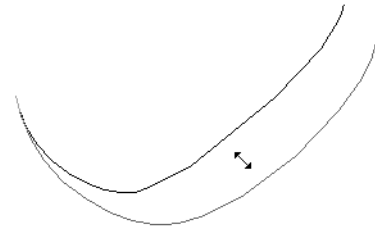
Reshape

- The Reshape edit handles display along the spline at each vertex. Click and drag a Reshape edit handle to change the length, angle and curve of adjacent segments without affecting other reshape handles.



Resize

- The Resize edit handles display along the spline, between each vertex. Click and drag a Resize edit handle to move the adjacent vertices and lengthen or shorten adjacent segments.



Using the Specification Dialog












Spline-based objects can be edited using their specification dialogs. See “Polyline Specification Dialog” on page 438.

Using the Edit Toolbar

A selected spline-based object can be edited in a variety of ways using the buttons on the edit toolbar.

The following toolbar buttons may display on the edit toolbar for a selected spline-based object:

- Click the **Select Next Object**  edit button to select nearby objects instead of the selected object. See “Selecting Objects” on page 86.
- Click the **Open Object**  edit button to open the specification dialog for the selected object(s). See “Polyline Specification Dialog” on page 438.
- Click the **Copy/Paste**  edit button to copy the selected object(s) to the Windows Clipboard so they can be pasted elsewhere. See “Copying and Pasting Objects” on page 81.
- Click the **Copy and Paste in Place**  edit button to create a copy of the selected object(s) at the same location as the original. See “Copy and Paste in Place” on page 83.
- Click the **Delete**  edit button to delete the selected object(s). See “Deleting Objects” on page 111.
- Click the **Center Object**  edit button to center an object along along a wall within a room or relative to a cabinet fixture. See “Using Center Object” on page 107.
- Click the **Move to Front of Group**  edit button to display the selected object in front of other objects in the same drawing group. See “Move to Front of Group” on page 105.
- Click the **Break Line**  edit button to add a new corner or pivot point to the selected object. See “Break Line” on page 109.
- Click the **Record Walkthrough Along Path**  edit button to record a walk-through video of your model along the path defined by the selected polyline. See “Walkthroughs” on page 462.


Editing Circles, Ovals and Ellipses

Objects created using the **Circle, Oval and Ellipse Tools** are unusual in that no architectural objects share their functionalities.

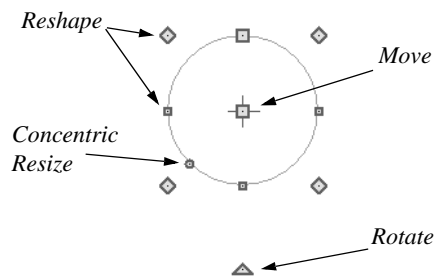
Using the Edit Handles

When selected, circles, ovals and ellipses display eleven edit handles.

Unlike **Ovals** , a

Circle  cannot be edited into any other shapes; it can only be a circle

Any action performed using the edit handles can be cancelled by pressing the Esc key or any two mouse buttons at the same time.

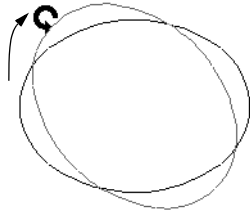


Move

- Click and drag the Move handle to move the object.
- Movement may be limited or stopped by other objects or Snap Behaviors. Move restrictions can be overridden by holding down the Ctrl key while dragging. See “Unrestricted Movement” on page 106.

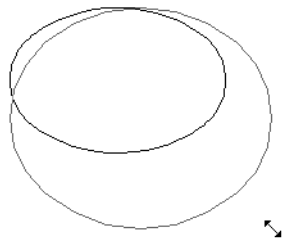
Rotate

- Click and drag the Rotate handle of an oval or ellipse to change its orientation.

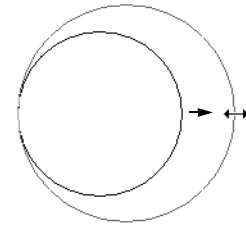


Reshape

- The eight edit handles beyond the perimeter are Reshape edit handles. Move them in or out to resize and reshape an oval or ellipse.

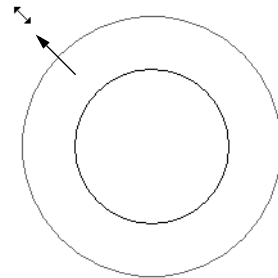


- Unlike ovals and ellipses, circles cannot be reshaped. When a Reshape handle is dragged on a circle, it is only resized.



Concentric Resize

- The Concentric Resize edit handle displays on the perimeter of a circle between a corner Reshape handle and the center. Click and drag this handle to resize the circle without moving its center point.



Using Dimensions



Dimensions can be used to move or resize circle-based objects. See “Moving Objects Using Dimensions” on page 414.

Using the Specification Dialog










Circles, ovals and ellipses can be edited using their specification dialogs. See “CAD Circle/Oval/Ellipse Specification Dialog” on page 437.

Using the Edit Toolbar

A selected circle, oval or ellipse can be edited in a variety of ways using the buttons on the edit toolbar.

The following toolbar buttons may display on the edit toolbar for a selected circle, oval or ellipse:

- Click the **Select Next Object**  edit button to select nearby objects instead of the selected object. See “Selecting Objects” on page 86.
- Click the **Open Object**  edit button to open the specification dialog for the selected object(s). See “Specification Dialogs” on page 29.
- Click the **Copy/Paste**  edit button to copy the selected object(s) to the Windows Clipboard so they can be pasted elsewhere. See “Copying and Pasting Objects” on page 81.
- Click the **Copy and Paste in Place**  edit button to create a copy of the selected object(s) at the same location as the original. See “Copy and Paste in Place” on page 83.
- Click the **Delete**  edit button to delete the selected object(s). See “Deleting Objects” on page 111.
- Click the **Center Object**  edit button to center an object along along a wall within a room or relative to a cabinet fixture. See “Using Center Object” on page 107.
- Click the **Move to Front of Group**  edit button to display the selected object in front of other objects in the same drawing group. See “Move to Front of Group” on page 105.

Displaying Objects


The display of objects in 2D and 3D views can be controlled by layer. See “Displaying Objects” on page 74.



Line and Fill Styles

Line style and color can be controlled by layer or overridden in the specification dialogs for many objects. See “Line Style Panel” on page 434.

In addition, some objects have a fill style that can be specified in the objects’ specification dialogs. See “Fill Style Panel” on page 439.

Color On/Off

 The display of color on-screen can be toggled on and off in any view by selecting **View> Color**.

- If **Color**  is toggled off in any 3D view, the view will be displayed in gray-scale.
- If **Color**  is toggled off in floor plan view, the view will be displayed in black and white.

You can also print in color or gray scale. See “Print View Dialog” on page 483.

Drawing Groups

Each object in a plan file belongs to one of three drawing groups, which influences whether it displays in front of or behind other objects.


- The **Default Group** is where most objects are placed when first created.
- Objects on the **Back Group** display behind those in the other two drawing groups.
- Objects on the **Front Group** display in front of those in the other two drawing groups.

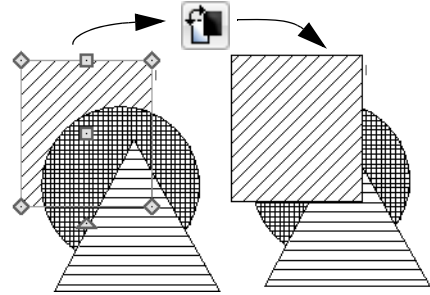
Most objects are drawn in the Default Group. Notable exceptions are imported pictures, which are placed in the Back Group, and Walkthrough Paths, which are placed in the Front Group. Objects in the Default Group display in front or behind one another according to program-defined rules that can be modified in only limited ways.


Move to Front of Group



Click the **Move to Front of Group** edit button to move the selected object(s) so that it displays in front of other objects in the same drawing group.


Move to Front of Group  only affects the display of objects when they are of the same type: for example, CAD objects, furnishings, base cabinets, or wall cabinets. It cannot make a base cabinet display in front of a wall cabinet; but it can make a selected wall cabinet display in front of other wall cabinets.



Move to Front of Group  is not available for Walkthrough Paths.

Textures

The appearance of architectural objects in 3D views is affected by the materials applied to the objects' surfaces. See "Materials" on page 361.

In 3D views, you can turn on or off the display of textures by selecting **3D> Toggle Textures** .

Delete Surface



In any 3D view, select **3D> Delete Surface**, then click a surface in the view to temporarily remove the surface from the current view. See "Delete 3D Surface" on page 387.

Refresh Display

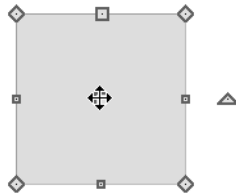
Refresh Display redraws the current window to clean up extra lines, show missing items, and correct random on-screen effects caused by changes to a model. Select **View> Refresh Display** or press the F5 key to refresh the on-screen display.

Moving Objects


Objects can be moved using the edit handles as well as a variety of edit tools. Multiple selected objects can also be moved as a group. See “Selecting Objects” on page 86.

Using the Edit Handles

Select an object, then click the **Move** edit handle and drag it to a new location. When your pointer is over the Move handle, it displays a four-headed arrow.



When moved, the selected object moves orthogonal, or at a right angle to, any of its edges.

As an object is moved, it jumps at set increments when **Grid Snaps**  are enabled. See “Grid Snaps” on page 79.

If an selected object passes over its original location as it is being moved, it will snap to that location.

You can temporarily slow the movement of your mouse as you drag an edit handle by holding down the Shift key on your keyboard.

Bumping/Pushing

When an object bumps into another similar object while it is being moved, it stops. If you do not release the mouse button and

continue to drag, however, the selected object resumes movement and continues past the obstructing object.

Instead of dragging through and past one or more obstructing objects, you can instead push them. To do this, bump an object into an obstructing object and release the mouse button. Then, click and drag the Move edit handle a second time in the same direction.

Walls, wall openings, cabinets, furnishings and fixtures, and CAD and CAD-based objects are examples of objects that can bump into as well as push other objects.

Bumping/Pushing does not affect objects moved using dimensions. See “Moving Objects Using Dimensions” on page 414.

Unrestricted Movement

Many objects have restrictions placed on their movement by their own properties or specification settings. Architectural objects, for example, bump into other 3D objects as they are being moved.

Other move restrictions are activated by the **Snap Settings**. See “Snap Behaviors” on page 78.

These restrictions can be overridden when necessary by holding down the Ctrl key while dragging to move an object.

To move an object freely

1. Select the object.
2. Hold down the Ctrl key.
3. Click the Move edit handle and drag it to the new location.

You can also press the Ctrl key while dragging an object's Move handle to override move restrictions.

Center Object



The **Center Object** edit button allows you to move walls, cabinets and other objects so that they are centered along a wall

within a room or relative to a window or cabinet.

Using Dimensions



Objects or the selected edges of some objects can be moved using dimensions. See “Moving Objects Using Dimensions” on page 414.

Aligning Objects

It is often important to align objects such as text boxes or walls, or to align objects on different floors. There are several methods to choose from.



Using the Mouse Cross Hairs

Objects can be aligned by eye using the mouse cross hairs as a reference. This method can help you draw, place and edit objects quickly and with reasonable accuracy, but is not necessarily as accurate as some of the other approaches described here.



The mouse cross hairs can be turned on and off in the **Preferences** dialog. See “Edit Panel” on page 63.

Using Snap Settings

With **Object Snaps**, you can snap the edge of a selected object to that of another. Select an edge of an object. Drag it to the edge of another object, then release the mouse.

With **Grid Snaps**  on and **Angle Snaps**  off, select the left side of the object, and drag from the center move

handle. This snaps the selected side to the grid.

When both **Grid Snaps**  and **Angle Snaps**  on, objects snap at increments equal to the **Snap unit** specified in the **Plan Defaults** dialog rather than onto the grid itself. This does not align objects to the grid unless they were already snapped to the grid. See “Snap Behaviors” on page 78.

Using Dimensions



Create a temporary or manual dimension relative to an object such as a wall or line, and relocate the objects to the same dimension. See “Moving Objects Using Dimensions” on page 414.




Text objects can be aligned using settings in the Text Specification dialog. See “Aligning Text” on page 425.

Using Center Object




The **Center Object** edit button can be used to center a variety of objects relative to another object. Center Object can be used in floor plan and elevation views.

To center an object

1. Select an object.
2. Click the **Center Object**  edit button.
3. Move the mouse pointer over the object you would like to center the selected object relative to.
 - As the pointer passes over an eligible object, it becomes highlighted and a dashed centering axis line displays.
4. When the desired centering axis displays, click once to center the selected object along that axis line.

To center an object in a room


1. Select an object such as a cabinet.
2. Click the **Center Object**  edit button.
3. Move the mouse pointer in the room that you would like to center the selected object relative to.

- As you move the pointer, a centering axis will display along the wall it is closest to.
 - The selected object does not have to be inside a room in order to be centered relative to that room.
4. When a centering axis displays along the correct wall, click once.
 5. The object is moved perpendicular to the centering axis.

If you click outside an exterior wall instead of clicking inside, the selected object is centered along the edge of the Exterior Room. See “The Exterior Room” on page 145.

Aligning Objects on Different Floors

Objects on different floors can be aligned with one another using the **Reference**

Display . See “The Reference Floor” on page 205.

Resizing Objects

Objects can be resized using the edit handles and specification dialogs.

Using the Edit Handles

The end, corner and/or side edit handles can be used to resize a selected object.

To override any movement restrictions caused by snap settings or the presence of other objects, press the Ctrl key while dragging an edit handle.

As an object is resized, any dimensions indicating its size will update to reflect your changes. You can use dimensions as references to help you achieve the correct size for most objects.

You can temporarily slow the movement of your mouse as you drag an edit handle by holding down the Shift key on your keyboard.

Using the Specification Dialog



Most objects can be accurately resized in their specification dialogs. See “Specification Dialogs” on page 29.

Using Dimensions



Many objects can be resized by selecting an edge and then moving

that edge using dimensions. See “Moving Objects Using Dimensions” on page 414.

Walls can also be resized using dimensions; however, it is important to understand that the selected edges of other objects cannot be resized using dimensions - they can only be moved. To resize an edge, select an adjacent edge and move that edge instead.

Reshaping Objects

There is a variety of ways to reshape objects using the edit handles, specification dialogs and edit toolbar buttons.

Some objects, notably circles and box-based objects, cannot be reshaped - only resized. See “Resizing Objects” on page 108.

Using the Edit Handles

Depending on the type of object selected, the end, corner and/or side edit handles can be used to reshape a selected object.

To override any movement restrictions caused by snap settings or the presence of other objects, press the Ctrl key while dragging an edit handle.

You can temporarily slow the movement of your mouse as you drag an edit handle by holding down the Shift key on your keyboard.

Using the Specification Dialog



A variety of CAD and CAD-based objects can be reshaped by editing

values on either the Selected Line or Selected Arc panel of their specification dialogs. See “Polyline Specification Dialog” on page 438.

Using Dimensions




Both temporary and manually drawn dimensions can be used to increase or decrease the distance between the edge a line- or polyline-based object and another, parallel edge or line.

Break Line




The **Break Line** edit button can be used to break an individual line-, arc-, or spline-based object into two segments. The edges of a polyline-based object can also be broken.


Note: The Break Line edit button is not available for box-based objects, objects created with the Circle Tools, or some architectural objects such as stairs.

The **Break Line**  edit tool can be used to create two types of breaks: partial breaks and complete breaks.

When a partial break is created, a new corner edit handle is placed at the location of the break. Partial breaks are also referred to as joints, nodes or pivot points.

- Click the **Break Line**  edit button to add a new corner or pivot point to the selected object.

To create a partial break

1. Click the object or edge that you want to break into two segments.
2. Click the **Break Line**  edit button once or press the 3 key.
3. Click the edge to create a new corner edit handle at that location and two separate edges on either side of that handle.


If you click and drag one of the edit handles on either side of the partial break, the edge moves at a right angle to itself and another edge forms, connecting the moved edge with the one on the other side that does not move.

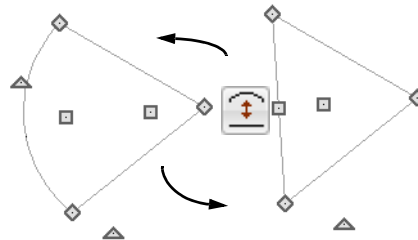
You can remove an edge from a polyline-based object by clicking and dragging a corner handle until it snaps to an adjacent corner handle.

To remove a break from an edge

1. Make sure that **Object Snaps** are enabled. See “Object Snaps” on page 78.
2. Select the object that has a break that you want to remove.
3. Click on the corner edit handle associated with the break that you want to remove and drag it to an adjacent corner handle.
4. Release the mouse button and the handle that you selected will be removed.

Change Line/Arc

 Select an individual line-based or arc-based object or a segment of a polyline-based object and click the **Change Line/Arc** edit button to convert the selected segment from a line to an arc or vice versa.



Rotating Objects

Objects can be rotated using the edit handles as well as a variety of edit tools. Multiple selected objects can also be rotated as a group. See “Selecting Objects” on page 86.

By default, an object or group of objects rotate about the center point of the selection set.

Using the Edit Handles

Select an object, then click the triangular **Rotate** edit handle and drag it in any direction. When your pointer is over the Rotate handle, it displays a curved arrow.

The angles of line-based objects can also be changed by dragging an end handle in a direction other than parallel to the object.

The object rotates about the opposite end point. See “Editing Line Based Objects” on page 88.

Objects snap to Allowed Angles as they are rotated. See “Angle Snaps” on page 79.

To override any movement restrictions caused by snap settings or the presence of other objects, press the Ctrl key while dragging an edit handle.

You can temporarily slow the movement of your mouse as you drag an edit handle by holding down the Shift key on your keyboard.

Using the Specification Dialog




The exact angle of some objects such as lines, arcs, walls and the selected

edges of polylines can be specified on either the General panel, Selected Line panel, or Selected Arc panel of that object’s specification dialog. See “Polyline Specification Dialog” on page 438.

Reverse Plan





The **Reverse Plan** tool is a quick way to mirror a plan so that everything on all floors of the entire plan is swapped left to right.

Select **Tools> Reverse Plan**  to reflect an entire plan right to left, as though it were reflected about a vertical line.

Deleting Objects

Objects can be deleted in a variety of ways:

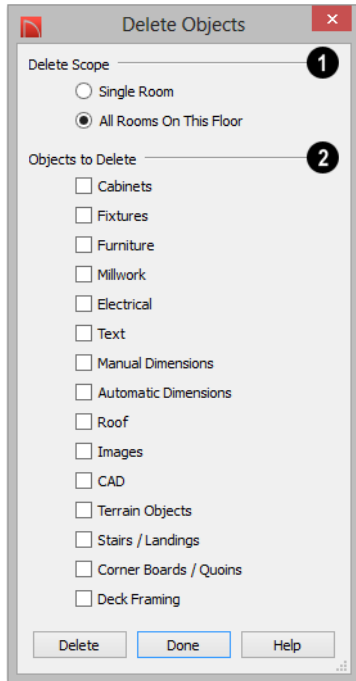
- Select an object or group of objects, then click the **Delete**  edit button, select **Edit> Delete**  from the menu, or press the either the Delete or Backspace key on your keyboard.
- Entire categories of objects can be deleted using the **Delete Objects** dialog.
- Objects are deleted if the floor they are placed on is deleted. See “Deleting Floors” on page 202.

If an object has a line with arrow attached to it, the arrow is deleted if the object is deleted. To prevent the arrow from being deleted, drag the attached end away from the object before deleting it.

Delete Objects Dialog



Use the **Delete Objects** dialog to delete all objects of one or more specified types in one room, on the current floor, or in the entire plan.



- 1 Select a **Delete Scope**:
 - Choose **Single Room** to delete objects only in specific rooms on the current floor.
 - Choose **All Rooms on This Floor** to delete objects in all rooms on the current floor.
- 2 Specify categories of **Objects to Delete** by checking the box beside each category that you wish to delete.

To use the Delete Objects dialog

1. Select **Edit> Delete Objects**  to open the **Delete Objects** dialog.

2. Specify the **Delete Scope** as **Single Room** or **All Rooms On This Floor**.
3. In the **Delete** section, check the box for each category of objects you want to delete. Click **Select All** to check all the boxes or **Clear All** to uncheck all boxes.
4. When the scope is set to **Single Room**:
 - Move your cursor into the drawing area and click in a room of the plan to delete objects of the selected type within that room without closing the dialog.
 - Continue clicking on rooms or choose a different Delete Scope.
 - Click **Done** when all selections have been deleted.
5. If you select **All Rooms On This Floor**, you do not need to click in floor plan view. The **Delete** button becomes available, and clicking it closes the dialog and deletes the specified objects.

Deleting Polyline Edges

To remove an edge from a polyline, drag a corner handle until it overlaps an adjacent corner handle to remove the edge between them and merge them into a single handle. See “Reshaping Objects” on page 109.

Delete Surface





In any 3D view, select **3D> Delete Surface**, then click a surface in the view to temporarily remove the surface from the current view without permanently affecting the object. See “Delete 3D Surface” on page 387.

Undo and Redo





The **Undo** and **Redo** commands allow you to both undo the last action performed, as well as redo actions that were recently Undone.

The ten most recent actions can be Undone or Redone. Actions that can be Undone and Redone include creating, editing, and deleting objects.

To Undo an action, select **Edit> Undo** , click the **Undo**  button, or press Ctrl + Z on your keyboard.

The Redo command is only available immediately after Undo has been used. To Redo an Undone action, select **Edit>**

Redo , click the **Redo**  button or press Ctrl + Y on your keyboard.

It is important to note that **Undo**  and **Redo**  do not affect all actions in the program, including:

- Save and Save As. See “Saving, Exporting, and Backing Up Files” on page 41.
- Changes made in the Library Browser. See “The Library Browser” on page 342.
- Changes made in a Materials List. See “Materials Lists” on page 491.
- Changes made in a dialog while the dialog box is open. See “Dialogs” on page 27.
- Changes made to the display by panning the display or zooming in or out. See “Undo Zoom” on page 375.

Walls, Railings, and Fencing

Walls are the single most important building component in Home Designer Suite. By creating walls and defining the rooms created by the walls, you are telling the program how you want the 3D model built.

There are several ways that walls can be created in Home Designer Suite. The most common is to simply draw them with the Wall Tools.

In addition, exterior walls can be generated automatically when a new floor is built by using another floor as a model. For more, see “Adding Floors” on page 201.

Another feature that can be used to generate walls automatically is the **Space Planning Assistant**. See “Space Planning” on page 443.

Chapter Contents

- Wall Defaults
- Wall Tools
- Railing and Deck Tools
- Fencing Tools
- Exterior and Interior Walls
- Foundation Walls
- Railing and Deck Tools
- Room Dividers and Invisible Walls
- Polygon Shaped Decks
- Hatch Wall
- Break Wall
- Drawing Walls
- Connecting Walls
- Displaying Walls
- Measuring Walls
- Editing Walls
- Aligning Walls
- Roof Directives in Walls
- Attic Walls
- Wall Type Definitions
- Wall Specification Dialog
- Railing and Fencing Specification Dialogs

- Wall Hatch Specification Dialog



Wall Defaults

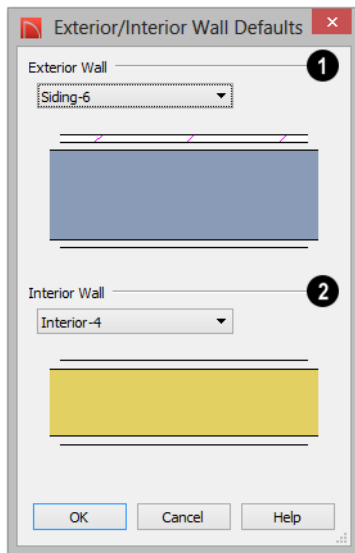




Default Settings can be accessed by selecting **Edit> Default Settings**. Click on “Walls” and click the **Edit** button to open the **Wall Defaults** dialog.

The settings in the wall defaults dialog determines what wall types are drawn when the different wall tools are used. It is a good idea to be familiar with these settings and how they relate to your style of building.

Exterior/Interior Wall Defaults Dialog

Specify which wall types are drawn using the **Exterior Wall**  and **Interior Wall**  tools in the **Exterior/Interior Wall Defaults** dialog.



- 1 **Exterior Wall Tool** - From the drop-down list, select the wall type drawn with the **Exterior Wall**  tool.
- 2 **Interior Wall Tool** - From the drop-down list, select the wall type drawn by the **Interior Wall**  tool.

Wall Tools

Select **Build> Wall** to access the Wall Tools. The type of wall drawn by each wall tool is specified in its corresponding defaults dialog.

The **Curved Wall** tools are similar to their corresponding **Straight Wall Tools**. Select **Build> Curved Wall** to access these tools.

Exterior Walls



The **Exterior Wall** and **Curved Exterior Wall** tools draw walls using the default wall type specified for exterior walls in the **Exterior/Interior Wall Defaults** dialog. See “Exterior and Interior Walls” on page 119.

Interior Walls



The **Interior Wall** and **Curved Interior Wall** tools draw walls using the wall type specified for interior walls. The interior wall type is defined in the **Exterior/Interior Wall Defaults Defaults** dialog.

Note: Whether a wall is recognized as an exterior or interior wall by the program is determined by its position in the model, not by the tool used to draw it. See “Exterior and Interior Walls” on page 119.

Half-Walls



The **Half-Wall** and **Curved Half-Wall** tools create solid

railings: walls that are 36” (900 mm) high topped with a handrail.

Room Dividers



Room Dividers are Invisible walls with a thickness of 0” (mm) that are used to define separate room areas in a plan. They can display in floor plan view but not in 3D views. See “Room Dividers and Invisible Walls” on page 120.

Hatch Wall



The **Hatch Wall** tool applies a hatch pattern to a wall that displays in floor plan views. You must click the wall that you want to apply the hatch pattern to. You can then select the hatch and resize it if you want to only hatch a portion of a wall. See “Hatch Wall” on page 121.

Break Wall



The **Break Wall** tool applies a break in a wall. Once a wall is broken, the two wall segments are separate walls that can be modified independent of each other. See “Break Wall” on page 122.


Railing and Deck Tools




Select **Build > Railing and Deck** to access the Railing and Deck Tools. Railings are typically used to define interior spaces, while the various Deck tools are used to define exterior Deck rooms.


With the exception of the Polygon Shaped Deck tool, each of the tools in this family have both Straight and Curved versions, and

are created and edited just like walls. See “Drawing Walls” on page 122.

To create a break in a railing for a stairway or other access, use a **Doorway** . This keeps the railing continuous and maintains room definition. See “Room Definition” on page 144.

When first drawn, railings are specified as **No Locate**, which prevents **Auto Exterior Dimensions**  from locating them. This attribute may also be helpful if you do not want a railing to divide an area into two separate rooms. See “General Panel” on page 135.

Railings


 The **Railing** and **Curved Railing** tools create railings that are primarily used to define interior spaces.

Railings are ideal for a number of tasks:

- Creating changes in floor and/or ceiling height. See “Floor and Ceiling Heights” on page 151.
- Creating stairwells. See “Creating a Stairwell” on page 245.



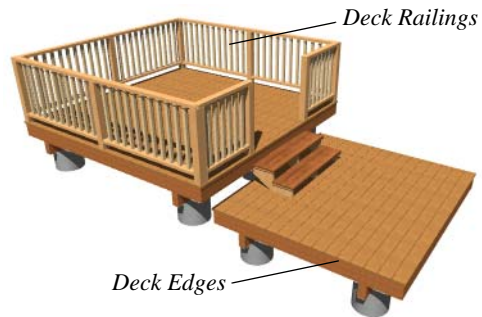
Deck Railing

 The **Straight Deck Railing** and **Curved Deck Railing** tools draw decks, complete with framing and bounded by a railing. If a foundation level exists, supports for the deck are also created. See “Decks” on page 151.


When a room is defined using deck railing, its **Room Type** is automatically set to “Deck”. See “Decks” on page 151.

Deck Edges

 The **Straight Deck Edge** and **Curved Deck Edge** draw decks complete with framing, but without a railing. No deck supports are created.



Polygon Shaped Deck

 The **Polygon Shaped Deck** tool opens the **New Polygon Shaped Deck** dialog, where you can specify the exact size and number of sides of a new polygonal deck room and then click in floor plan view to create that deck room. See “Polygon Shaped Decks” on page 121.

Railing Types


A variety of railing types can be specified in the **Railing** and **Deck Railing Specification** dialogs. See “Rail Style Panel” on page 138. Available types include:



- **Baluster** creates railings composed of newel posts, balusters, a railing, and an optional bottom rail.
- **Solid** produces a framed railing wall, or Half Wall. See “Half-Walls” on page 117.

- If **Panels** is selected, you can choose a panel style such as glass or ironwork from the library. See “Newels/Balusters Panel” on page 140.

Newels and balusters do not display in floor plan view.

Fencing Tools



 Select **Build> Fencing** or click the **Fencing Tools** to access the fencing tools. Fencing automatically follows the shape of the terrain.



  The **Fencing** and **Curved Fencing** tools are used to draw fences, which are similar to railings but by default do not define room areas. Fencing is created and edited much like walls and railings, and normally used outside of a building and follows the shape of the terrain. See “Terrain” on page 289.



You can specify a fence panel style in the **Fencing Specification** dialog. See “Railing and Fencing Specification Dialogs” on page 138.

Exterior and Interior Walls

  Most walls are drawn using either the **Straight Exterior Wall** and **Straight Interior Wall** tools.

  Exterior and interior walls can also be drawn using the **Curved Exterior Wall** and **Curved Interior Wall** tools.

The only difference between the Exterior and Interior Wall Tools is the wall type used: Exterior Walls use a wall type set up to model a wall with siding, while Interior Walls model interior walls with sheetrock. You can specify the default wall type for each tool in the **Exterior/Interior Wall Defaults** dialog. See “Exterior/Interior Wall Defaults Dialog” on page 116.

To draw a wall using a different wall type, you can change the default wall type for either tool in the **Exterior/Interior Wall Defaults** dialog. You can also draw a wall using the default type and then change the wall type in the **Wall Specification** dialog.

Whether a wall is recognized by the program as an actual exterior or interior wall is based on the model, not by which tool you use to draw the wall. Any wall that is entirely surrounded by interior room areas is considered an interior wall. Any wall exposed to the outside of the building is considered an exterior wall. See “Room Types” on page 147.

Foundation Walls

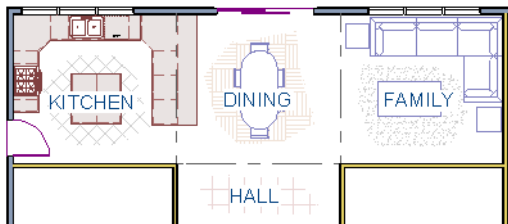
Foundation walls are similar to the interior and exterior walls but also have a footing. Foundation walls are created automatically when a foundation floor is created. See “Building a Foundation” on page 208.



Room Dividers and Invisible Walls

The **Room Divider** tool is used to define separate room areas in a plan; typically, by dividing a large room area into two or more smaller areas. See “Room Definition” on page 144.

Common uses for Room Dividers include dividing areas of an open floor plan into areas with different purposes.



Room Dividers separate this dining area from adjacent rooms

Room Dividers can also be used to define areas with different floor or ceiling materials or heights.

Room Dividers are simply walls that are specified as Invisible and have a single layer of an “Air Gap” material with a thickness of 0” (mm).


If a zero-thickness **Room Divider** separates two rooms with different floor and/or ceiling heights, its wall type will be changed to the current plan’s default Interior Wall so that the platform step created by the height difference can be enclosed.

Any wall, regardless of its wall type or thickness, can also be specified as Invisible - or vice versa - in the **Wall Specification** dialog. See “General Panel” on page 135.

Room Dividers are placed on the “Walls, Invisible” layer by default, as are walls that are specified as Invisible.

Walls specified as Invisible can display in floor plan view but not in 3D views or the Materials List. See “Displaying Walls” on page 125.

Important Notes on Invisible Walls

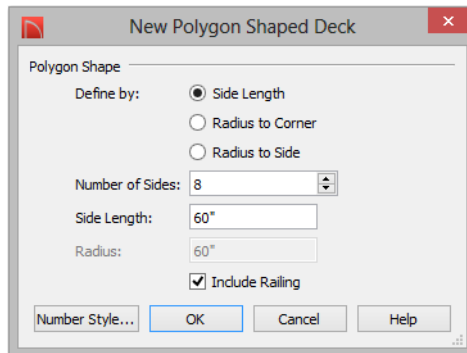
- Floor, wall and ceiling areas are calculated separately for rooms divided by invisible and normal walls.
- Invisible walls are ignored by the **Auto Place Outlets**  tool; it functions as though they were not present.

- Cabinets, fixtures and furniture can be moved freely through Invisible walls.
- Invisible walls can be drawn through a cabinet to attach to the wall behind.
- Room Dividers are automatically generated to connect “island” rooms to the larger structure around them. See “Room Definition” on page 144.

Polygon Shaped Decks



Select **Build> Railing and Deck> Polygon Shaped Deck** to open the **New Polygon Shaped Deck** dialog and create a polygon shaped deck with regular sides.



The settings in this dialog are saved between program sessions.


To create a polygon shaped deck

1. Click the radio button beside an option to specify whether you want to **Define Polygon by Side Length, Radius to Corner** or **Radius to Side**.
2. Specify the desired **Number of Sides**.
3. Specify the desired **Side Length** or,
4. Specify the desired **Radius**.
5. Uncheck **Include Railing** to produce a deck platform defined by Deck Edges. This option is not available in the **New Polygon Shaped Room** dialog.
6. Click **OK**, then click once in floor plan view to create the specified polygon shaped deck.


Hatch Wall




The **Hatch Wall** tool can be used to fill wall segments with a single hatch pattern in floor plan view.


To apply wall hatching, select **Build> Wall> Hatch Wall** , then click on a wall. The hatch pattern covers the entire length and width of the wall segment.

Note: The Hatch Wall tool cannot be used to apply a hatch pattern to Invisible Walls. See “Room Dividers and Invisible Walls” on page 120.

Hatch Wall  places a hatch pattern across all layers of the selected wall, covering any fill styles specified for that wall type.

Once created, wall hatching can be selected, edited and deleted much like other line-based objects. See “Editing Line Based Objects” on page 88.

If you use the **Hatch Wall**  tool to apply a hatch pattern to a wall that has been divided into multiple segments using the **Break**

Wall  tool, the pattern is only applied to the segment that you clicked on. See “Break Wall” on page 122.

Like doors and windows, wall hatching cannot extend across multiple wall segments. Unlike these objects, hatching cannot be located by dimension lines.


The wall hatch pattern can be specified in the **Wall Hatch Specification** dialog. See “Wall Hatch Specification Dialog” on page 141.

When editing or deleting wall hatching, make sure that it is selected rather than the wall by noting that “Wall Hatching” displays in the Status Bar. See “The Status Bar” on page 30.


Break Wall

To divide a wall or railing, select **Build> Wall> Break Wall** and click on the wall. The wall is divided into two wall sections at the point where you click.




The **Break Wall**  tool remains active, so you can continue to place breaks in walls. When you are finished, select a different tool.

If a wall break is placed near the intersection of two walls, the break is positioned at the center of the intersection.

Once a break is placed, click the **Select Objects**  tool and select the original wall. If edit handles display near the break, the wall was correctly broken.

Walls separated by a break can be rejoined. Select one of the segments, then click on the end edit handle located at the break and drag it a few plan inches (mm) away from the break. See “Connecting Walls” on page 124.



The **Break Wall**  tool can be used to create aligned walls on either side of a gap. See “Creating a Nook” on page 130.

Drawing Walls

Walls, railings, and fencing are drawn similar to the way CAD lines are drawn: select a Wall Tool and then click and drag from end

to end in the drawing area. Walls can be drawn in floor plan view, camera views, and overviews. See “Draw Lines” on page 431.

Drawing walls to create a floor plan is simple if you keep a few things in mind:

- Draw exterior walls first to define the building’s footprint, then draw the interior walls after the perimeter is in place.
- It is easiest to draw walls at the approximate location and length needed and then move or resize them precisely using dimensions later. See “Moving Objects Using Dimensions” on page 414.
- When drawing and positioning exterior walls, make sure **Grid Snaps**  are enabled. Once these walls are in place, you may prefer to turn Grid Snaps off to draw and position interior walls and other objects. See “Grid Snaps” on page 79.
- As walls are drawn, “sticky” points identify points that are either collinear or orthogonal to the end points of other walls, making alignment easier. See “Extension Snaps” on page 79.
- When walls enclose an area to form a room, the program will orient all exterior walls so that the siding material faces outward.
- To flip the layers of a wall after it is drawn, select it and click the **Reverse Layers**  edit button. See “Editing Walls” on page 127.
- Initial wall heights are determined by the default floor and ceiling heights of the current floor.

Wall Positioning

The recommended method of drawing walls is to draw them at their approximate location and length, then move them into position

with accuracy using dimensions. To make this task quick and efficient:

- Notice the temporary wall that displays as you draw. Its length and angle display in the Status Bar at the bottom of the window and adjust as you move the mouse. Release the mouse button to draw the wall at the displayed length and angle. See “The Status Bar” on page 30.
- Use Snaps to help ensure proper wall alignment and orientation. See “Snap Behaviors” on page 78.

Once walls are drawn, they can be accurately dimensioned and moved as needed. See “Measuring Walls” on page 126.

Wall Openings

To create a door or doorway, do not draw wall sections with a gap between them. Walls should be drawn to completely enclose rooms, and then door and window objects should be placed in the walls to create openings later. See “Doors” on page 161 and “Windows” on page 177.

Masonry fireplaces placed in walls are also considered to be wall openings. See “Fireplaces” on page 213.


Temporary Dimensions

Temporary dimensions will display along the length of a wall as it is drawn, helping you draw walls to the desired length. Although dimensions display as you are drawing, you do not need to position walls precisely when you first draw them: they can be easily moved into place at any time. See “Editing Walls” on page 127.

Drawing Curved Walls

Drawing a curved wall, curved railing, or curved fence is similar to drawing a CAD arc. See “Draw Arc” on page 432.

A straight wall can also be converted into a curved wall and vice versa using the **Change**

Line/Arc  edit button. See “Change Line/Arc” on page 110.



To create a room in the shape of a circle, you must draw two curved walls.

Space Planning Assistant



The **Space Planning Assistant Tools** allow you to place and arrange room boxes that can then be converted into a fully editable house plan, including walls. See “Space Planning” on page 443.

Connecting Walls

When walls are drawn sufficiently close to one another, they will snap together to form an intersection. This snapping occurs when the walls’ center lines are within a distance defined by the larger of the two walls’ widths and will occur even when **Object Snaps** are turned off. See “Object Snaps” on page 78.

If the two walls in question have identical specifications and are collinear, they will merge to become a single wall. See “Aligning Collinear Walls” on page 130.


When three or more walls connect to form a completely enclosed area, that area defines a room. See “Rooms” on page 143.

When walls snap together to form an intersection and **Object Snaps** are enabled, the program joins them at their Main Layers. See “Aligning Walls” on page 130.

- The wall that is being drawn or edited will move, lengthen, or shorten slightly to meet the other wall.

- The other wall will not move; however, its length may be affected.

Removing Wall Breaks

The **Break Wall**  tool allows you to break a wall into two or more separate wall segments. See “Break Wall” on page 122.

To merge two collinear walls separated by a break, select one of the segments, then click on the end edit handle located at the break and drag it a few plan inches (mm) away from the break.

If the two walls do not merge, either one or both walls have been moved and they are no longer collinear, or one or both has been edited in some way and they are no longer identical. Open the **Wall Specification** dialog for each wall and determine how they differ. See “Wall Hatch Specification Dialog” on page 141.

Displaying Walls



The display of walls in all views is controlled in the **Display Options** dialog. See “Displaying Objects” on page 74.

If a “Walls” layer is turned off, any doors and windows placed in walls on that layer will not display, either. See “Displaying Doors” on page 164 and “Displaying Windows” on page 182.

In Floor Plan View

There are several options for controlling how walls are displayed in floor plan view. In the **Display Options** dialog, you can specify whether or not various types of walls display. Walls are placed on layers with “Walls” at the beginning of the layer name, such as “Walls, Normal”.

Note: In floor plan view, railings not specified as Solid display their Main Layer regardless of whether “Walls, Layers” or “Walls, Main Layer Only” is turned on.

It is sometimes helpful to display the walls from a floor other than the current floor. To do this, select and display a reference floor. See “The Reference Floor” on page 205.

In 3D Views

As in floor plan view, the display of walls can be controlled by layer in the **Display Options** dialog.

While most architectural objects in the program can display in both floor plan and 3D views, a few cannot. Invisible walls and Wall Hatching are examples of objects that do not display in 3D.

Wall Materials

There are several ways that materials can be assigned to walls. See “Rooms” on page 143.

When you draw a wall, it uses the.

You can change the surface material of an individual wall in the **Wall Specification** dialog. If you select “Use Default” as the material and the wall is used to define a room, the program refers to the material specified in the **Room Specification** dialog. See “Wall Specification Dialog” on page 134.

You can also change a room’s wall material in the **Room Specification** dialog. See “Materials Panel” on page 364. To restore the default Wall Type material, select **Use Default** in the **Select Library Object** dialog. See “Select Library Object Dialog” on page 356.

Note: Wall materials that are specified on the Materials panel of either the Wall or Room Specification dialog are not calculated in the Materials List.

Measuring Walls

Accurate wall measurements are an essential aspect of any drawing, and can be achieved by following two basic rules:

- Be aware of what part of a wall assembly dimensions are locating;
- Position walls using dimensions rather than edit handles or edit tools.

These rules can easily be met when you keep the following recommendations in mind.

Use Dimension Defaults

Dimensions can be set to locate walls at their Main Layers or at surfaces. Before drawing dimensions - and particularly, before using them to move your walls into position - make sure that your Dimension Defaults are set up to meet your needs. See “Dimension Defaults Dialog” on page 405.

Edit Dimension Lines

Once a dimension line has been drawn, its extension lines can be edited to locate a number of locations on a wall assembly:

- The exterior surface
- The Main Layer’s exterior
- The center line of the wall assembly
- The Main Layer’s center line
- The Main Layer’s interior
- The interior surface

See “Editing Extension Lines” on page 413.

Moving Walls Using Dimensions

By far, the most precise method of positioning walls is using dimension lines. To produce accurate measurements, remember to:

- Be aware of what part of your walls is being located by dimensions.
- Avoid specifying dimension values with greater accuracy than your dimensions are set to display. See “Format Panel” on page 407.

See “Using Dimensions” on page 128.

Use Object, Angle and Grid Snaps

Object Snaps, Angle Snaps, and Grid Snaps make it easier to align walls when they are being drawn as well as when they are edited. See “Snap Behaviors” on page 78.

Object Snaps help to ensure consistent wall connections and are particularly helpful when aligning collinear walls.


When **Grid Snaps** are enabled, walls are drawn on a regularly spaced grid, which helps avoid inaccurate wall placement. This can become particularly important if you forego positioning walls using dimensions in favor of using edit handles to move them.





Using Grid Snaps is recommended when you are laying out exterior shell walls, but may be inconvenient when positioning interior walls or other objects.

Angle Snaps make it easy to accurately draw walls at regular angles, ensuring walls that are truly parallel or perpendicular to one another and separated by consistent distances.

No Locate

If a wall is specified as **No Locate** in the **Wall Specification** dialog, it will be ignored by **Auto Exterior Dimensions**  in floor plan view, as will any doors or windows placed in it. By default, **Railings, Deck Railings**, and **Room Dividers** are specified

as No Locate. See “General Panel” on page 135.

The **No Locate** setting also affects the behavior of **Manual Dimensions**  and **End to End Dimensions** . If a Manual or End to End Dimension is drawn between two No Locate walls, a dimension line will be created; however, if one of the walls is No Locate and one is not, no dimension line will be drawn. See “Dimensions” on page 405.


Once a dimension line has been created, it can be edited so that it locates a No Locate wall or railing that is perpendicular to it. See **Editing Dimension Lines**.


Editing Walls


Walls can be selected individually and as a group in all views. When a wall is selected, it displays edit handles and an edit toolbar that can be used to edit it in various ways. When a wall is selected, temporary dimensions will also display.

The ways in which a wall can be edited depends on the current view and which edge is selected. See “Selecting Objects” on page 86.

Selecting Walls

- When you try to select a wall in a 3D view, the interior or exterior room that it defines may be selected first. Click the **Select Next Object**  edit button or press the Tab key on your keyboard to select the wall itself.
- In floor plan view, if wall hatching has been applied to a wall using the **Hatch**

Wall  tool, the hatching may be selected first. Click **Select Next**

Object  to select the wall itself. See “Hatch Wall” on page 121.


Using the Edit Handles

A selected wall can be modified in a variety of ways using its edit handles in any view. The handles that are available will depend on the current view type.

- In floor plan view, straight and curved walls can be edited like other line- and arc-based objects. See “Editing Line Based Objects” on page 88 and “Editing Arc Based Objects” on page 90.
- In a camera view or overview, click on the top surface of a wall to display the same edit handles as in floor plan view, allowing you to rotate, move, and extend or shorten the length of the wall.

- Moving a wall in any view will move any cabinets attached to that wall, as well.
- In an Elevation view, the side edges of straight walls can be moved to shorten or lengthen the segment. Curved walls can be shortened in this manner, but not lengthened.
- In a camera view or overview, click on an interior or exterior surface to display an edit handle at the center of each side edge, allowing you to shorten or lengthen the wall. Curved walls can be shortened in this manner, but not lengthened.
- When a wall is connected to other walls, it can only be moved perpendicular to itself or, in the case of curved walls, perpendicular to its chord using the Move edit handle.

In the Specification Dialog


 The appearance and structure of walls can be customized in the **Wall Specification** dialog. See “Wall Specification Dialog” on page 134.

The characteristics of the roof directly above a selected wall can also be specified in the **Wall Specification** dialog. See “Roof Panel” on page 136.

Using the Edit Tools

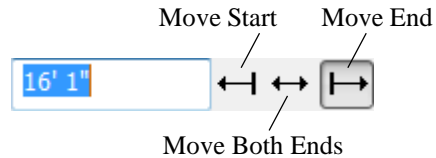
A selected wall or walls can be edited in a variety of ways using the buttons on the edit toolbar. See “The Edit Toolbar” on page 26.

Using Dimensions


 Automatic, manually-drawn, and temporary dimension lines can be

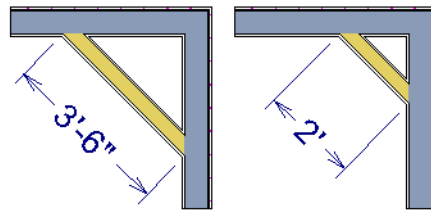
used to both resize and move walls with accuracy. Select a wall, then click on a dimension line that locates it and type in the value that you need. See “Moving Objects Using Dimensions” on page 414.

When a wall is resized using dimensions, the inline text field used to edit the dimension will have three unique buttons: **Move Start**, **Move End**, and **Move Both Ends**. Choose the option that you want to use before pressing the Enter key.



If both ends of the selected wall intersect walls that are not parallel to one another, a fourth option will be available: **Move Along**

Rails . When this option is used, the selected wall both resizes and changes position so that it remains connected to the other walls when you press the Enter key.



Move Along Rails resizes and moves a selected wall.

Depending on your **Dimension Defaults** settings, dimension lines may locate wall surfaces or Main Layers. See “Dimension Defaults Dialog” on page 405.

Wall Thickness

The initial thickness of a wall is determined by its wall type.

You can specify a selected wall's thickness in its **Wall Specification** dialog. See “General Panel” on page 135.

If a selected wall's thickness is changed:

- A copy of the wall's wall type is created with the same name but appended with a number equal to the thickness of the structural layer, and that new type is assigned to the wall.
- The change in thickness will be applied to new wall type's structural layer.
- The structural layer must be at least 1/16" thick, and the wall's thickness cannot be less than the original wall type's total thickness minus the thickness of its structural layer.

If a wall type's thickness is modified, the wall will resize about the outside edge of its Main Layer. In some instances, the wall may appear to move as a result of changes made to the thicknesses of its layers.

Wall Heights

The height of a wall is controlled by the ceiling height of the room(s) it defines. If the ceiling or floor height of a room is changed, the height of the walls that define it also change.

- The initial ceiling height for all rooms on a floor is set in the **Floor Defaults** dialog for that floor. See “Floor Defaults” on page 144. Whenever possible, it is best to set all ceiling heights using the default.
- The ceiling height of a single room can be set in its **Room Specification** dialog. See “General Panel” on page 155.

Wall Length

Wall length can be modified in several different ways:

- Using dimensions. See “Measuring Walls” on page 126.
- In the **Wall Specification** dialog. See “General Panel” on page 135.
- By dragging the end edit handles. See “Editing Line Based Objects” on page 88 and “Editing Arc Based Objects” on page 90.

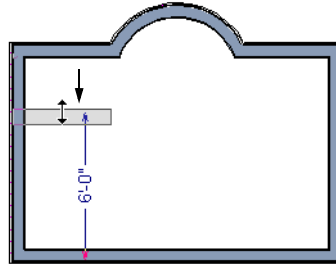
Bear in mind that if you try to resize a wall by a small amount using one of its edit handles and that wall is connected to another wall at that end, its length will not change because its end will snap back to the existing intersection. See “Connecting Walls” on page 124.

The most accurate way to specify wall length is using dimensions. By default, wall length is measured at the outside edge of the Main Layer. You can instead specify that dimension lines locate surfaces in the **Dimension Defaults** dialog. See “Dimension Defaults Dialog” on page 405.

Editing Straight/Curved Wall Combinations

If you move a straight wall connected to a curved wall with a locked center, the curved wall extends along its curve and the straight wall will either lengthen or shorten as needed to stay connected to the curved wall.

If the connection between the straight and curved wall cannot be maintained because of the curved wall's radius, it will be broken.



Aligning Walls

Wall alignment refers to the way wall segments line up with one another, either on the same floor or on the floor above or below. Walls may need to be aligned in a variety of situations.

To make alignment easier when drawing or resizing walls, “sticky” points identify points that are either collinear or orthogonal to the end points of other walls. See “Extension Snaps” on page 79.

Aligning Collinear Walls


Collinear walls are parallel walls connected end to end and drawn on the same floor. When collinear walls join end-to-end, the walls snap together. If these walls have the same wall type and identical specifications, and if **Object Snaps** are enabled, they will merge to become a single wall segment.

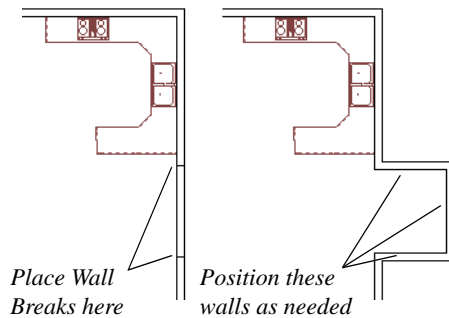
Creating a Nook

Walls can be aligned across an opening such as a nook, so that they are collinear, using the

Break Wall  tool.



To align walls across a gap


1. Select a wall to build a nook into and click the **Break Wall**  edit button.
2. Click at a point on the wall close to one side of the nook area. Do not worry about exact placement right now.
3. Click again near the other side of the nook. Two short lines at each location where you clicked indicate Wall Breaks.






- Right-click the middle section of the wall to select the wall section.
- Click the middle Move handle and drag the wall outward.
- Draw side walls to connect the wall back to the rest of the house.
- Move these short walls using dimensions to accurately size the nook.

Aligning Walls Between Floors



Walls can be aligned between floors by clicking the **Align With Wall Above**  and **Align With Wall Below**  edit buttons.

 In order for these edit tools to be available, the areas of the walls in question must be partially aligned, or overlapping.

To align walls between floors

- Select a wall that you want to align with another wall either above or below it.
- If the wall is above or below the other wall along only part of its length, you must click on it along that part. Select **Tools > Reference Floors > Reference Display On**  to help make sure you click on the correct part of the wall.
- When you have selected the wall at the desired location, click either the **Align With Wall Above**  or **Align With Wall Below**  edit button.

Aligning Curved Walls Between Floors

Curved walls are aligned between floors using the same technique to align straight walls. If the centers and radii of the walls are within a few inches of each other, the **Align With Wall Above**  and **Align With Wall Below**  edit buttons are enabled for the selected wall. The selected curved wall will take on the radius and center of the referenced wall when the walls are aligned.



Roof Directives in Walls

To automatically generate a roof plane using values other than the defaults or to not generate a roof plane bearing on a particular wall (as for a gable or the sides of a shed

roof), you can change the settings in the **Wall Specification** dialog. See “Roof Panel” on page 136.

Hip, Gable, and Shed Roofs

By default, the program will produce a roof plane over each exterior wall to create a hip roof. You can instead specify a gable or shed roof above the selected wall.

- Check **Full Gable Wall** to create a gable with a ridge centered above the selected wall(s).
- Check **High Shed/Gable Wall** for the side walls or the wall under the high side of a shed roof.
- You can also select a wall and click the **Change to Gable Wall(s)**  edit button, or change it back by clicking the **Change to Hip Wall(s)**  edit button.

Pitch

The default pitch for roof planes is set in the **Build Roof** dialog. However, any exterior wall can define the pitch of the roof plane built above it.

You can also specify a second, upper pitch above a given wall. Mansard, gambrel, gull wing and half-hip are examples of roof styles that use two pitches. See “Roof Tutorial” on page 57 of the User’s Guide.

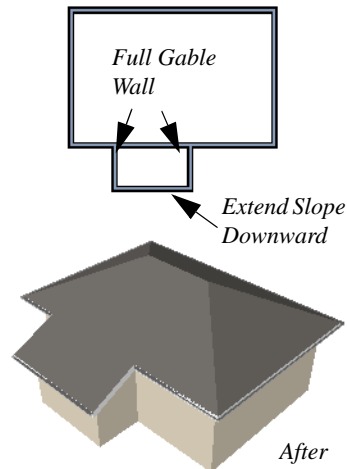
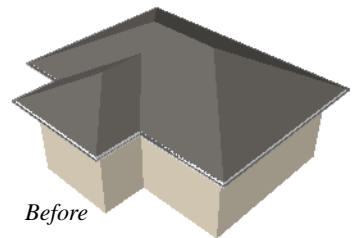
Roof Returns

Check **Auto Roof Return** to generate roof returns on the selected wall. In most cases, roof returns only generate on Full Gable Walls. See “Roof Returns” on page 230.

Extend Slope Downward

Check **Extend Slope Downward** to extend the roof plane downward over a bumpout, instead of creating additional roof planes. The two connecting walls that create the bumpout must be Full Gable walls.

In the following image, the bearing wall of the bumpout has **Extend Slope Downward** checked. The two short side walls are **Full Gable Walls**.



Attic Walls

In Home Designer Suite, walls are built between the floor and ceiling platforms of

the current floor. See “Floor and Ceiling Heights” on page 151. When the program

detects an open space between a wall and the roof plane above it, it automatically creates an Attic Wall on the floor above that wall to fill in the gap.

Attic Walls are typically found above Full Gable Walls, forming a gable or closing the top portion of a side wall of a shed roof. Attic Walls are often found on the Attic floor, but can be generated on other floors, as well. See “The Attic Floor” on page 205.



If you do not want to keep a particular Attic Wall in your plan, specify it as Invisible. See “Room Dividers and Invisible Walls” on page 120.

Removing Attic Walls

Occasionally, the program will generate an Attic wall where one is not wanted. There are several ways to address this:

- Turn off the display of the “Walls, Attic” layer.
- Specify the Attic Wall as **Invisible**. See “Room Dividers and Invisible Walls” on page 120.

- Select the Attic Wall and **Delete** it. The program will specify the wall as Invisible automatically. If you delete this Invisible wall, a new Attic Wall will be created.

Knee Walls

Knee Walls are a bit like Attic Walls in that they are not meant to generate to full ceiling height. Instead, they build upward until they encounter a roof plane. Unlike Attic Walls, however, Knee Walls are used in the interior of a structure, typically to separate unused areas from rooms on the upper floor of a story-and-a-half structure. See “Room Types” on page 147.

Home Designer Suite does not specify walls as Knee Walls automatically. If an interior wall is drawn in a location where the roof is lower than the ceiling height, you should specify it as a Knee Wall in the **Wall Specification** dialog. See “Roof Panel” on page 136.

Wall Type Definitions

Every wall drawn in a plan is assigned a wall type, and its Wall Type Definition determines its structure, its appearance in floor plan view, and its default materials.

You can specify the default wall types used when walls are first created, and can specify the wall type of any wall after it is drawn in the **Wall Specification** dialog. See “Wall Defaults” on page 116 and “General Panel” on page 135.

The structural layer of a wall type is its Main Layer, which controls a number of things:

- At intersections, walls join at the interior surfaces of their Main Layers. See “Connecting Walls” on page 124.
- Exterior walls on different floors are aligned by the exterior edges of their Main Layers.
- Roof baselines are placed at the outer edge of the Main Layer.

- Walls resize about the exterior surface of their Main Layer when their wall type is changed.
- Object Snaps locate the exterior surface of a wall's Main Layer. See "Object Snaps" on page 78.
- By default, dimension lines locate walls at their Main Layer. See "Dimension Defaults Dialog" on page 405.

Interior and Exterior Surfaces

Every wall has an interior and exterior surface - including walls in a plan that are

recognized by the program as being interior walls. See "Exterior and Interior Walls" on page 119.

Having separate designations for a wall's two surfaces allows you to specify different materials for each in the **Wall Specification** dialog. See "Materials Panel" on page 137.

In floor plan view, you can identify a selected wall's exterior surface by the location of its edit handles, which display on the exterior of the Main Layer.

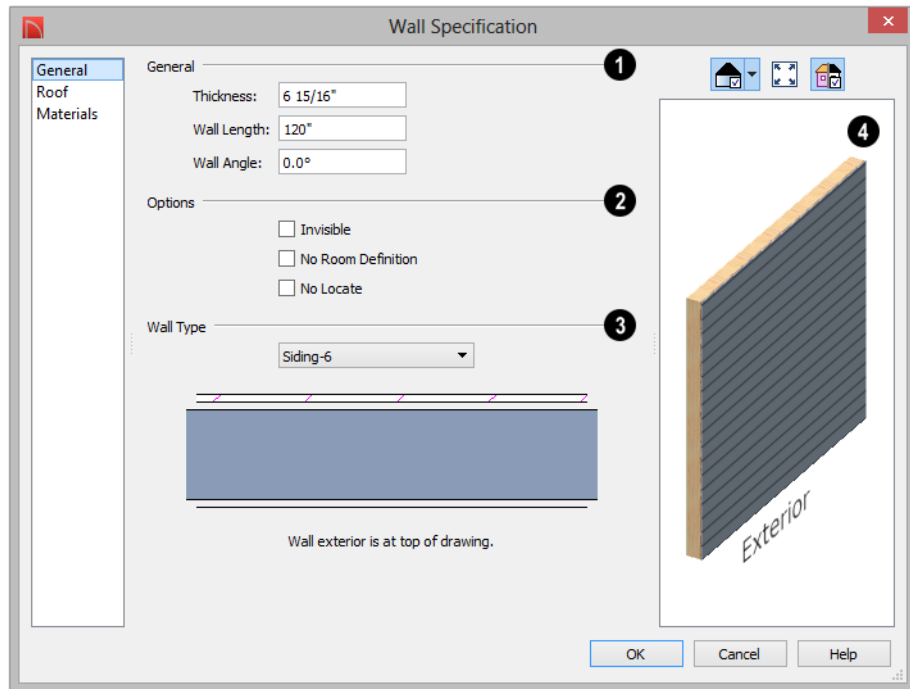
Wall Specification Dialog




To open the **Wall Specification** dialog, select a wall and click the **Open Object** edit button.


The panels of the **Wall Specification** dialog are also found in the **Railing**, **Deck Railing**, and **Fencing Specification** dialogs. See "Railing and Fencing Specification Dialogs" on page 138.

General Panel



- 1 Specify **General** properties of the selected wall or railing.
 - The **Thickness** of the selected wall displays and can be changed here. If the wall is a Post to Overhead Beam railing, this setting also affects the width of the beam. See “Wall Thickness” on page 129.
 - **Wall Angle** - The current absolute angle of the wall in a floor plan view is shown. If you type in a new angle, any walls attached to it will not move. If the selected wall is curved, this value describes the angle of the chord and cannot be modified.
 - **Wall Length** - The current length is shown. If you type a new length, any walls attached to the selected wall will not move. If the selected wall is curved, this value cannot be modified.
- 2 Check any of the **Options** to modify the selected wall accordingly. In most cases, multiple options can be selected. Not available for fencing.
 - Check **Invisible** to specify the wall as invisible. Invisible walls can display in floor plan view but not in 3D views or the Materials List. **Room Dividers**  are invisible by default. See “Room Dividers and Invisible Walls” on page 120.
 - Check **No Room Def.** to display the wall in floor plan and/or 3D views but not cre-
- 3 The **Wall Type** dropdown menu is set to 'Siding-6'. Below it is a 2D drawing of a wall section with a blue interior and a grey exterior, with the text 'Wall exterior is at top of drawing.' below it.
- 4 A 3D perspective view of the wall section, showing the blue interior and grey exterior, with the word 'Exterior' written on the side.

ate room definition. See “Room Definition” on page 144.

- Check **No Locate** to prevent **Auto Exterior Dimensions**  from locating the wall in floor plan view. See “No Locate” on page 127.
- 3** Select the **Wall Type** assigned to the selected wall from the drop-down list. A preview diagram of the selected wall

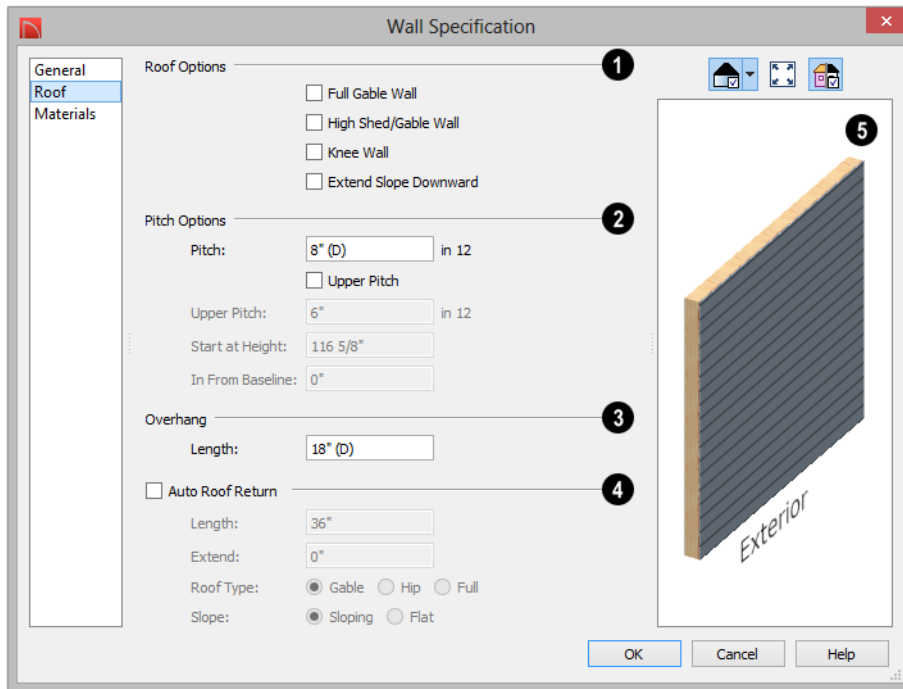
type’s layers, as seen in floor plan view, displays below.

- 4** A preview of the selected wall, including any doors, windows, and/or fireplaces inserted into it, displays on the right. If the selected wall is specified as Invisible, its plan view will display here by default. See “Dialog Preview Panes” on page 29.

Roof Panel

Any automatically generated roof style other than a hip requires roof information to be defined in the exterior walls. On the Roof panel, you can specify how the selected wall interacts with the roof plan, defining the portion of the roof plan that bears on it..

The Roof panel is not available for Foundation Walls or Fencing. See “Foundation Walls” on page 120 and “Fencing Tools” on page 119.



- 1 **Roof Options** - Specify the shape of the wall relative to the roof.
 - Check **Full Gable Wall** to create a gable end over the selected wall.
 - Check **High Shed/Gable Wall** to specify the selected wall as the high end of a shed roof.
 - Check **Knee Wall** to define the selected interior wall as a knee wall. Only an interior wall can be defined as a knee wall. A knee wall's height is defined by the roof above, not the ceiling height. See "Knee Walls" on page 133.
 - Check **Extend Slope Downward** to continue a roof down over a bumpout in an exterior wall. See "Extend Slope Downward" on page 132.
- 2 **Pitch Options** - Specify the pitch or pitches of the roof plane(s) above the selected wall.
 - Enter a value to define the **Pitch** of the roof plane bearing on the selected wall.
 - Check **Upper Pitch** to create a roof with two pitches or, if the selected wall is a Full Gable Wall, a half hip condition.
 - Enter the **Pitch** of the second, upper roof.
 - Specify the **Height** that the Upper Pitch **Starts at**, or define the distance **in from Baseline** that the second pitch begins. The two values are dynamic. Press the Tab key to update the relative numbers.
- 3 Specify the **Overhang Length**, which is the horizontal distance from the outside of the wall's Main Layer to the eave. See "Wall Type Definitions" on page 133.
- 4 Check **Auto Roof Return** to generate roof returns on the selected wall. In most cases, roof returns only work for Full

Gable Walls. See "Roof Returns" on page 230.

- Specify the horizontal **Length** of the roof return in inches (mm).
- Enter a value in inches (mm) to **Extend** the roof returns past the overhang.
- Specify a **Gable, Hip, or Full** roof return.
- Specify a **Sloping** or **Flat** roof return.

- 5 A preview of the selected wall, including any doors, windows, and/or fireplaces inserted into it, displays on the right. See "Dialog Preview Panes" on page 29.



Additional information about using the settings on this panel can be found in the "Roof Tutorial" on page 57 of the Reference Manual.

Rail Style Panel

The Rail Style panel is only available for Railings, Half Walls, Deck Railings, and Fencing. See "Rail Style Panel" on page 138.

Newels/Balusters Panel

The Newels/Balusters panel is only available for Railings, Half Walls, Deck Railings, and Fencing. See "Newels/Balusters Panel" on page 140.

Materials Panel

All walls - including interior walls, railings and fencing - have an "Exterior Wall Surface" and an "Interior Wall Surface". See "Interior and Exterior Surfaces" on page 134.

The materials specified on the Materials panel affect the appearance of walls and

Solid Railings in 3D views but are not calculated in the Materials List. See “Materials Lists” on page 491.

For most railing types, the “Exterior Wall Surface” component only affects the

appearance of the floor platform under the railing, and “Interior Wall Surface” component is not used. For fencing, neither material component is used.

Railing and Fencing Specification Dialogs



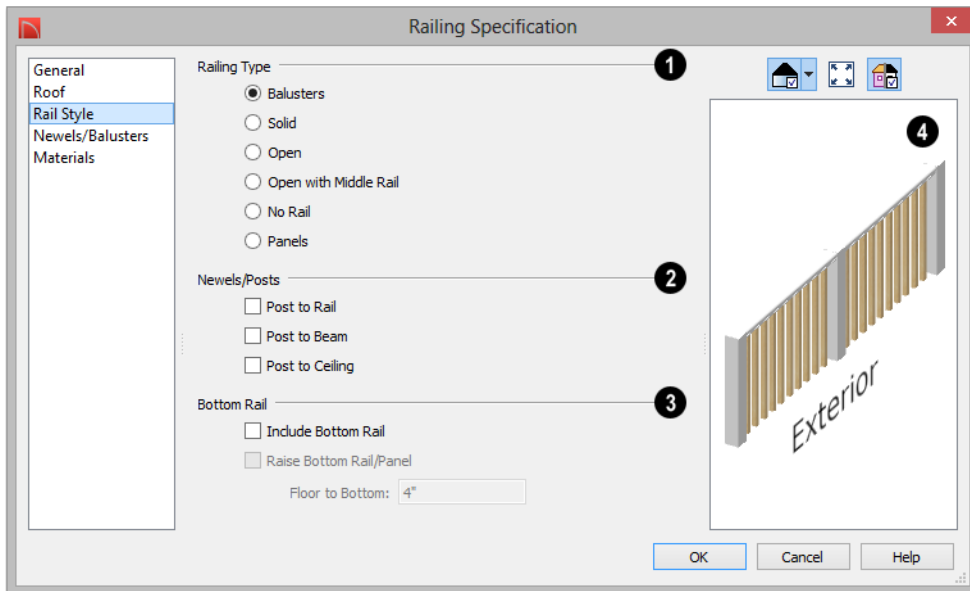
To open the **Railing or Fencing Specification** dialog, select a railing or fencing and click the **Open Object** edit button.

The **Railing and Fencing Specification** dialogs are the same as the **Wall Specification** dialog, but have two panels that apply only to Railings, Half Walls, Deck Railings, and Fencing. See “Wall Specification Dialog” on page 134.

Rail Style Panel

The Rail Style panel is only available for Railings, Deck Railings, and Fencing. See “Railing and Deck Tools” on page 117,

“Fencing Tools” on page 119, and “Fencing Tools” on page 119.



❶ **Railing Type** - Select the radio button for the desired railing type. A preview of the selected type displays to the left.

- Check **Balusters** to create regularly spaced balusters between larger newel posts.
- Check **Solid** to create a solid railing or Half Wall.
- Check **Open** to create a railing with only newel posts and top and bottom rails.
- Check **Middle Rail** to create a railing with newel posts and top, bottom, and middle rails.
- Check **No Rail** to eliminate rails, leaving only newels or posts and an overhead beam, if selected.
- Check **Panels** to create a railing composed of panels.

❷ Specify the properties of the selected railing's **Newels/Posts**.

- Check **Post to Rail** to create newel posts from the floor to the top rail. This option is selected by default.
- Check **Post to Overhead Beam** to create newel posts from floor to an overhead

beam placed just under the ceiling height. The beam's width is based on the Thickness of the selected railing wall.

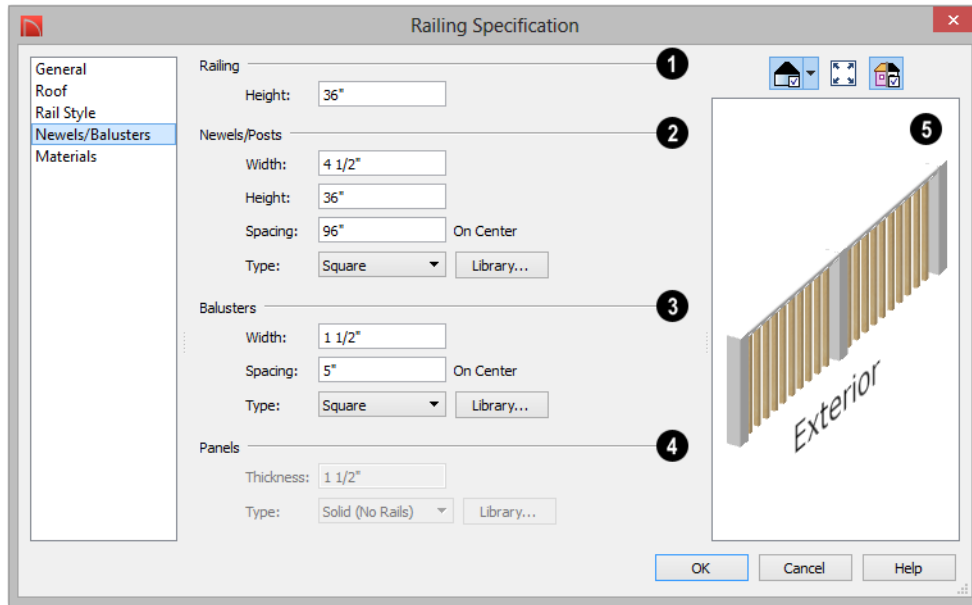
- Check **Post to Ceiling** to extend the newel posts to the ceiling.
- When none of the above Post options is selected, newel posts will build to the top of the railing.

❸ The **Bottom Rail** options control the placement of the bottom rail, or shoe. If neither box is checked, the bottom rail is placed at floor platform level. Not available for railings specified as Solid or No Rail.

- Uncheck **Include Bottom Rail** to eliminate the bottom rail and extend the balusters to the floor. Not available for Panel railings.
- Check **Raise Bottom Rail**, then specify the bottom rail's height off the floor platform in the text field below.

❹ A preview of the selected railing or fence, including any doorways or gates inserted into it, displays on the right. See "Dialog Preview Panes" on page 29.

Newels/Balusters Panel



- 1 Specify the height of the **Railing**.
 - Specify the **Railing Height**. For interior railings, this is measured from the height of the floor finish.
- 2 Specify the characteristics of the selected railing's **Newels/Posts**.
 - Specify the **Width** of each newel at its widest point.
 - Specify the **Height**, which is the height from the floor or ground to the top of the newel. Not available if Post to Rail, Post to Overhead Beam or Post to Ceiling is selected on the Rail Style panel.
 - Specify the on-center **Spacing** of the newel posts.
 - **Type** - Select Square, Round, or Library newels.

Note: Selecting Library from the drop-down list is the same as clicking the Library button to the immediate right and allows you to select a symbol from the library. See "Select Library Object Dialog" on page 356.

- 3 Specify the characteristics of the selected railing's **Balusters**. These settings are only available when the railing type is "Balusters".
 - Specify the **Width** or diameter of each baluster at its widest point.
 - Specify the on-center **Spacing** of the balusters.
 - **Type** - Select Square, Round, or Library balusters .
- 4 Specify the characteristics of the selected railing's **Panels**. These settings

are only available when the railing type is “Panels”.

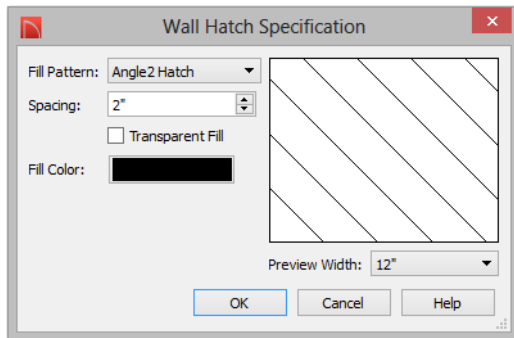
- Specify the panel’s **Thickness**.
- **Panel Type** is only available when the railing type has been specified as Panels on the Rail Style panel. Select “Solid”,

“Framed”, or “Library” to select a symbol to be used as a railing panel.

- 5 A preview of the selected railing or fence, including any doorways or gates inserted into it, displays on the right. See “Dialog Preview Panes” on page 29.

Wall Hatch Specification Dialog

To open the **Wall Hatch Specification** dialog, select a Wall Hatch and click the **Open Object** edit button. See “Hatch Wall” on page 121.



- Choose a **Fill Pattern** from the drop-down list. A preview of the selected pattern displays to the right.

The options that follow are disabled until

you select a pattern other than **None** from the **Fill Pattern** drop-down list.

- Define the **Spacing** for the selected fill pattern. Hatch spacing set at 12" matches grid/reference spacing set at 12".
- Check **Transparent Pattern Fill** to make the fill pattern transparent. When you check this option, any objects behind the fill pattern are visible through it.
- **Fill Color** - Click the color bar to select a color for the fill pattern lines or fill color if a solid fill is specified. This overrides the layer color. See “Select Color Dialog” on page 370.
- Choose a **Preview Width** from the drop-down list. This value controls how large an area the preview represents. The selected value indicates the length of each side of the preview in plan inches (mm).

Rooms

When walls or railings create an enclosed area, a “room” is created. You can select rooms defined in this manner like other objects in Home Designer Suite.

Rooms are assigned a Room Type. Each Room Type has predefined characteristics. For example, a room defined as Porch is assigned certain attributes that are different than a Kitchen.

Floor and ceiling heights, baseboard, chair-rail, and crown moldings and materials can be defined room-by-room or for the entire floor.

Chapter Contents

- Floor and Room Defaults
- Room Definition
- Selecting Rooms
- Displaying Rooms
- Editing Rooms
- Room Types
- Room Labels
- Decks
- Floor and Ceiling Heights
- Stepped Floor and Ceiling Platforms
- Special Ceilings
- Room Specification Dialog

Floor and Room Defaults



Select **Edit** > **Default Settings** to open the **Default Settings** dialog where you can access several defaults dialogs which directly affect rooms.

Floor Defaults

Default values for rooms are specified in the **Floor Defaults** dialog for the current floor. This dialog also controls important information that the program uses to create 3D models - particularly floor and ceiling heights and materials. Moldings can also be specified in the **Floor Defaults** dialog.

Only the defaults for the first floor of a building can be set ahead of time. The program uses the setting from the first floor to create subsequent floors. Once a new floor is built, its floor defaults can be changed. See “Floor Defaults Dialog” on page 200.

Room Defaults

Additional material defaults for several categories of Room Types can also be specified:

- Normal Rooms
- Kitchens/Baths/Utility Rooms
- Decks
- Garage/Porches/Slabs

These Room Defaults dialogs are accessed by expanding the “Rooms” category in the **Default Settings** dialog. Select a room type and click the **Edit** button to open the defaults dialog for that room type. See “Room Types” on page 147.

These dialogs allow you to specify the floor and ceiling covering materials for different Room Types.

Room Definition

A room is a totally enclosed area defined by any combination of joined walls or railings, visible or invisible. To be recognized as a room by Home Designer Suite, a room must have an unbroken perimeter.

Unless otherwise specified, rooms generate floor and ceiling platforms automatically. Most rooms are also automatically covered by the roof when one is built. There are exceptions to this, such as rooms defined as Decks. See “Room Types” on page 147.

If a room is drawn within a larger structure and none of its walls connect to the exterior walls, either directly or indirectly by

connecting to walls that do, it is referred to as an “island” room. The program will connect such a room to the larger structure with an Invisible Wall. See “Room Dividers and Invisible Walls” on page 120.

Room definition disappears if part or all of a surrounding wall is deleted. It is a good idea to finalize the position of walls before defining rooms with names and attributes such as floor height and ceiling height.


Subdividing Rooms

When a room area is first defined, it inherits its characteristics from the **Floor Defaults**

dialog for that floor. If the room is then specified as a particular type, it may inherit properties from the **Room Defaults** dialog associated with its type.

If a new room is created by subdividing a larger room, it inherits its characteristics from that larger room - including any non-default settings.

Selecting Rooms


Room definition is established when a room is completely enclosed by walls. You can confirm that a room has room definition by using the **Select Objects**  tool to select it. When a fully-enclosed room is selected, the room highlights.

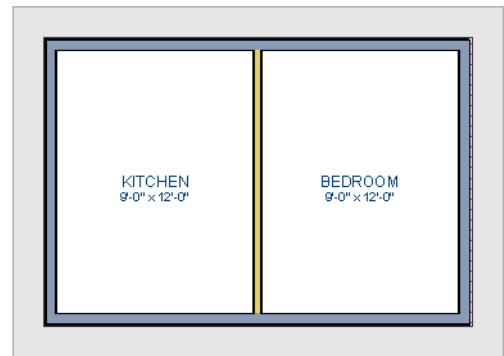


The room at left is selected


The Exterior Room

You can also select the exterior of a model. This allows you to control the building's exterior wall coverings and materials using the **Room Specification** dialog.


Click just outside an exterior wall using the **Select Objects**  tool to select the Exterior Room. When it is selected, a highlighted band around the plan's exterior displays. This band represents the selection area for the Exterior Room.




The Exterior Room is selected


In camera views and overviews, the Exterior Room can be selected by clicking on the exterior surface of an exterior wall using the **Select Objects**  tool.

In 3D Views

Click on the floor of a room or on a wall surface inside the room in a 3D view using the **Select Objects**  tool. If you select another object instead of the room, click

Select Next Object  edit button or press the Tab key until the room is selected. The Status Bar indicates which object is currently selected.

The Exterior Room can also be in 3D views selected by clicking once on the exterior

surface of an exterior wall using the **Select Objects**  tool.

Note: If the wall height of the Exterior Room is adjusted in a 3D view, the default Floor or Ceiling Height of the entire floor is changed. See “Floor and Room Defaults” on page 144.

Displaying Rooms

Unlike most things in Home Designer Suite, a room is not an individual object. Rather, a room is defined by the walls that enclose it.

In Floor Plan View

Rooms typically display a transparent fill in floor plan view. You can, however, specify a solid color or fill pattern for individual rooms in the **Room Specification** dialog. See “Fill Style Panel” on page 160.

In order for room fill styles to display, the “Rooms” layer must be turned on. See “Displaying Objects” on page 74.

Room labels that include the room’s name as well as its size and other information can be

set to display in floor plan view. See “Room Labels” on page 149.

In 3D Views

Rooms can be viewed in 3D views created by any of the 3D view tools. The **Dollhouse View** tool can be used to see all rooms on the current floor without their ceilings. See “Creating Overviews” on page 384.

In the Materials List

The contents of a room, including furnishings and floor and ceiling materials can be calculated using the **Calculate From Room** tool. See “Calculate From Room” on page 492.

Editing Rooms

Once a room is defined by walls or railings, its structure and appearance can be edited using the edit buttons or the **Room Specification** dialog.

In 3D Views

The floor and ceiling heights for floors and rooms can be edited using edit handles in 3D views. Lowered ceilings cannot be edited in 3D. See “3D Views” on page 381.

The default floor and ceiling heights for an entire model can be edited by selecting the Exterior Room. See “The Exterior Room” on page 145.

To change default ceiling heights in 3D


1. Create a 3D view of the exterior of your plan.
2. Click on the exterior surface of a wall to select the Exterior Room. The Status Bar indicates when the exterior room is

- selected. See “The Exterior Room” on page 145.
- Click and drag the edit handle on the top wall edge to adjust the default ceiling height, or the edit handle on the bottom edge to adjust the default floor height. Temporary dimensions display.
 - Click and drag the edit handle on the top wall edge to adjust the room ceiling height, or the handle on the bottom edge to adjust its floor height. Temporary dimensions display.
 - As you drag a handle, notice that all walls defining that room are affected.

Note: Any rooms that do not update when the default floor or ceiling height is changed are not using the default values. To use the default values for a specific room, check Default for any of the room height values in its specification dialog. See “General Panel” on page 155.

To adjust room heights in 3D


- Create a 3D view of your plan.
- Click on the surface of a wall that faces the room to select it. When the room is selected in 3D:
 - The room highlights.
 - The Status Bar says “Room”. See “The Status Bar” on page 30.
 - Two edit handles display on the top and bottom edges of the highlighted wall.

Room materials such as floor, ceiling, and wall materials can be changed in 3D views using the **Material Painter** . See “The Material Painter” on page 362.

In the Specification Dialog



Floor and ceiling heights, floor platform structure, moldings, and materials can all be specified in the **Room Specification** dialog. See “Room Specification Dialog” on page 155.

- Click the **Calculate Materials for Room**  edit button to create a materials list of the contents of the selected room, not including walls. See “Calculate From Room” on page 492.

Room Types

When a room is first created by enclosing an area with walls, it is assigned a generic room type of “Unspecified.”

Once your floor plan is laid out, each room should be assigned a **Room Type** in the **Room Specification** dialog. See “General Panel” on page 155. The Room Type applies appropriate structural and display properties to the room.

When you assign a Room Type, a label showing the room’s Type displays in floor plan view.

You can edit the text of a room label in floor plan view, but the type of room originally assigned remains until it is changed in the **Room Specification** dialog. See “Editing Room Labels” on page 149.

Available Room Types

There are three categories of room types: Interior, Exterior and Hybrid.

Interior - Living, Dining, Family, Kitchen, Nook, Bath, Master Bath, Master Bedrm, Bedroom, Study, Office, Entry, Hall, Closet, Dressing, Storage, Laundry, Utility and Unspecified.

Exterior - Court, Deck, Balcony.

Hybrid - Open Below, Garage, Slab, Porch, Attic.

Effects of Room Types

The program applies specific structural and display properties to rooms depending on the assigned Room Type.

Living and Conditioned Areas

- All interior type rooms are included in Living Area calculations; exterior and hybrid type rooms are not.
- With the exception of Unspecified rooms, all interior type rooms are included in Conditioned Area calculations. Open Below rooms are also included; however, exterior and other hybrid type rooms are not. See “Conditioned Area Totals” on page 497.

Ceilings and Roofs

- Interior rooms have a ceiling and roof above them unless specified otherwise.
- Exterior rooms are assumed to be open to the outside and do not generate a roof above them, or room moldings.
- Attic rooms are ignored by the program’s automatic roof generator.

- Garage, Slabs, and Porches are treated like exterior rooms in all cases except that they generate a ceiling and a roof above them.
- A room’s default ceiling structure and finish definitions are determined by its Room Type. See “Room Defaults” on page 144.




Floors and Foundations

- Open Below is a unique type of interior room. It has no floor platform and can be used for defining stairwell openings.
- Walls that define the garage have a foundation under them with a concrete slab at the top of stem wall or grade beam.
- The floor in Garage and Slab rooms display in 3D on Floor 0, not the first floor. See “Garages” on page 211.
- A room’s default floor structure and finish definitions are determined by its Room Type. See “Room Defaults” on page 144.
- Courts, decks and balconies do not generate foundations.

Doors and Windows

- A window placed in a wall between an exterior room and an interior room always faces out toward the exterior.
- Windows placed between interior rooms generate a warning message.
- Door placed between interior and exterior type rooms display threshold lines.
- Interior doors do not display thresholds.
- Open Below rooms are treated as interior rooms for window and door placement.


Electrical

- The **Auto Place Outlets**  tool adds outlets automatically to all interior rooms except bathrooms. Only one outlet over each sink is added for a bathroom.
- The **Auto Place Outlets**  tool places fewer outlets in hybrid rooms.
- The **Auto Place Outlets**  tool does not place outlets in exterior type rooms, Porches or Open Below rooms.
- Any outlet manually placed in an exterior room automatically becomes a waterproof outlet designed for exterior use.

Trim and Molding


- Moldings are not automatically drawn in exterior or hybrid rooms.
- Baseboards and chair rails are not initially drawn in Open Below rooms, but crown molding, if present, is.

Plan Check


- **Plan Check**  uses the room type and its characteristics for basic plan checking. For example, a closet does not need a smoke detector but a bedroom does. See “Plan Check” on page 445.

Room Labels

A label can display in floor plan view for any area defined as a room. There are two parts to each room label:

- The Room Name, which is similar to a **Text**  object and can be selected and edited. See “The Text Tools” on page 419.
- The room area, which is not a standard text entry and cannot be directly edited.

You can assign a custom Room Name, move a room label or even delete it without affecting the Room Type. See “Room Types” on page 147.

 Room labels can move or even disappear when room entries are revalidated.

Displaying Room Labels


The display of room labels is controlled in the **Display Options** dialog. Room labels are placed on the “Rooms, Labels” layer and use

the Text Style assigned to that layer. See “Display Options Dialog” on page 75.

You can specify how the area of rooms is calculated by the program by turning on the display of one or more of these layers:

- **Rooms, Standard Area** is measured from the center of interior walls to the exterior wall framing. It is rounded to the nearest square foot or mm and does not include the area within bay, box and bow windows.
- **Rooms, Interior Area** is measured from the inner surfaces of all the room's walls.
- **Rooms, Interior Dimensions** is also measured from the inner surfaces of the room walls.

Editing Room Labels

Room labels are similar to simple **Text**  objects and can be changed, moved and

resized much like any other text object. You can also modify a room label's Text Style and other attributes in the **Room Label Specification** dialog.

The text of a room label cannot be modified in its specification dialog, however: it must be specified in the **Room Specification** dialog. See "General Panel" on page 155.

If you delete a room label, the Room Type and Room Name remain unchanged in the **Room Specification** dialog. To restore the label, check the **Show Room Label** checkbox on the General panel of that dialog.

Room Area

Unlike the rest of a room label, the room area and dimensions are not standard text entries and cannot be edited or changed. The room area moves, resizes and rotates with the rest of the room label, but you can turn the area and dimensions on or off separately in the **Display Options** dialog. See "Displaying Rooms" on page 146.

The **Interior Area** room area calculation includes the areas within bay, box or bow windows, while the Standard Area and Interior Dimensions calculations do not.


Living Area

The **Living Area** label displays the area of the floor platform for living areas in a plan. It is found near the bottom center of the plan as soon as a room area is defined by walls and/or railing.

The Living Area displays for an individual building if half or more of that building's area

is living area. For example, a living area label would not display for a detached garage that includes a small bathroom.

You can choose not to display this label by unchecking **Show Living Area Label** in the **General Plan Defaults** dialog or by turning off the display of the "Room Labels" layer in the **Display Options** dialog. See "General Plan Defaults Dialog" on page 57.

The Living Area label can be moved or deleted. To restore a deleted Living Area label, select **Tools> Plan Check** . You can click the **Done** button immediately, without actually completing Plan Check. See "Plan Check" on page 445.

Living Area vs. Footprint


The Living Area should not be mistaken for the footprint of the house. Only true livable areas are included in the Living Area calculation. By default, exterior and hybrid room types such as Garage, Deck, and Porch are not included. Neither is any room labeled Open Below or Attic. See "Available Room Types" on page 148.


Regardless of its room type, you can specify whether a room is included in the Living Area calculation in the **Room Specification** dialog. See "General Panel" on page 155.

Living Area is measured from either the outside surface or the outer surface of the structural layer of exterior walls. When walls separate the living area from exterior or hybrid room types, it is measured to the wall center line.

Decks

A Deck room is an exterior-type room that uses deck planking and framing to create a floor platform rather than using a single floor surface that spans the entire room area.

To draw a deck, select **Build> Deck> Deck Railing** , then click and drag to draw a railing.


- To create a deck without a railing, use one of the **Deck Edge** tools. See “Fencing Tools” on page 119.
- You can also create a regular, polygon-shaped deck using the **Polygon Shaped Deck**  tool. See “Polygon Shaped Deck” on page 118.

A room does not have to be defined by Deck Railing to be specified as a “Deck.” See

“Room Types” on page 147. You can also define a room as a “Deck” in the **Room Specification** dialog. See “General Panel” on page 155.

By default, decks do not have roofs. If you want a roof over a deck, check **Roof Over This Room** in the **Room Specification** dialog. See “Structure Panel” on page 156.

To give the roof a visible means of support, you can select the **Post to Beam** option in the **Wall Specification** dialog. See “Rail Style Panel” on page 138.

Openings in deck railings can be created using **Doorways** . See “Openings in Railings” on page 169.

Floor and Ceiling Heights

Use the **Room Specification** dialog to set floor heights on a room-by-room basis. See “Room Specification Dialog” on page 155.

Different rooms on the same floor can have unique floor and ceiling heights, allowing you to create:

- Split levels and bi-levels
- Sunken living rooms and garages
- Cathedral and coffered ceilings.



In 3D views, you can adjust the default floor and ceiling height for the entire floor or the floor and ceiling height for an individual room. See “In 3D Views” on page 146.

In order to raise or lower an area’s floor or ceiling height, you must give it a room

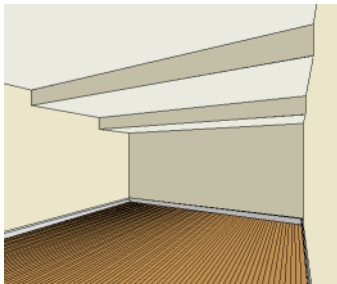
definition. To create room definition without enclosing an area with solid walls, use

Railings .

Ceiling and floor heights are interrelated. Changing the floor height in one room can affect ceiling heights of the rooms below.

- If a room's floor is lowered, its ceiling height is increased while the ceiling below that room drops.
- If the floor is raised, the ceiling height decreases while the ceiling below that room is raised.

If the rooms above a particular room have more than one floor height, the room's ceiling is stepped.



In a situation like this, a Lowered Ceiling can be used to cover “steps” made by different

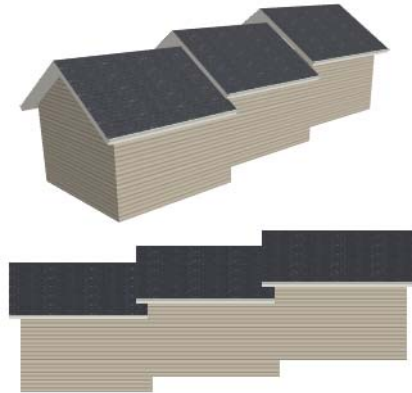
floor heights on the floor above. See “General Panel” on page 155.

To ensure that steps in floor and ceiling platforms have solid sides, define their room areas using Invisible Railings.

Split Levels

A split level can be created by raising or lowering the floor and ceiling heights of various areas of the plan.

In the following example, the lowest floor height is 0, the next is 24, and the next is 48 inches. The ceiling height in each room is set at 109 inches. See “Split Levels” on page 203.



Stepped Floor and Ceiling Platforms

Each floor has default floor and ceiling heights. You can, however, use the **Room Specification** dialog to specify floor and ceiling heights on a room by room basis to create stepped floors and ceilings. See “Structure Panel” on page 156.

If you require a single floor platform with a uniform height and thickness but different ceiling heights for the rooms below, specify a lowered ceiling using the **Ceiling Finish Specification** dialog. See “Lowered Ceilings” on page 153.

Special Ceilings

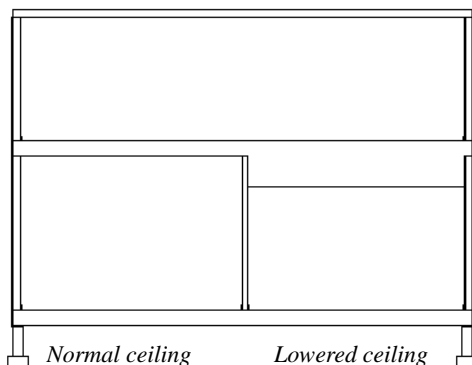
By default, the program builds a flat ceiling platform on top the wall plates of a room. More varied and complex ceilings are made

using settings in the **Room Specification** dialog.


Lowered Ceilings

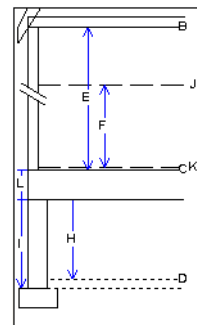
You can define a lowered or dropped ceiling in a room without affecting the top plate height of the walls by increasing the thickness of the Ceiling Finish.

In the following illustration, the default ceiling height for the entire first floor is 120", and the room on the right has a ceiling finish lowered to 96".



To create a lowered ceiling

1. Select the room in which you would like to specify a lowered ceiling.
2. Click the **Open Object**  edit button to open the **Room Specification** dialog.
3. On the Structure panel, increase the **Ceiling Finish** value by the amount that you would like to lower the ceiling.
4. Notice that the preview diagram represents the Finished Ceiling height (F).



Cathedral Ceilings

A cathedral ceiling has the same pitch as the roof and is created using the underside of the roof above the room.

To create a cathedral ceiling

1. Build a roof for your plan. See "Roofs" on page 219.

2. Select the room and open the **Room Specification** dialog. See "Room Specification Dialog" on page 155.
3. On the Structure panel, clear the checkbox for **Ceiling Over This Room**.

Tray Ceilings

A tray ceiling is flat in the center and sloped around the perimeter, and is easily created using the underside of roof planes above.

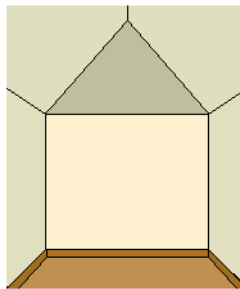
To create a tray ceiling

1. In the **Room Specification** dialog, make sure that **Ceiling Over this Room** is checked, then specify the desired height of the walls as the **Ceiling Height**. See “Structure Panel” on page 156.
2. Make sure that **Auto Rebuild Roofs** is unchecked, then build the roof. See “Build Roof Dialog” on page 221.
3. Change the **Ceiling Height** of the room to the desired height of the flat ceiling surface in its center.

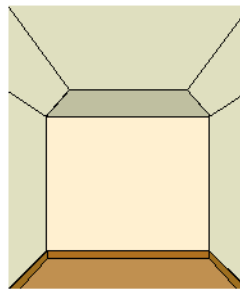
In floor plan view, dashed lines indicate where the ceiling changes from sloped to flat. These lines are located on the “Ceiling Break Lines” layer in the **Display Options** dialog. See “Display Options Dialog” on page 75.

If the roof is rebuilt after the ceiling height is adjusted upward, the new roof will be raised to match the new ceiling height and a tray ceiling will not be created.

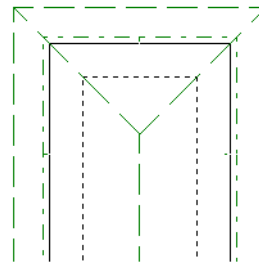
In the following example, a hip roof is built on 8’ (2400 mm) ceilings. After the roof is built, the Ceiling Height is raised to 10’ (3000 mm). The resulting ceiling follows the roof pitch for 2’ (600 mm), then becomes a flat ceiling.



Hip roof with cathedral ceiling over.



Hip roof, ceiling over, ceiling height raised.




Ceiling Break lines in floor plan view.

Cantilever Undersides

Occasionally, a room will cantilever out past an exterior wall. You can specify the surface material of the underside of a cantilever on

the Materials panel of the **Room Specification** dialog. See “Room Specification Dialog” on page 155.

Room Specification Dialog

 The **Room Specification** dialog controls the structural characteristics and appearance of a selected room. To open the **Room Specification** dialog, select a room and click the **Open Object** edit button. See “Selecting Rooms” on page 145.

Several of the panels in the **Room Specification** dialog are also found in the **Floor** and **Room Defaults** dialogs. See “Floor and Room Defaults” on page 144.

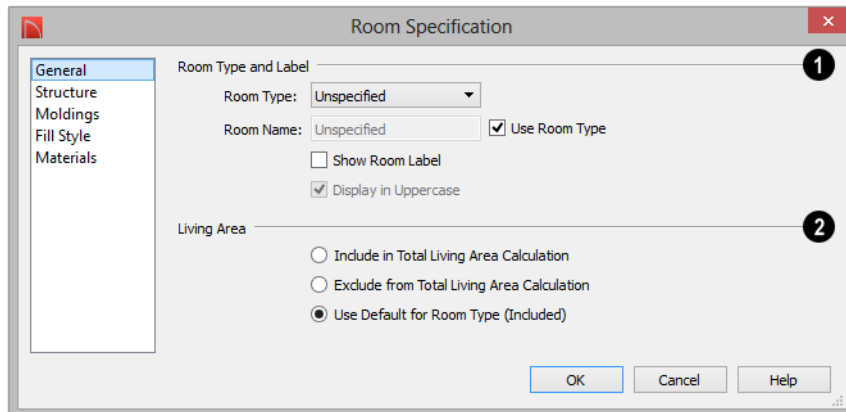
Some values in this dialog are dynamic. A value with **Default** checked is referenced from the **Floor Defaults** dialog. To return a value to the default, replace the check mark. See “Dynamic Defaults” on page 57.

The settings in this dialog are similar to those in the **Floor Defaults** dialog, but affect only the selected room. See “Floor Defaults Dialog” on page 200.

General Panel

The General panel is not available in the **Room Defaults** dialog, and only two of the settings here are active in the **Floor Defaults**

dialog. See “Floor and Room Defaults” on page 144.



1 The settings here control the Room Type and the appearance of the Room Label

- Select the **Room Type**. This affects some of the room’s characteristics. See “Room Types” on page 147.
- If you wish to use a custom name in the room label, uncheck **Use Room Type**,

then specify the desired **Room Name** in the text field.

- Check **Show Room Label** to display the room label in floor plan view. This option is unchecked automatically if you select “Unspecified” as the room type. See “Room Labels” on page 149.

- Uncheck **Display in Uppercase** to use the same capitalization as the selected Room Type or Room Name in the room label. When this is checked, all letters in the label are capitalized.
- ② Specify whether the selected room is included in the **Living Area** calculation. See “Living Area” on page 150.
- Select **Include in Total Living Area Calculation** to include the room in the Living Area regardless of its Room Type.
- Select **Exclude from Total Living Area Calculation** exclude the room from the Living Area regardless of its Room Type.
- Select **Use Default for Room Type (Included/Excluded)** to base the selected room’s inclusion in the Living Area on its Room Type. The default for the selected Room Type is stated in parentheses.

Structure Panel

The Structure panel is also found in the **Floor** and **Room Defaults** dialogs and features a cross section diagram that shows the relationships between its various heights and platform thicknesses. It is meant to represent the relationships between heights and thicknesses rather than provide a scaled drawing of the model.

Two floors can be included in the diagram: the floor that the selected room is located on, and the floor below it, if one exists.

What appears in both the diagram and in the settings to its left may be affected by the location where you clicked to select the room. For example:

- If the selected room is located above two rooms with different structural settings, the position of the pointer relative to these two lower rooms determines which of them displays as the floor below.
- If the selected room is located below two rooms with different floor heights, its absolute and relative ceiling height settings will be disabled.

Room Specification

General
Structure
Moldings
Fill Style
Materials

Absolute Elevations ①

Floor Above (A): 121 3/4" Default
Ceiling (B): 109 1/8" Default
Floor (C): 0" Default
Floor Below (D): -46 1/8" Default

Relative Heights ②

Rough Ceiling (E): 109 1/8" Default
Finished Ceiling (F): 107 5/8" Default
SWT To Ceiling (G): 109 1/8" Default
Ceiling Below (H): 33 1/2" Default
Stem Wall (I): 37 1/2" Default
SWT = Stem Wall Top

Ceiling ④

Roof Over This Room
 Ceiling Over This Room
 Use Soffit Surface for Ceiling

Ceiling Structure: 5 1/2"
Ceiling Finish (J): 5/8" Default

Floor ⑤

Floor Finish (K): 7/8" Default
Floor Structure (L): 12 5/8"

OK Cancel Help

Check the **Default** box beside any height value to restore the default setting.

① **Absolute Elevations** - These height values are measured from the default first floor height of zero. See “Floor and Ceiling Heights” on page 151.

- Specify the **Floor Above** height, which is the floor height of the room or rooms on the floor above the selected room. If multiple floor heights are specified directly above the selected room, this setting will be inactive and “No Change” will display.
- Specify the **Ceiling** height of the selected room. Not available in the **Floor Defaults** dialog on Floor 0, or if multiple floor

heights are specified above the selected room.

- Specify the **Floor** height.

Note: The default floor height for Floor 1 is 0. It can be modified in the Room Specification dialog, but not in the Floor 1 Defaults dialog. See “Floor and Room Defaults” on page 144.

If a room is defined directly beneath the selected room on the floor below, additional settings may be available.

- Specify the **Floor Below** height, which is the floor height of the room directly

below where you clicked to select the currently selected room.

- If the selected room is directly above a Garage and there is a foundation present, you can specify the **SWT Below** height, which is the top height of the concrete stem walls around the perimeter of the garage.

2 Relative Heights - These height values are measured from surfaces within the selected room or the room below.

- Specify the **Rough Ceiling** height, as measured from the subfloor surface to the bottom of the ceiling framing. Not available if multiple floor heights are specified directly above the selected room.
- Specify the **Finished Ceiling** height, as measured from the finished floor surface to the finished ceiling surface. Not available if multiple floor heights are specified directly above the selected room.
- Specify the distance from the **Stem Wall Top to Ceiling**. Only available when **Floor for this Room is Supplied by the Foundation 'Room' from the Floor Below** has been checked.
- Specify the **Ceiling Below** height, which is the height of the ceiling of the room below, as measured from that room's sub-floor to rough ceiling surfaces. Not available when Auto Rebuild Foundation is enabled or if there is no room below the selected room. See "Rebuilding Foundations" on page 210.

- Specify the **Stem Wall** height, which is measured from the bottom of the room's floor framing to the top of the foundation wall footing and including a treated sill plate, if one is specified. Only available if the selected room or the room below it is defined by foundation walls.

3 A cross section diagram showing the relationship between the various height settings displays here for reference.

4 Specify the characteristics of the room's **Ceiling**.

- If **Roof Over This Room** is checked, a roof automatically generates over the room. If unchecked, no roof generates.
- If **Ceiling Over This Room** is checked, the room has a flat ceiling. If unchecked, the ceiling follows the underside of the roof.
- Check **Use Soffit Surface for Ceiling** to improve the 3D appearance of the transition between ceiling and eaves of exterior rooms with Ceiling Over This Room unchecked.
- The thickness of the **Ceiling Structure** displays here for reference but cannot be changed.
- Specify the thickness of the **Ceiling Finish** layer.
- 5** Specify the thickness of the **Floor Finish** layer.
- The thickness of the **Floor Structure** displays here for reference but cannot be changed.

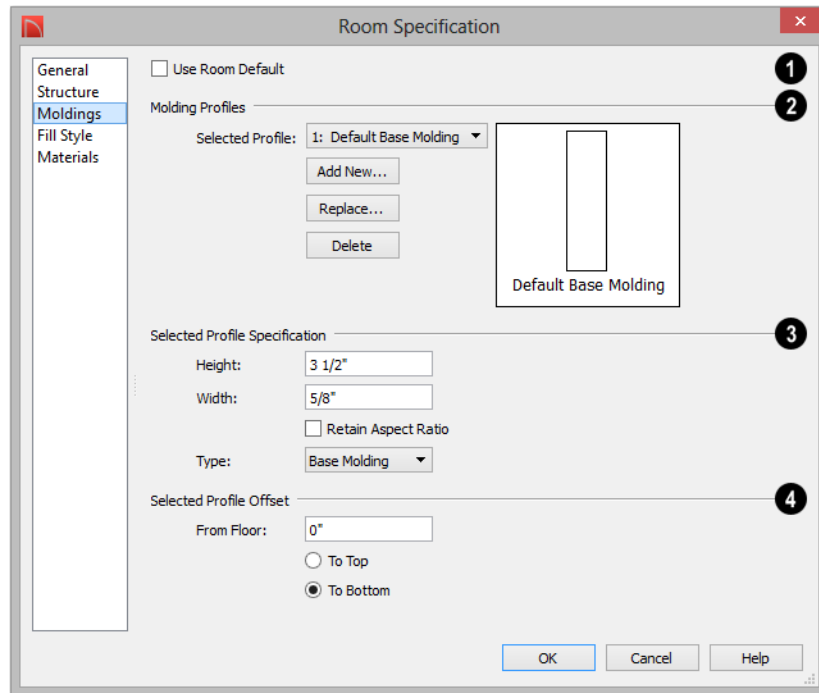
Moldings Panel

Chair rail, crown and base moldings can be assigned to a selected room on the Moldings

panel. Moldings are placed around the wall surfaces of a room and continue around the

surface of any soffit that is attached to the wall at the molding height.

The settings on this panel are also similar to those found in the **Floor Defaults** dialog, but affect only the selected room instead of all rooms on the current floor.



- ❶ Uncheck **Use Room Default** to enable the settings that follow. When checked, the room uses the default moldings set in the **Floor Defaults** dialog. See “Floor Defaults Dialog” on page 200.
- ❷ Specify the **Molding Profiles** assigned to the selected room. The Default Base Molding is a basic rectangular stock profile rather than a profile from the library.
 - The **Selected Molding** displays at the top of the drop-down list. Click the arrow to see all moldings currently applied to the selected room.
 - Click the **Add New** button to open the **Select Library Object** dialog and select a new molding profile to apply to the room. See “Select Library Object Dialog” on page 356.
 - Click the **Replace** button to replace the currently selected molding with a different selected molding profile.
 - Click the **Delete** button to remove the currently selected molding from the room.
- ❸ **Selected Molding Specification** - Make changes to the currently selected molding.

- Specify the **Height** and **Width** of the currently selected molding.
 - When **Retain Aspect Ratio** is checked, if you change either the Height or Width, the other value changes to maintain their original ratio. When this is unchecked, the two values can be edited independently.
 - Select the currently selected molding's **Type** from the drop-down list: Base, Chair Rail, or Base Molding.
- 4 Selected Profile Offset** - Specify the distance of the selected molding **From Floor** and select whether this distance is measured **To Top** or **To Bottom** of the molding profile.

Fill Style Panel

The settings on this panel affect the appearance of the room in floor plan view. This panel is also found in the **Floor Defaults** dialog. For more information, see “Fill Style Panel” on page 439.

Materials Panel

The settings on this panel affect the appearance of a selected room's walls, floor, ceiling and moldings in 3D views. See “Materials Panel” on page 364.

Default molding and ceiling and floor covering materials can be set in the **Floor Defaults** dialogs.

Doors

Home Designer Suite comes with tools for creating a wide variety of interior and exterior doors. In addition, the library offers a large selection of specialty doors and doorways including hinged, sliding, pocket, bifold, and garage doors. Additional name-brand door catalogs are also available for download from our web site, www.HomeDesignerSoftware.com.

Chapter Contents

- Door Defaults
- The Door Tools
- Displaying Doors
- Editing Doors
- Changing Door Swings
- Special Doors
- Door Specification Dialog

Door Defaults



Default Settings are accessed by selecting **Edit> Default Settings**.

Click the “+” next to **Doors** to show the door sub-headings. Select a subheading and click the **Edit** button to open the defaults dialog associated with your selection:

The values in the **Door Defaults** dialog are initial values for interior or exterior doors. Individual doors can be edited after they are created.

The **Door Defaults** dialogs look nearly the same as the **Door Specification** dialog. See

“Door Specification Dialog” on page 170.

There are only a couple of differences:

- Since default settings are specified here, “Use Default” is not an option for some settings as it is in the **Door Specification** dialog.
- The **Door Type** cannot be changed in the Defaults dialogs.

The Door Tools



To place a door, select the type you want from the **Build> Door** submenu.

With a Door Tool active, move your mouse pointer over a wall section. If there is room enough along the wall to fit a 12" (300 mm) wide door, a preview of the door will display. When a preview can be seen, click on a wall to place a door in the wall at that location.

Hinged and Sliding Doors have both Interior and Exterior Door Defaults. If the wall is an exterior wall or one that separates an interior from an exterior room, the program places an exterior door based on the default settings for exterior doors. If the wall is an interior wall, the program places an interior door based on the default settings for interior doors. This rule applies to doors copied and pasted from one location to another just as it does to newly placed doors. See "Door Defaults" on page 161.

Once placed, any door may be changed into any other type of door using the **Door Specification** dialog. See "Door Specification Dialog" on page 170.

Hinged Doors



Select **Build> Door> Hinged Door** and click a wall where you want to place a hinged door. Hinged doors can be placed on interior or exterior walls, and can be set up so that different door styles are placed in each. A hinged door becomes a double door when its width is four feet or greater.

The initial swing direction of a hinged door depends on the location of the mouse pointer

relative to the wall when you click. The door will swing towards the side of the wall that you click nearest.

The initial hinge side of a hinged door can be set by clicking to place the door and then holding the mouse button down rather than releasing it. Move the mouse toward the end of the door that you would like the hinges to be on: as the mouse pointer nears either end, the door preview's hinge side will move to that end. You can also adjust the door's swing direction in this manner. When the swing direction and hinge side are correct, release the mouse button.

Doorways



Choose **Build> Door> Doorway** and click a wall to place a doorway (an opening without a door). Doorways can be placed on interior or exterior walls, or in railings and fences to provide an opening. You can assign a door from the library to a doorway.

Sliding Doors



Select **Build> Door> Sliding Door** and click a wall where you want to place a sliding door. Sliding doors can be placed on interior or exterior walls and can be set up so that different door styles are placed in each. If placed in an exterior wall, the door is glass; if placed in an interior wall, it is a solid slab.

The initial opening side of a sliding door can be specified by moving the mouse pointer along the wall while the mouse button is still pressed.

The default sliding door dimensions are 5'-0" x 6'-8" with a 12" bottom frame and a 6" frame on the sides and top.

Pocket Doors



Select **Build> Door> Pocket Door** and click a wall where you want to place a pocket door.

As with sliding doors, the initial opening side of a pocket door can be specified by moving the mouse pointer along the wall while the mouse button is still pressed.

The default pocket door dimensions are 2'-6" x 6'-8" high. A pocket door becomes a double pocket door if its width is four feet or greater.

Bifold Doors



Choose **Build> Door> Bifold Door** and click a wall where you want to place a bifold door.

Like a hinged door, the initial opening side of a bifold door depends on the location of the mouse pointer relative to the wall when you click. The door will open towards the side of the wall that you click nearest.

Similarly, the initial hinge side of a sliding door can be specified by moving the mouse pointer along the wall while the mouse button is still pressed.

The default interior single bifold door is 2'-6" x 6'-8". A bifold door becomes a double bifold if its width is greater than three feet.

Bifold doors always display closed in all 3D views.

Garage Doors



Choose **Build> Door> Garage Door** and click a wall to place a garage door.

The default garage door is 8'-0" x 7'-0" high. A garage door must be at least two feet wide.

In floor plan view, dashed lines show the size and location of the garage door when open.

Garage doors will build into a garage stem wall provided the room is designated as a garage before the door is inserted. See "Room Types" on page 147.

The Doors & Doorways Library Catalog



The Doors & Doorways library catalog can be accessed by selecting **View> Library Browser** and browsing to Home Designer Core Catalogs> Architectural. This catalog contains a variety of interior and exterior doors, as well as special entryways and wrapped openings.

Entryways and wrapped openings are examples of Doorways, which are wall openings that do not have doors within them.



To add a door to the Doorway, select a **Door Type** other than "Doorway" from the drop-down list in the **Door Specification** dialog. See "General Panel" on page 171.

You can also select a custom door from the library and place it into a doorway in floor plan view or any 3D view.

To place a library door in a doorway

1. Go to floor plan view or any 3D view.
2. Open the Library Browser.

3. Browse or search to find a custom door style that suits your needs.
4. Select the door in the Library Browser, then click on the doorway to place the selected door within it. If a door already exists, it is replaced.
5. Continue clicking other doorways as needed.

Displaying Doors



The display of doors and door labels is controlled in the **Display Options** dialog. See “Display Options Dialog” on page 75.

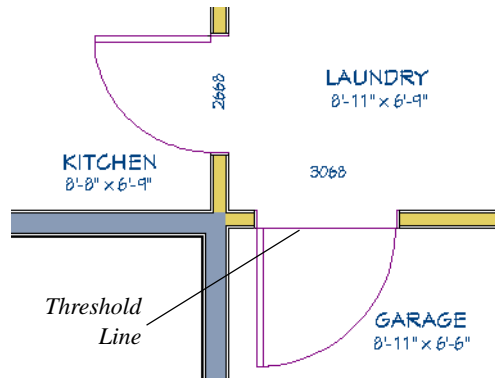
Doors can only be placed in walls, so if a wall’s layer is turned off, any doors placed in that wall will not display, either. See “Displaying Walls” on page 125.

If the “Doors” layer is turned off, doors and their casing do not display but openings in the walls where they are located are visible.

In Floor Plan View

A door’s jamb, and swing are all represented in floor plan view. Doors in exterior walls and doors that open to exterior type rooms such as a Garage, Porch, or Deck have a threshold line across the opening in floor plan view. See “Room Types” on page 147.

You can specify whether an exterior door has a threshold in the **Door Specification** dialog. See “Casing Panel” on page 173.



If an exterior door to a Garage room on Floor 1 extends into a Garage stem wall or curb on Floor 0, its location will be indicated on Floor 0. See “Garages” on page 211.

In 3D Views

You can specify whether a selected door is shown open or closed in 3D views by clicking the **Show Door Open in 3D** and **Show Door Closed in 3D** edit buttons as well as in the **Door Specification** dialog. See “General Panel” on page 171.

If a door is set to display open in 3D, the angle of the open door can be changed using

the edit handles in floor plan view. See “Using the Mouse” on page 165.

Door Labels


Door labels display in floor plan view, centered on the doors they represent, when the “Doors, Labels” layer is turned on and use the “Default Label Style” Text Style. See “Object Labels” on page 429.


Door labels indicate Width and Height. For example:

- In Imperial plans, the label for a 3’-0” wide, 6’-8” high double hung window will read 3068.
- In metric plans, the label for a 900 mm wide, 2100 mm high double hung window will read 900x2100.

Editing Doors


Before a door can be edited, it must be selected. To select a door, click it when the

Select Objects  tool or any of the **Door**

Tools  are active. Doors and/or windows can also be group selected and edited. See “Selecting Objects” on page 86.

Blocked units are made up of individual doors and windows that have been grouped together to act as one object. You can create what is essentially a blocked door unit by assigning a library door to a doorway from the library

Select a blocked unit by clicking on it in any view. To select a door that is a component of a blocked unit, click at the location of the component in question, then click the **Select**

Next Object  edit button. See “Selecting Objects” on page 86.

In the Specification Dialog



The most precise method of editing a door is to use the **Door Specification** dialog. Door type, size, casing, materials, and more can all be specified in this dialog.

See “Door Specification Dialog” on page 170.

Using the Mouse






In floor plan view, click either of the two end handles and drag along the wall to change the width. The label showing the size updates as the handles are dragged. Click and drag the Move handle at the center to move the door along the wall it is placed in. Use the triangular Rotate handle to adjust the door’s swing. If the door’s label displays, an additional handle is available to move the label.

In 3D views, a selected door has five edit handles: the Move handle at the center and a Resize handle on each edge. Click and drag an edge handle to resize the door.

A door or window moved against an intersecting wall temporarily stops when the casing meets the intersecting wall. You can continue to drag and it resumes movement past the intersecting wall.

Using the Edit Tools

A selected door or doors can be edited in a variety of ways using the buttons on the edit toolbar. See “The Edit Toolbar” on page 26.

- Click the **Change Opening/Hinge Side**  edit button to change the side of the door that its hinges are on. See “Changing Door Swings” on page 166.
- Click the **Change Swing Side**  edit button to change which direction the selected door swings.
- Click the **Show Door Open in 3D**  or **Show Door Closed in 3D**  edit button to control the selected door’s appearance in 3D views. See “In 3D Views” on page 164.
- Click the **Gable Over Door/Window**  to create a gable over the selected door(s) the next time the roof is rebuilt. See


“Gable Over Door/Window” on page 224.

Centering Doors



The **Center Object** edit button allows you to center a selected door along a wall within a room or relative to a cabinet or window. See “Using Center Object” on page 107.


To center a door along a wall


1. Select a door or combination of windows and doors in floor plan view.
2. Click the **Center Object**  edit button then choose from one of the following options:
 - Click near a wall inside a room to center the door along that wall in that room.
 - Click outside the house (on the exterior room) near an exterior wall to center the door along an exterior wall.

Changing Door Swings



Door swing direction and hinge side can be changed using the **Change Opening/Hinge Side** and **Change Swing Side** edit buttons.

The **Change Opening/Hinge Side**  edit button is available for all doors except double doors and garage doors.

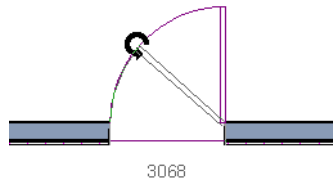
The **Change Swing Side**  edit button is available for all doors except pocket doors.

Hinged Doors

In addition to using the edit buttons, hinged doors’ hinge side and swing direction can be changed using the triangular Rotate edit handle.

To adjust the angle of swing:

1. In floor plan view, select the door and grab the triangular handle.
2. Drag to change the amount of swing.

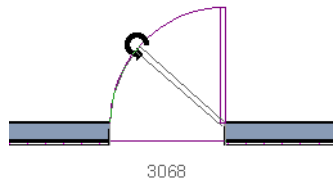


3. Release the mouse.

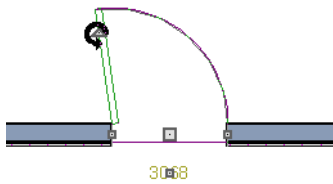
If you drag near the closed position, the door snaps to a closed position.

To change the swing using edit handles:

1. In floor plan view, select the door and grab the triangular edit handle.




2. Drag the pointer along the path of the new arc to change the hinge side and/or swing direction.

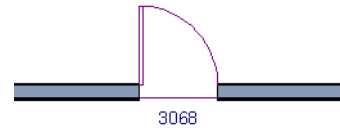
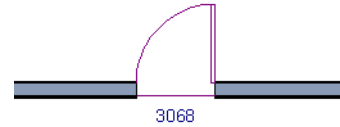



3. Release the mouse.

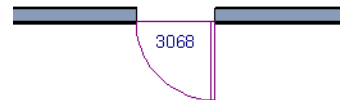
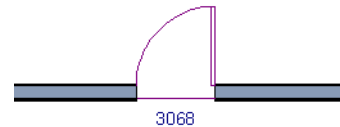
To change the swing using edit buttons:

1. In floor plan view, select the door.

2. To change the hinge side, click the **Change Opening/Hinge Side**  edit button.



3. To change the swing direction, click the **Change Swing Side**  edit button.




Sliding Doors

To change the side of a sliding door that is fixed, select the sliding door then click the

Change Opening/Hinge Side  edit button.




To flip the fixed and moving sides of the door, click the **Change Swing Side**  edit button.



As with hinged doors, you can also change the Opening/Hinge and Swing sides of a sliding door by clicking and dragging the triangular edit handle.

Pocket Doors

To change the direction of a pocket door, select it and click the **Change Opening/Hinge Side**  edit button.




Note: There must be enough room for the entire door to fit in the opposite wall or the door does not change.

As with hinged doors, you can also change the Opening/Hinge side of a pocket door by

clicking and dragging the triangular edit handle.

Bifold Doors

To change the side of a bifold door that is fixed, select it then click the **Change Opening/Hinge Side**  edit button.




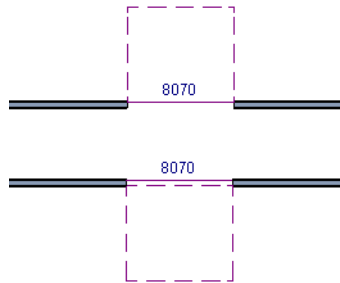
To change the hinged side of the door, click the **Change Swing Side**  edit button.



As with hinged doors, you can also change the Opening/Hinge and Swing sides of a bifold door by clicking and dragging the triangular edit handle.

Garage Doors

To change the side of a garage door that it faces, select it and click the **Change Swing Side**  edit button.



As with other door types, you can also change the Swing side of a bifold door by clicking and dragging the triangular edit handle.

Special Doors

A variety of special doors and doorways can be created in Home Designer Suite.


Wrapped Openings

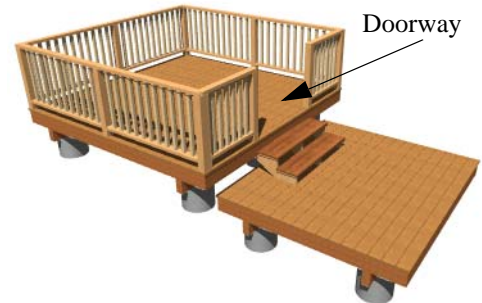
Wrapped openings of various shapes are available in the **Doors & Doorways Library**.

You can also create a wrapped opening by unchecking **Use Interior Casing** and/or **Use Exterior Casing** in a Doorway's **Door Specification** dialog. See "Casing Panel" on page 173. If base molding is present, it will wrap around the opening.



Openings in Railings

Use the **Doorway**  tool to open a railing for a stairway or other access.




To open a railing across an entire section, resize the doorway's **Width** so that it is greater than the length of the railing in the **Door Specification** dialog. The opening resizes to the maximum width possible for that space. See "General Panel" on page 171.

To add a gate, specify the doorway's **Door Type** as a Door, then choose an appropriate gate as the **Door Style**. A selection of gates is available in the Fences & Railings library folder. See "Placing Library Objects" on page 354.

Transoms Above Doors



Transom windows above doors are created the same as other stacked windows. See “Grouped Windows” on page 181.

Creating a Doorway with a Railing


When a railing is specified as **No Room Def**, it can be positioned within a **Doorway** .

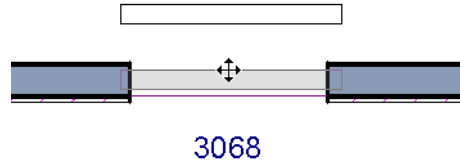


To create a doorway with railing

1. Place a **Doorway**  at the desired location in your plan.
2. Select **Build> Wall> Straight Railing** , then click and drag to draw a railing parallel to the wall with the doorway.
3. Select the railing, then use the Resize edit handles to adjust the length of the


railing as needed. See “Using the Edit Handles” on page 88.

4. With the railing selected, click the **Open Object**  edit button.
5. On the General panel of the **Railing Specification** dialog, check **No Room Def** and click OK. See “General Panel” on page 135.
6. With the railing still selected, Ctrl + drag it into position within the doorway. See “To move an object freely” on page 106.




Positioning a railing in a doorway



Placing a Gable Over a Door

 Click the **Gable Over Door/Window** edit button to produce a gable roof over the selected door(s) the next time automatic roofs are built. See “Gable Over Door/Window” on page 224.

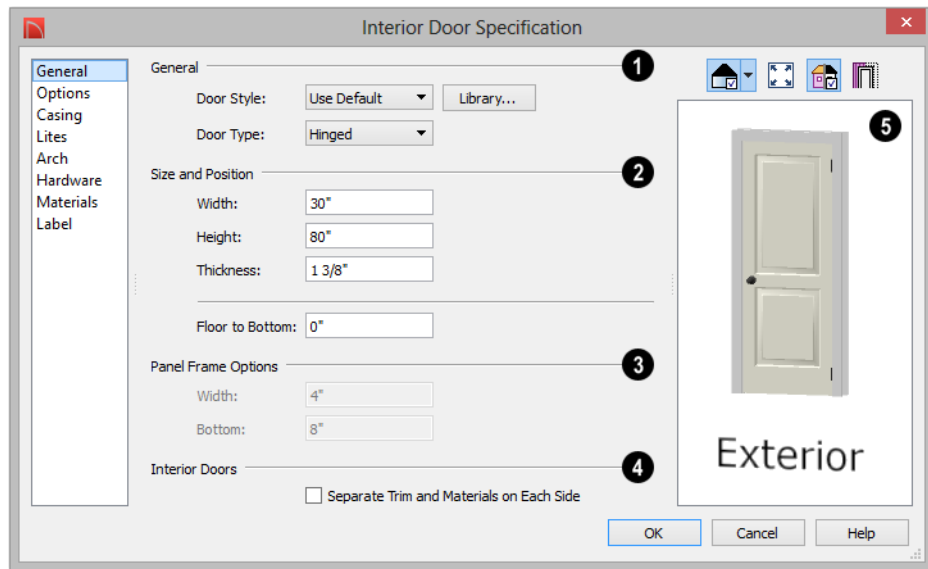
You can manually edit or delete this gable line at any time. Your changes take effect when the automatic roofs are rebuilt. This can also be used with group selected doors.

Door Specification Dialog

 To open the **Interior** or **Exterior Door Specification** dialog, select a door and click the **Open Object** edit button or

double-click on a door using the **Select Objects**  or any **Door**  tool.

General Panel



1 General

- **Door Style** - Select Slab, Glass, Panel, or Louvered from the drop-down list; select a style from the Library; or choose Use Default to use the default door style set in the **Door Defaults** dialog. See “Door Defaults” on page 161.
- Select “Library” from the drop-down list or click the **Library** button to choose a door symbol from the library. Once a library door is selected, its name is added to the Door Style list. See “Select Library Object Dialog” on page 356.
- Specify the **Door Type** as Doorway, Hinged, Slider, Pocket, Bifold, or Garage. In the Door Defaults dialogs, the Door Type cannot be changed.

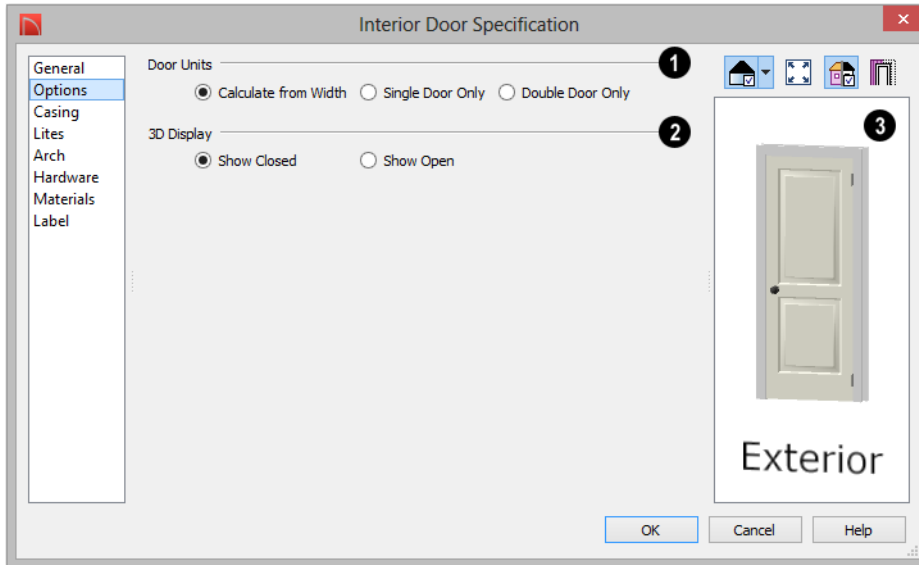
2 Specify the **Size and Position** of the selected door.

- Specify the **Width, Height, and Thickness** of the door.
- **Floor to Bottom** - Specify the height of the bottom of the door frame as measured from the subfloor.
- 3 **Panel Frame Options** - Specify the dimensions of the selected door’s rails and stiles. Only available for Glass, Panel, and Louvered doors.
 - Specify the **Width** of the stiles and top rail.
 - Specify the height of the **Bottom** rail.
- 4 The **Interior Doors** settings are only available when the selected door is placed in an interior wall. See “Exterior and Interior Walls” on page 119.
- Check **Separate Trim and Materials for Each Side** to specify the casing, lintels, and all materials for each side of the

selected door independently. When unchecked, the two sides of the door use the same trim and materials.

5 A preview of the door displays on the right side of the dialog box. See “Dialog Preview Panes” on page 29.

Options Panel



- 1 Specify the number of **Door Units** or panels that the selected door has. Not available for garage doors.
- Select **Calculate From Width** to use the program defaults. Hinged, Pocket and Bifold doors default to **Single Door** when less than four feet (1200 mm) wide. If the width is greater than four feet, **Double Door** is the default.
- Select **Single Door** to force the selected hinged, pocket or bifold door to be a single door, regardless of its width.
- Select **Double Door** to force the selected hinged, pocket or bifold door to be a double door, regardless of its width.

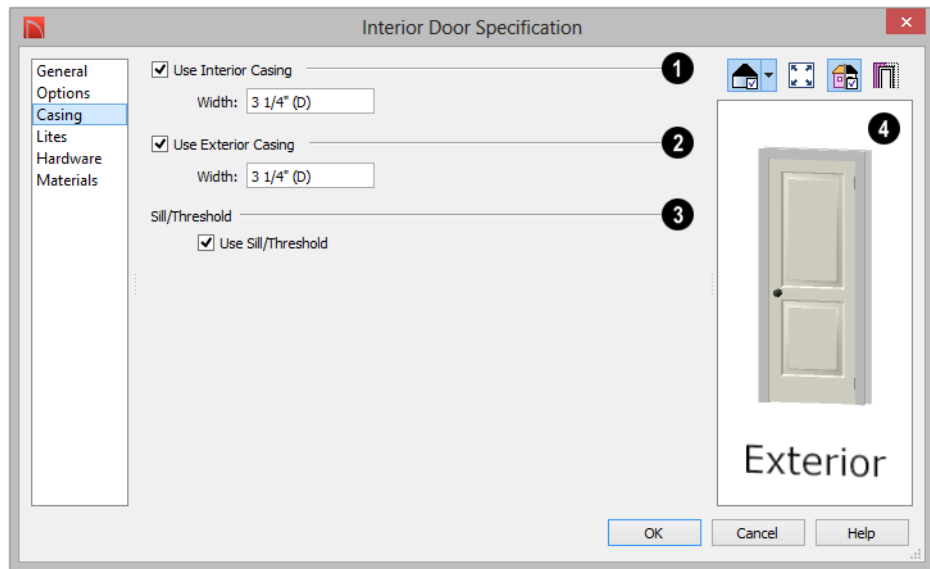
- If a Slider door is selected, instead choose **Two, Three, or Four Panel**.

Note: The defaults for Calculate From Width are not editable.

- 2 **3D Display** - Specify whether the selected door is drawn open or closed in 3D and Elevation views.

If **Draw Open** is selected, the Swing Angle set on the General panel is used in 3D views. See “General Panel” on page 171.

Casing Panel



- 1 Check **Use Interior Casing**, then specify the **Width** of the casing.
- 2 Check **Use Exterior Casing**, then specify the **Width** of the casing.
- 3 Uncheck **Use Sill/Threshold** to prevent a sill from being generated under the door. See “Displaying Doors” on page 164.

- 4 A preview of the door displays on the right side of the dialog box. If casing is not specified for a Doorway, the Show Wall option will be toggled on automatically. See “Dialog Preview Panes” on page 29.

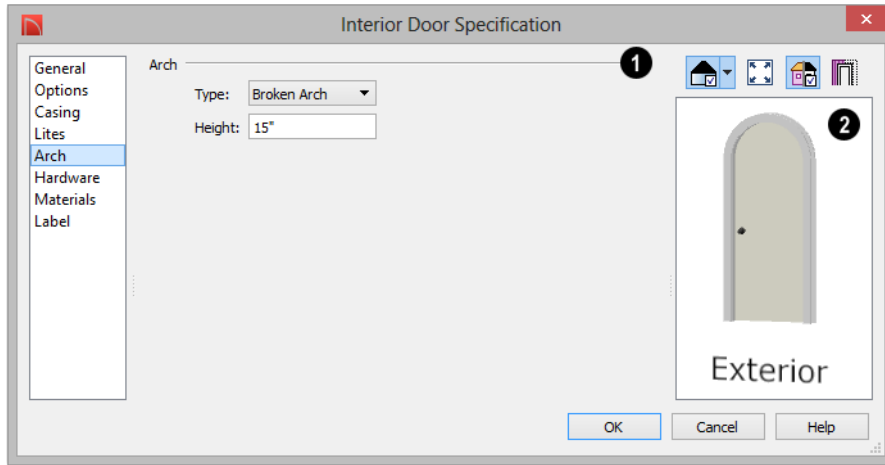
Lites Panel

The settings on the Lites panel of the **Door Specification** dialogs are only available when the selected door is specified as a Glass door on the General Panel. These settings are

also found on the Lites panel of the **Window Specification** dialog. See “Lites Panel” on page 187.

Arch Panel

The settings on the Arch panel are not available if the selected door is a Sliding, Bifold or Garage door.



1 Define the style and size of the **Arch**.

- Select a **Type** of arch from the drop-down list.
- Specify the **Height** of the arch, as measured from the base of the arch to the top

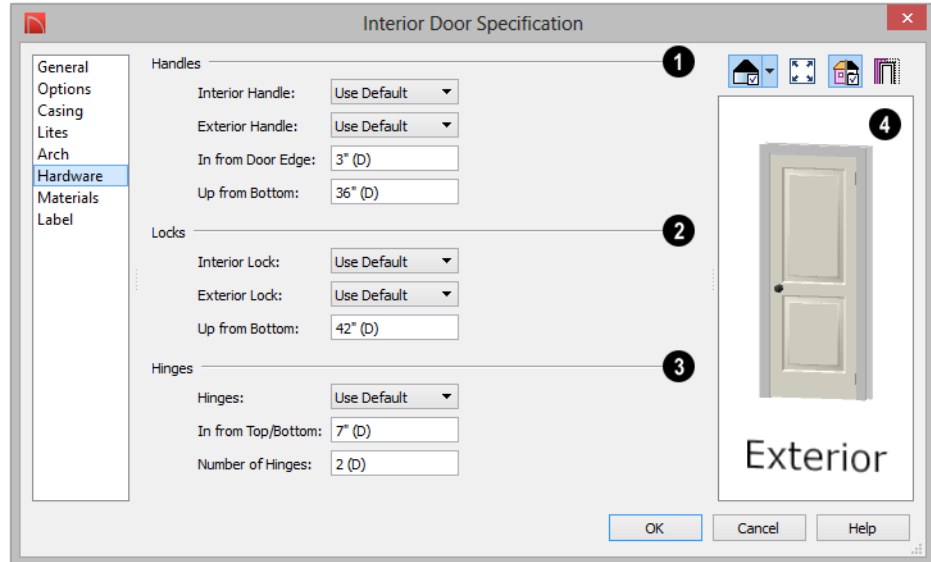
of the door. Not available for Round Top Arches.

2 A preview of the door displays on the right side of the dialog box. See “Dialog Preview Panes” on page 29.

Hardware Panel

Many of the settings on the Hardware tab are Dynamic Defaults: if “Use Default” is selected, the setting in the **Door Defaults**

dialog is used. See “Dynamic Defaults” on page 57.



- 1 Specify the **Handles** to be used on the selected door.
 - Select an **Interior Handle** and/or **Exterior Handle** from the drop-down lists.
 - Specify the location of the door handles **In From Door Edge**.
 - Specify the location of the door handles **Up From Bottom**.
- 2 Specify the door's interior and exterior **Locks**.
 - Select an **Interior Lock** and/or **Exterior Lock** from the drop-down lists.
 - Specify the location of the door locks **Up From Bottom**. The locks use the same In From Door Edge value as the handles.
- 3 Specify the **Hinges** to be used on the selected door.
 - Select a style of **Hinges** from the drop-down list.

- Specify the distance **In From Top/Bottom** of the door to the center of the top and bottom hinges.

Note: For hinges to look right, it is best to have at least a 1/4" (6 mm) reveal for the interior, or hinge side, door casing.

- Specify the **Number of Hinges** on the selected door. Interior hinged doors and bifold doors typically have two hinges while exterior hinged doors have three.
- 4 A preview of the door displays on the right side of the dialog box. See "Dialog Preview Panes" on page 29.

Materials Panel

The Materials panel is available for a variety of objects throughout the program. For more information, see "Materials Panel" on page 364.

Label Panel

Door labels display in floor plan view when the “Doors, Labels” is turned on and use the Text Style assigned to that layer. See “Door Labels” on page 165.

For information about the settings on this panel, see “Label Panel” on page 429.

Windows

Home Designer Suite can model a wide variety of windows. Fixed glass, hung, casement, sliding, awning, hopper, and louver window styles can all be created with the standard Window tool. Home Designer Suite can create bay, box, and bow windows with a single click. In addition, the library contains many mullied window combinations.

Chapter Contents

- Window Defaults
- The Window Tools
- Special Windows
- Grouped Windows
- Displaying Windows
- Editing Windows
- Window Specification Dialog
- Bay, Box, and Bow Windows
- Bay, Box, Bow Windows and Roofs
- Bay/Box and Bow Window Specification Dialogs

Window Defaults



Default Settings can be accessed by selecting **Edit> Default Settings**. Select **Window** from the **Default Settings** dialog.

The settings in the **Window Defaults** dialog control the attributes of a window when it is initially placed in a plan, so you should define the type of window that will be placed most often in your model. See “Default Settings vs Preferences” on page 56.

The panels in the **Window Defaults** dialog are similar to those found in the **Window**

Specification dialog. For more information, see “Window Specification Dialog” on page 184.

Dynamic Window Defaults

A variety of window default values are dynamic, including the **Window Type**, **Casing Specifications**, and **Sash** sizes. All **Materials** are also dynamic. When a dynamic default is changed, existing windows using the default value are affected. See “Dynamic Defaults” on page 57.

The Window Tools



To place a window, select **Build> Window** and choose the desired window type. Click on a wall to place a window of the selected type at that location. Bay, box and bow windows can only be placed in straight walls, while standard windows can be placed in both straight and curved walls.

Standard Windows



Select **Build> Window> Window**, then click on a straight or curved wall to place a standard window at that location.

A standard window is a single window that is not a bay, box, or bow window. These special types are made up of multiple standard windows.

A standard window that is part of a special window is called a component window.

Standard windows can be specified as any of a variety of window types, such as double hung, casement and awning. See “Window Specification Dialog” on page 184.

Bay Windows



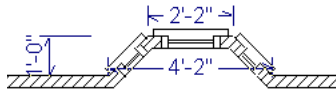
The roof is affected by Bay, Box and Bow Windows. These windows should therefore be placed before the roof is built.



A **Bay Window** is composed of three wall sections, each with a single component window. The two side walls are at an angle to the main wall. Select **Build> Window> Bay Window** and click on a straight wall to produce a bay window.

When initially placed, bay windows measure 2’-2” across at the front, 4’-2” across at the back, and are 1’-0” deep. The component windows are specified in the **Window**

Defaults dialog and their sizes adjust to fit the available space.

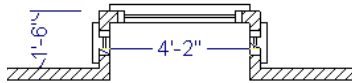


Box Windows



A **Box Window** is a bay window with side angles set at 90°. Select **Build> Window> Box Window** and click on a straight wall to produce a box window.

Box windows initially measure 4'-2" wide with a depth of 1'-6". The component windows are specified in the **Window Defaults** dialog and their sizes adjust to fit the available space.



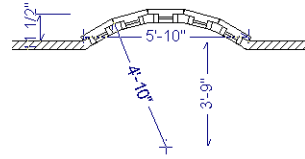
Bow Windows



A **Bow Window** is a group of identical wall segments that form a segmented curve. Select **Build> Window> Bow Window** and click on a straight wall to produce a 5-section bow window.

The component windows are specified in the **Window Defaults** dialog. Their sizes adjust to fit the available space.

The 5-section bow below has a 4'-10" radius centered 3'-9" inside the wall, giving an opening 5'-10" across and a depth of 11½".



Note: Bay, box, and bow window areas are not included in the living area or in room standard area calculations. They are included in room interior area calculations.

Pass-Through



Select **Build> Window> Pass-Through**, then click on a straight or curved wall to place a Pass Through at that location.

A Pass-Through is simply a wall opening without a window unit placed inside. Like a window, it can have casing and a sill. It does not, however, have a sash, frame, or glass. It is one of the window **Types** available in the **Window Specification** dialog. See "General Panel" on page 185.

Windows Library




Select **View> Library Browser**, then browse to Home Designer Core Catalogs> Architectural> Windows to access a selection of special window units. Select the desired window, then click on a wall to place the window at that location.

Special Windows

A variety of special windows can be created using multiple standard windows, the edit tools or custom symbols.

Creating Manual Bay, Box and Bow Windows

Sometimes it is easier to draw bay, box and bow windows manually than to use the automatic tools. Bays created using walls can have more than one window per section, which is not possible using a bay window unit.

Bear in mind that moving a manually created bay, box or bow window is generally more difficult than moving a unit created with one of the **Window Tools**  since it is composed of individual walls.

Corner Windows

Corner windows are produced when each window has one edge at or past the interior side of the adjacent wall.



To create a corner window, first create the desired window on each side of the corner. The header height and the sill height of both windows must be the same.



To move a window all the way into a corner, check Ignore Casing for Opening Resize in the Plan Defaults dialog. See “General Plan Defaults Dialog” on page 57.

Once the corner window is formed, its components and corner post size can be adjusted. Blocked units can also meet at a corner this way.

Special Window Shapes

A selection of special shaped windows is available in the Windows Library, including arched windows and mullied units.

In addition, you can create a variety of window shapes in the **Window Specification** dialog, including:

- Arched windows. See “Arch Panel” on page 190.
- Trapezoidal windows. See “Shape Panel” on page 189.

Placing a Gable Over a Window



Click the **Gable Over Door/Window** edit button to produce a gable roof over the selected window(s) the next time automatic roofs are built. See “Gable Over Door/Window” on page 224.

You can manually edit or delete this gable line at any time. Your changes take effect when the automatic roofs are rebuilt. This tool can also be used with group selected windows.

Vents

A selection of attic, foundation and gable vents are available in the Library Browser. See “The Library” on page 341.

Vents are placed in the same manner as regular windows and can be edited in much the same way, as well.

Grouped Windows

Windows can be grouped together to create a wide variety of custom configurations. Stacked windows are easy to create in 3D views, particularly Elevation views, using their edit handles. See “Editing Windows” on page 183.



Notice how the windows and door in this example are separate, with spaces between them. Doors and/or windows can also be organized into a unit in which there are no spaces between the windows and door units, and the casing between them is shared.

Automatically Mullered Openings

To form a mulled group of windows and/or doors, move them close enough together so that their casings touch. Once the casings touch, the windows are mulled together with one casing between the two of them.

The sill of each window in the group must be at the same level for them to share the middle

casing. The casing tops do not have to be at the same level. The casings are modeled as if they are one unit but the windows remain separate objects for dimensioning and the Materials List.


Windows can be automatically mulled to doors if the bottom of the window is at the elevation of the floor, equal to the bottom of the door.

Mulled Units in the Library

A selection of mulled window units is available in the Windows library. To place one in your plan, select it and click on a wall in any view. See “Placing Library Objects” on page 354.

Selecting Components of Mullered Units

To select a component of a mulled unit from the library, click at the location of the component in question, then click the **Select**

Next Object  edit button or press the Tab key until that individual component is selected. Only the component clicked on is selectable using this method. If you need to select a different component, click on it and repeat the process.

If there are multiple levels, it is easiest to select the components in a 3D view. When

you have selected an individual component, you can change its parameters in the **Window Specification** dialog. See “Window Specification Dialog” on page 184.

If the selected component is not itself a mullered unit and has no components above it, its **Height** and **Arch** parameters can be changed. Changing the Height causes the component top to move. The bottom remains stationary.

Displaying Mullered Units



As with other windows, the display of mullered window units is controlled in

the **Display Options** dialog. See “Displaying Objects” on page 74.

Mullered units are placed on the “Windows” layer by default and have a single label, which is on the “Windows, Labels” layer. Mullered units from the library are also included in the windows category of the Materials List. If the component objects of a mullered unit have unique moldings or materials, they will not be noted in the Materials List.

Displaying Windows



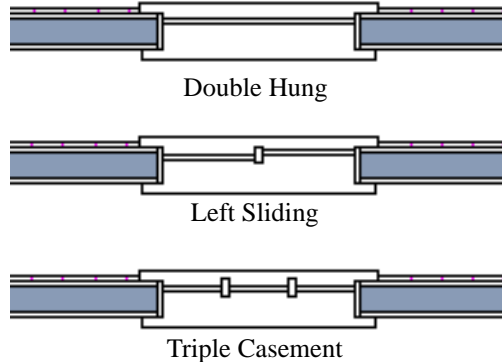
The display of windows in floor plan and 3D views can be controlled in the **Display Options** dialog. See “Display Options Dialog” on page 75.

Windows can only be placed in walls, so if a wall’s layer is turned off, any windows placed in that wall will not display, either. See “Displaying Walls” on page 125.

If the “Windows” layer is not set to display, window casing and other components are not visible, but the openings in the walls where they are located can still be seen.

In Floor Plan View

A window’s frame, glass, and sill are all represented in floor plan view. This makes some window types, notably Sliding and Double and Triple Casement windows, distinguishable.



Window types in floor plan view

Bay, box, and bow windows have dimensions lines associated with them.

- You can suppress their display by turning off the “Manual Dimensions” layer or on a unit by unit basis in the unit’s specification dialog. See “Bay/Box and Bow Window Specification Dialogs” on page 196.

- The arrow style and fill are set in the **Dimension Defaults** dialog. See “Dimension Defaults Dialog” on page 405.

Window Labels

Window labels display in floor plan view, centered on the windows they represent, when the “Windows, Labels” layer is turned on and use the “Default Label Style” Text Style See “Object Labels” on page 429.

Window labels indicate Width and Height, followed by Type. For example:

- In Imperial plans, the automatic label for a 3’-0” wide, 4’-0” high double hung window will read 3040 DH.
- In metric plans, the automatic label for a 900 mm wide, 1200 mm high double hung window will read 900x1200 DH.

You can specify whether a Bay, Box or Bow Window displays a single label or displays the labels of its component windows.


- When **Suppress All Labels** is selected, individual components of Bay, Box and Bow Windows are counted in the Materials List.
- When **Show Component Labels** is selected, components of Bay, Box and Bow Windows are counted in the Materials List.
- When **Show Single Label for Entire Unit** is selected, the Bay, Box or Bow Windows has one label in floor plan view but each component is counted separately in the materials list.


These options are also available for mullied units but affect their display the materials list somewhat differently. See “Displaying Mullied Units” on page 182.


Customized labels can also be specified in the **Window Specification** dialog.

Editing Windows

Before a window can be edited, it must be selected. Click on a window when the **Select**

Objects  tool or any of the **Window**

Tools  are active. Doors and/or windows can also be group-selected and edited. See “Selecting Objects” on page 86.

To select a window that is part of a blocked unit, click the component window, then click the **Select Next Object**  edit button. See “Selecting Components of Mullied Units” on page 181.

Windows can be edited using their edit handles, the edit toolbar buttons, and the **Window Specification** dialog. See “Window Specification Dialog” on page 184.

When you select a window in floor plan view, the window size label displays the width followed by the height. For example, a 3036 window is 3’-0” wide by 3’-6” high.

In the Specification Dialog



The most precise method of editing a window is to use the **Window Specification** dialog. The window type, size,

casing, materials, and more can all be specified in this dialog. See “Window Specification Dialog” on page 184.

Using the Mouse

- In floor plan view, click either of the two end handles and drag along the wall to change the width. The label showing the size updates as the window is resized.
- In 3D views, a selected window has five edit handles: the Move handle at the center and a Resize handle on each edge. Click and drag an edge handle to resize the window.


Note: Using the edit handles is the only way to resize bay, box and bow window units.

- A single window or a group of windows can be moved with the center edit handle.




- A door or window moved against an intersecting wall temporarily stops when it is the casing distance from the intersecting wall. You can continue to drag and it resumes movement past or onto the intersecting wall. Enable **Ignore Casing for Opening Resize** in the **Plan Defaults** dialog to turn off this behavior. See “General Plan Defaults Dialog” on page 57.

Using the Edit Tools

A selected window or windows can be edited in a variety of ways using the buttons on the edit toolbar. See “The Edit Toolbar” on page 26.

- Click the **Gable Over Door/Window**  to create a gable over the selected window(s) the next time the roof is rebuilt. See “Gable Over Door/Window” on page 224.

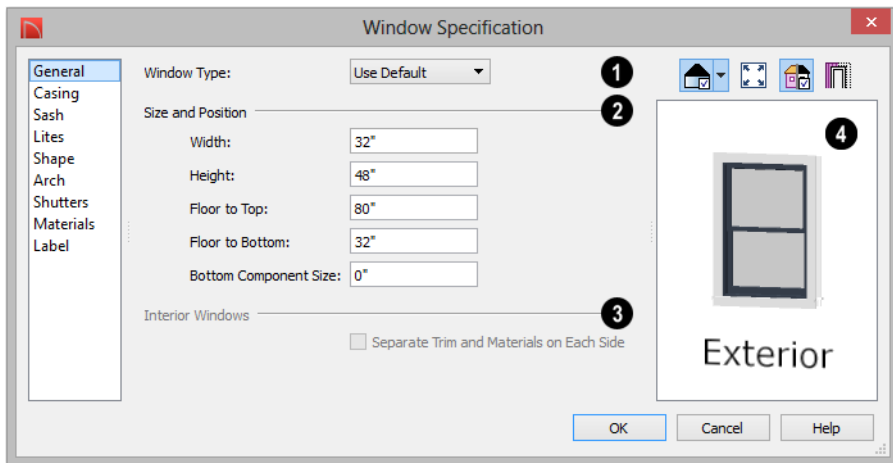
Window Specification Dialog

 To open the **Window Specification** dialog, select a window and click the **Open Object** edit button; or double-click the window using the **Select Objects**  or a **Window**  tool.

The settings in this dialog are similar to those in the **Window Defaults** dialog. See “Window Defaults” on page 178.

The settings in this dialog are also similar to those in the **Mulled Unit** and **Window Symbol Specification** dialogs. Although similar, a number of the options cannot be edited when either a window symbol or a mulled unit from the library is selected, and some panels are not available. See “Grouped Windows” on page 181.

General Panel



- 1 **Window Type** - Select the type of window from the list. The first entry in the list is the Default type set in the **Window Defaults** dialog.
- 2 Specify the **Size and Position** of the selected window.
 - Specify the window's **Width** and **Height**.
 - **Floor to Top** - Specify the height of the top of the window frame as measured from the subfloor.
 - **Floor to Bottom** - Specify the height of the bottom of the window frame as measured from the subfloor.

Note: When either the Floor to Top or Floor to Bottom setting is modified, the other will adjust in response to prevent the overall Height value from changing.

- Specify the **Bottom Component Size** for Single Hung, Double Hung, Double Awning, Double Hopper, and Triple Hopper windows; specify the **Top/Bottom**

- Specify the **Side Component Size** for Triple Casement and Triple Sliding windows, the **Right Component Size** for Left Sliding windows, or the **Left Component Size** for Right Sliding and Double Casement windows.

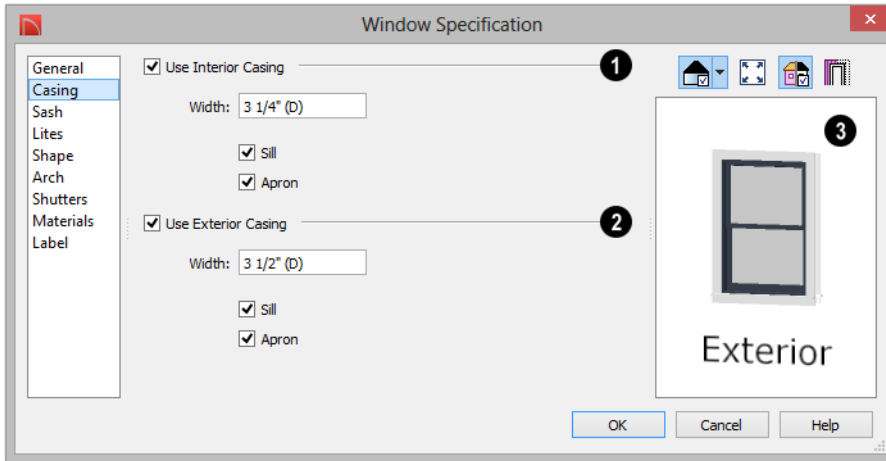
A **Component Size** value of 0 creates a window with identically sized components.

- 3 The **Interior Windows** settings are only present when the selected window is placed in an interior wall. See “Exterior and Interior Walls” on page 119.
 - Check **Separate Trim and Materials for Each Side** to specify the casing and all materials for each side of the selected window independently. When unchecked, the two sides of the window use the same trim and materials. Only available for Pass-Throughs placed in interior walls.

- 4 A preview of the selected window displays here. See “Dialog Preview Panes” on page 29.

Casing Panel

The Casing panel is not available in the **Window Symbol Specification** dialog.



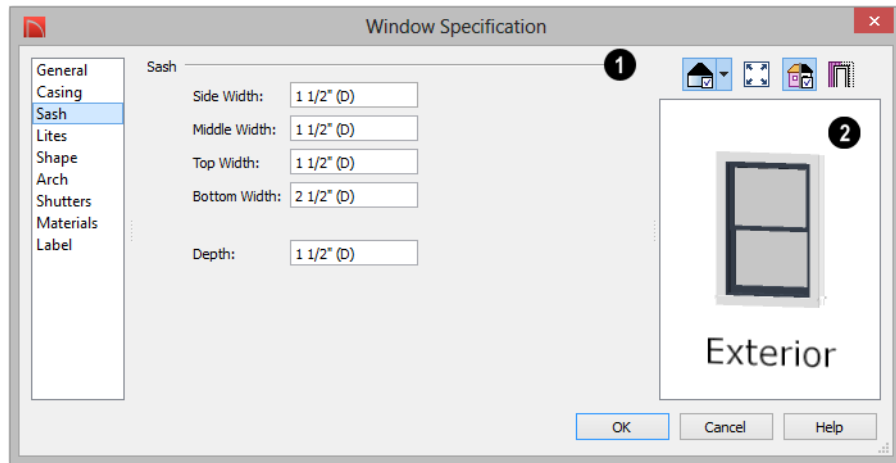
- 1 Check **Use Interior Casing**, then specify the **Width** of the casing.
- 2 Check **Use Exterior Casing**, then specify the **Width** of the casing.
- 3 A preview of the selected window displays here. You may need to rotate

the preview to see the casing you are editing. If casing is not specified for a Pass-Through, the Show Wall option will be toggled on automatically. See “Dialog Preview Panes” on page 29.

Sash Panel

The settings on the Sash panel control the size and position of the selected window’s sash. Note that increasing the Side, Middle,

Top or Bottom Width decreases the area of the glass and vice versa.



1 Specify the width and depth of the selected window's **Sash**, which are the pieces of the window that hold the glass.

- Specify the **Side Width** of all vertical sash members: those at the window sides as well as the central members of Casement and Sliding windows. This is also the width of the top portion of the window when an arch is specified.
- Specify the **Middle** width of horizontal components between the top and bottom sash in Double Hung, Double and Triple Awning, and Double and Triple Hopper

windows. It does not affect Casement and Sliding windows.

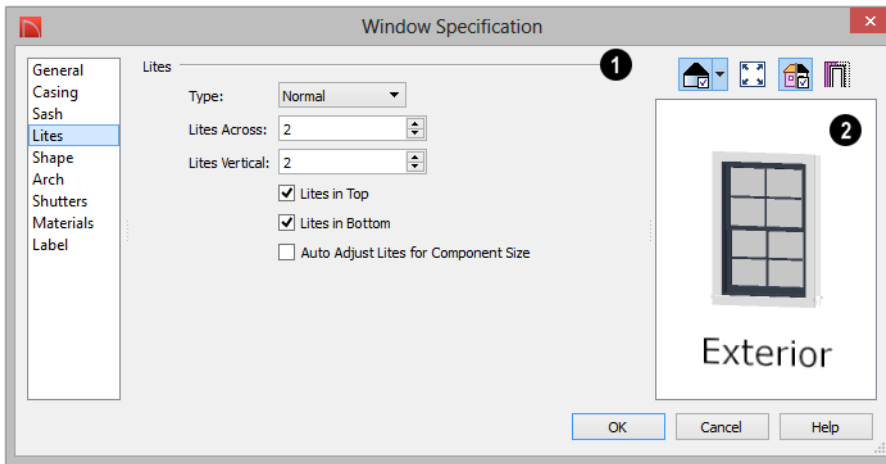
- Specify the **Top and Bottom Widths**. The **Top** value is not used if the window has an arch.
- Specify the **Depth**, or thickness, of the sash stock measured from the exterior to the interior.

2 A preview of the selected window displays here. See “Dialog Preview Panes” on page 29.

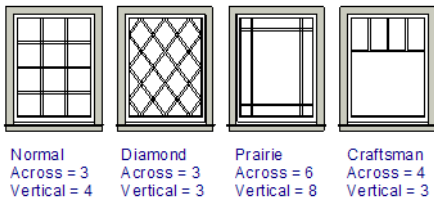
Lites Panel

The Lites panel allows you to add muntins to various window styles, and is also available for Glass doors. See “Doors” on page 161.

There are four possible styles of muntin bars.



- 1 Specify the number, position and style of **Lites** for the selected window.
- Select a **Type**, or style, of window lite from the drop-down list.



- **Normal** style is the most common, with muntins going horizontally and vertically. Colonial windows are an example of the normal style.
- **Diamond** style uses angled muntin bars to divide up the lites. French windows are an example of the diamond style.
- **Prairie** style is based on the normal style, but with all the central muntin bars removed, leaving only the two outside muntin bars both horizontally and vertically. Typically, both Lites Across and

Lites Vertical should be set between 6 and 8. Federal or Federation windows are an example of the Prairie style.

- **Craftsman** style is based on the normal style, but only the topmost horizontal muntin bar is kept with all the portions of the vertical muntin bars above it. Typically, both Lites Across and Lites Vertical should be set between 4 and 8.
- Enter the number of horizontal **Lites Across** in each sash.
- Enter the number of vertical **Lites Vertical** in each sash.
- Check or uncheck **Lites in Top** and/or **Lites in Bottom** - or **Lites in Left** and/or **Lites in Right** - to specify either one or both of the sashes to have divided lites.
- Check **Auto Adjust Lites for Component Size** to have the program produce lites that are consistent in size across all components. When this is checked, the window's lites and its specification settings may not agree; when unchecked,

lites in the components may not be consistent in size.

2 A preview of the selected window displays here. See “Dialog Preview Panes” on page 29.

Note: Because the fixed window in a Triple Sliding window is twice the size of the movable windows, the fixed section has a vertical muntin bar. To eliminate this, uncheck Auto Adjust Lites for Component Size..

Shape Panel

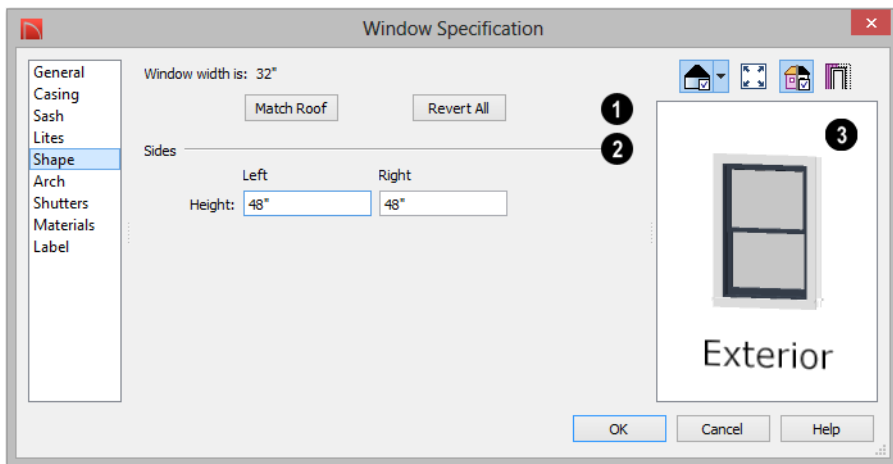
The settings on the Shape panel control the position of the selected window’s corners, allowing you to create angled edges and mitered top corners.

If any of these settings are used to create a custom shape, the selected window will be automatically specified as “Fixed Glass” on the General panel. If the selected window has

an arch specified on the Arch panel, it will be removed.

The Shape panel is not available for mullied units or window symbols from the library.

Note: The Left and Right settings on this panel refer to the window’s exterior.



1 **Window Width** displays for reference. It can be changed on the General Panel.

- Click **Match Roof** to match the angle of the top of the window to the pitch of the

roof above by changing its Sides heights, below. If either Top Inside Corner box is checked, it will become unchecked.

Match Roof does not work for curved

roofs, has no effect if the window is not in a gable end wall, and is not available in the Window Defaults dialog.

- Click **Revert** to restore the window to its original shape, type and arch settings.
- 2** Specify the height of the window's **Left** and **Right Sides**, as measured from the bottom of the window. By default, these settings match the window's Height.

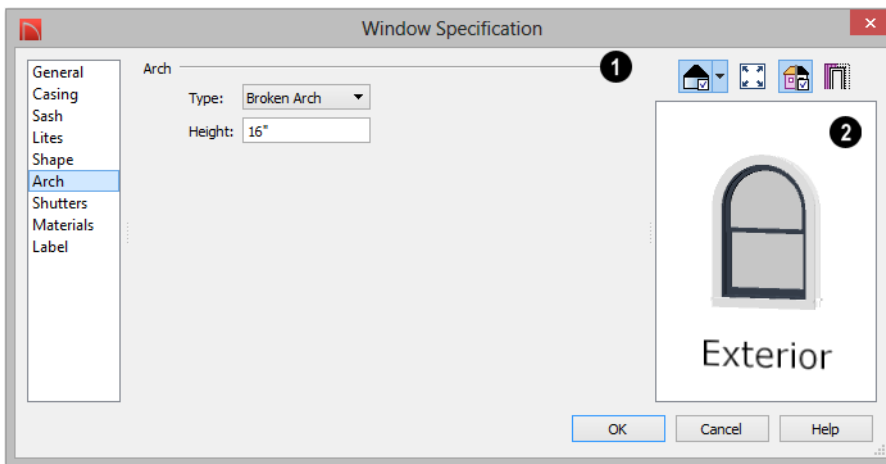
- 3** A preview of the selected window displays here. You may want to rotate the view so the window's exterior can be seen. See "Dialog Preview Panes" on page 29.

Note: The Left and Right settings on this panel refer to the window's exterior.

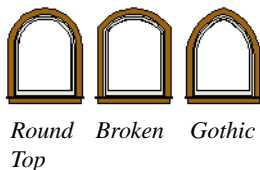
Arch Panel

The Arch panel is not available for window symbols from the library, and its settings are

not available if the selected window has been modified using the Shape Panel.



- 1** Define the style and size of the **Arch**.
- Select the **Type** of arch desired from the drop-down list.



- Specify the **Height** of the arch, as measured from the top of the window to the base of the arch. The Height can be defined for all arch types except Round Top and Octagonal Arches.

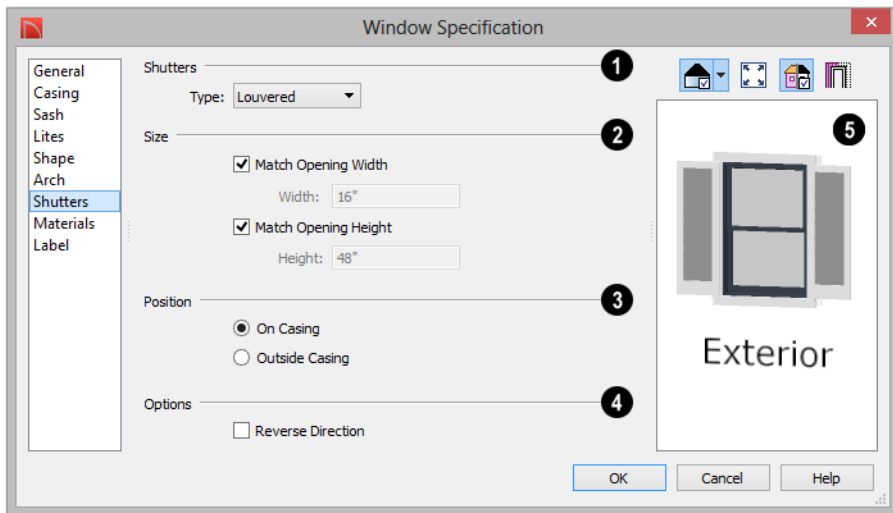
- 2** A preview of the selected window displays here. You may want to rotate the view so the window's exterior can be seen. See "Dialog Preview Panes" on page 29.

Note: The Left and Right settings on this panel refer to the window's exterior.

Shutters Panel

The settings on the Shutters panel allow you to specify exterior shutters for the selected window or mullid unit from the library.

The Shutters panel is not available for window symbols from the library.



- 1 Select a **Type** of **Shutters** from the drop-down list.
- 2 Specify the **Size** of the selected shutters.
 - When **Match Opening Width** is checked, each shutter's width is exactly half that of the window, excluding casing.
 - Uncheck **Match Opening Width** to specify a **Width** in the text field. If the window is later resized, the shutters will not adjust in response.
 - When **Match Opening Height** is checked, each shutter's height equals that of the window, excluding casing.
 - Uncheck **Match Opening Height** to specify a **Height** in the text field. If the window is later resized, the shutters will not adjust in response.
- 3 Specify the **Position** of the shutters relative to the window.
 - Select **On Casing** to position the shutters just outside the window frame, like functional shutters.
 - Select **Outside Casing** to position shutters outside the window casing, as decorative shutters often are.
- 4 Additional shutter **Options** can be specified here.
 - Uncheck **Reverse Direction** to specify a **Height** in the text field. If the window is later resized, the shutters will not adjust in response.

- Check **Reverse Direction** to orient the shutters so their exterior sides face outward and their interior sides face the wall. For functional shutters, this should remain unchecked.
- 5** A preview of the selected window displays on the right. In order to see the shutters, you may need to rotate the preview to show the Exterior. See “Dialog Preview Panes” on page 29.

Materials Panel

The settings on the Materials panel are the same as those found on the same panel in dialogs throughout the program. See “Materials Panel” on page 364.

Label Panel

Window labels display in floor plan view when the “Windows, Labels” layer is turned on and use the Text Style assigned to that layer. See “Window Labels” on page 183.

For more information about the settings on this panel. See “Label Panel” on page 429.

Bay, Box, and Bow Windows



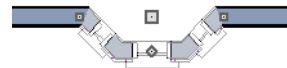
Bay, Box and Bow Windows are created much the way regular windows are: select a tool, then click a wall to place that window type.

Home Designer Suite automatically builds a foundation under bay/box/bow windows placed on floor 1 unless they are raised from their original position. That section of the foundation wall is also a bay/box/bow, but without windows. If the foundation was generated before the window is placed, the foundation must be rebuilt or edited manually.

Editing Bay, Box and Bow Windows

Bay, box and bow windows are edited similar to regular windows, with one exception: in floor plan view, a diamond-shaped Depth edit handle displays on the section. Drag this Depth handle outward to increase the depth, or inward to decrease the

depth of the unit. See “Editing Windows” on page 183.



Depth edit handle on a bay window

Bay, box and bow windows can also be edited in their respective specification dialogs. See “Bay/Box and Bow Window Specification Dialogs” on page 196.

Displaying Bay, Box and Bow Windows


The display of bay, box and bow windows is controlled in the **Display Options** dialog. See “Display Options Dialog” on page 75.

Like other windows, bay, box and bow windows can display labels: either a single

label for the unit, or one for each component. See “Window Labels” on page 183.

Bay, box and bow window width and radius dimensions, which display in floor plan view when specified to do so in the window’s specification dialog, are placed on the “Dimensions, Manual” layer. See “Options Panel” on page 197.

Component Windows

A component window within a bay, box or bow window can be resized like any other standard window. To select a component window, click at the location of the component in question, then click the **Select Next Object**  edit button or press the Tab key.

- Only the bay or box window component that was clicked on is selected using this method. If you need to select a different component, click on it and repeat the process.
- In a bow window, all components are identical, so only one component can be selected. Changing this component changes them all.

Resizing Components

An individual component window can be resized using the edit handles, by changing settings in the component’s **Window Specification** dialog.

When a bay/box/bow window is first created, there is room for one standard trimmer on

each side of each component window. When the bay as a whole is moved and resized, its components automatically resize so that a standard trimmer is still accommodated.

If a component window is resized, it retains its size if at all possible when the containing bay/box/bow window is moved or resized. If the bay is resized in such a way that the component is too large to fit even with a thinner trimmer, the component resumes its default behavior, resizing as the containing bay window is resized.

Floors and Ceilings

When originally created, the floor and ceiling within a bay, box, or bow window are the same heights as the floor and ceiling of the room in which it is placed.



Both the top and bottom heights of these window units can be adjusted in its specification dialog or a 3D view using its edit handles to create a lowered ceiling and/or a bench seat or garden window.



When the ceiling is lowered, the top heights of the walls that define the window unit are also lowered. When a roof is built over the unit, its height will be affected, as well.

When the bottom of the window is raised to create a bench seat, the unit's walls will not reach the ground. As a result, window units with bench seats will have no foundation beneath them when the foundation is built.

Bay, Box, Bow Windows and Roofs

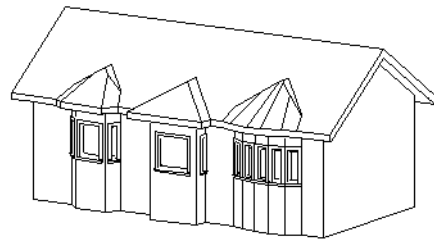
Several different roof styles can be specified for bay, box and bow window units in the **Bay/Box/Bow Specification** dialog. See "Bay/Box and Bow Window Specification Dialogs" on page 196.

If you change a bay, box, or bow window's roof specification, you will need to rebuild the roofs to see the changes. See "Rebuilding Roofs" on page 221.

Hip Roofs

By default, a hip roof is built above the unit when roofs are automatically generated. No

roof directives need to be selected in the specification dialog to produce this roof.

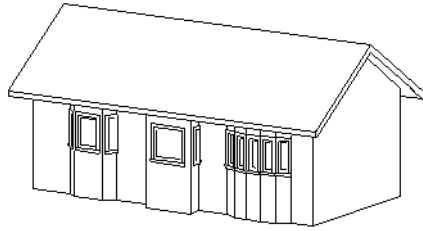


Use the Existing Roof

To generate a standard roof that ignores a bay, box, or bow window, check **Use Existing Roof**.

Rectangular Hip Roofs

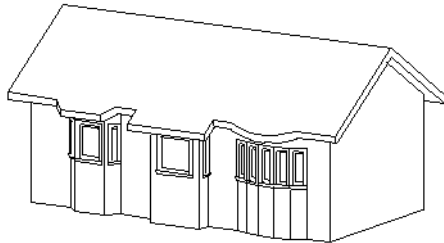
To create a rectangular-shaped hip roof above a bay, box, or bow window, select **Rectangular Roof Over**.



With this option the bay, box, or bow windows is tucked under the roof eave. You may find it helpful to increase the width of the eaves. See “Roof Panel” on page 222.

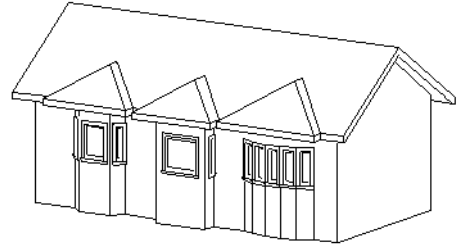
Extend the Existing Roof

To have the main roof extend down over the window unit and follow the shape of the unit, select **Extend Existing Roof**.



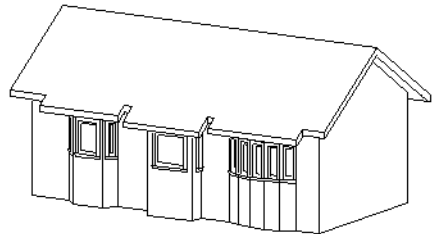
For this roof style, the ceiling heights of the window unit and the adjacent room must be the same. If you lower the ceiling of the window unit and then build the roof, a lower hip roof over the window is created. See “Floors and Ceilings” on page 193.

If a header is desired over the window unit, first build the roof, then lower the ceiling of the window unit. Do not rebuild roof planes.



Extend Existing Roof - Rectangular

To extend the main roof down over a window unit to create a rectangular roof over it rather than one that follows its shape, select both **Extend Existing Roof over** and **Rectangular Roof Over**.




Gable Roof

A gable roof is not one of the automatic options for the roof above a bay, box or bow window.



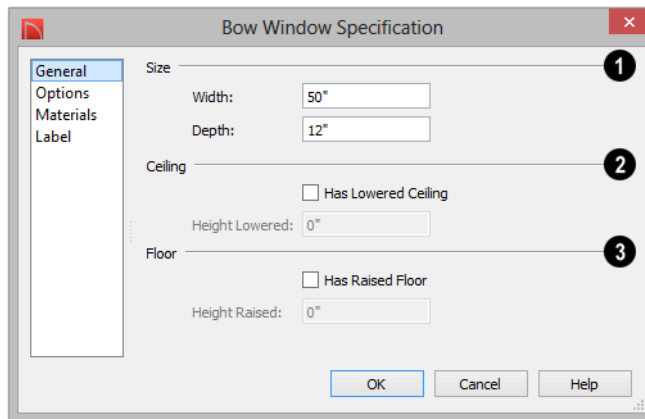
To create a gable roof over a normal window, use the Gable Over Door/Window edit button. See “Gable Over Door/Window” on page 224.

Bay/Box and Bow Window Specification Dialogs

 To open the **Bay/Box Window Specification** or the **Bow Window Specification** dialog, select a Bay, Box or Bow Window and click the **Open Object** edit button.

The options in this dialog can only be set for objects placed in a plan: Bay, Box, and Bow Windows do not have defaults dialogs.

General Panel



1 **Size** - Specify the **Width** and **Depth** of the selected Bay, Box, or Bow Window.

2 Specify the height and structure of the **Ceiling** within the selected window.

- Check **Has Lowered Ceiling** to enable the settings that follow. When this is unchecked, the ceiling height and finish material within the window is the same as that for the adjacent room.
- Specify the **Height Lowered**, which is measured from the ceiling height of the adjacent room.

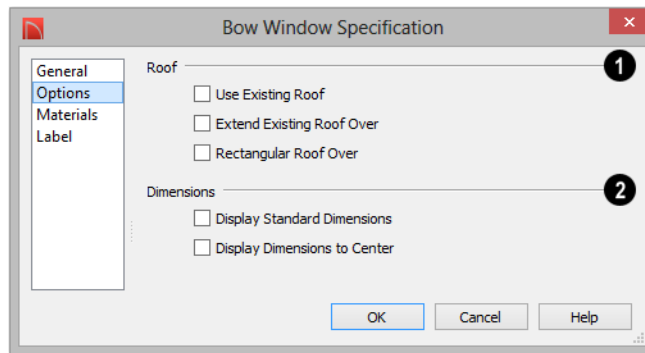
Note: If the Height Lowered is 0", Has Lowered Ceiling will become unchecked when you click OK.

3 Specify the height and structure of the **Floor** within the selected window.

- Check **Has Raised Floor** to enable the settings that follow. When this is unchecked, the floor height and material within the window is the same as that for the adjacent room.
- Specify the **Height Raised**, which is the measured from the floor height of the adjacent room.

Note: If the Height Raised is 0", Has Raised Floor will become unchecked when you click OK.

Options Panel



- 1 Specify the structure of the **Roof** over the selected window unit. See “Bay, Box, Bow Windows and Roofs” on page 194.
 - Check **Use Existing Roof** if the existing roof needs no changes to accommodate the bay window.
 - Check **Extend Existing Roof Over** to extend the existing roof plane to cover the bay window below.
 - Check **Rectangular Roof Over** to create a roof over the bay window that is square across the end instead of following the profile of the roof.
- 2 Specify the appearance of the selected window unit’s **Dimensions** in floor plan view.
 - Check **Display Standard Dimension** to display the automatically-produced dimensions that show the window’s width and depth.
 - Check **Display Dimensions to Center** to display a Bow Window’s radial dimension.

Materials Panel

The settings on the Materials panel are the same as those found on the same panel in dialogs throughout the program. See “Materials Panel” on page 364.

Label Panel

Bay, Box, and Bow Window labels display in floor plan view when the “Windows, Labels” layer is turned on and use the Text Style assigned to that layer. See “Window Labels” on page 183.

For more information about the settings on this panel. See “Label Panel” on page 429.

Multiple Floors

When a new plan file is opened in Home Designer Suite, two floor levels are present: Floor 1 and the Attic Floor. You can add more floors whenever you like: up to 3 total. Once created, floors can also be copied and deleted.

Home Designer Suite also supports special floors for foundations and attics. Only one foundation level and one attic can exist in a plan. Foundations are discussed in their own chapter. See “Foundations” on page 207.

Chapter Contents

- Floor Defaults Dialog
- Floor Tools
- Adding Floors
- Displaying Floors
- Deleting Floors
- Split Levels
- The Current Floor
- The Attic Floor
- The Reference Floor

Floor Defaults Dialog



There is a **Floor Defaults** dialog for each floor in a plan file. The defaults for the current floor can be accessed by selecting **Edit> Default Settings**. Select “Floor” from the category tree and click the **Edit** button to open the **Floor Defaults** dialog for the currently active floor. See “Default Settings vs Preferences” on page 56.

The **Floor Defaults** dialog also opens whenever you add a new floor to the plan. See “Adding Floors” on page 201.

The **Floor Defaults** dialog does not open when you build a foundation; however, the **Floor 0 Default** settings are created based on the current Foundation Defaults. See “Building a Foundation” on page 208.

The **Floor Defaults** dialog is similar to the **Room Specification** dialog, but controls the default settings for all rooms on the current floor. The settings here also control the height of individual walls as they are drawn on the floor in question. See “Room Specification Dialog” on page 155.

Note: The default floor height for Floor 1 is 0. It can be modified in the Room Specification dialog, but not in the Floor 1 Defaults dialog. See “Floor and Room Defaults” on page 144.

Structure Panel

The settings on the Structure panel are similar to those in the **Room Specification** dialog. See “Structure Panel” on page 156.

Moldings Panel

The settings on the Moldings panel are similar to those in the **Room Specification** dialog. See “Moldings Panel” on page 158.

Fill Style Panel

The settings on the Fill Style panel are similar to those in the specification dialogs for many objects throughout the program. See “Fill Style Panel” on page 439.

Materials Panel

The settings on the Materials tab are similar to those in the specification dialogs for many objects throughout the program. See “Materials Panel” on page 364.

Floor Tools



Select **Build> Floor** to access the floor tools.



Select **Build> Floor> Build New Floor** to build a new floor. A new floor can be generated based upon the

perimeter of the floor below or a blank floor can be created and drawn from scratch. See “Adding Floors” on page 201.



Choose **Build> Floor> Delete Current Floor** to remove the current

floor from the plan. For more information, see “Deleting Floors” on page 202.



Choose **Build> Floor> Build Foundation** to open the **Foundation**

Defaults dialog and build a foundation floor. See “Building a Foundation” on page 208.



Select **Build> Floor> Delete Foundation** to remove the foundation from the plan. See “Deleting Foundations” on page 211.

Adding Floors

When a new plan file is opened in Home Designer Suite, two floor levels are present: Floor 1 and the Attic Floor. You can add up to 3 total living floors, as well as create a foundation below Floor 1.

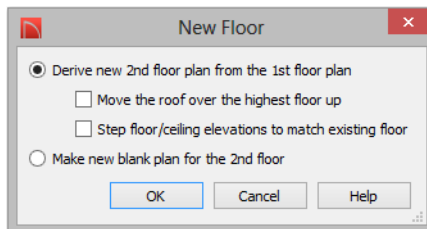
Floors can be added whenever you like; and once created, they can also be copied and deleted.

Note: Home Designer Suite allows only one floor, the foundation/basement, below the first floor. Keep this in mind when you begin an as-built or plan for a multi-story building. See “Foundations” on page 207.

Build New Floor



New floors can be created in floor plan view as well as in 3D views, and are always added above the top living floor. To create a new floor, select **Build> Floor> Build New Floor**.




- **Derive new 2nd floor plan from the 1st floor plan** creates a new top floor with exterior walls generated directly over the exterior walls of the floor below. Wall types and roof directives associated with the walls on the floor below are duplicated; however, interior walls are not. See “Roof Panel” on page 136.
- Check **Move Highest Floor’s Roof Up** to move any roof planes displaying on the highest floor in the plan up one floor when the new floor is created. Roof planes displaying on floors other than the top floor are unaffected. This option is only available if there are roof planes built on the top floor and is not available when **Auto Rebuild Roofs** is enabled. See “Build Roof Dialog” on page 221.
- Check **Step floor/ceiling elevations to match existing floor** to maintain all ceiling heights on the existing floor by stepping floor heights on the new floor to match. Ceiling heights on the new floor also become stepped accordingly. See “Stepped Floor and Ceiling Platforms” on page 152.
- **Make new (blank) plan for the 2nd floor** creates a new top floor that is blank. This option is typically selected only if none of the exterior walls on the new

floor will be directly above the exterior walls on the floor below. If you choose this method, it may be helpful to turn on the Reference Floor when drawing walls on the new floor. See “The Reference Floor” on page 205.

When you click OK, the **Room Defaults** dialog for the newly created floor opens. Make any necessary changes to the floor structure, moldings, or materials and click OK. See “Floor Defaults Dialog” on page 200.

The new floor becomes the current floor in floor plan view. If, however, the new floor is created in a 3D view, the camera remains on its original floor and does not move.

Adding a Foundation

To add a foundation, select **Build> Floor> Build Foundation** . See “Building a Foundation” on page 208.

Displaying Floors

Home Designer Suite allows you to view the floors in your plan in a variety of ways.




In Floor Plan View

In floor plan view, only one floor can be active for editing at a time. This is referred to as the Current Floor. See “The Current Floor” on page 204.

In addition to the Current Floor, one other floor can be displayed for reference purposes: the Reference Floor. Objects on the Current Floor can snap to those on the Reference Floor, helping you align objects. See “The Reference Floor” on page 205.

In 3D Views

In most 3D views, all floors in a plan are visible, from the foundation up to the attic. There are three exceptions:

- **Floor Camera**  views.
- **Doll House View** .
- Interior **Elevation**  views.

Floor Cameras and **Doll House Views** show the Current Floor only, not including its ceiling, while interior **Elevation** views show a wall on a single floor in a single room. See “3D View Tools” on page 383.

Deleting Floors



Select **Build> Floor> Delete Current Floor** to remove the current floor from the plan. If there is a floor above, it becomes the current floor; if there is no floor below, the floor beneath becomes the current floor.



To delete Floor 0, select **Build> Floor> Delete Foundation**. You can delete the foundation without actually being on Floor 0. Floor 0 cannot be deleted while **Auto Rebuild Foundation** is turned on. See “Deleting Foundations” on page 211.



When a floor is deleted, all objects on that floor are deleted with it.

Split Levels

Both split level floor plans and split level entries can be created by controlling the floor and ceiling heights of individual rooms in a multiple story structure.


Split Level Floor Plans

A split level, or tri-level, structure is a building where the floor level in one part of the plan is located approximately half way between the floor and ceiling levels of another part of the plan.



Split Level Home

To create a simple split level plan

1. Draw a simple rectangular structure divided into two separate halves by an interior wall.
2. Select one of the rooms and click the **Open Object**  edit button. See “Room Specification Dialog” on page 155.
3. Raise the **Floor Height** then press the Tab key.
4. Restore the **Relative Rough Ceiling** to the default value, then click OK.

5. Build a stem wall foundation. See “Foundations” on page 207.
 - The foundation under the room with the lower floor height will have the specified Min Stem Wall Height.
 - The foundation under the room with the raised floor will have taller stem walls.
 - Both can be edited in the **Room Specification** dialog.
6. If you add a Floor 2, note that the **Ceiling Height** in the room on Floor 1 will be reset to the default value.
 - To maintain a stepped condition on multiple floors, return to this room and set the **Relative Rough Ceiling** back to using the default.


Split Level Entries


A split level entry, or divided entry, is characterized by an entry door that opens onto a landing positioned half way between the basement floor and first floor levels.



Split Level Entry

To create a simple split level entry

1. Create a plan file with a full basement at the location of the entry door. See “Basement Rooms” on page 212.
2. Go to Floor 0 and draw a stair **Landing**  at the location of the entry. See “Landings” on page 240.
3. Draw stairs upward from the basement floor to the landing.
 - The number of treads and risers in the stair section will determine the landing height.

4. Draw a second stair section from the landing upward.
5. Select the stairs and click the **Auto Stairwell**  edit button. See “Creating a Stairwell” on page 245.

Split level entries are often associated with daylight basements. See “Daylight Basements” on page 213.

For more detailed instructions, visit www.HomeDesignerSoftware.com.

The Current Floor


Only one floor can be active at any given time. The active floor is referred to as the **Current Floor**, and it is the only floor on which objects can be edited.

If you want to edit two different floors at the same time, you can open the plan again. This opens a second window on the current open plan that has the same editing abilities as the first. Only one of these windows can be active at any given time.

Floor Up / Floor Down



If you are working with more than one floor, you can select **Tools> Reference Floors> Up One Floor** or **Down One Floor** to switch from one floor to another.

You can change the current floor in floor plan and 3D views. The current floor displays on the **Change Floor/Reference**  button, which can be found between the **Down One Floor** and the **Up One Floor** buttons.

Floors become available once they have been built. The Attic and foundation levels are also accessible using these tools.

Change Floor / Reference



If there are multiple floors, select **Tools> Reference Floors> Change Floor/Reference** to open the **Change Floor/Reference** dialog, where you can select both the current floor and which floor is used in the Reference Floor, as well as control the appearance of the Reference Floor.

The Attic Floor



Home Designer Suite automatically creates a floor above the top numbered floor level of each plan. This floor is called the Attic floor and has only one purpose: to provide a space for automatically generated Attic walls. See “Attic Walls” on page 132.

Because the Attic floor is not meant to be a living area, a warning message will display if

you try to draw walls or other objects on this floor.

In some situations, you may find it necessary to draw one or more walls on this floor; however, even if you enclose an area with walls, rooms cannot be created on the Attic floor.

If you wish to create an attic loft, bonus room, or storage area in your plan, you will need do so on a numbered floor level.

The Reference Floor

When there is more than one floor in a model, it is often helpful to see how they relate to each other. Any floor can be shown as the **Reference Floor** along with the current floor.

When the Reference Floor Display is turned on, the floor that you were last on prior to the current floor is used as the Reference Floor and is shown in red. Objects on the Reference Floor cannot be selected or edited.

Reference Floor Display



To turn on the Reference Floor, select **Tools> Reference Floors> Reference Floor Display** or press F9 on your keyboard.

If the Reference Floor is turned on when a view is printed, it will be included in the

printed output. See “Displaying Objects” on page 479.

Note: If objects on the current floor and the Reference Floor have edges that line up, the Reference Floor may be difficult to see on screen. When lines of two different colors are superimposed upon each other, discoloration may result.

Reference Floor Display Options



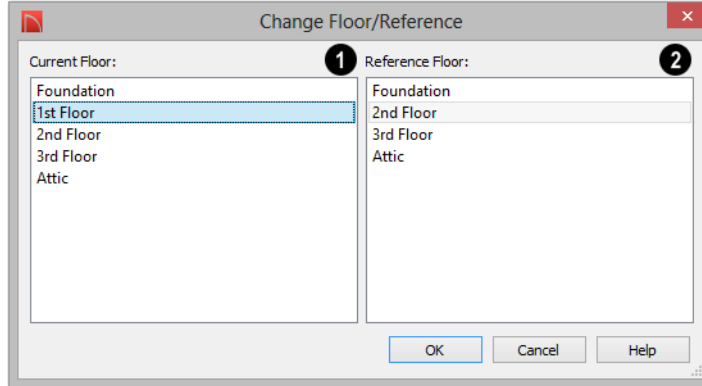
The display of objects in the Reference Floor is controlled by selecting **Tools> Reference Floors> Reference Floor Display Options**. See “Display Options Dialog” on page 75.

Change Floor / Reference



By default, the floor below the current floor is the Reference Floor, but any floor can be referenced using the **Change**

Floor/Reference dialog. To open the dialog, select **Tools> Reference Floors> Change Floor/Reference** button.



1 The **Current Floor** is highlighted here. You can select another floor to make it the current floor.

2 The **Reference Floor** currently used for reference is highlighted here. You can select another floor to display it instead.

Swap Floor/Reference



If one floor is defined as the current floor and another floor is defined as the reference floor, select **Tools> Reference Floors> Swap Floor/Reference** to switch the status of the two floors.

Foundations

There are two foundation types in Home Designer Suite: stem walls with footings and monolithic slab. The foundation type can be specified in the **Foundation Defaults** dialog when the foundation is built.

There can be only one foundation level in your plan, Level 0. Foundation walls can be drawn on upper floors using the **Wall** tool.



Always consult registered geotechnical and civil engineers for information regarding the proper foundation for your site.

Chapter Contents

- Foundation Defaults
- Building a Foundation
- Displaying Foundations
- Editing Foundations
- Deleting Foundations
- Foundations and Rooms
- Foundations and the Terrain
- Fireplaces
- Fireplace Specification Dialog
- Library Fireplaces
- Chimneys


Foundation Defaults

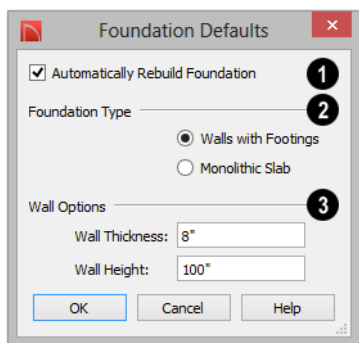


Foundation Defaults can be accessed by selecting **Edit> Default Settings**.

Select “Foundation” and click the **Edit** button to open the **Foundation Defaults** dialog.

The settings in the **Foundation Defaults** dialog are similar to those in the **Build Foundation** dialog, which opens when

Build> Floor> Build Foundation  is selected. The primary difference is that when you click **OK** in the **Foundation Defaults** dialog, no changes are made to the model. See “Building a Foundation” on page 208.



1 Check **Auto Rebuild Foundation** to automatically rebuild the foundation whenever changes are made to Floor 1 that affect the structure of the foundation. See “Rebuilding Foundations” on page 210.

2 Click the radio button beside either **Monolithic Slab** or **Walls with Footings** to specify which foundation type the program should build.

3 **Wall Options** - Specify characteristics of the foundation walls.

- **Wall Thickness** - Specify the desired thickness of the foundation walls. See “Wall Thickness” on page 129.
- **Wall Height** - Specify the desired height of the foundation walls.

If the wall height is at least 6 feet (1800 mm), a slab floor is generated above the footings and inside the foundation walls. The **Wall Height** includes the thickness of this slab.

If you do not want this slab, specify the “rooms” on Floor 0 as **Open Below** in the **Room Specification** dialog. See “Available Room Types” on page 148.

Building a Foundation



Two foundation types are available: stem walls with footings and monolithic slabs. The first option is created using walls; the second creates concrete slabs with footings.

Automatically built foundations are placed on Floor 0 and are based on wall positions


and floor heights on Floor 1. Foundation walls or slab footings are generated under:

- All exterior walls on Floor 1 that define a room other than a Court, Deck or Balcony room type. See “Room Definition” on page 144.

- Any interior walls on Floor 1 defining rooms with different floor heights. See “Floor and Ceiling Heights” on page 151.

At least one room must be defined on Floor 1 for a foundation to be automatically generated. If no rooms are defined on Floor 1, a blank Floor 0 is created.

To build an automatic foundation

1. Select **Build> Floor> Build Foundation** .
2. Specify the desired foundation type and other information in the **Build Foundation** dialog. The settings in this dialog are similar to those in the Foundation Defaults dialog. See “Foundation Defaults” on page 208.
3. In the **New Floor** dialog, select **Derive new Foundation plan from the 1st floor plan** and click **OK** to build a foundation based on Floor 1.


If you prefer, you can instead select **Make new (blank) plan for the Foundation** to create an empty foundation level where you can manually draw foundation walls or slabs.

In most cases, it is preferable to base Floor 0 off the first floor plan and then manually edit the foundation as needed. See “Editing Foundations” on page 210.

Mixing Foundation Types

You can also create a foundation that combines stem walls and/or monolithic slabs.

To create a foundation of multiple types

1. Begin by specifying any rooms on Floor 1 that require a slab floor as either a Garage or Slab **Room Type**. See “Foundations and Rooms” on page 211.
2. **Build Foundation** , as described above.

Displaying Foundations



The display of foundation walls, slabs, curbs and footings is controlled in the **Display Options** dialog. See “Display Options Dialog” on page 75.

- Foundation Walls, including slab footings and Garage curbs, are placed on the “Walls, Foundation” layer.
- Footings under Foundation Walls and slab footings are placed on the “Footings” layer.

If a door on Floor 1 extends into a stem wall or curb defining a Garage room, its location will be indicated on Floor 0.

In 3D views, all objects on Floor 0 will only display when the “Foundation” layer is turned on.

While the display of foundation walls and their footings can be controlled independent of one another in floor plan view, in 3D views this is not the case. If a foundation wall is set to display, its footing will as well - even if the “Footings” layer is turned off. The reverse is also true - if a foundation wall’s display is turned off, so will its footing’s.

The display of monolithic slab foundations in 3D views is controlled by the “Foundation”

layer. Slab footings are located on the “Walls, Foundation” layer; but if this layer is turned off, any slab footings that define a

foundation room will continue to display as long as the “Foundation” layer is on.

Editing Foundations

Stem wall with footings and monolithic slab foundations are both created using walls which enclose room areas.

- Foundation walls can be selected and edited much like other walls. See “Editing Walls” on page 127.
- Foundation rooms can also be selected and edited like other rooms. See Foundations and Rooms.

Rebuilding Foundations

By default, foundations update automatically when changes are made to the structure on Floor 1. For example, if exterior walls are moved or floor platforms are raised or lowered, the foundation will be rebuilt.

If you prefer that the foundation not rebuild automatically, you can uncheck **Auto Rebuild Foundation** in the **Foundation Defaults** dialog. See “Foundation Defaults” on page 208.

You can also rebuild an automatically generated foundation by selecting **Build**>

Floor> **Build Foundation**  from the menu.

When **Auto Rebuild Foundation** is enabled, walls cannot be edited, manually drawn or deleted on Floor 0. When the foundation is rebuilt, any manually drawn or edited walls are deleted. Similarly, rooms on Floor 0 cannot be edited while this option is enabled. If you try to draw a wall or edit a room or a

wall while **Auto Rebuild Foundation** is turned on, a warning message will display.

Changing Foundation Types

When a foundation is generated, the program creates **Floor Defaults** settings for Floor 0 based on the information in the **Build Foundation** dialog. If you specify a Monolithic Slab foundation, the default Floor Structure on Floor 1 will also be changed to a slab rather than a framed platform. See “Floor Defaults Dialog” on page 200.

If you rebuild the foundation using a different Foundation Type, it is advisable to check the floor heights of all rooms on Floor 1 - particularly Garage and Slab rooms, as well as any rooms that do not use the default floor height of 0”.



To avoid unexpected results, it is recommended that you not change the Foundation Type once the foundation is built.

Stem Wall Height


When a foundation is created, all of Floor 0 uses the stem wall height specified in the **Foundation Defaults** dialog,

This height is measured from the bottom of floor platform of Floor 1 to top of the stem walls’ footings. If Floor 1 has multiple floor

platform heights, the foundation stem walls will be stepped.

Once a foundation is created, stem wall heights can be adjusted either on a room-by-room basis or for individual walls.

To change a room's stem wall height

1. Select a room on Floor 0 and click the **Open Object**  edit button.

2. Specify the desired **Stem Wall Height** in the **Room Specification** dialog. See “General Panel” on page 155.
3. If you wish to reduce the **Stem Wall Height**, you will first need to reduce the **Ceiling Height** value by the same amount.


If adjacent rooms have stem wall heights that differ by at least 1/16 of an inch, the stem wall separating them uses the larger of these two values.

Deleting Foundations



Select **Build> Floor> Delete Foundation** to delete the entire foundation floor.

You can also select and delete individual foundation walls and slabs by clicking the

Delete  edit button or pressing the Delete key. See “Deleting Objects” on page 111.

Deleting and rebuilding the foundation is often the quickest way to update the model when substantial changes are made to Floor 1 after the foundation is built.

Foundations and Rooms

When a foundation plan is created, rooms included in the Living Area calculation generate a stem wall or slab foundation below them. Garage rooms generate slab foundations, but exterior rooms such as Decks, Courts and Balconies do not generate any foundation. See “Room Types” on page 147.

Interior foundation walls are not generated unless:

- They separate the area under a Slab or Garage room from the rest of the plan;
- They define areas under rooms with different floor heights.

Note: To remove all or part of the concrete slab in the basement area, select a basement room and define it as Open Below in the Room Specification dialog.

Garages

When a foundation is generated based on the floor plan of Floor 1, a room on the first floor specified as either a Garage or Slab type will receive a foundation with a slab floor and stem walls. If a monolithic slab foundation is generated, the room will receive a slab floor with curbs.

By default, a room on Floor 1 specified as a Garage or a Slab will be assigned a lower floor height when the foundation is built. The amount that it is lowered depends on the foundation type:

- The floor height will drop the default thickness of the floor platform for Floor 1 plus 12" (300 mm) - a total of 24 5/8" (618 mm) - in a Walls with Footings foundation.
- The floor height will drop 3 1/2" (88 mm) in a Monolithic Slab foundation.

To build a Garage slab with stem walls

1. Before the foundation is generated, specify the room as a Garage or Slab.
2. Build a Wall with Footings foundation.

To build a Garage slab with curbs

1. Before the foundation is generated, specify the room as a Garage or Slab.


2. Build a Monolithic Slab foundation, specifying the required Lower Garage Floor value.

Basement Rooms

When a foundation's type is Walls with Footings and it is assigned a Minimum Wall Height of 76" (1900 mm) or greater, the resulting basement is automatically created with a 4" (100 mm) concrete slab floor.

Similarly, if a foundation is set up to have a Basement Ceiling Height of 72" (1800 mm) or greater when built, it is automatically given a painted drywall Ceiling Finish.

Regardless of its ceiling height, however, you can specify a ceiling finish for any room in the **Room Specification** dialog. See "Structure Panel" on page 156.

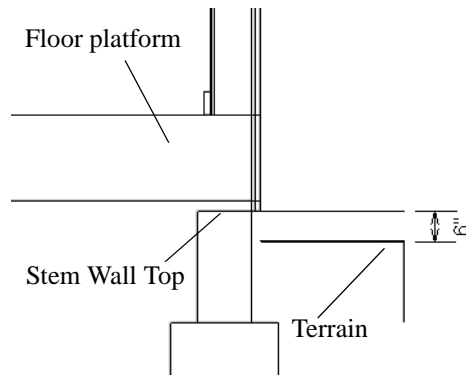
The resulting basement can be divided into separate rooms using **Interior Walls**  or any wall type you wish.

Foundations and the Terrain

Home Designer Suite automatically positions the terrain a set distance below Floor 1. See "Terrain Height vs Floor Height" on page 290.

In a plan with a foundation present, this distance will be:

- 6" (187 mm) below the top of the stem walls in a Walls with Footings foundation.
- 8" (200 mm) below the top of the slab in a Monolithic Slab foundation.



By default, the program will also create a flattened pad under the building footprint.

Not all foundations have these requirements, of course, so you can customize your foundation and terrain to suit your needs.

Daylight Basements

Daylight basements, also referred to as look-out basements, have walls that are tall enough for basement windows to be positioned above the terrain. They are often found in split level or split entry structures.

To create a daylight basement condition, build a stem wall foundation and modify these settings in the **Terrain Specification** dialog:

- Uncheck **Auto Calculate Elevation**.
- Increase the **Building Pad Elevation**, which is the distance between the default floor height of Floor 1 and the terrain.

Walkout Basements

Walkout basements are a type of daylight basement typically located on sloped terrain. They feature walls that are above ground at the lower end of the slope so that a door can be positioned above the terrain at that end.

To create a walkout basement, build a stem wall foundation and modify these settings in the **Terrain Specification** dialog:

- Uncheck **Flatten Pad**.
- Uncheck **Auto Calculate Elevation**.

You will also need to create sloped terrain and adjust the **Building Pad Elevation** and/or terrain data so that the terrain is at the appropriate height relative to the structure at both the high and low ends of the slope.

Stepped Foundations

Stepped foundations are usually built on sloping terrain. A stepped foundation will be produced automatically if more than one floor height is present on Floor 1 when the foundation is built.

As with a walkout basement, you will need to build a stem wall foundation and modify these settings in the **Terrain Specification** dialog:

- Uncheck **Flatten Pad**.
- Uncheck **Auto Calculate Elevation**.

You will also need to create sloped terrain and adjust the **Building Pad Elevation** and/or terrain data so that the terrain is at the appropriate height relative to the structure at both the high and low ends of the slope.

You can also create a stepped foundation by editing foundation rooms. See “Stem Wall Height” on page 210.

Fireplaces



A masonry fireplace can be placed in or away from a wall by selecting **Build > Fireplace** and then clicking in the drawing area.

- If created in a wall, it is considered a wall opening and can be moved or resized like a window or door.


- If created away from a wall, it moves and resizes similar to a cabinet.

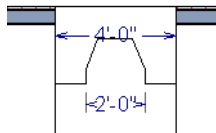
A selection of prefabricated metal fireplaces is also available from the Fixtures (Interior) library category. These can be framed in with standard walls. See “The Library” on page 341.

The display of fireplaces is controlled in the **Display Options** dialog. See “Display Options Dialog” on page 75.

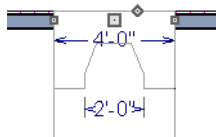
Fireplaces are edited, moved, resized, and deleted similar other objects. See “Editing Objects” on page 85.

Built into a Wall

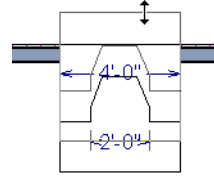
To place a masonry fireplace in a wall, select **Build > Fireplace**  and click on a wall. A fireplace is created with the outside of the fireplace flush with the outside of the wall.



Select the fireplace to display four edit handles located along the wall.




Click the diamond-shaped Depth handle and drag toward the outside of the wall. The fireplace will stop when the firebox front is flush with the inside edge of the wall.

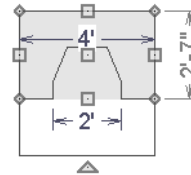


In 3D views, fireplaces placed in walls display five edit handles: a Resize handle along each edge and a Move handle at the center.

Fireplaces always face the interior when placed on an exterior wall. When placing a fireplace in an interior wall, click on the edge of the wall that you want the fireplace to face. The fireplace is created with the firebox on the same side as the wall edge you clicked on to create it.


Freestanding

To place a free-standing masonry fireplace, select **Build > Fireplace**  and click in an open area away from a wall.



Unlike fireplaces placed in walls, free-standing fireplace have ten edit handles when selected and may be rotated, resized, or moved in any direction, similar to the way CAD boxes can. See “Editing Box-Based Objects” on page 98.

Fireplace Foundations

When a Walls with Footings foundation is built, a fireplace foundation will be generated under any **Fireplaces**  present on Floor 1. See “Building a Foundation” on page 208.

Fireplace foundations are the same material type as the original fireplace, but do not have a firebox or a hearth. Fireplace foundations can be edited or deleted as needed. A firebox and hearth can be added in the **Fireplace Specification** dialog.

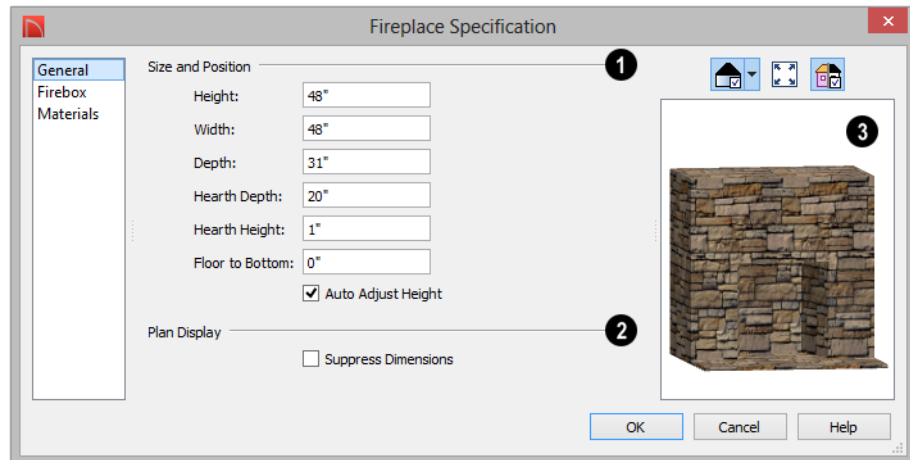
Fireplace Specification Dialog



Select a masonry fireplace and click the **Open Object** edit button to display the **Fireplace Specification** dialog.

Dimensions in this dialog here must be entered in whole inches. Fractions and decimals are not accepted.

General Panel



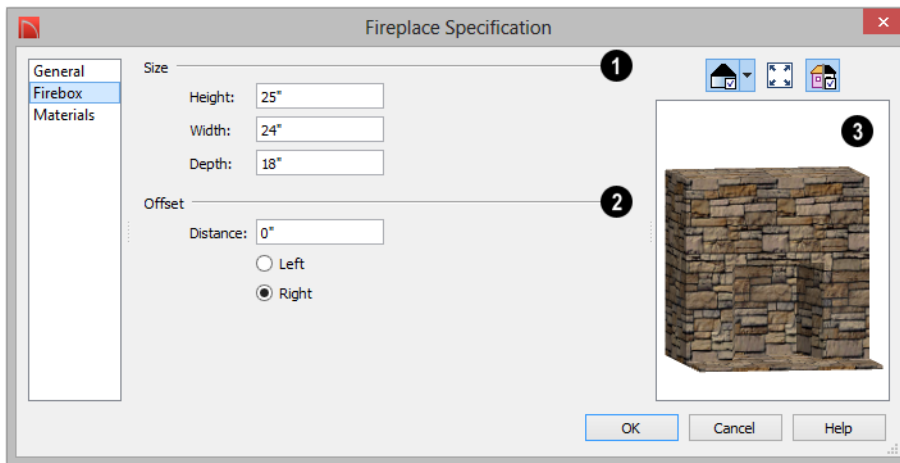
- 1 Specify the **Size and Position** of the selected fireplace and its hearth.
- Specify the **Height, Width, and Depth** of the fireplace.
 - Specify the **Hearth Depth**. This is measured from the front of the fireplace out into the room. To eliminate the hearth altogether, enter a zero for this value.
 - Specify the **Hearth Height**, relative to the floor in the room that the fireplace faces.
 - Enter the **Floor to Bottom** distance from the floor to the bottom of the hearth.
 - When the selected free-standing fireplace is outside a room and **Auto Adjust Height** is checked, its **Floor to Bottom** height is measured relative to the terrain

height. When this is unchecked, the Floor to Bottom height is measured from the default floor height of Floor 1. Only available for free-standing fireplaces. See “Terrain Height vs Floor Height” on page 290 of the Reference Manual.

2 Plan Display - Check **Suppress Dimensions** to turn off the display of the selected fireplace’s width and firebox width dimensions in floor plan view.

3 The preview of the fireplace updates as changes are made. See “Dialog Preview Panes” on page 29.

Firebox Panel



- 1** Define the **Size** of the selected fireplace’s firebox.
- Specify the firebox’s **Height** and **Width**.
- Specify the **Depth** of the firebox.
- 2** Define the firebox **Offset**, measured from the center of the fireplace.
- Enter the offset **Distance**, which is how far the firebox is offset from the fireplace center. A value of 0 centers the firebox in the fireplace.

- **Offset to Left/Right** - Choose to offset the firebox to the left or to the right.

3 The preview of the fireplace updates as changes are made. See “Dialog Preview Panes” on page 29.

Materials Panel

For information about the settings on this panel, see “Materials Panel” on page 364.

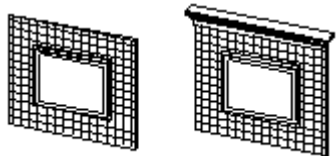
Library Fireplaces

A variety of different fireplace symbols are available in library. The fireplace symbols in the Library behave just like other Library objects. See “The Library” on page 341.

Placing a Library Fireplace

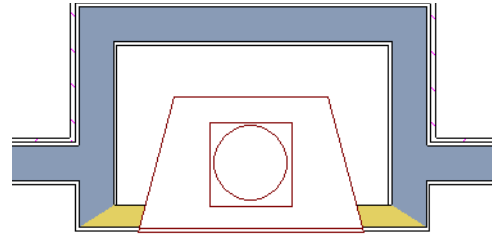
A variety of fireplace symbols are available in the library. See “Placing Library Objects” on page 354.

Flush fireplaces are designed to snap to wall surfaces.



Flush Fireplace Flush Fireplace

Some fireplace symbols can be enclosed by walls or positioned to project through a wall.



Open Front fireplace projecting through a wall



Always check the manufacturer's product information for the framing and clearance requirements of the fireplace unit you plan to use, and design your plan accordingly

Chimneys

Chimneys can be created using a variety of methods.

Masonry Fireplace Chimneys

To create a chimney on a masonry fireplace

1. Select the fireplace in a 3D view.
2. Ctrl + drag the top edge of the chimney upward through all the floors and the roof until it is to the desired height. See “Unrestricted Movement” on page 106.
3. When the chimney is approximately the correct height, select the fireplace, click

the **Open Object**  edit button, and type in the exact height.

Chimney Chases and Caps

There are two ways to draw a chimney chase:

- Place a closed box Geometric Shape or Soffit over the chimney chase, resize it to match, then increase its height either in its specification dialog or in a 3D view using the same method as extending a masonry fireplace.
- Use walls to define the chimney chase as a room area, making sure these walls are aligned between floors. The chimney

chase “room” on the uppermost floor should have a much higher ceiling than the other rooms on that floor and should also have no ceiling or roof. See “Room Specification Dialog” on page 155.

A selection of chimney tops is available in the library. In addition, custom chimney caps can be made using Geometric Shapes and/or Soffits. See “Other Objects” on page 331.

Roofs

Home Designer Suite's automatic Roof Tools allow you to draw almost any roof style.

Proficiency with the Roof Tools can only be attained through practice, but mastering these tools saves you time and effort in plan development. For information about creating specific roof styles, see "Roof Tutorial" on page 57 of the User's Guide.

Chapter Contents

- Roof Defaults
- The Roof Tools
- Automatic Roofs
- Build Roof Dialog
- Editing Roofs
- Skylights
- Skylight Specification Dialog
- Dormers
- Editing Auto Dormers
- Dormer Specification Dialog
- Roof Returns and Other Details
- Roof Pitches in Degrees

Roof Defaults



Select **Edit> Default Settings**, to open the **Default Settings** dialog for a variety of drawing tools, several of which directly affect roof generation.

Build Roof Dialog

While not listed in the **Default Settings** dialog, the **Build Roof** dialog functions as the defaults dialog for roofs. Many, but not all, initial default values for automatically generated roofs are set in this dialog. See “Build Roof Dialog” on page 221.

Floor and Ceiling Heights

The initial heights of floors and ceilings, which influence roof heights, are specified in the **Floor Defaults** dialog for each floor. See “Floor Defaults Dialog” on page 200.

The floor and ceiling heights in individual rooms also influence roof heights and are specified in the **Room Specification** dialog. See “Structure Panel” on page 156.



If Auto Rebuild Roofs is checked in the Build Roof dialog and you change floor or ceiling heights, wall positions or roof directives in walls, the roof rebuilds to reflect your changes. See “Rebuilding Roofs” on page 221.

Wall Specification Dialog

By default, when a roof is built, a roof plane is generated over each exterior wall, creating a hip roof.

Any deviations from this default hip roof, such as a gable or a different pitch, can be specified in the **Wall Specification** dialog for any exterior wall. See “Roof Panel” on page 136.

Dormer Defaults

The settings in the **Dormer Defaults** dialog determine the initial settings for automatic dormers and are much like those in the **Dormer Specification** dialog. See “Dormer Specification Dialog” on page 228.

The Roof Tools



Select **Build> Roof** to access the Roof Tools.

Build Roof




Select **Build> Roof> Build Roof** to open the **Build Roof** dialog, specify the settings for automatically generated roof planes, and build or rebuild a roof. See “Build Roof Dialog” on page 221.

When roofs are automatically generated, a roof plane is created over each exterior wall by default, resulting in a hip roof.


To automatically generate a roof plane using values other than the defaults or to not generate a roof plane bearing on a particular wall (as with a gable or the sides of a shed roof), you can change the settings in the **Wall Specification** dialog. See “Roof Panel” on page 136.

For more information about creating different roof styles, see “Roof Tutorial” on page 57 of the User’s Guide.


Skylight

 Select **Build> Roof> Skylight**, then draw a rectangle over an existing roof plane to create a skylight. The skylight, skylight shaft, and ceiling hole (if a ceiling exists) are drawn at the same time. See “Skylights” on page 224.

Dormer

 Select **Build> Roof> Dormer** and click within an existing roof plane to place an auto floating dormer. See “Dormers” on page 227.

Delete Roof

 Select **Build> Roof> Delete Roof** to delete all roof planes in the plan. See “Deleting Roof Planes” on page 223.

Automatic Roofs

When roofs are automatically generated, a roof plane is created over each exterior wall by default, resulting in a hip roof.

Roof Directives in Walls

To automatically generate a roof plane using values other than the defaults or to not generate a roof plane bearing on a particular wall (as with a gable or the sides of a shed roof), you can change the settings in the **Wall Specification** dialog for that wall. See “Roof Panel” on page 136.



For more information about creating different roof styles, see “Roof Tutorial” on page 57 of the User’s Guide.

Rebuilding Roofs

By default, whenever changes are made to wall placement, floor/ceiling heights, or roof directives in walls, the roof will update in response. If you do not want the roof to rebuild automatically, uncheck **Auto Rebuild Roofs** in the **Build Roof** dialog. See “Roof Panel” on page 222.

You can also rebuild the roof at any time to reflect the current state of the model by opening the **Build Roof** dialog and clicking OK.

Build Roof Dialog

 The **Build Roof** dialog is used to automatically build or rebuild roof planes. To open the **Build Roof** dialog, select **Build> Roof> Build Roof** .

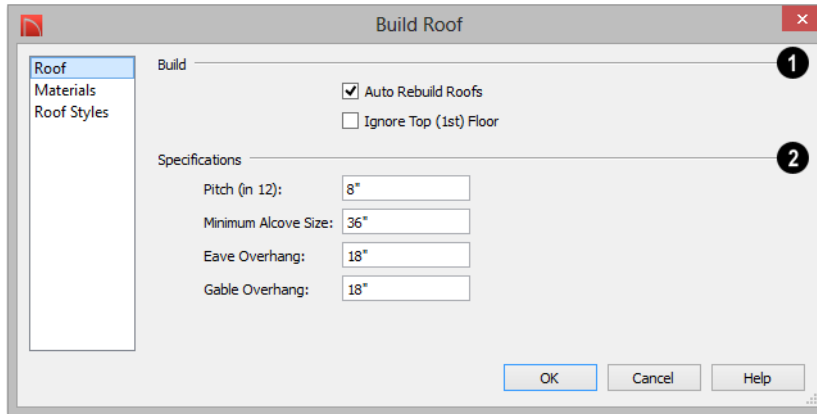
Roof planes are generated based on the positions and roof directive settings for each exterior wall in the plan. If you make changes to any of these walls, you will need to build the roof again for them to take effect. See “Roof Panel” on page 136.

There are three panels in the **Build Roof** dialog:

- Roof Panel

- Materials Panel
- Roof Styles Panel

Roof Panel



1 The **Build** options are commands related to building and rebuilding roofs.

- If you check **Auto Rebuild Roofs**, the program automatically rebuilds the roof if you make a change that affects the roof, such as to exterior wall positions or ceiling heights.
- Check **Ignore Top Floor** to build the roof so that it bears on the walls of the floor below the top living floor in the plan. When unchecked, the roof builds so that it bears on the walls on the top floor of the plan.

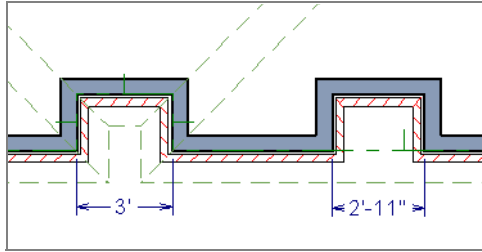
2 The **Specifications** settings affect basic roof structure.

- Enter a value to describe the **Pitch**. In plans using U.S. units of measurement, pitch is described as a ratio over 12; in

metric plans, it is measured in degrees. For a conversion to degrees, see “Roof Pitches in Degrees” on page 231.

- **Minimum Alcove Size** - Specify the minimum width of an alcove (depression into an otherwise straight exterior wall). Any alcove less than the specified width is treated as though the exterior wall continues straight across. Alcoves that measure wider than this value are not roofed over; they cause a change in roof planes.


Following is an example showing this difference. If **Min Alcove** is 36", a 36" wide alcove requires a change in the roof line. Each wall of the alcove has an eave. On the right, the alcove is less than the 36" minimum, so the roof passes right over it.



The **Roof Overhang** is measured horizontally from the exterior surface of the wall's framing layer to the end of the top of the rafter. It does not include gutters, sheathing or siding.

- **Normal** is the overhang at the eaves and is always the overhang for a roof plane having the default Pitch specified above. If the pitch for a particular roof plane is set differently, its overhang may try to maintain its fascia at the same height. Overhang can be greater for a shallower pitch, lesser for a greater pitch.

- **Gable** is the overhang dimension at gable ends or rake walls.

 If the roof overhang values are not sufficient to extend past the outer layer of exterior walls, the walls may not generate correctly in 3D views..

Materials Panel



The settings on this allow you to specify materials for the roof's various components. See "Materials Panel" on page 364.

Roof Styles Panel

The Roof Styles panel provides links to tutorial information about creating different roof styles automatically. Click on a roof style to launch the online Help to a page with information about the roof style you selected. See "Roof Tutorial" on page 57 of the User's Guide.

Editing Roofs

Unlike most other objects in Home Designer Suite, roof planes cannot be selected and edited. To make changes to the roof, you must edit the edit roof directives in walls and/or settings in the **Build Roof** dialog, and then rebuild. See "Rebuilding Roofs" on page 221.

An exception to this rule is the **Material Painter**  tool, which you can use to change the materials used by individual roof planes without rebuilding the roof. Bear in mind, though, that any changes made using the **Material Painter**  will not be retained

if the roof is later rebuilt. See "The Material Painter" on page 362.

Deleting Roof Planes

There are several ways to delete roof planes.



Delete the entire roof quickly by selecting **Build > Roof > Delete Roof**.





You can also delete all roof planes at once in the **Delete Objects** dialog. See "Delete Objects Dialog" on page 111.

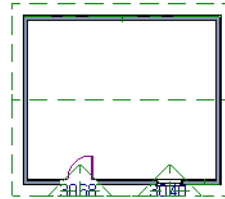
Gable Over Door/Window




The **Gable Over Door/Window** edit button allows you to add a small gable dormer over one or more selected doors or windows the next time automatic roof planes are built.

To use the Gable Over Door/Window tool

1. Select one or more doors or windows.
2. Click the **Gable Over Door/Window**  edit button.
 - **Gable Over Door/Window**  is not available for openings placed in Full Gable Walls or for Bay, Box or Bow Windows. See “Bay, Box, Bow Windows and Roofs” on page 194.
3. The next time automatic roof planes are built, gables will be created over each of these doors and windows.




- Each gable will extend 12” (300 mm) on either side of its door or window.
 - If two of these openings are within 30” (750 mm) of each other on the same wall, a single gable will be created.
 - If you move or resize the door or window(s), the associated Gable Line will not update until the roof is built again.
4. To remove a Gable Over Door/Window, select the door(s) or window(s) and click the **Delete Gable Over Opening**  edit button. The next time the roof is built, the gable will be removed.

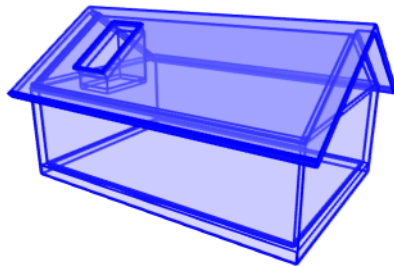
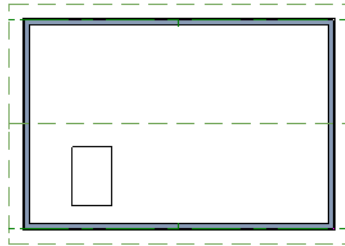
Skylights



A skylight can be created by selecting **Build > Roof > Skylight** and drawing a rectangular polyline within a single roof plane. You can also simply click once within a roof plane to place a 2’ x 2’ skylight.

The **Skylight**  tool places a flat panel skylight into a roof hole, produces a hole in the ceiling platform below, and automatically generates the skylight shaft between these two holes.

To place a skylight in a vaulted ceiling, uncheck **Ceiling Over This Room** in the **Room Specification** dialog, draw the ceiling planes to produce the vault and edit them as needed, and then draw the skylight. See “Structure Panel” on page 156.



Editing Skylights

Skylights can be edited using the edit handles, edit toolbar buttons, or the **Skylight Specification** dialog. See “Skylight Specification Dialog” on page 225.

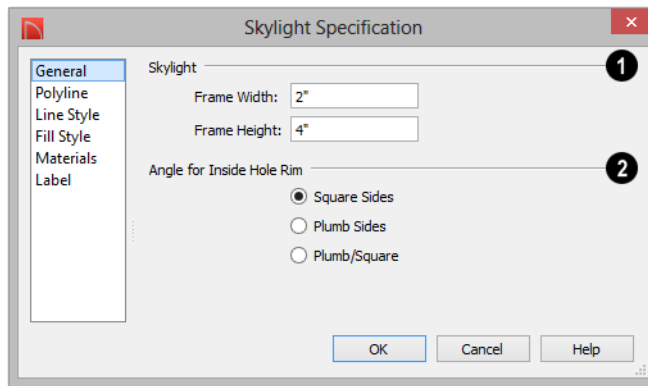
Skylights must always be contained by a single roof plane. If the roof plane is deleted, any skylights it contains are also deleted. Aside from this restriction, skylights can be edited much like standard closed polylines. See “Editing Closed-Polyline Based Objects” on page 96.

Skylight Specification Dialog



Select a skylight and click the **Open Object** edit button to open the **Skylight Specification** dialog. See “Skylights” on page 224.

General Panel



1 Specify the **Frame Width** and **Height** of the selected skylight.

2 **Angle for Inside Hole Rim** - Defines the shape of the skylight well where it passes through the roof plane.

- **Square Sides** - The framing for the skylight is cut square to the pitch of the roof.
- **Plumb Sides** - The framing for the skylight is plumb-cut.
- **Plumb/Square** - The bottom edge is plumb-cut, the top edge square-cut.

Polyline Panel

The Polyline panel indicates the skylight's **Perimeter**, its **Framing Area**, and its **Projected Area**.

- The **Perimeter** is the length of the skylight's perimeter with the pitch taken into account. It does not equal the perimeter as measured in floor plan view.
- The **Framing Area** is the area of the skylight with the pitch taken into account.
- The **Projected Area** is the area of the skylight as seen in floor plan view.

Line Style Panel

For information about the settings on this panel, see “Line Style Panel” on page 434.

Fill Style Panel

The settings on the Fill Style panel control the appearance of the selected skylight in floor plan view. For information about these settings, see “Fill Style Panel” on page 439.

Materials Panel

For information about the Materials panel, see “Materials Panel” on page 364.

Label Panel

Skylight labels display when the “Roofs, Labels” layer is turned on and use the “Default Label Style” Text Style. The Automatic Label for these objects is blank, but you can specify a custom label.

For information about the settings on this panel, see “Object Labels” on page 429.

Dormers



Dormers can be drawn manually or placed automatically using the

Dormer tool.

Automatic Dormers can be placed only under certain conditions:

- Automatic Dormers can only be placed entirely within a single roof plane. They cannot extend past the eaves or ridge of this roof plane.
- Automatic Dormer side walls cannot be positioned above other walls in the plan.

If you click within a roof plane to place an automatic dormer, but click too close to an eave or the ridge, a dormer will not be created; however, its outline will. Move this outline box to a location that meets the dormer's requirements and it will be created.

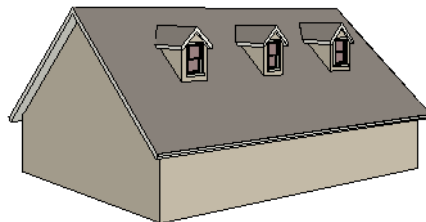
Dormer



Select **Build> Roof> Dormer** and click the roof plane where you would like to place the center of the dormer's front wall.

The bottom edges of all dormer walls are cut off by the underlying roof plane.

The images below show both the outside and inside of a typical dormer.



A dormer can be placed in floor plan view on the same floor that its underlying roof plane displays on, or it can be placed on the floor above. Normally, it does not matter what floor the dormer is on; but in some cases, it may need to be on the floor above so that the dormer walls do not interfere with walls or railings in the room below.

Regardless of which floor it is placed on, a dormer must always fit within a single roof plane. When placing a dormer on the floor above, you may find it helpful to turn on the

Reference Display . See "Reference Floor Display" on page 205.

The initial width, height, roof style and other settings of Auto Dormers are set in the **Dormer Defaults** dialog. See "Dormer Defaults" on page 220.

Manually Drawn Dormers

Once you are familiar with Home Designer Suite's roof tools, drawing dormers manually can be quite simple. There are several different ways to draw dormers; some methods work better in certain applications.

A variety of resources with information about drawing dormers manually is available at www.HomeDesignerSoftware.com.

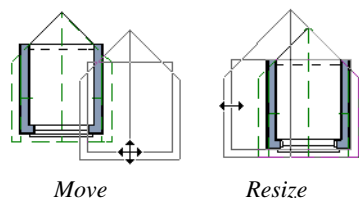
See, too, "Manually Drawn Dormers" on page 72 of the User's Guide.

Editing Auto Dormers

Auto Dormers are a collection of objects that behave as one. When a dormer is selected, it can be edited using its edit handles, edit tools, and specification dialog. See "Dormer Specification Dialog" on page 228.

Using the Mouse

When selected, an auto dormer displays three edit handles. The Move handle displays over the front wall and allows you to relocate the dormer. Two resize handles display on the side walls and allow you to change the width of the dormer.



There are some things to keep in mind when editing auto dormers and auto floating dormers using the mouse.

- Dormers move at 90° angles unless the Ctrl key is pressed before moving them.
- The dormer must be contained within one underlying roof plane.
- Auto dormers cannot be moved beyond the required knee wall.

Editing the Window

Dormer windows can be selected, edited, deleted and replaced just like other windows. See "Editing Windows" on page 183. You can place several windows in the front wall.

Unless the dormer's window has been edited or changed in the **Window Specification** dialog, when the dormer width is changed, its width changes automatically to fill the front dormer wall. If the window has been edited, its width stays fixed. If a change to the dormer makes its front wall too short to hold the window, the window reverts to auto width.

Dormer Specification Dialog



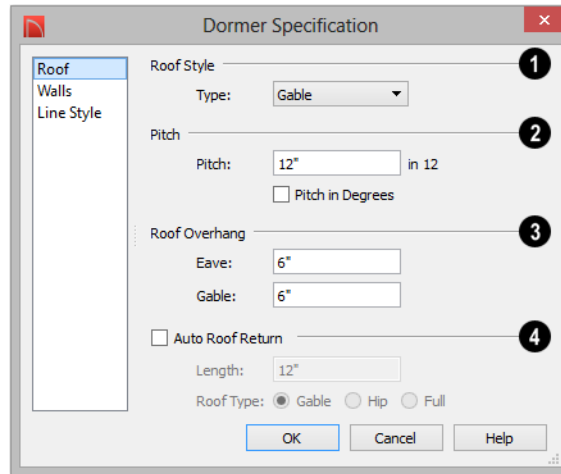
Select a dormer and click the **Open Object** edit button to open the

Dormer Specification dialog.

The settings in this dialog are also found in the **Dormer Defaults** dialog, where they

apply to all dormers as they are created rather than to a selected dormer.

Roof Panel



1 Specify the selected dormer's **Roof Style**.

- Choose a roof **Type** from the drop-down list. You can choose from Hip, Gable, Shed, Gambrel, Mansard, Barrel, Curved Eave, Hip Curved Eave or Eyebrow.



2 Describe the **Pitch** of the dormer's roof planes.

- Specify the **Pitch** of the dormer roof planes. The default dormer pitch applies

to all dormer roof types except Shed, which has a default 3 in 12 pitch. For Gambrel and Mansard types, this applies to the lowest, or eave, roof planes.

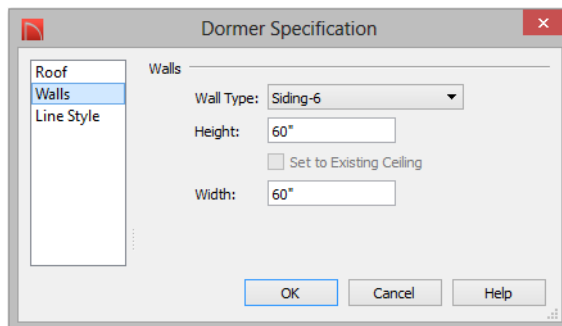
- Check **Pitch in Degrees** to display the pitch in degrees; uncheck it to display the pitch in terms of rise and run. See “Roof Pitches in Degrees” on page 231.

3 **Roof Overhang** - Specify the depth of the selected dormer's **Eave** and **Gable Overhangs**.

- Check **Auto Roof Returns** to generate roof returns on the selected dormer. Roof Returns can be only specified for Gable dormers. See “Roof Returns” on page 230.

- Specify the horizontal **Length** of the roof return in inches (mm).
- Specify a **Gable**, **Hip**, or **Full** roof return.
- Specify a **Sloping** or **Flat** roof return.

Walls Panel



- Select a **Wall Type** for the dormer walls from the drop-down list.
- Specify the **Height** of the dormer, as measured from where the top of the underlying roof plane meets the dormer front wall exterior to the top plate of the dormer roof's bearing walls.
- Check **Set to Existing Ceiling** to assign the ceiling height of the room behind the dormer to the dormer. Not available in the **Dormer Defaults** dialog.
- Specify the dormer's **Width**, measured from the outside surfaces of the dormer side walls.

Line Style Panel

For information about the settings on this panel, see “Line Style Panel” on page 434.

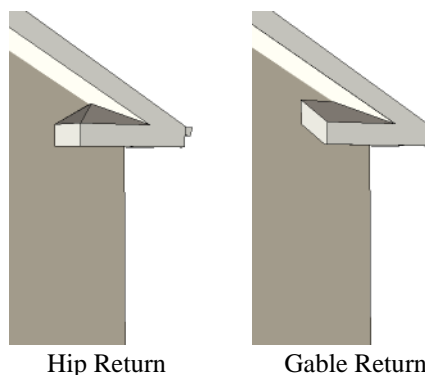
Roof Returns and Other Details

Home Designer Suite offers a selection of tools to add architectural details to your roof design.

Roof Returns

A roof return is a small decorative roof plane that connects to the low side of a gable roof overhang and extends below the upper triangular portion of the gable wall. Three styles of roof returns that can be produced.

The first two styles are called **Gable** and **Hip** returns since the return ends in a gable or hip.



The third is called a **Full** return because it extends under the entire gable to connect

both sides and is sometimes referred to as a water table. In order for a Full return to be created, the roof planes on each side must have the same height.

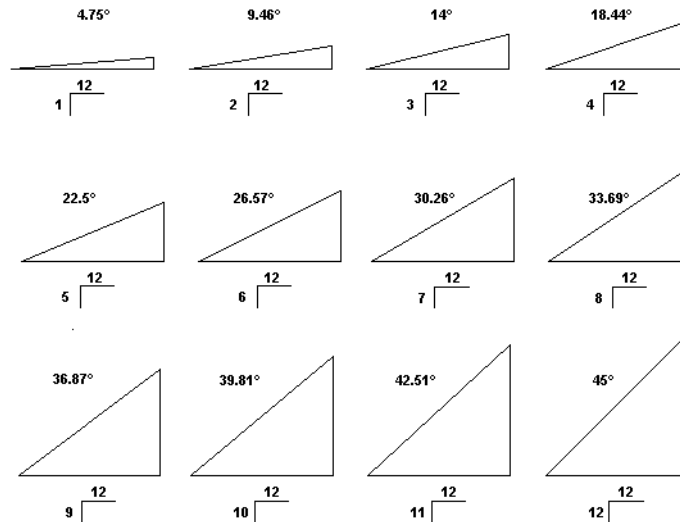


Full Return

Roof returns are generated automatically on a wall by wall basis using settings found in the **Wall Specification** dialog. See “Roof Panel” on page 136.

These roof return settings are also found in the **Dormer Specification** dialog for gable roof dormers and function similarly. See “Roof Panel” on page 229.


Roof Pitches in Degrees



Stairs and Landings

Staircases can be composed of one or more straight or curved stair sections and landings. Stairs can be drawn, selected and edited in 2D and 3D views.

Stairwells can be created automatically or manually and can be seen in 3D views.

 Local building and fire authorities must be consulted for specific stair construction codes and access requirements.

Chapter Contents

- Stair Defaults
- The Stair Tools
- Anatomy of a Staircase
- Drawing Stairs
- Displaying Stairs and Landings
- Editing Stairs
- Merging Stair Sections
- Landings
- Maintaining Tread Depth
- Starter Treads
- Wrapped Stairs
- Other Special Railings and Stairs
- Creating a Stairwell
- Rooms Below Staircases
- Staircase Specification Dialog
- Stair Landing Specification Dialog

Stair Defaults

The purpose of interior stairs is to provide passage from one floor platform to another, so the attributes that influence floor heights - including ceiling heights - also influence the structure of stairs. When considering a

staircase's structure, bear in mind that riser height is directly dependent on the distance from one floor platform to another.

The Stair Tools



Select **Build> Stairs** to access the Stair Tools.

Straight Stairs



To draw a straight staircase select **Build> Stairs> Straight Stairs**, then click and drag in floor plan or a 3D view. You can also click once to place a staircase that extends from the current floor up to the next floor. See “Drawing Stairs” on page 235.

Click Stairs



Select **Build> Stairs> Click Stairs** to create stairs between levels on the same floor with a single click of the mouse. Click the low side, within a few feet of where the floor changes height.

- If you click on the low side of a floor platform defined by a railing, a doorway will be created in the railing, adjacent to the stairs.
- If you click on the low side of a floor platform defined by a wall, stairs will be created but a doorway will not.

- If you click at a location that is not near the edge of a floor platform, a full height staircase will be created.

Curved Stairs



Select **Build> Stairs> Curve to Left** or **Curve to Right** and click once in floor plan view to place a curved staircase. See “Curved Stairs” on page 236.

Landing



Select **Build> Stairs> Landing** to draw a landing, which is a platform connecting two or more stair sections. See “Landings” on page 240.

There are two ways to create a landing using this tool:

- Click once to place a landing measuring 39” (975 mm) on each side.
- Click and drag from end to end to draw a rectangular landing sized as needed. See “Polylines” on page 438.

Anatomy of a Staircase

Stairs are often described in terms of **rise** and **run**. Rise is typically between 6” and 8”, and the run between 10” and 12”. In metric plans, rise is 177 to 190 mm, and the run is about 250 mm.

Staircase Terminology

Balusters - The vertical members that run between the handrail and the treads or bottom rail.

Bracket - Decorative L-shaped supports on the exposed side of stairs below each tread.

Landing - A platform connecting two or more stair sections.

Newels - The end post of a stair railing located at landings and the beginnings and endings of new stair sections.

Rise - The height of a riser, measured from tread surface to tread surface, Also referred to as Unit Rise.

Rise Angle - The angle of the staircase or stair section, defined by a line drawn through the back surfaces of its treads.

Riser - The vertical stair member located between the treads. Risers may be solid or open. When open, the front surfaces of the stringers are considered the risers.

Run - The depth of a tread, measured from riser surface to riser surface. Run does not include the Tread Overhang. Also referred to as Unit Run.

Runner - The carpet that runs down the center of the staircase.

Shoe - The bottom railing, placed on the landing floor, that anchors the balusters at landings.

Stringer - The inclined support member of a staircase that supports the treads and risers.

Tread - The horizontal member of a stair that the foot is placed on.

Tread Overhang - The portion of a tread extending past the front surface of the riser

and over the tread below. Also referred to as Nosing or Nosing Extension, it is not included in the Run or Tread Depth measurements.

Thread Thickness - The vertical depth of the tread material.

Stair Structure and the Model

Stairs locate the height of the floor platform that they are drawn on, and seek the next level, which may be the floor platform of the floor above or a landing. The stringers locate the subfloor of the floor platforms and maintain consistent riser height. If the stairs are long enough to reach the next level at a reasonable rise angle, their tread depth and number of treads are automatically calculated to create a staircase with consistent tread and riser dimensions along its entire length.

Stair Sections and Subsections

In Home Designer Suite, staircases can be composed of multiple sections and subsections. See “Merging Stair Sections” on page 238.


- Stair sections are separated by landings.
- Subsections are considered part of the same section because they are connected to one another directly rather than separated by a landing.

Drawing Stairs

Stairs can be drawn in floor plan and 3D views but not in elevation views. In 3D views, these objects can only be drawn in the


presence of a floor platform or terrain perimeter. See “Working in 3D” on page 394.

There are a few things to keep in mind when drawing stairs:

- Before stairs are created, make sure that the heights for both the lower and upper floors are correctly defined.
- Stairs are drawn going **UP**, so they should be drawn from the lower of the two floors they connect.
- By default, stairs adjust their riser and tread dimensions to connect two floor heights if possible. The rise and run are calculated so that the steps are consistent in size.
- Stairs will snap to the **Reference Display** , if you have it turned on.
- If a stairwell room has been defined on the floor above, the top of the stairs can be dragged until it stops at the railing or wall defining the stairwell.
- When drawing stairs up from the terrain, it is a good idea to make sure the terrain is up to date. See “Building the Terrain” on page 300.

Straight Stairs

Straight Stairs  can be created in three different ways:


- Click and drag in a straight line to draw stairs that are the length that you drag.
- Click once to place stairs that go from the current floor up to the height of the next floor level.
- Click once using the **Click Stairs**  tool to create stairs between rooms on the same floor with different floor heights or between exterior rooms and the terrain.

An individual stair section must be between 6” (150 mm) and 100’ (30,000 mm) in length. If a greater length is needed, connect two sections using a landing.

Curved Stairs




Curved Stairs can be created in floor plan view by selecting **Build> Stairs> Curve to Left** or **Curve to Right**. Click to place a 90° curved stair section that can then be edited. You can continue clicking to place additional curved staircases until another tool is selected.

- In addition, you can change a straight stair section into curved stairs, or vice versa by selecting the stairs and clicking the **Change Line/Arc**  edit button. See “Change Line/Arc” on page 110.

Drawing Stairs Downward

Stairs can be drawn from the current floor level downward; however, drawing stairs between floors in this manner is not recommended. Drawing downward should only be used to create a staircase between a porch or deck and the terrain when you require the direction arrow to say “DN” instead of “UP”.

To draw stairs going downward

1. Select **Build> Stairs> Straight Stairs** .
2. Hold down the Alt key or the right mouse button.
3. Click and drag to create straight stairs.

When drawing stairs from a floor platform to the terrain, or vice versa, they will locate the

height of the terrain as long as it is lower than the floor height. You can also create “room” outside the structure and use it to establish

the bottom height of the stairs. Then, draw in an upward direction from the lower platform to the upper platform.

Displaying Stairs and Landings



The display of stairs and landings in all views is controlled in the **Display Options** dialog. Stairs and landings are placed on the “Stairs & Ramps” layer. See “Displaying Objects” on page 74.

In Floor Plan View

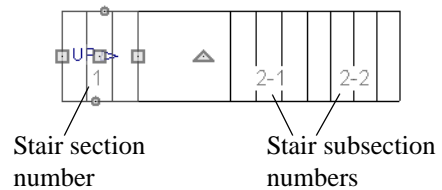
In floor plan view, stairs and landings display on the floor they were drawn on and are only visible from the floor above if there is a stairwell.

Stairs have an arrow indicating the direction they run. Interior stairs have an **UP** arrow on the floor they were created on and a **DN** arrow when viewed from the floor above. See “Drawing Stairs” on page 235.

The style and size of a direction arrow can be specified in the **Staircase** or **Ramp Specification** dialog. The color and display are controlled by the “Stairs & Ramps, Up/Down Arrows” layer.

When a staircase is selected in floor plan view, the numbers associated with each of its

sections and subsections display. Stair sections are assigned a single-digit number. Subsection numbers have two parts: a section number and subsection number, separated by a hyphen.



In 3D Views


Although stairs span between two floors, they can only belong to one floor. As a result, only multi-floor views show the upper floor with the platform opening and the lower floor with the staircase simultaneously. In **Floor Cameras** and **Doll House Views**, stairwells may appear as an empty spaces. See “3D View Tools” on page 383.

Editing Stairs


Staircases can be selected and edited in floor plan view and 3D views. See “Selecting Objects” on page 86.

Using the Mouse

When a staircase is selected, its edit handles display. These edit handles can be used to customize the object in many ways. See “Editing Objects” on page 85.

- Straight stair sections are edited like lines. They have additional edit handles for resizing the width of the section. See “Editing Line Based Objects” on page 88.
 - Curved stair sections are edited like arcs and also include edit handles for resizing the stair’s width. See “Editing Arc Based Objects” on page 90.
 - When stair sections are merged, the edit handles display differently depending on what subsection is currently selected. See “Merging Stair Sections” on page 238.
 - When moving merged stair sections, all merged sections move as one.
- Additional edit handles display on the first two treads of a staircase if the **Starter Tread**  edit button is clicked. See “Starter Treads” on page 243.

In the Specification Dialog

-  Stairs can be customized in the **Staircase Specification** dialog. See “Staircase Specification Dialog” on page 248.

Using the Edit Tools

A selected staircase can be edited in a variety of ways using the buttons on the edit toolbar. See “The Edit Toolbar” on page 26.

Merging Stair Sections

Any combination of straight and curved stair sections using **Automatic Heights** can be merged. The resulting staircase section is made up of subsections and, if there are no landings, functions as a single unit.

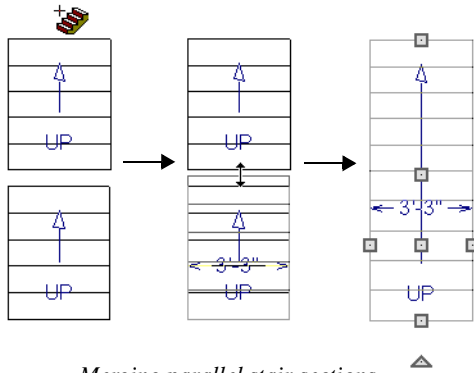
Stair subsections must be drawn in the same direction if they are to be merged:

- The top edge of a stair section cannot merge with the bottom edge of another section.
- Combinations of stairs drawn in the **UP** and **DOWN** directions cannot be merged.

Stair subsections merge at the center points of their upper and lower edges.

To merge stair sections

1. Confirm that the stairs that you wish to merge are using **Automatic Heights**. See “General Panel” on page 248.
2. Position the sections so they are in the desired relationship to each other.
 - In order to merge stair sections correctly, they must be parallel to one another.
 - To create merged subsections that change direction, make one of the merged sections curved.
3. Select either stair section so that its edit handles display.
4. Click the Extend handle on the end to be merged and drag it to the point where the two stairs are to meet.




Merging parallel stair sections

A staircase consisting of merged subsections resembles a single stair section in floor plan view. The **UP** (or **DN**) arrows join, becoming a single direction arrow.

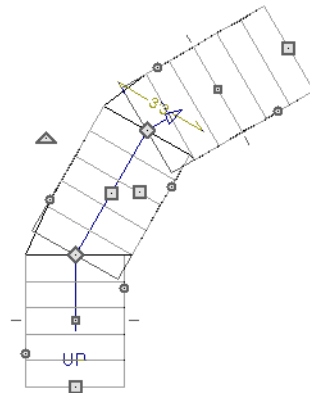
When a subsection is selected, the entire staircase is selected. Additional edit handles, indicating the presence of multiple subsections and allowing you to reposition the line along which they join. See “Using the Mouse” on page 237.

Curved Subsections


Stair subsections attached at both ends by other sections do not have a free end that can be dragged into a curve. In this situation, change the middle sub-section to a curve using the **Change Line/Arc**  edit button. See “Change Line/Arc” on page 110.

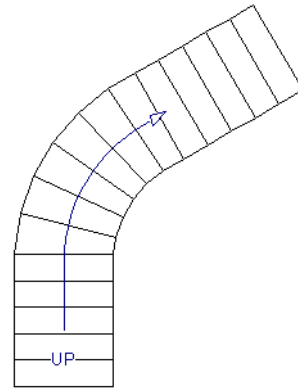
To curve an enclosed stair subsection

1. Draw three straight stair sections and connect them end to end.
2. Select the middle subsection.



The middle stair subsection is selected

3. Click the **Change Line/Arc**  edit button. The center section turns into a curved stair section.





After using Change Line/Arc


4. Use the triangular Change Curve edit handle to adjust the curvature of the middle section as needed.

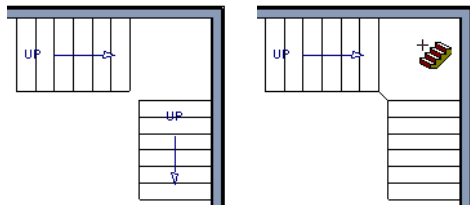
Landings

Stair landings are platforms between stair sections and can be created in either of two ways:

- Using the **Landing**  tool.
- By clicking between two stair sections using the **Straight Stairs**  tool.

To create a landing between stair sections:

1. Draw two stair sections going UP. They can be at any angle.
2. Click between the two sections using the **Straight Stairs**  tool to create a landing. Notice that only one direction arrow displays after the sections are joined by a landing.



Creating a stair landing

Multiple stair sections can be connected to one landing. For example, two or three stair sections might meet at a landing with a single stair section continuing to the next level.


To be linked by a landing, all sections must be drawn in the same **UP** direction and the top of one section should be near the bottom of the next.

Stair sections connected with a landing will move together as a single unit.

A landing formed between two stair sections having less than a 90° angle between them are created with a short edge not less than 6” (150 mm). This is because most building codes require the shortest tread to be at least 6” wide. This edge can be manually edited to less than 6” if needed.

Editing Landings


Landings can be selected in 2D and 3D views, both individually and in groups, and edited using the edit handles, the edit toolbar, and the **Landing Specification** dialog. See “Stair Landing Specification Dialog” on page 253.

Landings derive their initial materials and railing characteristics from the stairs attached to them. You can assign a unique material to a landing in its specification dialog or using the **Material Painter** ; however, the railing style is always defined by the attached stairs.

Custom Shaped Landings

Landings can be edited like other closed polyline-based objects. You can add or remove edges, convert an edge from straight to curved, or vice versa. A curved landing creates curved railings. See “Editing Closed-Polyline Based Objects” on page 96.

You can edit the shape of a landing into a wide variety of shapes. So that the railings of stair sections connect properly to the landing railings, make sure that each stair section end is snapped to a landing edge with the same length as the stair’s width. If necessary, use

the **Break Line**  tool to create a break in a landing edge if it is longer than the connecting stairs are wide. See “Break Line” on page 109.

Landing Height

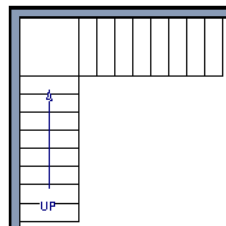
A landing’s height is controlled by the program and will adjust automatically as the stairs attached to it are modified so that the stairs maintain a consistent rise angle.

If you specify a landing’s height, that landing becomes locked and will maintain that height no matter how the stairs connected to it are adjusted.

Unlocked Landings

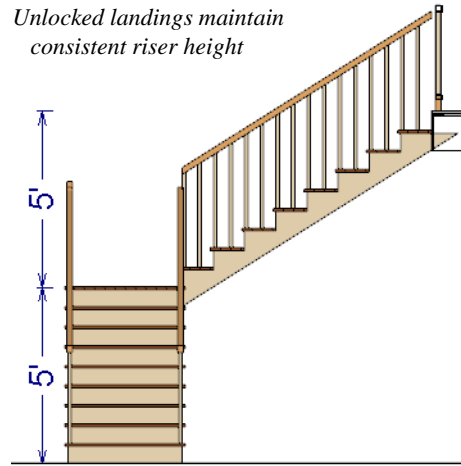
By default, new landings are unlocked, which means that their height is determined by the stair or ramp sections attached to it. An unlocked landing will automatically adjust its height as necessary to maintain the same riser height and rise angle for all attached sections.

In this example, two stair sections with eight treads each are connected by a landing.



Because the sections have the same number of treads, the landing height is one half of the distance between the two connected floors.

Unlocked landings maintain consistent riser height



If a change is made to either stair section, the program will maintain the stairs’ connection to the floors above and below, and will instead modify the height of the landing and the other stair section so that a consistent riser height is maintained.

As long as a stair or ramp system consists of a landing connecting only two stair sections, the program can easily set landing heights and produce consistent a rise angle. If more than two stair sections meet at a landing, the relationship between them becomes more complex. In this situation, you may want to define the exact height of the landing instead of letting the program define it for you.

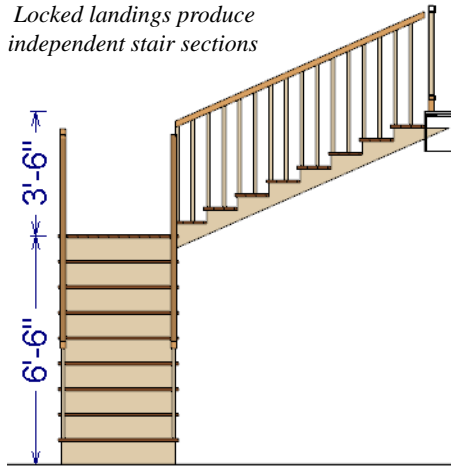
Locked Landings

A locked landing has a specifically defined height that does not adjust automatically when there are changes in the attached stairs. Instead, the stairs adjust to the landing.

For example, start with the same staircase used to illustrate unlocked landings, with one

change: the landing height is now defined at 78 inches (1980 mm).

Locked landings produce independent stair sections



Since the landing height is now closer to the upper floor than to the lower floor, the upper stair section has a very shallow riser height and the lower section has a tall riser height.


Stair and ramp sections attached to a locked landing no longer relate to one another:

- Changes to one section do not affect the other.
- The **Staircase** and **Ramp Specification** dialogs show only the selected section and those connected to it by unlocked landings, rather than the entire system.

- Locked landings do not move when attached stair or ramp sections are moved. Only unlocked landings and the sections attached to them will move.

Locked landing can be used to break up a complex network of stairs and landings into smaller pieces with known bottom and top heights.

To lock a landing

1. Select the landing and click the **Open Object**  edit button to open the **Stair Landing Specification** dialog. See “General Panel” on page 253.
2. On the General panel, uncheck **Auto Adjust Height When Connected to Stairs**.
3. Specify the desired **Top Height** and click OK.
4. The landing moves to the specified height and all stairs that connect to that landing are redefined.

To unlock a landing, open its specification dialog, check **Auto Adjust Height When Connected to Stairs**, and click OK. The Top Height will automatically adjust to any stair or ramp sections attached to it and will try to produce a staircase with a single riser height.

Maintaining Tread Depth

Most building codes require staircases to maintain a consistent tread depth.

Home Designer Suite measures a stair section’s length and tread depth along a Walk Line located 12” (30 cm) from the right edge

of the stair section. On curved stairs, it is located 12” (30 cm) from the inside edge of the curve.

When a curved stair section has **Automatic Treads** specified in the **Staircase**

Specification dialog and the Walk Line is used, the number and/or width of treads in a section or subsection changes when the inner

edge is moved. For this reason, it is best to finalize stair section width as early as possible.

Starter Treads




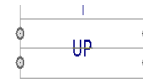
The first and second treads of a staircase can be turned into starter treads by clicking the **Starter Tread** edit button. Starter treads extend to the side of the staircase, have rounded edges and are common on traditional staircases.

A starter tread can be added only to open sides of a stair section. If one side of a stair section is against a wall or wrapped (see “Wrapped Stairs” on page 244), only the exposed tread end can become a starter tread.

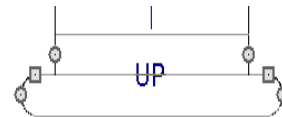


To create starter treads

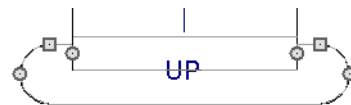
1. Click on a staircase to select it.
2. Click the **Starter Tread**  edit button. An edit handle displays on each end of both the first and second treads.



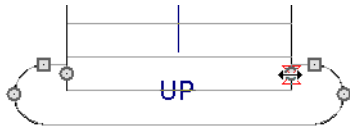
3. Drag either of the handles on the first tread outward from the stair section. If the stair section is against a wall, only one handle displays on the side opposite the wall.
4. As you drag, the ends of the tread become rounded.




5. Two additional edit handles display on each side of the tread, along the back edge.
6. Drag either of the two square handles upward to increase the width of the rounded ends of the tread.




7. Drag the edit handle on the second tread outward from the stair section to create a second starter tread.



8. To make changes to existing starter treads, select the stairs, click the **Starter**


Tread  edit button and repeat the above steps as needed.

9. When you are finished editing the starter treads, click the **Main Edit Mode**  to restore the stairs' regular edit handles and toolbar buttons.


Wrapped Stairs

Stairs can be wrapped around the corner of a deck or landing. Curved stairs and stairs with multiple subsections cannot be wrapped. See “Style Panel” on page 250.


To wrap stairs around a deck

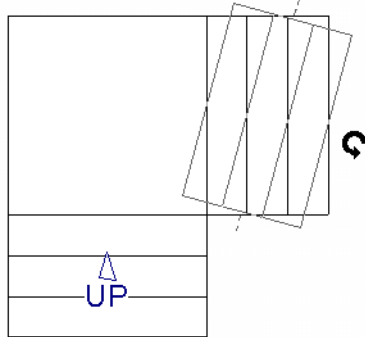
1. Begin by drawing a deck. See “Decks” on page 151.
2. Use the **Click Stairs**  tool to place a stair section on each side of the corner around which you want them to wrap.
3. Move the stair sections toward the corner of the deck. When the two sections are sufficiently close to the corner, they will merge to form wrapped steps.



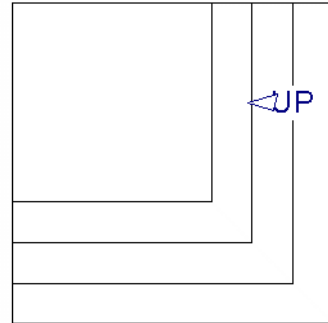
 You can also draw stairs down from a deck by right-clicking to draw them or by pressing the Alt key while you drag. See “To draw stairs going downward” on page 236.

To wrap stairs around a landing

1. Draw two perpendicular **Straight Stair**  sections.
2. Click between them to create a landing.
3. Rotate one stair section 180°.



- The stairs wrap around the corner. Notice that the Up arrow displays on the most recently edited stair section.

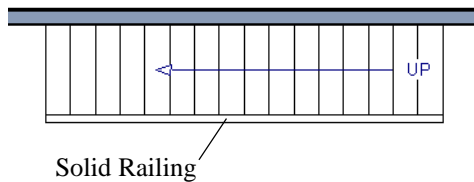


Other Special Railings and Stairs

Stairs can be customized to meet a variety of needs.

Solid Railings

To create a solid rail along a staircase, create the Railing against, but not underneath, the stairs and specify it as Solid. See “Rail Style Panel” on page 138.



The solid railing recognizes the adjacent stairs and climbs alongside them.



If any balusters show beyond the railing, eliminate them by unchecking **Left railing** or **Right railing** in the **Staircase Specification** dialog. See “Style Panel” on page 250.

Creating a Stairwell

An interior staircase must be located in a stairwell, an opening to the floor above. A


stairwell is an Open Below room type on the floor above. See “Room Types” on page 147.

If you create a stairwell away from other walls so the Open Below is created in the center of another room, connect a wall of the Open Below room to another wall using an invisible wall.

Creating a Stairwell Automatically




To create a stairwell that matches the perimeter of a selected staircase, click the **Auto Stairwell** edit button. This button is only available when a living space exists above the staircase. It will not be available if the space above is Open Below or on the Attic Floor.


Auto Stairwell  automatically creates a room on the floor above enclosed by railings, defined as **Open Below** in the **Room Specification** dialog, and given a **Stairwell** room label. This room can be selected and edited like any other room.

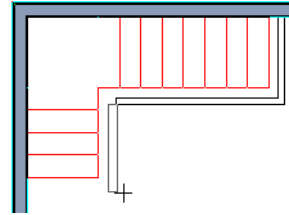
Creating a Stairwell Manually




Stairwells can also be created manually.

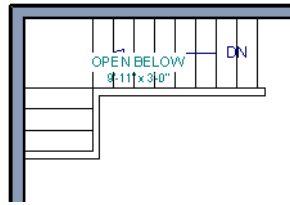
To create a manual stairwell


1. Draw a two-story building. Create the staircase on the first floor.
2. Make the second floor the **Current Floor** and the first floor the **Reference Floor**. See “The Reference Floor” on page 205.
3. Select **Tools> Reference Floors> Reference Display**  to show the Reference Floor, including the stairs.

4. On the upper floor, use the **Railing**  tool to create a room around the stairs. Use the edit handles to position the railings as needed.



5. Select the railings one at a time and move them into position.
 - When a railing is selected, its bounding box shows the location of the outer surface of the railing’s drywall layer. For best results, this outer surface (which does not display when the railing is not selected) should meet the top edge of the stairs.
 - If you prefer, you can also go **Down One Floor** and adjust the top edge of the staircase to snap it to the surface of the railing on the floor above.
6. When the railings are positioned properly, select **Tools> Reference Floors> Reference Display**  to turn off the display of the Reference Floor.
7. Click inside the room using the **Select Objects**  tool to select it, then click the **Open Object**  edit button.
8. On the General panel of the **Room Specification** dialog, select “Open Below” from the **Room Type** list. Click **OK** to close the dialog.



9. Place a **Doorway**  in the railing at the top step for an opening.
10. Select the doorway and define a large width in the **Door Specification** dialog.


If the doorway is specified wider than the railing, its width maximizes to fit the space available.




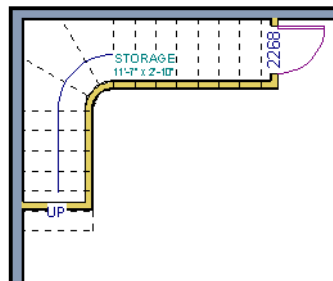
Rooms Below Staircases

Rooms such as closets or storage areas are commonly located beneath staircases.




To create a room below a staircase

1. Draw a staircase, select it, and click the **Open Object**  edit button to open the **Staircase Specification** dialog.
 - On the Fill Style panel, select None (Transparent) so the walls and other objects under the stairs can be seen.

2. On the same floor as the staircase, draw the **Interior Walls**  under them, following their shape.
3. Reposition the walls as needed, making sure that each is entirely under the stairs.
4. The wall at the foot of the stairs should be placed no closer to the bottom than the second step.
5. Add a door and specify the Room Type.




Staircase Specification Dialog

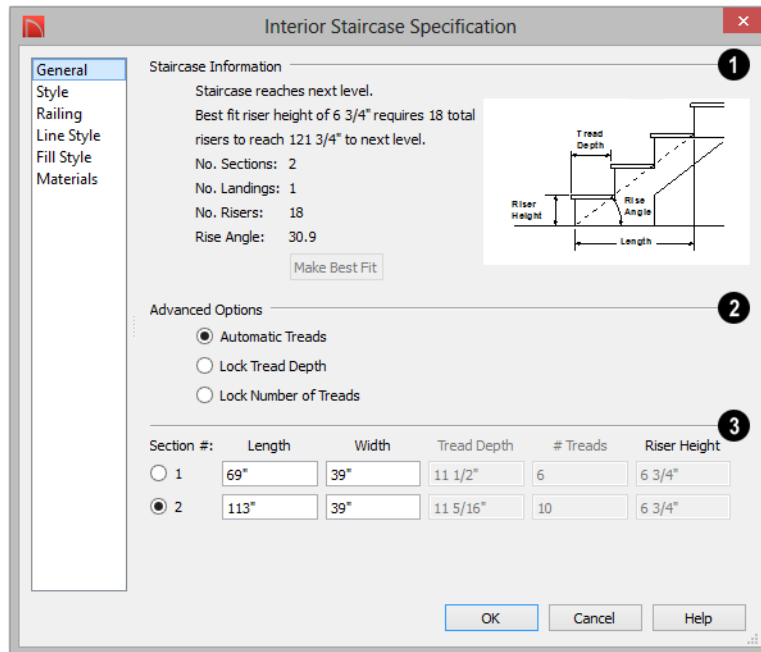
 Staircases can be defined with the greatest accuracy in the **Staircase Specification** dialog. To open this dialog, select a stair section and click the **Open Object** edit button or double-click a stair section using the **Straight Stairs**  or **Select Objects**  tool.

If a staircase is composed of multiple stair sections, the section that you clicked on to

select the staircase is the Selected Section; however, information about all the sections is available and can be edited in the dialog.

 It is recommended that all floor heights, ceiling heights and platform thicknesses be established before using the Staircase Specification dialog.

General Panel



1 Staircase Information - Structural information about the selected staircase displays here for reference and updates as changes are made on the General panel.

- The first comment tells whether or not the staircase reaches the next level. It also indicates whether its rise angle is either steeper or more shallow than the Best Fit,

described below. If **Automatic Heights** is unchecked, this comment instead says “Start and end heights are set manually”.

- The second comment, **Best fit riser height of ___ requires ___ total risers to reach ___ to next level**, describes the ideal rise and run for the selected staircase. The program defines the Best Fit Riser Height as the riser height closest to 6 3/4” (168.75 mm) that allows the selected staircase to meet the next level precisely. This comment is only active if **Automatic Heights** is checked, below.
- The total number of stair **Sections**, **Landings**, and **Risers** associated with the selected staircase also display here.
- The **Rise Angle** of the currently active stair section also displays here.
- Click the **Make Best Fit** button to add or remove risers to the Selected Section. Only available when **Automatic Heights** is checked and the staircase does not currently use the Best Fit Riser Height.

Make Best Fit will also extend stairs drawn in a downward direction until they reach the terrain. See “Terrain Perimeter” on page 289.

A diagram of a sample staircase’s structure displays here for reference, as well.

- 2 The **Advanced Options** apply to all sections and subsections.
 - Select **Automatic Treads** to have the program define the depth and number of stair treads. If the staircase has multiple sections, each may have different tread depths.
 - Select **Lock Tread Depth** to specify the Tread Depth for each stair section, below, and prevent them from changing. When

Lock Tread Depth is selected and the length of the stairs is changed, the number of treads will change.

- Select **Lock Number of Treads** to specify the number of treads in each stair section and prevent it from changing. When Lock Number of Treads is selected and the length of the stairs is changed, the tread depths will change.
- 3 The specifications for each stair section and subsection are listed and can be edited here. A maximum of ten items can display.

A change in one value usually affects other values. You may need to reposition the staircase after making changes.

- The **Section Number** column identifies the Selected Section and the number of each section of the selected staircase. The radio button to the left indicates which section or subsection is selected. See “Displaying Stairs and Landings” on page 237.
- Define the **Length**, or run, of each section.

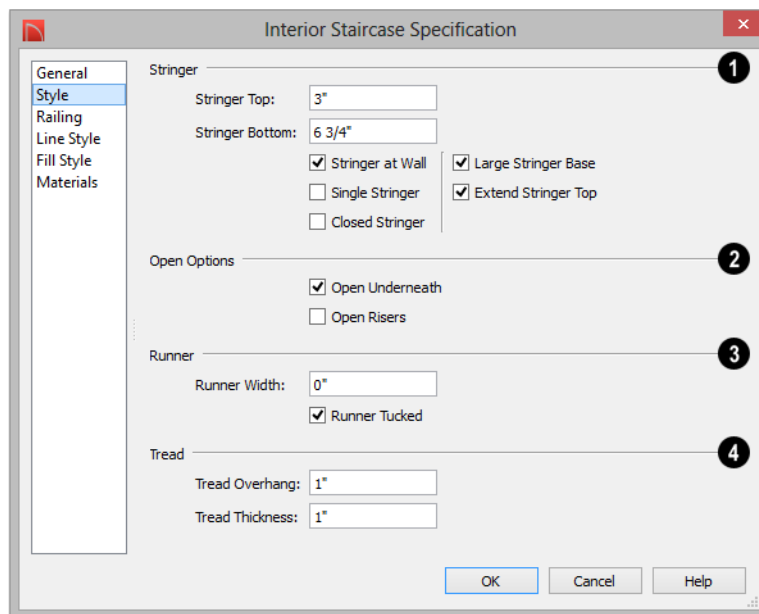
When the length of a section changes, other sections and landings in the staircase unit move in response. You can specify whether the bottom or top edge of the Selected Section moves when you resize it by selecting either the Lock Bottom or Lock Top radio button, above.

- Define the **Width** of each section. If a section is connected to a landing, its width should equal the length of the landing edge that it connects to. See “Landings” on page 240.

- Specify the **Tread Depth**, or run, of each stair tread in the selected section.
- Define the number of **Treads** in a stair section or subsection.
- Define the **Riser Height**, the height of the risers in each stair section.

Style Panel

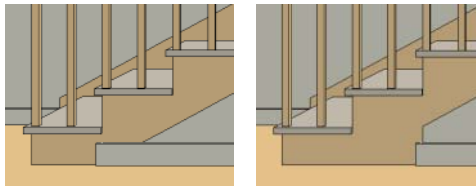
The settings on the Style panel affect all stair sections and subsections.



- 1 Specify the attributes of the selected staircase's **Stringers**, which are the angled support members that support the treads. See "Anatomy of a Staircase" on page 234.
 - Specify the height of the **Stringer Top** when **Stringer at Wall** or **Closed Stringer** is selected. This is measured along the plane of the riser face from the top of a tread to the top of the stringer. It cannot be less than 2 inches (5 cm).
 - Specify the height of the **Stringer Bottom**, as measured from the top back corner of a tread down to the bottom edge of the stringer. It must be equal to or greater than the riser height.
 - Check **Stringer at Wall** to produce a raised stringer top baseboard at the sides of the stair sections against walls. This baseboard follows the slope of the stair.
 - Check **Single Stringer** to form a single 5-inch (125 mm) thick stringer in the center

of the staircase. Checking **Single Stringer** automatically checks **Open Risers** and unchecks **Stringer at Wall** and **Closed Stringer**.

- Check **Closed Stringer** to raise the tops of the exposed stringers to cover the sides of the treads. If this is checked, no central stringer is applied to open riser stairs. This setting only affects those stringers that are not against a wall.
- Check **Large Stringer Base** to widen the stringers at the foot of the staircase. This is helpful when walls are created below the stairs.



Large Stringer Base shown at right

- **Extend Stringer Top** is checked by default and extends a triangular portion of the stringer under the landing or platform at the top of the stairs.
- 2 **The Open Options** control whether the selected stairs have open risers or an open underside. They are not available when **Single Stringer** is checked, above.

- Uncheck **Open Underneath** to add a skirt below the staircase along the two sides. It looks like a wall in 3D, but only has a single face. Base molding does not generate along the bottom of the skirt, and doors cannot be placed in it. In most cases, the recommended way to enclose the area beneath stairs is to use walls. See “Rooms Below Staircases” on page 247.
- Check **Open Risers** to eliminate the riser face under each tread and expose the stringers. If **Closed Sides** is also selected, no central stringer is supplied.

3 Specify the attributes of the staircase’s carpet **Runner**. Only available when **Open Risers** is unchecked, above.

- Specify the **Runner Width**. The default value of 0 does not create a runner.
- Uncheck **Runner Tucked** to have the runner drop straight down from the tread front to the riser below. This is checked by default.

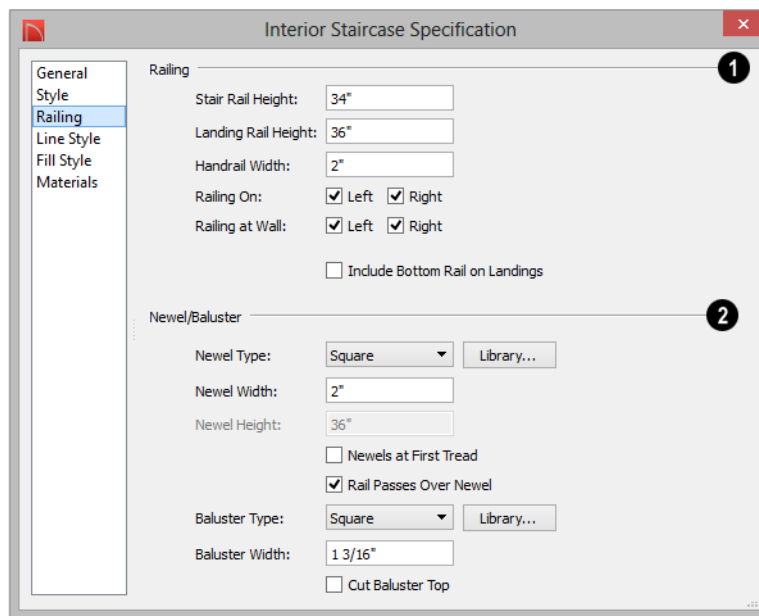
4 Specify the characteristics of the staircase **Treads**. See “Anatomy of a Staircase” on page 234.

- Specify the **Tread Overhang**, which is the distance that each tread overhangs the riser.
- Specify the **Tread Thickness**.

Railing Panel

The settings on the Railing panel will also affect the appearance of railings on any

landings attached to the selected staircase or ramp. See “Landings” on page 240.



- 1 Specify how the **Railing** is applied to the selected staircase.
 - **Stair Rail Height** defines the height from tread surface directly over the riser to railing top.
 - **Landing Rail Height** defines the height of the landing rail top from the landing surface.
 - **Railing at Wall** - Select **Left** and/or **Right** to specify the placement of wall railings. Not available for ramps.
- 2 **Newel/Baluster** specifications -.
 - **Newel Type** - Select **Square**, **Round**, or **Library** newels. Selecting **Library** from the drop-down list is the same as clicking the **Library** button to the right and allows selection of a newel from the library.
 - Specify the **Newel Width**, which is the width or diameter of each newel. For Library newels, this is the width at its widest point.
 - Specify the **Newel Height**, which is the height from the landing surface to the top of the newel. This is used only when **Rail passes over Newel** is unchecked.
 - Check **Newels at First Tread** to place a newel where the rail starts at the base of the stairs. A newel is placed only on a side of the stairs not against a wall.
 - Uncheck **Rail Passes Over Newel**, then adjust the Newel Height to as needed. When this is checked, the **Newel Height** setting is ignored.
 - **Baluster Type** - Select **Square**, **Round**, or **Library** balusters. Selecting **Library** from the drop-down list is the same as clicking the **Library** button to the right

and allows selection of a baluster from the library.

- Specify the **Baluster Width**, which is the width or diameter of each baluster. For Library balusters, this is the width at its widest point.
- **Cut Baluster Top** - Each tread normally has two to three balusters, growing longer toward its back. The default is to use the same baluster and cut it off at the bottom to shorten it toward the tread front. Check this box to cut the balusters at the top instead.

Line Style Panel

The settings on the Line Style panel are available for a variety of other objects in the program. For information about these settings, see “Line Style Panel” on page 434.

Fill Style Panel

The settings on the Fill Style panel affect the appearance of the selected staircase in floor plan view. For information about these settings, see “Fill Style Panel” on page 439.

Materials Panel

The settings on the Materials panel affect the appearance of the selected staircase in 3D views and are available for a variety of objects throughout the program. For information about these settings, see “Materials Panel” on page 364.

The settings on this panel will also affect the materials applied to any landings attached to the selected staircase. See “Landings” on page 240.

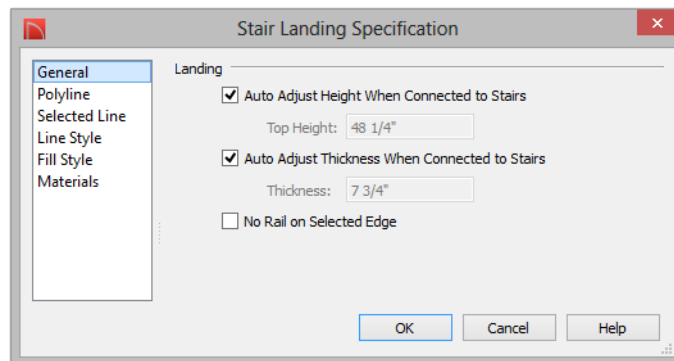
Stair Landing Specification Dialog



Select a landing and click the **Open Object** edit button to open the **Stair**

Landing Specification dialog. See “Landings” on page 240.

General Panel



Uncheck **Auto Adjust Height When Connected to Stairs** to specify the selected landing's Top Height.

- A free-standing interior landing will have a default Top Height of 6 3/4" (169 mm) plus the thickness of the default floor finish. A free-standing exterior landing will have a default top height equal to its thickness. When this box is checked, the landing height may adjust as needed to maintain consistent riser height in all connected stair sections.
- The **Top Height** field is only active when Auto Adjust Height When Connected to Stairs is unchecked. See "Locked Landings" on page 241.

Uncheck **Auto Adjust Thickness When Connected to Stairs** to specify the selected landing's **Thickness**.

- A free-standing landing will have a default thickness of 6 3/4" (169 mm). When checked, the thickness is based on the riser height of the stair sections it is attached to, or the thickness of the ramps it is attached to.
- The **Thickness** field is only active when Auto Adjust Thickness When Connected to Stairs is unchecked.

Check **No Rail on Selected Edge** to suppress the railing on the selected edge of this landing. See "Selected Edge" on page 86.

Polyline Panel

The Polyline panel indicates the length of the landing's **Perimeter**, its enclosed **Area**, and its **Volume**.

The settings on the this panel are available for a variety of other objects in the program. For information about the settings on this panel, see "Polyline Panel" on page 438.

Selected Line Panel

The Selected Line panel is available when the selected edge is a line as opposed to an arc. See "Selected Edge" on page 86.

The settings on this panel are available for a variety of other objects in the program. For information about the settings on this panel, see "Line Panel" on page 434.

Moving the End of a line segment moves the start of the next connected line.

Selected Arc Panel

The Selected Arc panel is available only when the selected edge has been converted to an arc. See "Change Line/Arc" on page 110.

The settings on this panel are available for a variety of other objects in the program. For information about these settings, see "Arc Panel" on page 436.

Line Style Panel

The settings on the Line Style panel are available for a variety of objects throughout the program. For information about these settings, see "Line Panel" on page 434.

Fill Style Panel

The settings on the Fill Style panel affect the appearance of the selected landing in floor plan view. For information about these settings, see "Fill Style Panel" on page 439.

Materials Panel

When a landing is attached to stairs, its initial materials are derived from the stairs.

The settings on this are available for a variety of objects throughout the program. For information about these settings, see “Materials Panel” on page 364.

Electrical

The electrical plan shows the location of all electrical objects such as lights, switches, outlets, smoke detectors and vent fans. Basic wiring diagrams show which objects share circuits and the locations of the controlling switches.

Electrical objects can be displayed in 2D and 3D views. Some electrical light fixtures also add light sources to 3D views. See “Lighting” on page 400.

Usually, the electrical plan is one of the last additions to a plan since the position of most electrical objects is determined by the location of walls, cabinets and other objects.



Building requirements vary throughout the country and around the world. It is your responsibility to comply with local codes.

Chapter Contents

- The Electrical Tools
- Auto Place Outlets
- Creating Wiring Schematics
- Electrical Library Content
- Displaying Electrical Objects
- Editing Electrical Objects
- Electrical Service Specification Dialog

The Electrical Tools



Select **Build> Electrical** to access the Electrical Tools.

Click in floor plan view to place an electrical object. Some can only be placed against walls, some only on the ceiling or floor, and some automatically change as needed. If you click within 12" of the wall, the selected object is placed on the wall.

Once an electrical object has been placed, it can be edited in the **Electrical Service Specification** dialog. See “Electrical Service Specification Dialog” on page 262.

Outlets



Select **Build> Electrical> 110V Outlet** to place 110 volt duplex outlets in walls or on the floor. Select **Build> Electrical> 220V Outlet** to place 220 volt outlets.

The type and height of an outlet will vary depending on where it is placed. For example:

- In rooms defined as Bath or Master Bath, Ground Fault Circuit Interrupt (GFCI) outlets are placed.



If standard outlets are placed in a room prior to defining it as a Bath, you should replace them with GFCI outlets.

- An outlet placed at the back of a base cabinet in floor plan view is positioned above the counter.
- An outlet placed at the back of a base cabinet containing a kitchen sink is

placed at the standard 11 1/2" (300 mm) above the floor.

- Outlets placed outside the building or in an exterior area such as a deck or porch are labeled WP, or Water Proof.

To take advantage of the program’s capabilities, define room types properly before placing electrical objects. See “Room Types” on page 147.

Light Fixtures



Select **Build> Electrical> Light** to place light fixtures. All light fixtures placed in a plan can also serve as light sources in 3D views. To place a light fixture using the Light tool

- Click near a wall to place a wall-mounted fixture at that location.
- Click away from a wall to place a ceiling mounted light.
- Some light symbols from the library can be mounted under wall cabinets, as well.

Switches



Select **Build> Electrical> Switch** to place electrical switches as specified in the **Electrical Defaults** dialog. Like outlets, the height of switches is measured from the floor to the center of the object.

An electrical switch can be placed on either a wall or a cabinet, depending on the type of switch. A selection of each type is available in the Library Browser. See “Placing Library Objects” on page 354.



If you connect two or more switches in a circuit, they update to 3-way or 4-way switches automatically.

Auto Place Outlets



Select **Build> Electrical> Auto Place Outlets** and click in a room tool to place outlets at regular intervals around the entire room. See “Auto Place Outlets” on page 259.

Connect Electrical



Select **Build> Electrical> Connect Electrical**, then click and drag to draw splines that snap to electrical switches, outlets, and lights to illustrate wiring circuits.

See “Creating Wiring Schematics” on page 260.

Lighting and Electrical Library Catalogs




A selection of free-standing and ceiling-, wall- and cabinet-mounted light fixtures is available in the Library Browser at Home Designer Core Catalogs> Architectural> Lighting.


Special use outlets, switches, jacks and numerous other electrical items can be found at Home Designer Core Catalogs> Mechanical, Electrical, Plumbing> Electrical. See “The Library” on page 341.


Auto Place Outlets




Select **Build> Electrical> Auto Place Outlets** and click in a room to place 110 volt outlets around the entire room, spaced so that no wall position is farther than six feet (1800mm) from the nearest outlet. 110 or 220 volt outlets are also placed behind large appliances. In addition, a light is placed above each sink.

It is important that a room’s Type be defined before **Auto Place Outlets**  is used so that outlets are placed appropriately. For example, GFCI (Ground Fault Circuit Interrupter) outlets are placed over cabinets in Kitchen, Bath and Master Bath rooms. See “Room Types” on page 147.

Auto Place Outlets  does not work in rooms assigned an exterior room type such as Deck. To place outlets in an exterior room,


place them from the Electrical Library or use the **110V Outlets**  tool.

Railings and invisible walls are ignored by **Auto Place Outlets** . If it is used in a room defined by railings or invisible walls, outlets are automatically placed in any adjacent rooms on the other side of these wall types. See “Room Definition” on page 144.

Note: Auto Place Outlets requires that a room have a door before outlets can be placed.

Once placed, any outlet can be moved, edited, or deleted. See “Editing Electrical Objects” on page 261.



Creating Wiring Schematics

Electrical schematics can be created in two ways. Using the **Connect Electrical**  tool is quick and easy, but if you need detailed schematics, you can create your own wiring diagrams using the CAD tools. See “CAD Objects” on page 431.


Connect Electrical



Select **Build > Electrical > Connect Electrical**, then click and drag to draw splines that snap to electrical switches, outlets, and lights to illustrate wiring circuits.

To create a new circuit or add to an existing circuit, click on a switch, outlet, or light while the **Connect Electrical**  tool is active, drag to the next object and release. **Connect Electrical**  splines cannot be snapped to one another: they can only snap to electrical objects. Once drawn, though, they can be edited to form complex

curves. See “Editing Spline Based Objects” on page 100.

To remove a connection from a circuit, simply select and **Delete**  it. If you remove an electrical object from a circuit, any Connect Electrical splines snapped to it will also be deleted. See “Deleting Objects” on page 111.

Three- and Four-Way Switches

Multiple switches can control an object or group of objects.

- Two switches controlling the same objects are referred to as three-way switches.
- Three switches controlling the same objects are called four-way switches.

In floor plan view, a three- or four-way switches’s “way” number will automatically display in its 2D symbol.

Electrical Library Content



Select **View > Library Browser** to access a variety of electrical symbols. See “The Library” on page 341.

Browse for electrical objects such as bath vent fans, an electrical panel, fluorescent

lights, chandeliers, a smoke detector, thermostat, and more. Select a symbol, then click in your plan to place it on a wall, floor, or ceiling.

Displaying Electrical Objects



The display of electrical objects and connections is controlled in the

Display Options dialog. See “Displaying Objects” on page 74.

When displayed in 3D views, light fixtures act as sources of light that help illuminate the 3D model. See “Lighting” on page 400.

Electrical Labels

Electrical labels display in floor plan view when the “Electrical, Labels” layer is turned on and use the “Default Label Style” Text Style See “Object Labels” on page 429.

Customized labels can be specified in the **Electrical Service Specification** dialog.

Note: Some electrical objects are represented in floor plan view by a symbol that includes text. This text is not part of the object’s label and does not use the Default Label Text Style.

In the Materials List

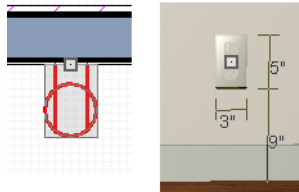
Electrical objects, including outlets, switches, lights, and symbols from the library, are listed under the Electrical Category in the Materials List. See “Materials Lists” on page 491.

Editing Electrical Objects

Electrical objects can be selected as a group and individually in 2D and 3D and edited using the edit handles and the edit toolbar.

Using the Edit Handles

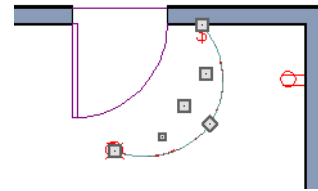
The edit handles for electrical objects vary depending on the location of the object. Wall mounted electrical objects cannot be rotated, so only the Move edit handle displays.



Wall-mounted outlet in 2D and 3D views

Electrical objects placed on floors and ceilings can be rotated.

Electrical connections edit like splines. See “Editing Spline Based Objects” on page 100.



Using the Edit Buttons

A selected electrical symbol can be edited in a variety of ways using the buttons on the edit toolbar. See “The Edit Toolbar” on page 26.

Adjusting Electrical Object Heights


When a wall-mounted electrical object is placed in floor plan view, its initial height is based on commonly used standards.

An electrical object placed on a wall in a 3D view is positioned wherever you click on the wall, regardless of the height at that point.

Once placed, a wall-mounted electrical object's height can be edited in either of two ways:

- Specify the height in the **Electrical Service Specification** dialog. See “Electrical Service Specification Dialog” on page 262.
- In 3D views, the position of an electrical object can be adjusted using its edit handles.

Deleting Electrical Objects

An electrical object can be deleted by selecting it and clicking the **Delete**  edit button or by pressing the Delete key.

All electrical objects in a room, on a floor, or in the entire plan can also be deleted as a group using the **Delete Objects** dialog. See “Deleting Objects” on page 111.

Electrical Service Specification Dialog

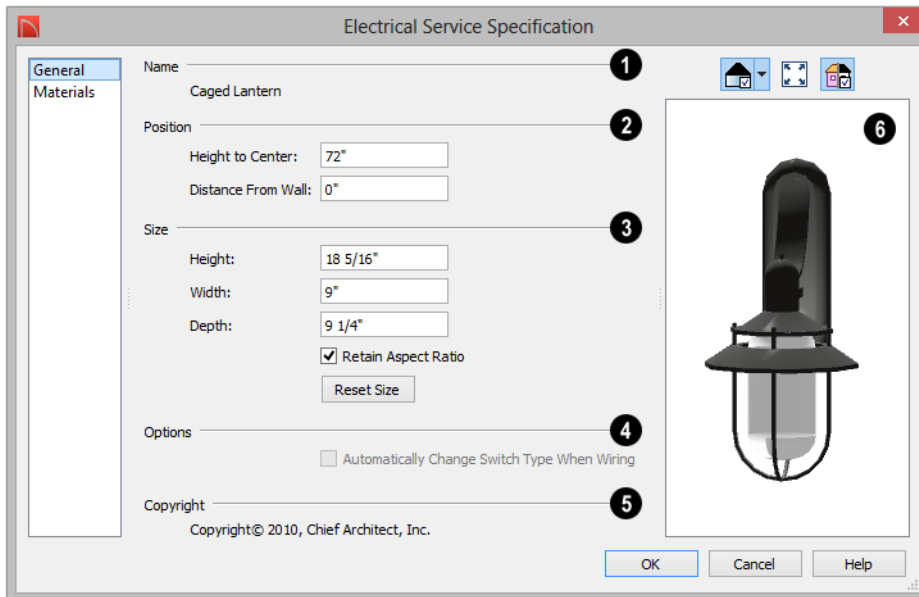


Select an electrical object and click the **Open Object** edit button to open the **Electrical Service Specification** dialog.

The settings in this dialog vary, depending on the type of object(s) you select.

General Panel

The items on this panel vary, depending on the type of electrical object selected.



- 1 The **Name** of the selected object as used in the Library Browser and Materials List displays here.
- 2 Specify the **Position** of the selected electrical object. The options available depend on the type of object selected.
 - Specify the **Offset From Ceiling** of a ceiling outlet or ceiling mounted light. If the light is mounted to a cabinet, this value is the offset from the cabinet.
 - Specify the **Height to Center** of a switch, wall outlet or wall light.
 - Specify the **Offset From Floor** of a floor outlet or floor lamp.
 - Specify the **Distance From Wall** of a wall mounted symbol. A negative value will recess the symbol into the wall and may prevent it from being seen in 3D.
- 3 Specify the **Size** of the selected electrical symbol.
 - Specify the **Height, Width and Depth** of the selected symbol.
 - Click the **Reset** button to restore the electrical symbol's original size.
- 4 **Options** -
 - Check **Automatically Change Switch Type When Wiring** for a selected switch to become a three- or four-way switch if

your wiring plan later uses it as such. See “Connect Electrical” on page 260.

Switches placed from the toolbar use this option by default; switches placed from the library do not. Only available for switches.

- 5 Any **Copyright** information associated with the selected symbol will be stated here.

- 6 A preview of the selected object displays here. See “Dialog Preview Panes” on page 29.

Materials Panel

The Materials panel is found in the specification dialogs for a variety of objects. For more information, see “Materials Panel” on page 364.

Label Panel

Labels for electrical fixtures display in floor plan view when the “Electrical, Labels” layer is turned on and use the “Default Label Style” Text Style. See “Electrical Labels” on page 261.

For information about the settings on this panel, see “Label Panel” on page 429.

Trim Tools

The Trim Tools allow you to place corner boards and quoins at wall intersections that form corners.

You can also assign moldings to a variety of objects, such as rooms and cabinets, in those objects' specification dialogs. See "Specification Dialogs" on page 29.

Chapter Contents

- Trim and Molding Defaults
- Corner Boards
- Corner Board Specification Dialog
- Quoins
- Quoin Specification Dialog
- Editing Corner Boards and Quoins
- Millwork

Trim and Molding Defaults



Select **Edit > Default Settings** to open the **Default Settings** dialog where you can access the defaults for a variety of drawing tools, including a number that affect trim and moldings.

- Select “Floor” and click the **Edit** button to specify the default moldings for rooms on the current floor. See “Floor Defaults” on page 144.
- Click the + beside “Door” to access the defaults for Interior and Exterior Doors. See “Door Defaults” on page 161.

- Select “Window” and click the **Edit** button to specify the default casing for windows. See “Window Defaults” on page 178.

Wall and Full Height cabinets in many of the new plan Style Templates have crown molding. These cabinets can be placed from the library into any plan. See “Cabinet Defaults” on page 272.

Corner Boards



Corner boards are added to a building exterior in any view by selecting **Build > Trim > Corner Boards**.



Click at a wall corner where you want to add trim. Be sure to click where the outside wall surfaces meet. If you click where the inside surfaces meet, corner trim will be created inside the room.

.Corner boards extend from the top plate down to the bottom of the floor platform of the floor on which it is placed, but do not extend to other floors. You must add corner boards to all floors of the building that you want to have corner boards.

A selected corner board or boards can be moved, but only to another wall corner or corners. In 3D views, corner boards can be lengthened or shortened using the edit handles. Corner boards can be copied, deleted and resized similar to other objects using the edit toolbar or the **Corner Board Specification** dialog.

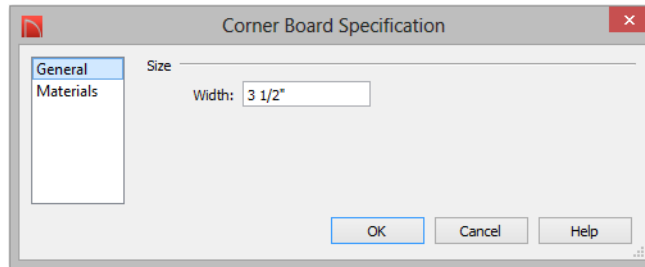
The default material for corner boards is defined by the **Exterior Trim** entry in the **Material Defaults** dialog. See “Material Defaults” on page 369.

Corner Board Specification Dialog



Select a corner board and click the **Open Object** edit button to open the **Corner Board Specification** dialog.

General Panel



Specify the **Width** of the selected corner board.

Materials Panel

The settings on the Materials panel are available for a wide variety of objects in the program. For information about these settings, see “Materials Panel” on page 364.

Quoins



Select **Build> Trim> Quoins** in any view and click at a wall corner where you want to place quoins.



A selected quoin or quoins can be moved, but only to another wall corner or corners. In

3D views, quoins can be lengthened or shortened using the edit handles. Quoins can be copied, deleted and resized similar to other objects using the edit toolbar or the **Quoin Specification** dialog.

The size of quoins in floor plan view is relative on their size in 3D.

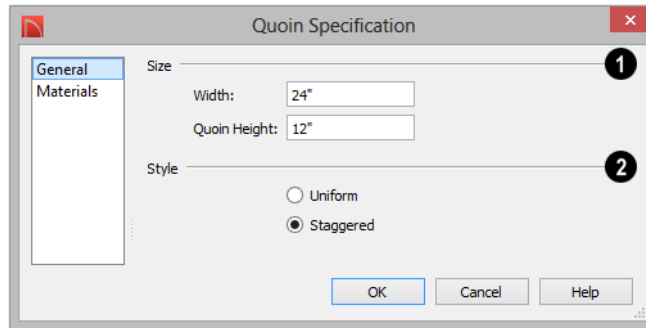
Initially, quoins use the same material as the default material of the wall surface they are placed against.

Quoin Specification Dialog



Select a quoin and click the **Open Object** edit button to open the **Quoin Specification** dialog.

General Panel




- 1 Specify the **Size** of the quoins in the selected Quoin object.
- Specify the **Width**, which is the horizontal dimension of each quoin in the selected Quoin object. The dimension along the other wall is half this value when they are staggered or mirrored.
- Specify the **Quoin Height** for individual quoins in the selected Quoin object.
- 2 Specify the arrangement of quoins used by the selected Quoin object.

- **Uniform** - Produce quoins that are of equal length on both sides of the corner.
- **Staggered** - Produce quoins that have one long side and one short side staggered on opposite sides of the corner.

Materials Panel

The settings on the Materials panel are available for a wide variety of objects in the program. For information about these settings, see “Materials Panel” on page 364.

Editing Corner Boards and Quoins

Before a corner board or quoin can be edited, it must be selected. Click on a trim object when the **Select Objects**  tool is active. Corner boards and quoins can also be group

selected and edited. See “Selecting Objects” on page 86

Corner boards and quoins can be edited using their edit handles, the edit toolbar buttons, and their specification dialogs.

Using the Mouse


Depending on the type of view, a corner board or quoin displays a different set of edit handles when selected.

- In floor plan view, corner boards and quoins display one edit handle and can be moved from one eligible location at a wall corner to another.
- In 3D views, corner boards and quoins can be moved, lengthened, and shorted much the other line-based objects are. See “Editing Line Based Objects” on page 88.

Using the Edit Buttons

A selected corner board or quoin can be edited in a variety of ways using the buttons on the edit toolbar. See “The Edit Toolbar” on page 26.

Deleting Corner Trim

Corner boards and quoins can be selected individually or in groups and deleted using the **Delete**  edit button or the Delete key on the keyboard. They can also be removed using the **Delete Objects** dialog. See “Deleting Objects” on page 111.

Millwork

A selection of various types of millwork including columns, corbels and finials is available in the Library Browser. See “The Library Browser” on page 342.

Most millwork items can be placed in a plan as free-standing objects. Some items -

notably, newels and balusters - can be assigned to objects such as railings, stairs and ramps. See “Placing Library Objects” on page 354.

Cabinets

With Home Designer Suite's cabinet tools you can create base, wall, and full height cabinets as well as soffits, shelves and partitions. These objects are very versatile, allowing for a wide range of customization.

A selection of cabinet door and drawer styles are available in the Library Browser.

Home Designer Suite also has many customized cabinet symbols and cabinet groups available in the library.

Chapter Contents

- Cabinet Defaults
- The Cabinet Tools
- Cabinet Fillers
- Placing Cabinets
- Displaying Cabinets
- Editing Cabinets
- Editing Cabinet Styles
- Special Cabinets
- Cabinet Specification Dialog
- Shelf/Partition Specification Dialog

Cabinet Defaults



Access default settings for each cabinet tool by selecting **Edit>**

Default Settings, then clicking the + beside **Cabinets**. Select a subheading and click the **Edit** button to open the defaults dialog associated with your selection:

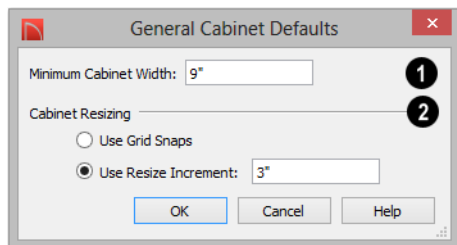
Each type of cabinet object has default definitions for size, style, materials and more. In fact, the default dialog for each cabinet type is similar to its corresponding

specification dialog. For descriptions of these settings, see “Cabinet Specification Dialog” on page 280, “Shelf/Partition Specification Dialog” on page 286 and “Soffit Specification Dialog” on page 334.

In many of the new plan Style Templates, Wall and Full Height cabinets have crown molding. These cabinets can be placed from the library into any plan. See “Template Plans” on page 40.

General Cabinet Defaults

The **General Cabinet Defaults** dialog can be accessed only from the **Default Settings** dialog.



- 1 Specify the **Minimum Cabinet Width**. The minimum allowable width is 1/16 of an inch (10 mm).

- 2 Specify how **Cabinet Resizing** takes place when the edit handles are used.
 - Select **Use Grid Snaps** to resize cabinets using Snap Grid increments. See “Grid Snaps” on page 79.
 - Select **Use Resize Increment** to resize cabinets using the increment specified here.
 - Set the **Resize Increment** at which cabinets resize. The minimum allowable increment is 1/16 of an inch (10 mm).

The Cabinet Tools



Select **Build> Cabinet** to access the Cabinet Tools.

Cabinets are easily created with a single click in floor plan view or any camera view. See “Click-to-Create” on page 80.

Typically, groups of cabinet objects are positioned closely together and arranged to form work spaces, and there are some special behaviors and techniques to be aware of. See “Placing Cabinets” on page 275.

Once created, cabinets, soffits, shelves, partitions and fillers can be selected and

edited much like other box-based objects. See “Editing Cabinets” on page 277.

Base Cabinets



Select **Build> Cabinet> Base Cabinet** and click in any view. Base cabinets can be placed directly under wall cabinets and generate a countertop and toe kick by default.

Wall Cabinets



To place a wall cabinet, select **Build> Cabinet> Wall Cabinet** and click in any view. Wall cabinets can be placed directly over base cabinets.

Full Height Cabinets



To place a full height cabinet, select **Build> Cabinet> Full Height** and click in any view. Full height cabinets generate a toe kick by default and cannot be placed on top of other cabinets.

Soffits



Soffits typically fill the space between cabinet tops and the ceiling, but can also be used to create any object that can be modeled as a 3D box. To place a soffit, select **Build> Cabinet> Soffit** and click in any view.

By default, soffits use the material assigned to interior walls in the **Material Defaults** dialog. Like cabinets, soffits can have molding profiles applied to them.

For more information about using soffits for a variety of purposes, see “Other Objects” on page 331.

Shelves



Select **Build> Cabinet> Shelf** and click in any view to create a shelf.

Create corner shelves by placing one shelf on each wall, then moving or stretching them until they touch.

Once created, shelves can be selected and edited. See “Shelf/Partition Specification Dialog” on page 286.

Partitions



Select **Build> Cabinet> Partition** button and click in any view to create a vertical partition.

Like shelves, partitions can be selected and edited after they are placed.

Partitions can be used with shelves to create complex storage systems.

Cabinets Library Catalog



In the Library Browser, browse to **Home Designer Core Catalogs> Architectural> Cabinets** to access a selection of specialty cabinets. Select the library object you want, then click in any view to place it in the plan. Once placed, library cabinets can be edited. See “The Library” on page 341.

Cabinet Doors, Drawers, and Panels Catalog

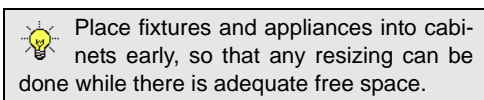


A selection of cabinet door, drawer, and panel styles is available in **Home Designer Core Catalogs> Architectural**. Select an item, then click on a cabinet in your plan to place the door or drawer onto that cabinet. Doors, drawers, and panels can be assigned to a cabinet in its specification

dialog, as well. Cabinet doors, drawers, and panels can also be placed as stand-alone fixtures.

Built-In Appliances


A variety of fixtures and appliances such as sinks, cooktops, and dishwashers can be placed into cabinets. See “Inserted Objects” on page 355.

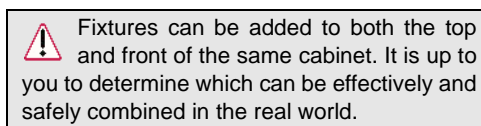


To insert a fixture into a cabinet, select the fixture in the Library Browser, then click on a cabinet. There must be enough space in the cabinet or adjoining cabinets to contain the selected fixture.

If a sink or cooktop is inserted into a cabinet with a top Drawer or Double Drawer, its Item Type will automatically change to a False Drawer or False Double Drawer.

Once placed, an inserted fixture can be selected and edited:

- To select a fixture in a cabinet top, click on it and then click the **Select Next Object**  edit button. See “Select Next Object” on page 87.
- Front fixtures can only be modified or deleted in the **Cabinet Specification** dialog. See “Front Panel” on page 282.



Electrical Switches and Outlets

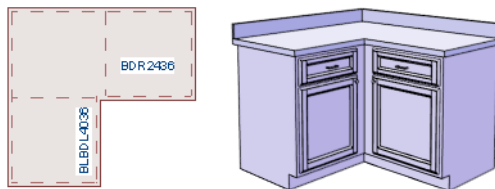
Electrical switches and outlets placed within the backsplash area of a base cabinet will display in front of the backsplash in 3D views when the “Electrical” layer is turned. See “The Electrical Tools” on page 258.

Cabinet Fillers

By default, Home Designer Suite models a continuous countertop and generates fillers automatically when cabinets of the same height are either touching or placed with 3” (75 mm) of one another.

If two cabinets meeting at a corner are separated from each other by 3” (75 mm) or less, the program will automatically generate a filler in the angle between them. A filler is used to separate the front of one of these

cabinets from the one it meets so that drawers and doors have room to operate.



Two base cabinets and the filler between them

Placing Cabinets

Cabinets are easily created with a single click in any view. See “Click-to-Create” on page 80.

When used near a wall corner, the Cabinet Tools will produce corner cabinets and soffits. See “Corner Cabinets” on page 279.

When created, cabinets are positioned relative to the floor of the room in which they are placed. Base and full height cabinets typically rest on the floor while wall cabinets are placed a set distance above the floor. See “Cabinet Defaults” on page 272.

If the ceiling height of the room does not accommodate the height of a cabinet, its **Floor to Bottom** value will be retained and its **Height** will be reduced so that it fits under the ceiling. When this happens, some front items may be removed from the cabinet if there is not enough room for them. See “Front Panel” on page 282.

Because cabinets are typically organized into groups with shared attributes, they have some special behaviors.

Cabinet Snapping and Aligning

Cabinets have several special snapping and aligning behaviors which help you create precisely aligned cabinets quickly and easily.

- When Base and/or Full Height cabinets are within 3” of one another’s sides, they will snap together. Wall cabinets snap in a similar manner, but only with other Wall cabinets.
- When Base and/or Full Height cabinets are within 3” of one another’s sides and their front or back surfaces are within 3”

of aligning, they will become aligned. Wall cabinets snap in a similar manner with other Wall cabinets as well as Full Height cabinets.

- When a Base and/or Full Height cabinet is placed against the back of another Base or Full Height cabinet, its back surface will automatically face the other cabinet’s back. Wall cabinets snap in a similar manner with other Wall as well as Full Height cabinets.
- When a cabinet is placed against a wall, its back and/or side will snap to the wall and, if the wall is moved, the cabinet will move with it.

When cabinets are snapped to a wall or to other cabinets, only exposed end cabinets have side counter overhangs.

Cabinet snapping and aligning occurs even when when **Object Snaps** are turned off; however, you can override this behavior by moving a cabinet into the desired position using dimensions. See “Moving Objects Using Dimensions” on page 414.

Cabinet Merging

When cabinets of the same height and type are placed side-by-side within 3” (30 mm) of one another they will automatically merge, making any shared components such as the toe kick, countertop, backsplash, and moldings continuous. Any gap between merged cabinets will be automatically filled.

The exposed ends of merged cabinets have side counter overhangs.

Cabinets placed at different angles will also merge if they face toward one another and meet at a front corner. Cabinets that meet at a back corner will also merge provided that they face away from one another at an angle no greater than 87°. In either case, a filler is created in the angle between the two.

If the side of a cabinet is placed within 3" (30 mm) of a wall, the countertop will extend to the wall and a filler will be created.

Base and Wall Cabinets

Base and wall cabinets have different default heights, so they can be placed directly above or below one another without interference. You can use **Object Snaps** to center a wall cabinet's back center point above that of a base cabinet, or vice versa. See "Click-to-Create" on page 80.

Minimum Cabinet Size

If you try to place a cabinet into a space that is too narrow for its default size, the program will place a smaller cabinet with a width that is a multiple of the default **Resize**

Increment. For example, if you try to place a 24" wide cabinet in a 20" wide space and your **Resize Increment** is 3", the program places an 18" cabinet. See "General Cabinet Defaults" on page 272.

If you try to place a cabinet into a space narrower than the default **Minimum**

Cabinet Width, a cabinet will not be placed. If, for example, you have a space that is 8" and your **Minimum Cabinet Width** is 9", no cabinet is placed.

Displaying Cabinets



The display of the various cabinet object types, labels, module lines, door opening indicators and more is controlled in the **Display Options** dialog. See "Displaying Objects" on page 74.

Cabinets are drawn so that wall cabinets, soffits and shelves are always in front of base and full height cabinets and partitions.

Cabinet labels display in floor plan view when the "Cabinets, Labels" layer is turned on and use the "Default Label Style" Text Style. See "Object Labels" on page 429.

Countertops display if the "Cabinets, Countertops" layer is turned on.

By default, cabinet module lines display in floor plan view when cabinet objects of the same type are placed side by side. If you prefer that these lines not display, turn off the "Cabinets, Module Lines" layer. You can also specify whether module lines are full or partial.

You can also display cabinet front indicator arrows in floor plan view by turning on the "Cabinets, Front Indicators" layer.

Editing Cabinets

Cabinets can be selected in 2D and 3D views and edited using the edit handles, the edit toolbar and their specification dialog.

Using the Mouse

Cabinets can be edited like other box-based objects. See “Editing Box-Based Objects” on page 98. The edit handles that a cabinet displays when selected will vary depending on the view.

When a cabinet is selected in floor plan view or on its top surface in a 3D view, ten edit handles display: the Move handle at the center, the Rotate handle, and a Resize handle on each edge and at each corner.

In 3D views, cabinets can be selected on any surface: front, side, back or top. When the side of a cabinet is selected, five edit handles are available: the Move handle and a Resize handle on each edge.



In the Specification Dialog




A selected cabinet can be customized in a variety of ways in its specification dialog. See “Cabinet Specification Dialog” on page 280.

Using the Edit Tools

A cabinet or cabinets can be edited in a variety of ways using the buttons on the edit toolbar. See “The Edit Toolbar” on page 26.

Moving Walls with Cabinets Attached

When a cabinet is placed or moved against a wall, it will snap to the wall and become attached to it. When a wall is moved, all attached cabinets move with it.

Moving a wall to an unattached cabinet will not attach the cabinet to it: the cabinet must be moved to the wall. A cabinet can also be attached to a wall when **Plan Check**  is used. See “Plan Check” on page 445.

Editing Cabinet Styles

A variety of settings allow you to customize the appearance of your cabinets to create styles ranging from traditional to contemporary.

If the desired style is known before cabinets are placed, you can save time by specifying that style in the **Cabinet Defaults** dialogs

before you start drawing. See “Cabinet Defaults” on page 272.

Cabinet Face Items

A variety of different face items can be added to the front of any cabinet, including doors, drawers, cutting boards, and horizontal separations. Face items can also be moved, resized, as well as removed. See “Front Panel” on page 282.

When adding, removing, or resizing face items, it is helpful to keep a few rules in mind:

- When the overall height of a cabinet or the height of a face item is changed, the height of the lowest face item that is not a Separation is adjusted to accommodate the change.
- If you increase the height of the lowest face item, the non-Separation item directly above is adjusted; if you decrease its height, a Blank Area and Separation are created below it.

Note: To ensure that Face Item heights always equal the total cabinet front height, the program automatically adjusts the bottom Face Item as changes are made elsewhere. This means you should start editing Face Items at the top and work down.

Doors, Drawers and Panels

Cabinet doors, drawers, and panels can be applied in either of two ways:

- In the **Cabinet Specification** dialog. See “Door/Drawer Panel” on page 284.
- Directly from the Library Browser.

Select a style in the library, then click on a cabinet to apply the selected style to that cabinet. In 3D views, click on a face item to apply the selected library object to that item. See “Placing Library Objects” on page 354.

Cabinet Hardware

Cabinet handles, pulls, and hinges can be assigned in the **Cabinet Specification** dialog. See “Door/Drawer Panel” on page 284.

In 3D views, pulls and handles can also be applied directly from the Library Browser. Select a hardware item, then click on the cabinet face item to apply it to that face item.

Countertops and Backsplashes

Countertop thickness, overhang, and material for a selected base cabinet can be specified in the **Base Cabinet Specification** dialog. See “General Panel” on page 281.


Backsplashes can also be applied to base cabinets, also on the General panel of their specification dialog.

Special Cabinets

There are a number of special cabinet shapes that can be specified. Certain requirements must be met before some special cabinet shapes can be specified. If the requirements

are not met, a warning message will explain what is needed. See “Cabinet Specification Dialog” on page 280.




Standard Cabinets

Select **Build > Cabinet > Base Cabinet**  and click in floor plan view to place a standard, rectangular base cabinet.



Standard (default) cabinet

Corner Cabinets

To create a corner cabinet, click as close to an inside wall corner as possible in using either the **Base Cabinet** , **Wall Cabinet** , or **Full Height**  cabinet tool. A corner cabinet remains a corner cabinet when it is moved, edited or copied.

Turn an existing cabinet into a corner cabinet by selecting **Corner** from the **Special** drop-down list in its specification dialog. See “General Panel” on page 281.

- Before a corner cabinet can be specified in the **Cabinet Specification** dialog, the cabinet’s **Width** must be greater than its **Depth**.
- The **Left** and the **Right Side Widths** can be set independently for corner cabinets.



Corner cabinet with sides of equal width

- You can specify a **Diagonal Door** on corner cabinets to create an angled corner cabinet. See “Front Panel” on page 282.



Corner cabinet with diagonal door

End Cabinets

Open a cabinet for specification and select **Left** or **Right End Cabinet** from the **Special** drop-down list to create an end cabinet.



Left End Cabinet

- End Cabinets have an angled front and side.
- The cabinet width must be no greater than its depth for an end cabinet to be specified.

Radius End Cabinets

Open a cabinet for specification and select Right or Left Radius End from the **Special** drop-down list to create a radius end cabinet.



Radius End cabinets have a 90° arch

As you face the cabinet, a right radius end curves to the right, and a left radius end curves to the left.

Peninsula Radius Cabinets

Open a cabinet for specification and select Peninsula Radius from the **Special** drop-down list to create peninsula radius cabinet.



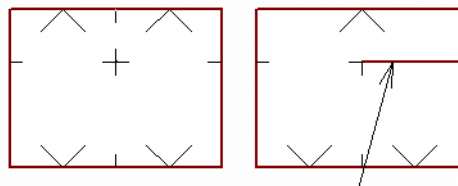
Peninsula Radius Cabinet

Kitchen Islands

To create a kitchen island, simply place several cabinets back-to-back and/or side-to-

side. Match the widths so that each cabinet back or side meets the back or side of only one other cabinet. If this is not done, the lines separating the cabinets cannot be suppressed.

Two cabinets cannot merge with the same side of another cabinet. The picture shows two instances when cabinets are placed back-to-back. Cabinet fronts and joining surfaces are shown.



*Correct -
Widths of front and
back cabinets match*

*Incorrect -
Solid line here is not
suppressed.*

Blind Cabinets

Often, when two cabinets meet in a corner, one is partially hidden by the other. This partially hidden cabinet is called a “blind” cabinet. Home Designer Suite will resize and offset the front items of the partially hidden cabinet so that they are not located in the hidden portion of the cabinet face.



Cabinet Specification Dialog



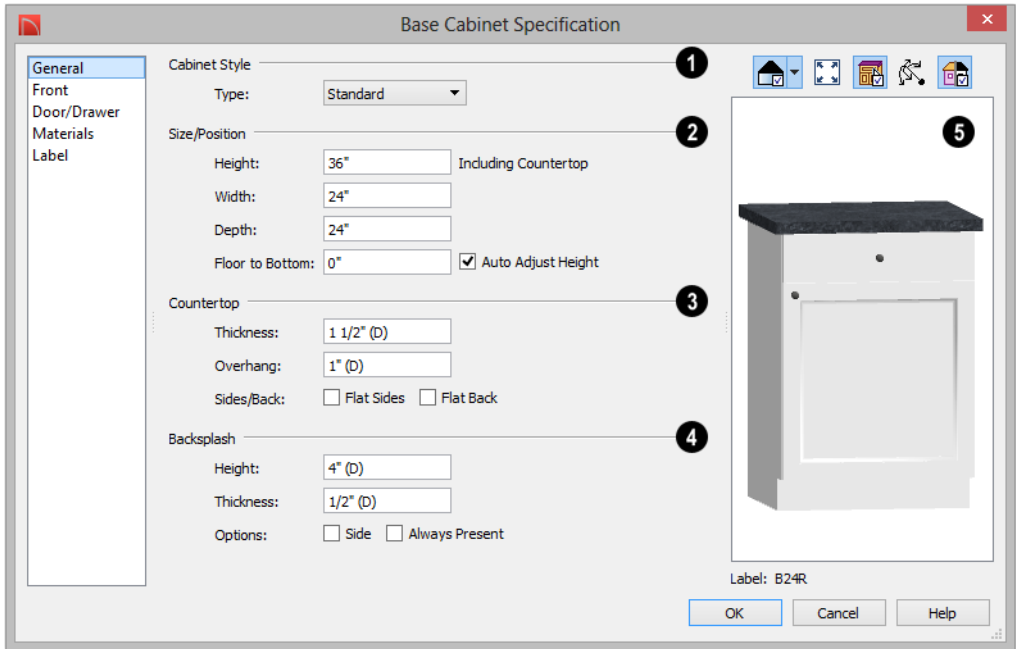
Select a cabinet and click the **Open Object** edit button to open the

Cabinet Specification dialog.

The options in the **Cabinet Specification** dialog are similar to the corresponding

Cabinet Defaults dialog. See “Cabinet Defaults” on page 272.

General Panel



1 A number of **Cabinet Types** are available in the drop-down list. Certain requirements must be met before some types can be specified. See “Special Cabinets” on page 278.

2 **Size/Position** - The selected cabinet’s dimensions and position relative to the floor can be specified here. Fractional values are supported to 1/16th of an inch (1 mm).

- Specify the **Height (Including Counter)** of the cabinet box, as measured from bottom to top. For base cabinets, this value includes the countertop thickness, but not the height of the backsplash.

Note: Height refers to the height of the entire cabinet, including countertop and toe kick. If you change the Countertop Thickness or Toe Kick Height, the cabinet’s total height is not altered. Instead, the cabinet face height and the heights of face items change in response.

- Specify the **Width** of the cabinet box, as measured across the front of the cabinet box from left to right. This does not include the countertop overhang.
- Specify the **Depth** of the cabinet box, as measured from front to back. It does not include the thickness of overlay doors or the countertop overhang.

- For Corner cabinets, the **Width** and **Depth** fields are instead named **Right Side Width** and **Left Side Width**.
 - Specify the **Floor to Bottom** distance. For base and full height cabinets, this is usually 0.
 - When the selected cabinet is outside a room and **Auto Adjust Height** is checked, its Floor to Bottom height is measured relative to the terrain height. When this is unchecked, the Floor to Bottom height is measured from the default floor height of Floor 1. See “Terrain Height vs Floor Height” on page 290 of the Reference Manual.
- 3** Specify the dimensions and style of the **Countertop** here. Only available for base cabinets.
- Specify the countertop **Thickness**. Changing this value does not alter the cabinet height, but it does affect the height of face items. See “Front Panel” on page 282.
 - Specify the countertop **Overhang**. The Overhang is used for any side of a cabinet not against a wall or another cabinet.
- Check **Flat Sides** to eliminate the counter overhang on the cabinet’s exposed ends.
 - Check **Flat Back** to eliminate the overhang on cabinets with an exposed back.
- 4** The dimensions and style of the **Backsplash** are specified here. The backsplash only displays when the cabinet is against a wall. Only available for base cabinets.
- Specify the backsplash **Height** and **Thickness**.
 - Check **Side** to add the same height backsplash on the side of the cabinet if it is against a wall or a taller cabinet.
 - Check **Always Present** to display the backsplash at all times. If unchecked, a backsplash is present only when the cabinet is against a wall.

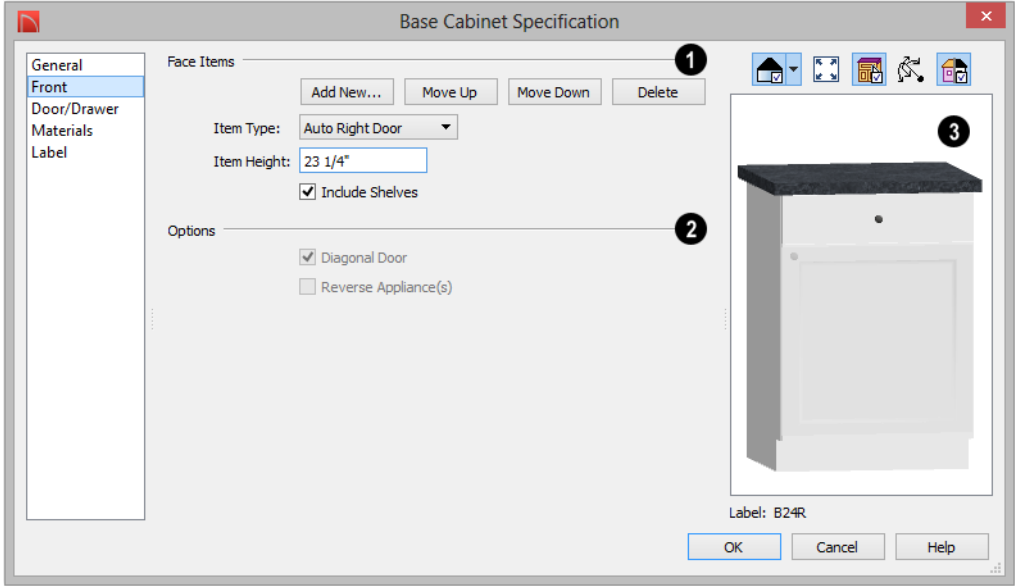
The backsplash for a base cabinet is measured from the countertop up.

- 5** A preview of the selected cabinet displays on the right side of the panel. See “Dialog Preview Panes” on page 29.
- The **Cabinet Label** displays below the preview pane.

Front Panel

If you click on a cabinet face item in the preview on the right side of the dialog, the

Front panel will become active and that face item will be selected.

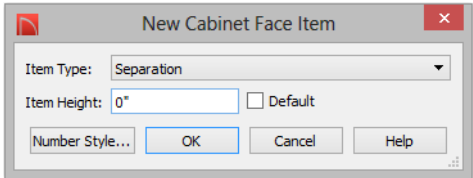


1 Most of the **Face Items** settings are only active when a door, drawer, or other face item is selected. To select a face item, choose it from the Item Number drop-down list or click on it in the preview. When a face item is selected, it is highlighted in the preview and its attributes can be edited. The vertical frame pieces on the sides of the cabinet front are referred to as stiles and cannot be selected in the preview.

- The **Item Number** of the selected face item displays here. Click the drop-down list to select a different item. Item numbers start at the top of the cabinet and go down the face. Item Number 1 is usually the top face frame Separation, or rail.
- The **Action** buttons let you add, remove, and organize the cabinet’s face items. See “Cabinet Face Items” on page 278.
- Click **Add New** to add a new face item directly below the currently selected

item. When a face item is added, the height of the lowest item on the cabinet front is reduced to make room for the new item. If you click **Add New** with no face item selected, the new item is added to the bottom of the cabinet face.

- In the **New Cabinet Face Item** dialog, define the **Item Type**, **Item Height**, and click OK. If the Item Type is “Separation”, you can check **Default** to use the default Separation Height.



- Click **Delete** to remove the selected face item. When an Auto Left, Auto Right, Left, Right, or Double Door is deleted, it is replaced by an Opening; when other

face item types are deleted, the height of the lowest item is increased to make up the difference.



The program tries to maintain a single separation between all face items. When you add or delete a face item, separations are usually added or deleted with them.

- Click **Move Up** to move the currently selected item up one position, switching places with the item directly above.
- Click **Move Down** to move the currently selected item down one position, switching places with the item directly below.
- Choose the selected face item's **Item Type** from the drop-down list:
- Specify the selected face item's **Item Height**. Fractional values are supported to 1/16th of an inch (1 mm). For best results, edit face item heights starting at the top of the cabinet and work down. See "Cabinet Face Items" on page 278.

Note: If the Height of an Appliance has been changed, entering a "d" restores its default height. See "Built-In Appliances" on page 274.

- Check **Include Shelves** to include shelves in the selected "Door" or "Opening" face item.

2 Additional **Options** for **Corner** cabinets and appliances inserted into the selected cabinet:

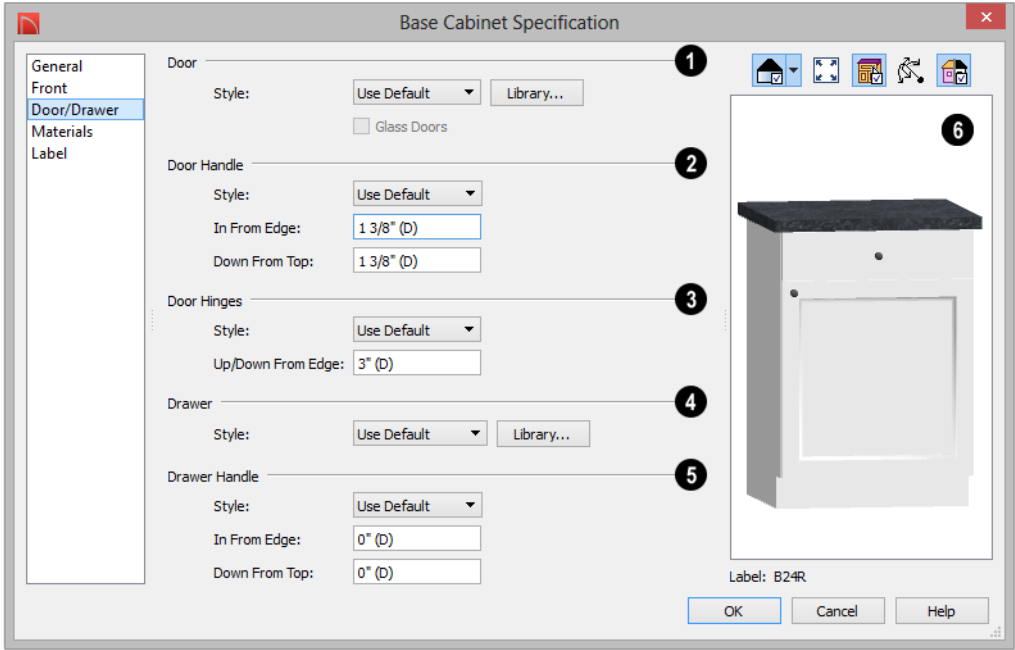
- Uncheck **Diagonal Door** to create double doors at right angles instead of a single diagonal door. This option is only available for Corner Cabinets and is checked by default in the **Cabinet Defaults** dialog. See "Corner Cabinets" on page 279.
- Select **Reverse Appliance** to reverse any appliances inserted into the selected cabinet from left to right: for example, to change a left hand door on a built-in refrigerator to a right hand door. This option is only available for cabinets with an inserted appliance.

3 A preview of the selected object displays on the right side of the panel. See "Dialog Preview Panes" on page 29.

- The **Cabinet Label** displays below the preview diagram.

Door/Drawer Panel

The settings on the Door/Drawer panel allow you to control the appearance of the selected cabinet's doors and hardware.



- 1 Specify the appearance of the **Doors** applied to selected cabinet.
- Select a door **Style** from the drop-down list. See “Doors, Drawers and Panels” on page 278.
- Select “Use Default” to apply the door style specified in the defaults dialog for the selected cabinet’s type. See “Cabinet Defaults” on page 272.
 - Select “Slab Doors” to apply a flat door front or “Framed Doors” to apply a door with a frame and flat panel front.
 - Select “Library” or click the **Library** button to select a cabinet door from the library. If a library door has been previously selected, its name will display in the list. See “Select Library Object Dialog” on page 356.

- Check **Glass Doors** to use a glass material for the panel of Framed doors or for the entire door for Slab doors. Not available when “Library” is the selected door Style.
- 2 Specify the characteristics of the selected cabinet’s **Door Handles**.
- Select a door handle **Style** from the drop-down list.
 - Specify the position of the handle **In From Edge**, as measured from the edge of the door opposite the hinges.
 - Specify the height of the handle **Down From Top**, as measured from the top edge of the door. For wall cabinets, this value is measured **Up From Bottom**.
- 3 Specify the characteristics of the cabinet **Door Hinges**.

- Select a door hinge **Style** from the drop-down list.
 - Specify the location of the hinges **Up/Down From Edge**, as measured from the door edge. If the cabinet door is more than 35 1/4" (880 mm) high, three hinges will be created instead of two.
- 4** Select a **Drawer Style** from the drop-down list or choose one from the **Library**. For best results, "Framed" drawers should be at least 6" (150 mm) high.
- 5** Specify the characteristics of the selected cabinet's **Drawer Handles**.
- Select a drawer **Handle Style** from the drop-down list.
 - The **In From Drawer Edge** setting creates two handles the specified distance from the left and right drawer edges. A value of 0 creates a single handle centered horizontally on the drawer.
- Specify the location of the handle **Down From Top**. A value of 0 centers the handle vertically on the drawer.
- 6** A preview of the selected object displays on the right side of the panel. See "Dialog Preview Panes" on page 29.
- The **Cabinet Label** displays below the preview diagram.

Materials Panel

The settings on the Materials panel affect the appearance of the selected cabinet in 3D views. For information about these settings, see "Materials Panel" on page 364.

Label Panel

Cabinet labels display in floor plan view when the "Cabinets, Labels" layer is turned on and use the Text Style assigned to that layer.

For more information about the settings on this panel, see "Label Panel" on page 429.

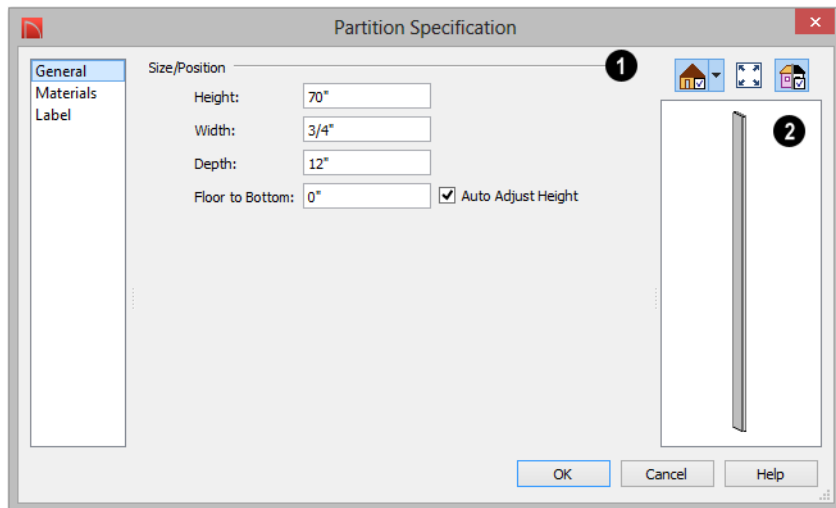
Shelf/Partition Specification Dialog



Select a shelf or partition and click the **Open Object** edit button to open the **Shelf Specification** or **Partition Specification** dialog.

The options in these specification dialogs are similar to the corresponding defaults dialogs. See "Cabinet Defaults" on page 272.

General Panel



1 **Size/Position** - Specify the **Height**, **Width**, **Depth**, and the distance from the **Floor to Bottom** of the shelf or partition.

- When the selected object is outside a room and **Auto Adjust Height** is checked, its **Floor to Bottom** height is measured relative to the terrain height. When this is unchecked, the **Floor to Bottom** height is measured from the default floor height of Floor 1. See “Terrain Height vs Floor Height” on page 290 of the Reference Manual.

2 A preview of the selected object displays on the right side of the panel. See “Dialog Preview Panes” on page 29.

Materials Panel

The settings on the Materials panel affect the appearance of the selected object in 3D views. For information about these settings, see “Materials Panel” on page 364.

Label Panel

Shelf and Partition labels display in floor plan view when the “Cabinets, Labels” layer is turned on and use the Text Style assigned to that layer. The Automatic Labels for Shelves and Partitions re blank, but you can specify custom labels

For more information about the settings on this panel, see “Label Panel” on page 429.

Terrain

Home Designer Suite allows you to model the terrain around a house. Begin by specifying elevation data that creates the surface contours, and then add surface features such as planting areas and water features.

You can import terrain data from a variety of sources and use this data to produce your 3D model.

Roads and sidewalks as well as plants are among the objects that can be placed in your terrain and are discussed in “Plants and

Sprinklers” on page 323 and “Roads, Driveways and Sidewalks” on page 317.

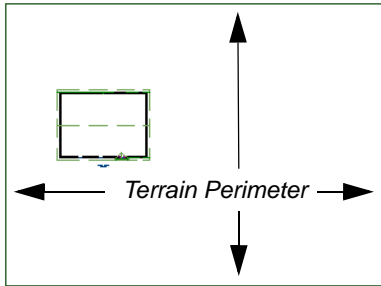
Chapter Contents


- Terrain Perimeter
- Elevation Data Tools
- Terrain Modifier Tools
- Terrain Feature Tools
- Garden Bed Tools
- Water Feature Tools
- Stepping Stone Tools
- Terrain Wall and Curb Tools
- Terrain Objects in the Library

Terrain Perimeter



The Terrain Perimeter is a closed polyline defining the boundary of the terrain that generates in 3D views and of the contour lines that generate in floor plan view. A Terrain Perimeter should be present in your plan already, but if one is not, select **Terrain > Create Terrain Perimeter** to create one.





If you create a terrain perimeter in floor plan view but do not see it, select **Window > Fill Window** . See “Zoom Tools” on page 374.

Once created, the terrain perimeter can be resized and edited like other polyline-based objects. See “Editing Closed-Polyline Based Objects” on page 96.

When a terrain perimeter is first created, it is completely flat and is placed at a height of 0’-0”, or sea level.



Terrain perimeter at 0’ - 0” in a 3D view

The terrain perimeter by itself does not have elevation data associated with it. You can use the **Elevation Data**  and **Terrain Modifier**  tools to create terrain that slopes in a wide variety of ways. If you do not create elevation data within the terrain perimeter, the terrain remains flat at an

elevation of 0’ - 0”. See “Elevation Data Tools” on page 291 and “Terrain Modifier Tools” on page 294.

Terrain Height vs Floor Height

Home Designer Suite always defines the default height of Floor 1 at 0’-0”. This height value is the constant by which the heights of architectural objects and structural elements in the program, including walls, floors, and ceilings, are measured.

The default height of Floor 1 is not, however, the absolute by which terrain elevation is measured. Instead, elevation data is measured relative to sea level. This means that if you want to, you can use real-world elevation data to generate a 3D terrain model without also having to measure floor and ceiling heights from sea level. See “Importing Elevation Data” on page 311.

The program automatically positions Floor 1 a set distance above the terrain. To do this, it first finds the center point of the building footprint. Then, it determines the elevation of the terrain at that point. Finally, it adds 6” (150 mm) plus the thickness of the floor platform to this value. The resulting value, referred to as the Building Pad Elevation, is how far the default height of Floor 1 is above sea level in the current plan. See “Foundations and the Terrain” on page 212.

In a plan with a foundation present, the Elevation distance will equal the exact terrain elevation at the building footprint center point, plus 6” (150 mm), plus the thickness of the floor platform.

- In a plan with no elevation data, the terrain is assumed to be at sea level and this Elevation distance is 6” (150 mm) plus

the thickness of the floor platform when a foundation is present.

- In a plan with flat terrain at 100' (30 m) and a foundation present, the Elevation distance is 100' 6" (30.468 m) plus the thickness of the floor platform.

Once terrain has been built, the Elevation distance is stated in the **Terrain Specification** dialog. You can specify a custom Elevation value to produce a daylight or walkout basement. See “General Panel” on page 301.

Note: When no foundation has been built, the distance from Floor 1 to the terrain is 12" (320 mm).

Build Terrain



Select **Terrain > Build Terrain** to generate the terrain surface based on the provided elevation data. Build Terrain also updates the Building Pad Elevation value in the **Terrain Specification** dialog. See “Building the Terrain” on page 300.

The Terrain Perimeter has a variety of editable properties that affect the appearance of the terrain in 2D and 3D views. See “Terrain Specification Dialog” on page 301.




Elevation Data Tools



Select **Terrain > Elevation Data** to add elevation information to your terrain.

When terrain is generated, this data is used to calculate the surface of your site and is represented by contour lines in floor plan view and a curved surface in 3D. See “Displaying Terrain” on page 299.

Elevation data can be specified using the

Elevation Point , **Elevation Line** , and **Flat Region**  tools.

Elevation data can also be imported. See “Importing Elevation Data” on page 311.

The elevation of each Elevation Line, Spline and Region is specified relative to sea level.

In order to create rising and/or falling terrain, multiple terrain data objects with different elevation values must be used. If only one

terrain data object is placed, the terrain will be flat regardless of the object’s specified elevation.



To avoid unexpected results, do not draw Elevation Data objects with different elevation information at the same location.

Elevation Points




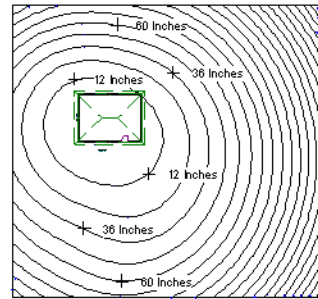
An **Elevation Point** contains the absolute elevation data for one point in the terrain model. Typically, Elevation Points are imported rather than placed manually.

Home Designer Suite requires many points to make an accurate approximation of your site. Even small sites may require over a hundred points to generate an accurate model of the terrain if it is sloped. For the sake of


illustration, the following example shows only a few elevation points.

To place an elevation point


1. Select **Terrain> Elevation Data> Elevation Point**  and click in floor plan view at the point where you would like to place elevation data.
2. The **Elevation Point Specification** dialog opens. Enter an elevation value and click **OK**. See “Elevation Point Specification Dialog” on page 303.
3. Click somewhere else in floor plan view and the **Elevation Point Specification** dialog opens again with the last elevation value entered.

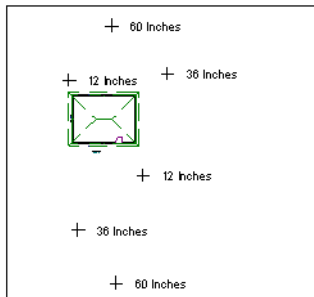


Contour lines after terrain generation


 Elevation Points are most effective when they are imported. When adding elevation data manually, use Elevation Lines instead. See “Importing Elevation Data” on page 311.

Elevation Lines



 An **Elevation Line** contains absolute elevation data for many points along a line at a constant elevation. Elevation lines can be connected to create a polyline with many straight sections. For the sake of illustration, the images in the following example show single-section elevation lines.



Elevation Points before terrain generation

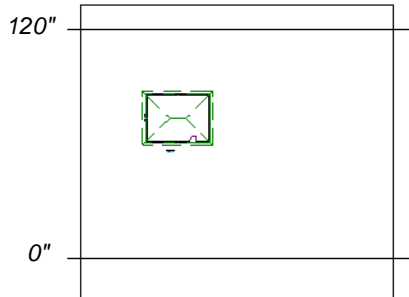
4. Repeat steps 1, 2 and 3 to place additional elevation points with varied elevation values as needed.
5. Select **Terrain> Build Terrain** . See “Building the Terrain” on page 300.

To draw an elevation line

1. Select **Terrain> Elevation Data> Elevation Line** , then click and drag a line inside the Terrain Perimeter in floor plan view.
2. Click on the elevation line to select it, then click the **Open Object**  edit button.
3. At first, an elevation line is at elevation 0' - 0". In the **Elevation Line**

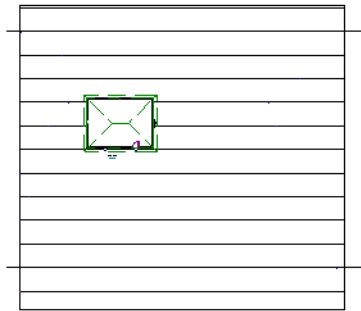
Specification dialog, specify the desired elevation and click OK. See “Elevation Line/Region Specification Dialog” on page 304.

- Repeat steps 2 and 3 to draw additional elevation lines as needed.



Elevation Lines before terrain generation

- Select **Terrain > Build Terrain** . See “Building the Terrain” on page 300.



Contour lines after terrain generation



Full Overview after terrain generation



After it is drawn, an Elevation Line can be edited much the way other line-based objects can. See “Editing Line Based Objects” on page 88.

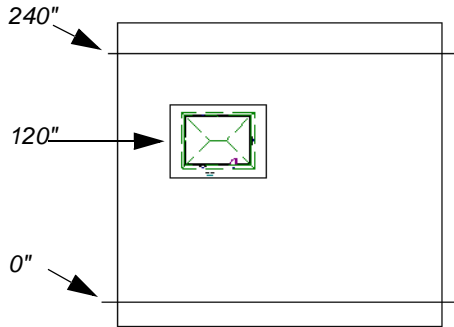
Elevation Regions



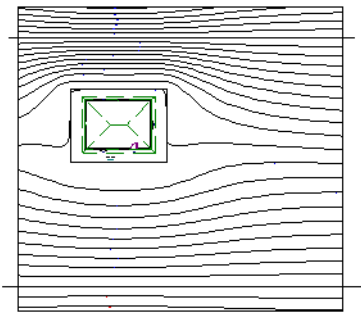
An **Elevation Region** contains absolute elevation data for an enclosed region and is ideal for creating a flat surface in your terrain.

To create an elevation region

- Select **Terrain > Elevation Data > Elevation Region** .
- There are two ways to add a Terrain Modifier to your plan:
 - Click once to place an 8' (0.6 m) square feature at that location.
 - Click and drag from end to end to draw a feature sized as needed. See “Draw Polyline” on page 432.
- Click on the region to select it, then click the **Open Object**  edit button.
- At first, an elevation line is at elevation 0' - 0". In the **Elevation Region Specification** dialog, specify the desired elevation and click OK. See “Elevation Line/Region Specification Dialog” on page 304.





Elevation lines create a terrain grade; an elevation region creates a building pad.



Contour lines after terrain generation




Full Overview after terrain generation

An **Elevation Region**  can also be created by drawing a closed polyline using **Elevation Lines** .

After it is drawn, an Elevation Region can be reshaped much the way other closed polyline-based objects can. See “Editing Closed-Polyline Based Objects” on page 96.



Terrain Modifier Tools

 Select **Terrain > Modifier** to access tools that allow you to modify the existing elevation data by drawing a closed polyline. Their height is relative to the terrain surface generated from the Elevation Data provided in your plan.

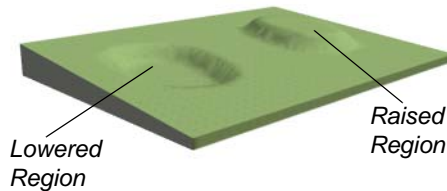
The elevation data associated with a Terrain Modifier only affects the terrain within its

perimeter. The rest of the terrain is unaffected.

Raised and Lowered Regions

  The **Raised Region** tool creates a raised area with a top surface that is flattened like a plateau but follows the surface of the terrain. The **Lowered Region**

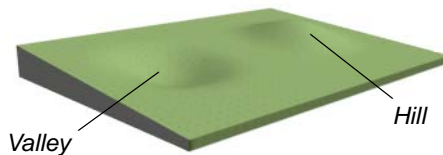
tool creates a depression with a bottom that follows the terrain and is flattened.



Hills and Valleys



The **Hill** and **Valley** tools create raised and lowered areas in the terrain that come to a point rather than flattening at their highest or lowest elevations.



There are two ways to add a Terrain Modifier to your plan:

- Click once to place a modifier with endpoints that form a 10' (4 m) square at that location.
- Click and drag from end to end to draw a feature sized as needed. See “Draw Polyline” on page 432.

Terrain Modifiers can only be drawn when a Terrain Perimeter is present, and will only display in 3D when they are drawn within the perimeter. See “Displaying Terrain” on page 299.




Once created, Terrain Modifiers can be selected and edited in a variety of ways. See “Editing Spline Based Objects” on page 100.


Terrain Feature Tools



Select **Terrain > Feature** to access tools for drawing bounded areas that follow the contours of the terrain rather than modifying them.

Terrain Features are useful for creating landscaping features because they have specified heights and materials. You can, for example, create paths and planting beds with gravel or mulch materials that stand out in a grassy Terrain Perimeter. See “Adding Terrain Features” on page 142 of the User’s Guide.

In fact, **Driveways** , **Garden Beds** , **Water Features**  and **Stepping**


Stones  are special Terrain Features with material and height attributes already applied to them, saving you time when drawing these objects.

Terrain Features can only be drawn when a Terrain Perimeter is present, and will only display in 3D when they are drawn within the perimeter. See “Displaying Terrain” on page 299.


Terrain Features can be created in either of two ways:

- Click once to place a feature with end-points that form a 10' (4 m) square at that location.
- Click and drag from end to end to draw a feature sized as needed. See “Draw Polyline” on page 432.

Once created, Terrain Features can be edited into nearly any shape you require. See “Editing Closed-Polyline Based Objects” on page 96 and “Editing Spline Based Objects” on page 100.


 Terrain Features can be drawn in 2D and 3D views.

Rectangular Features

 The **Rectangular Feature** tool can be used to create straight-sided features that can be edited into a wide variety of shapes.


Rectangular Features can also be edited like other closed polyline-based objects. See “Editing Closed-Polyline Based Objects” on page 96.

Round Feature

 The **Round Feature** tool can be used to create features with rounded edges and smoothly curved corners.

Round Features can be edited like other closed spline-based objects. See “Editing Spline Based Objects” on page 100.


Kidney Shaped Features


 The **Kidney Shaped Feature** tool allows you to quickly create features with curved edges, smooth corners and a right angle bend in its shape.

Kidney Shaped Features can be edited like other closed spline-based objects. See “Editing Spline Based Objects” on page 100.


For information about adding height and material information to Terrain Features, see “Terrain Feature Specification Dialog” on page 305.

Terrain Holes

 A **Terrain Hole** is a region that cuts a hole in the terrain.

Terrain Holes  are useful for manually clipping the terrain around a foundation that does not match the footprint of the first floor.

Garden Bed Tools

 Select **Terrain > Garden Bed** to access tools that can be used to place garden bed features in your terrain.

Garden Beds are basically **Terrain Features** with material and height attributes typical of

planting beds. See “Terrain Feature Tools” on page 295.

In addition, you can choose to distribute copies of a plant image within a Garden Bed. See “Distributed Plant Panel” on page 306.

Polyline Garden Bed



This tool draws a garden bed with straight sides and four right angles. See “Rectangular Features” on page 296.

Round Garden Bed



Use this tool to draw garden beds with rounded edges and smoothly curved corners. See “Round Feature” on page 296.

Kidney Shaped Garden Bed



You can draw a kidney shaped garden bed with this tool. See “Kidney Shaped Features” on page 296.

Once drawn, Garden Beds can be selected and edited just like other Terrain Features.

Specify the material and set the height of Garden Beds in the **Terrain Feature Specification** dialog. See “Terrain Feature Specification Dialog” on page 305.

Water Feature Tools



Select **Terrain > Water Feature** to access tools for drawing ponds and streams in your terrain.

Ponds are basically **Terrain Features** with material and height attributes typical of bodies of water. See “Terrain Feature Tools” on page 295.

Similarly, Streams are Terrain Curbs with a water material. See “Terrain Wall and Curb Tools” on page 298.

Round Pond



Use this tool to draw a pond with rounded edges. See “Round Feature” on page 296.

Kidney Shaped Pond



This tool draws a kidney shaped pond. See “Kidney Shaped Features” on page 296.

Stream



Select the **Stream** tool, then click and drag to draw a stream. Streams are drawn and edited the same way that splines are. See “Splines” on page 433 and “Editing Spline Based Objects” on page 100.

Streams follow the contours of the terrain, so they may appear to flow uphill if they are not drawn correctly in the terrain. Try to draw them so that they follow a downward course for their entire length.

Once drawn, Water Features can be selected and edited just like any other Terrain Feature.

Specify the material and set the height of Water Features in their specification dialogs. See Terrain Object Specification Dialogs on page 689.

Stepping Stone Tools



Select **Terrain > Stepping Stone** to place a walkway made of individual stepping stones.

Stepping Stones are basically **Terrain Features** with material and height attributes typical of walking paths. See “Terrain Feature Tools” on page 295.

There are two ways to draw Stepping Stones:

- Click once to place a stepping stone with endpoints that form a 1' (300 mm) square at that location.
- Click and drag from end to end to draw a stepping stone sized as needed. See “Draw Polyline” on page 432.

Polyline Stepping Stone



The **Polyline Stepping Stone** tool draws rectangular stepping stones. See “Rectangular Features” on page 296.

Round Stepping Stone



The **Round Stepping Stone** tool draws stepping stones with rounded edges. See “Round Feature” on page 296.

Once drawn, Stepping Stones can be selected and edited just like any other Terrain Feature.

By default, Stepping Stones have a concrete material; however, you can specify the material and set the height of Stepping Stones in the **Terrain Feature Specification** dialog. See “Terrain Feature Specification Dialog” on page 305.

Terrain Wall and Curb Tools



Select **Terrain > Terrain Wall and Curb** to draw landscaping walls and curbs that follow the contours of the terrain.

Straight and curved Terrain Walls and Curbs are drawn just as other walls are. See “Drawing Walls” on page 122.

Terrain Walls and Curbs are examples of Terrain Paths. Other examples include Sidewalks and Streams. See “Terrain Path Specification Dialog” on page 309.

Terrain Walls



Use the **Straight Terrain Wall** tool to draw a wall that sits on top of and follows the terrain.



Use the **Spline Terrain Wall** to draw a curved terrain wall. This wall is drawn the same way as a CAD Spline. See “Splines” on page 433.

Once drawn, a Terrain Wall can be like other line-based objects. See “Editing Line Based Objects” on page 88 and “Editing Spline Based Objects” on page 100.

Terrain walls are 5' (1500 mm) high and concrete by default, but you can specify the

material, height and more in the **Terrain Path Specification**. See “Terrain Path Specification Dialog” on page 309.

Retaining Walls



Use the **Straight Retaining Wall** tool to draw a straight wall that holds back sloped terrain.



Use the **Curved Retaining Wall** tool to draw a curved retaining wall.

A Retaining Wall’s height is determined by the elevation of the terrain on each side. By default, the height of the wall matches the terrain on the high side of the break and the bottom matches the low side. If you insert a Retaining Wall into flat terrain, it looks like a concrete strip in 3D views.

Once drawn, a Retaining Wall can be edited much like other walls. See “Editing Walls” on page 127.

Terrain Curbs

Terrain Curbs are useful for creating curbs around planting beds and along paths, driveways and roads.



Use the **Straight Terrain Curb** tool to draw a straight landscaping curb.



Use the **Spline Terrain Curb** tool to draw a curved landscaping curb. This curb is drawn the same way as a CAD Spline. See “Splines” on page 433.

Once drawn, a Terrain Curb can be like other line-based objects. See “Editing Line Based Objects” on page 88 and “Editing Spline Based Objects” on page 100.

You can specify the height of straight and spline terrain curbs on the General panel of the **Terrain Path Specification**. See “Terrain Path Specification Dialog” on page 309.



You can also add Fencing to your terrain, complete with gates from the Doors Library. See “Fencing Tools” on page 119.

Terrain Objects in the Library



The Library Browser contains a variety of objects that can be placed in a plan’s terrain, including plants, exterior

fixtures, accessories and roadway objects. See “The Library Browser” on page 342.

Displaying Terrain



The display of terrain objects in 2D and 3D views is controlled in the **Display Options** dialog. See “Display Options Dialog” on page 75.

You can customize appearance of Terrain Features, Roads and other terrain objects in floor plan view by changing their line and fill styles.

Plant images are represented in floor plan view by 2D CAD symbols. You can select a plant's symbol in the **Plant Image Specification** dialog. See "Image Panel" on page 327.

When elevation data has been drawn or imported into a plan, contour lines will display in floor plan view. See "Elevation Data Tools" on page 291.

In 3D Views

In order for objects such as Terrain Features and Roads to be visible in 3D views, the Terrain Perimeter layer must also display. In addition, only the portions of these objects that are drawn within the Terrain Perimeter will be seen in 3D views. See "Terrain Feature Tools" on page 295.

A variety of tools are available to help you adjust the perspective of your 3D views. See "Editing 3D Views" on page 391.

Building the Terrain



When terrain is generated, Home Designer Suite gathers all elevation data that has been added to the model and creates a terrain surface. The program

interpolates the data to produce smooth contours.

A terrain perimeter with no additional elevation data drawn within it generates terrain that is flat at the elevation 0' - 0", or sea level.

The terrain is automatically built before a 3D view is generated. This process takes a variable amount of time, depending on the amount of elevation data and number of terrain features in the plan. The **Building Terrain** progress dialog displays as terrain is generated, sometimes only briefly, indicating the progress.

Terrain and 3D Drawing Time

Terrain is typically large with many surfaces, which often increases the drawing time of 3D views. The time required is affected by the amount of elevation data and number of terrain features present.

Lights and symbols can be placed outdoors and included in 3D views when the terrain is generated. These objects can also contribute to the time needed to generate 3D views. See "Rendering Tips" on page 399.

Editing Terrain Objects

Before a terrain object can be edited, it must be selected. All terrain objects can be selected in floor plan view. In addition, the Terrain Perimeter and Terrain Features can be selected in 3D views. See "Selecting Objects" on page 86.

A selected terrain object can be edited using its edit handles, edit tools and specification

dialog. See "Specification Dialogs" on page 29.

Any time elevation data is changed, the terrain must be regenerated. This occurs automatically when a 3D view is created. It can also be done manually by selecting

Terrain > Build Terrain .

Using the Edit Handles

- The shape of the Terrain Perimeter can be edited like other polyline-based objects. See “Editing Closed-Polyline Based Objects” on page 96.
- Elevation Points can be moved in floor plan view using the Move edit handle.
- **Elevation Lines** are edited like other line-based objects. See “Editing Line Based Objects” on page 88 and “Editing Closed-Polyline Based Objects” on page 96.
- The shape of a **Raised Region, Lowered Region, Hill,** and **Valley** can be edited like a spline. See “Editing Spline Based Objects” on page 100.

- Terrain Features are edited like other spline- and polyline-based objects. See “Editing Closed-Polyline Based Objects” on page 96 and “Editing Spline Based Objects” on page 100.

Using the Edit Tools



A selected terrain object can be edited in a variety of ways using the buttons on the edit toolbar. The edit tools available for a terrain object depends on the type of terrain object selected. See “The Edit Toolbar” on page 26.



Note: If you copy terrain objects from one plan to another, you cannot view the pasted objects in 3D unless a Terrain Perimeter exists.

Terrain Specification Dialog

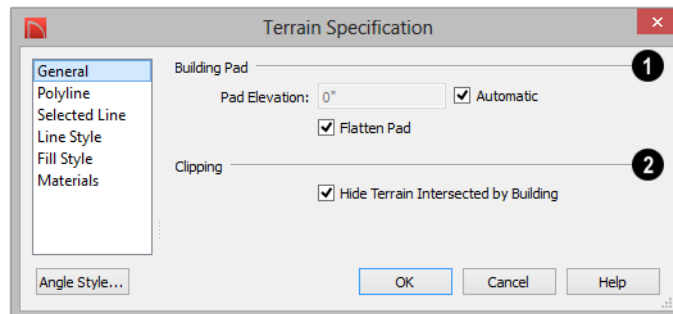


The **Terrain Specification** dialog controls how your terrain is modeled, as well as its appearance.

The **Terrain Specification** dialog can be accessed in any of two ways:

- Select the Terrain Perimeter and click the **Open Object**  edit button.
- Double-click the Terrain Perimeter using the **Select Objects**  tool.

General Panel



- 1 Specify how the **Building Pad** is generated beneath the structure. See “Foundations and the Terrain” on page 212.
 - To specify the distance between Floor 1 and the terrain at the building footprint center, uncheck **Automatic** and enter a value in the **Pad Elevation** field.
 - Check **Automatic** to have Home Designer Suite automatically lower the terrain relative to the first floor. See “Terrain Height vs Floor Height” on page 290.
 - Check **Flatten Pad** to flatten the area beneath the building. To create a walkout basement, uncheck this box.

- 2 **Clipping** - Check **Hide Terrain Intersected by Building** to cut out the portion of the terrain that is intersected by the first floor footprint. Checking this box prevents the generation of contour lines inside the house.

Polyline Panel

The Polyline panel indicates the polyline’s **Length/Perimeter**, its enclosed **Area**, and its **Volume**.

The settings on the this panel are available for a variety of other objects in the program. For information about these settings, see “Polyline Panel” on page 438.

Selected Line Panel

The Selected Line panel is available when the selected edge of the Terrain Perimeter is a line as opposed to an arc. See “Selected Edge” on page 86.

The settings on this panel are available for a variety of other objects in the program. For information about these settings, see “Line Panel” on page 434.

Selected Arc Panel

The Selected Arc panel is available when the selected segment of the polyline is an arc as opposed to a line. See “Change Line/Arc” on page 110.

The settings on this panel are available for a variety of other objects in the program. For information about these settings, see “Arc Panel” on page 436.

Line Style Panel

The settings on the Line Style panel are available for a variety of other objects in the program. For information about these settings, see “Line Style Panel” on page 434.


Fill Style Panel

The settings on the Fill Style panel affect the appearance of the Terrain Perimeter in floor plan view. For information about these settings, see “Fill Style Panel” on page 439.

Materials Panel

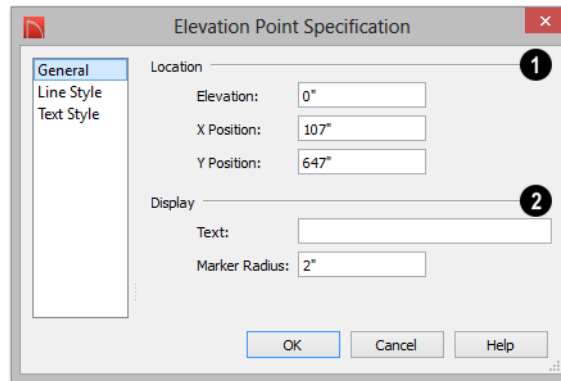
The settings on the Materials panel let you specify the terrain surface and terrain skirt materials used in 3D views. These materials are not calculated in the Materials List. See “Materials Panel” on page 364.

Elevation Point Specification Dialog

 To open the **Elevation Point Specification** dialog, select an elevation point and click the **Open Object** edit button, or double-click on an Elevation Point

using the **Select Objects**  tool.

Use the **Elevation Point Specification** dialog to define the selected elevation point and control its appearance in floor plan view.



- 1 Location** - Specify the exact location of the elevation point.
 - Specify the **Elevation** of the selected Elevation Point.
 - **X Coordinate** - Enter the x coordinate of the elevation point.
 - **Y Coordinate** - Enter the y coordinate of the elevation point.

- 2 Display** -
 - In the **Text** field, type any notes that you would like to display beside the selected Elevation Point in floor plan view. You can also enter a pound (#) sign to display the point's elevation value.

- Enter the **Marker Radius**, which is size of the point marker, measured from the center to an edge.


Line Style Panel


The settings on the Line Style panel are available for a variety of other objects in the program. For information about these settings, see “Line Style Panel” on page 434.

Text Style Panel

The settings on the Text Style panel control the appearance of the selected Elevation Point's text. For more information, see “Text Style Panel” on page 428.

Elevation Line/Region Specification Dialog

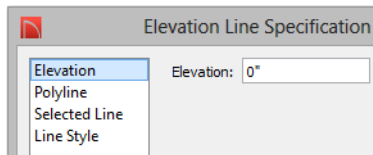
 To open the **Elevation Line** or **Elevation Region Specification** dialog, select one or more Elevation Line, or a polyline composed of elevation Lines, or an Elevation Region and click the **Open Object** edit button. You can also double-click an

Elevation Line using the **Select Objects**  tool.

The **Elevation Line Specification** dialog is used to define the selected Elevation Line and controls its appearance in floor plan view.

The settings in this dialog are the same as those in the **Elevation Region Specification** dialog. See “Elevation Regions” on page 293.

Elevation Panel



- Specify the **Elevation** of the selected Elevation Line, Spline, or Polyline.

Polyline Panel

The Polyline panel indicates the line or polyline’s **Length/Perimeter**. If multiple

Elevation Line segments form a closed Elevation Region, its Area will be calculated. Elevation Lines do not have a thickness, so they have no Volume.

Selected Line Panel

The Selected Line panel is available when the selected object or segment is a line as opposed to one that has been converted to an arc. See “Selected Edge” on page 86.

The settings on this panel are available for a variety of other objects in the program. For information about these settings, see “Line Panel” on page 434.

Selected Arc Panel

The Selected Arc panel is available when the selected object or segment is an arc as opposed to a line.

The settings on this panel are available for a variety of other objects in the program. For information about these settings, see “Arc Panel” on page 436.


Line Style Panel

The settings on the Line Style panel are available for a variety of other objects in the program. For information about these settings, see “Line Style Panel” on page 434.

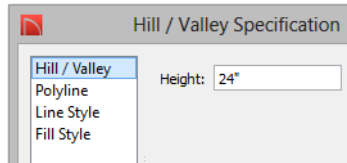
Hill / Valley Specification Dialog

 The **Hill/Valley Specification** defines the selected Hill or Valley and

controls its appearance in floor plan view.

To open the **Hill/Valley Specification** dialog, select a Hill or Valley and click the **Open Object** edit button, or double-click the region(s) using the **Select Objects**  tool.

Hill / Valley Panel



- Enter a **Height** for the selected Hill or Valley. This height is relative to the terrain surface that is generated from the Elevation Data in your plan. See “Terrain Modifier Tools” on page 294.

Polyline Panel

The Polyline panel indicates the polyline’s **Length/Perimeter** and its enclosed **Area**. Hills and Valleys do not have a volume measurement.

Line Style Panel


The settings on the Line Style panel are available for a variety of other objects in the program. For information about these settings, see “Line Style Panel” on page 434.

Fill Style Panel

The settings on the Fill Style panel affect the appearance of the selected object in floor plan view. For information about these settings, see “Fill Style Panel” on page 439.

Raised / Lowered Region Specification Dialog




To open the **Raised/Lowered Region Specification** dialog, select a raised or lowered region and click the **Open Object** edit button, or double-click the region(s) using the **Select Objects**  tool.

The **Raised / Lowered Region Specification** dialog is similar to the **Hill / Valley Specification** dialog. See “Hill / Valley Specification Dialog” on page 304.

Terrain Feature Specification Dialog



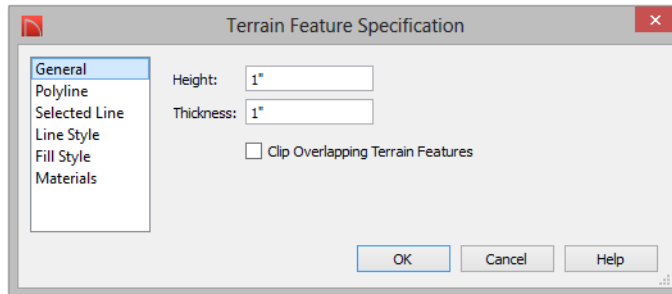
To open the **Terrain Feature Specification** dialog, select a Terrain Feature and click the **Open Object** edit button, or double-click the Terrain Feature using the **Select Objects**  tool.

Most of the panels in this dialog are similar to those for a variety of other objects in the

program, including Water Features, Stepping Stones, Driveways, and Parking Lots.

Garden Beds are also a type of Terrain Feature and have an additional Distributed Plant panel in their specification dialog. Garden Beds also have a preview pane on the right side of their specification dialog.

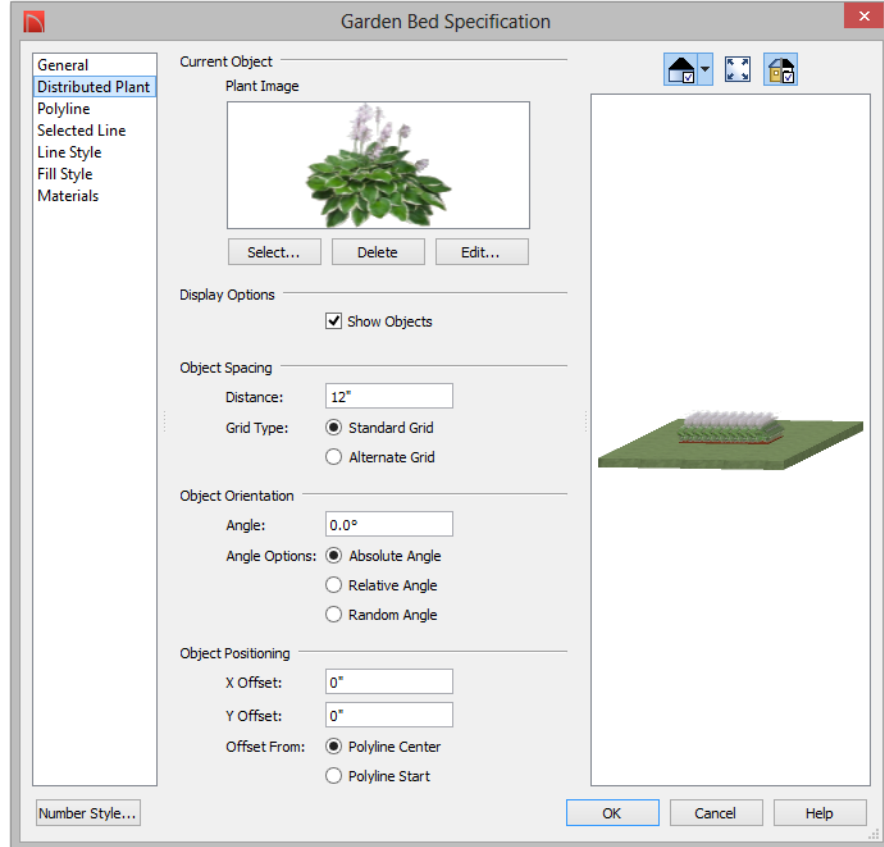
General Panel



- Specify the top **Height** of the Terrain Feature, relative to the terrain surface, using a positive or negative number.
 - Specify the feature's **Thickness**.
 - Check **Clip Overlapping Terrain Features** to suppress the 3D display of any part of the selected Terrain Feature intersected by other Terrain Features with a lower Height value. Clipping is useful for creating features that contain other features such as planters or swimming pools.
- If a feature's height above the terrain is greater than its thickness, the program will fill in the resulting gap.

Distributed Plant Panel

This panel is only available when the selected Terrain Feature is a Garden Bed. See "Garden Bed Tools" on page 296.



- 1 Specify the **Current Object** assigned to the selected garden bed. When an object is assigned, its name and a preview of a single instance of it display here.
 - Click the **Select** button to choose an object from the library. See “Select Library Object Dialog” on page 356.
 - Click the **Delete** button to unassign the Current Object from the selected garden bed.
 - Click the **Edit** button to open the Current Object’s specification dialog. Changes

made here affect all objects generated within the garden bed. See “Specification Dialogs” on page 29.

- 2 **Display Options** -
 - Check **Show Objects** to display the distributed objects in floor plan view.
 - Check **Show Region** to display the edges of the garden bed in floor plan view.
- 3 **Object Spacing** - Specify how the objects in the garden bed are spaced.

- Specify the **Distance** between the objects in the garden bed, as measured from their center points.
- Select **Standard Grid** to position the objects in rows and columns based on the standard X/Y grid in the program.
- Select **Alternate Grid** to position the objects in rows and columns based on the shape of the garden bed.

4 Object Orientation - Specify how or if the objects in the garden bed are rotated. These settings do not affect the garden bed itself or its edges.

- Specify the **Angle** that the distributed objects should be placed at.
- Select **Absolute Angle** to rotate the objects to the specified Angle as measured from an imaginary horizontal line drawn from the origin towards the right.
- Select **Relative Angle** to rotate the objects relative to the angle of the region's first edge or, if that edge is curved, to the angle of its chord. The first edge is typically located at the top of the garden bed when it is first created; however, this can change as the bed is edited.
- Select **Random Angle** to rotate the objects in the region at a variety of random angles.

5 Object Positioning - Specify the positioning of the distributed objects relative to a point of origin within the garden bed.

- Specify the **X Offset**, the horizontal distance in floor plan view from the garden bed's specified point of origin.

- Specify the **Y Offset**, the vertical distance in floor plan view from the garden bed's specified point of origin.
- Select **From Polyline Center** to measure the offset from the garden bed's center point.
- Select **Polyline Start** to measure the offset from the garden bed's start point. This start point is typically located at the top left of the garden bed when it is first created; however, this can change as the garden bed is edited.

6 A preview of the garden bed displays on the right side of the dialog box. See "Dialog Preview Panes" on page 29.

Polyline Panel

The Polyline panel indicates the polyline's **Length/Perimeter**, its enclosed **Area**, and the **Volume** of a closed polyline.

Selected Line Panel

The Selected Line panel is available when the selected edge of the polyline is a line as opposed to an arc. See "Selected Edge" on page 86.

The settings on this panel are available for a variety of other objects in the program. For information about these settings, see "Line Panel" on page 434.

Selected Arc Panel

The Selected Arc panel is available when the selected segment of the polyline is an arc as opposed to a line. See "Change Line/Arc" on page 110.

The settings on this panel are available for a variety of other objects in the program. For

information about these settings, see “Arc Panel” on page 436.

Line Style Panel

The settings on the Line Style panel are available for a variety of other objects in the program. For information about these settings, see “Line Style Panel” on page 434.

Fill Style Panel


The settings on the Fill Style panel affect the appearance of the selected object in floor plan view. For information about these settings, see “Fill Style Panel” on page 439.

Materials Panel

The settings on the Materials panel affect the appearance of the selected object in 3D views. See “Materials Panel” on page 364.

Garden Bed Specification Dialog




To open the **Garden Bed Specification** dialog, select a Garden Bed and click the **Open Object** edit button or double-click the Garden Bed using the **Select Objects**  tool.

Because a Garden Bed is a type of Terrain Feature, the settings in this dialog are essentially the same as those in the **Terrain Feature Specification** dialog. See “Terrain Feature Specification Dialog” on page 305.

Terrain Path Specification Dialog

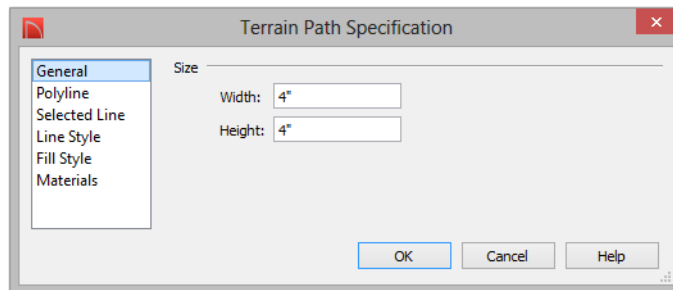


To open the **Terrain Path Specification** dialog, select a Sidewalk, Stream, Terrain Wall or Terrain Curb and click the **Open Object** edit button

or double-click the terrain path using the **Select Objects**  tool.

Most of the panels in this dialog are similar to those for a variety of other objects in the program.

General Panel



Size - Enter the **Width** of the object and the **Height** above the terrain. If the Height value is a negative number, the object sinks into the terrain.

Polyline Panel

The Polyline panel indicates the Terrain Path polyline's **Length/Perimeter**, its enclosed **Area**, and the **Volume** of a closed polyline.

Selected Line Panel

The Selected Line panel is available when the selected edge of the Terrain Perimeter is a line as opposed to an arc. See "Selected Edge" on page 86.

The settings on this panel are available for a variety of other objects in the program. For information about these settings, see "Line Panel" on page 434.

Selected Arc Panel

The Selected Arc panel is available when the selected segment of the polyline is an arc as opposed to a line. See "Break Line" on page 109.

The settings on this panel are available for a variety of other objects in the program. For information about these settings, see "Arc Panel" on page 436.

Line Style Panel

The settings on the Line Style panel are available for a variety of other objects in the program. For information about these settings, see "Line Style Panel" on page 434.

Fill Style Panel

The settings on the Fill Style panel affect the appearance of the selected object in floor plan view. For information about these settings, see "Fill Style Panel" on page 439.

Materials Panel

The settings on the Materials panel affect the appearance of the selected object in 3D views. See "Materials Panel" on page 364.

Importing Elevation Data

Elevation data can be added to a plan using the tools and techniques described in this chapter or it can be imported from a file.

Home Designer Suite can import elevation data saved in GPS Exchange (.gpx) and a variety of text file formats (.txt, .csv, .prn, .xyz, .auf and .nez). If your terrain data is not saved in one of these file formats, there are third party programs available that can convert to these formats.

Text Files

Elevation data can be saved in text files as x, y, and z coordinates where x and y define the location of a point on a Cartesian grid, and z defines the elevation for that point. Each data point must be on a separate line in the text file.

Importable text files can come from surveyors, other software programs, or you can create your own using a GPS system.

Elevation data saved in text files can be imported using the **Import Terrain Assistant**.

GPS Exchange Files

Elevation data in standard format .gpx files created using a GPS system can also be imported using the **Import GPS Data Assistant**. See “Import GPS Data Assistant” on page 313.

GPS data may include three types of points - Way, Track, and Route. Home Designer Suite can only import a .gpx file if it includes one or more Way Points, and cannot use Route Points at all. If a .gpx file does not include any Way Points, it will not be imported, and if it includes any Route Points, they will be ignored.

Home Designer Suite supports the import of data in standard .gpx files that adhere to the GPX 1.1 Schema. Files that do not follow this standard cannot be imported.


Import Terrain Assistant



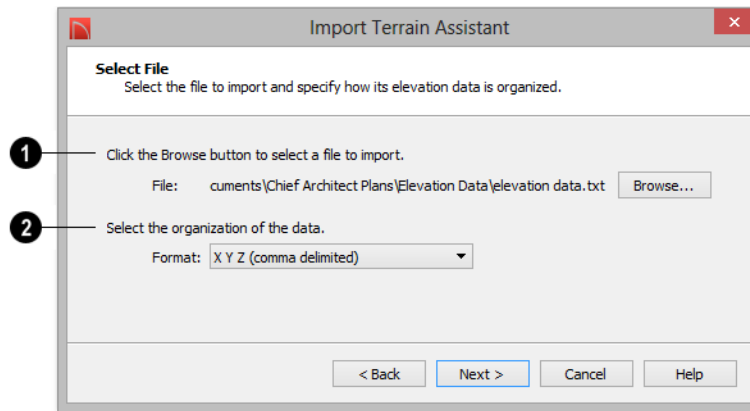
The **Import Terrain Assistant** allows you to import elevation data saved in text (.txt) file format into a plan.

Each data point in this format has information about its X-axis (East to West location), Y-axis (North to South location), and Z-axis (elevation). It might also have a brief

description. In order to import elevation data from a text file, you need to know how the data in the file is organized.

To launch the **Import Terrain Assistant**, select **File> Import> Terrain Data** . Click **Next**.

Select File



1 Select a file to import.

- Click the **Browse** button to locate a file on your computer. See “Importing Files” on page 47.
- If a file has been selected, its full path-name displays here for reference; if a file has not been selected, the directory of the last file imported displays.

2 Select the organization of the data.

Elevation information can be organized in one of six different ways, and can be separated by either a comma (comma delimited) or a space (space delimited).

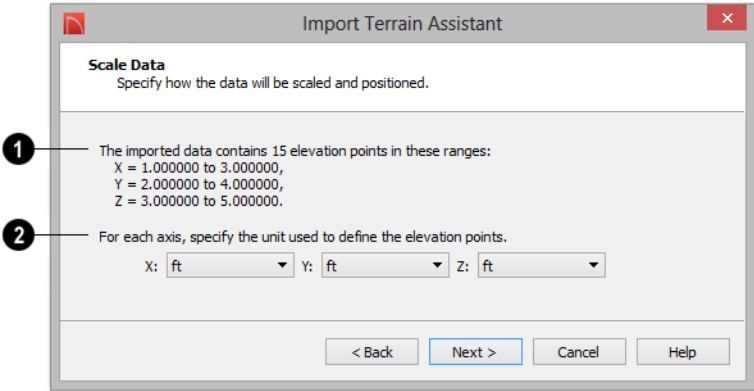
- **XYZ** - Information in this format begins with the X coordinate, followed by the Y coordinate and the Z coordinate.
- **#XYZ** - Information in this format begins with a number that belongs to each data

point followed by the X coordinate, the Y coordinate, and the Z coordinate.

- **#XYZ Description** - Information in this format begins with a number that belongs to each data point followed by the X coordinate, the Y coordinate, the Z coordinate, and a description.
- **YXZ** - Information in this format begins with the Y coordinate followed by the X coordinate and the Z coordinate.
- **#YXZ** - Information in this format begins with a number that belongs to each data point followed by the Y coordinate, the X coordinate, and the Z coordinate.
- **#YXZ Description** - Information in this format begins with a number that belongs to each data point followed by the Y coordinate, the X coordinate, the Z coordinate, and a description.

Click **Next** to continue.


Scale Data




1 The total number of data points to be imported and the ranges of their coordinates are described here.

2 Select the **Units** of measurement used for each axis.
Click **Next** to finish.

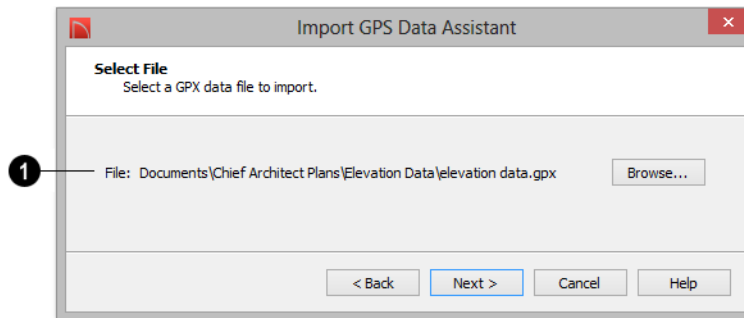
Import GPS Data Assistant

 The **Import GPS Data Assistant** allows you to import terrain data from the standard **.gpx** file format. See “GPS Exchange Files” on page 311.

Select **File> Import> GPS Data** to open the **Import GPS Data Assistant**, then click **Next** to continue.

 Due to the lack of accuracy in some GPS systems, exact distances using the Import GPS Data Assistant are not guaranteed.

Select File



1 Select a file to import.

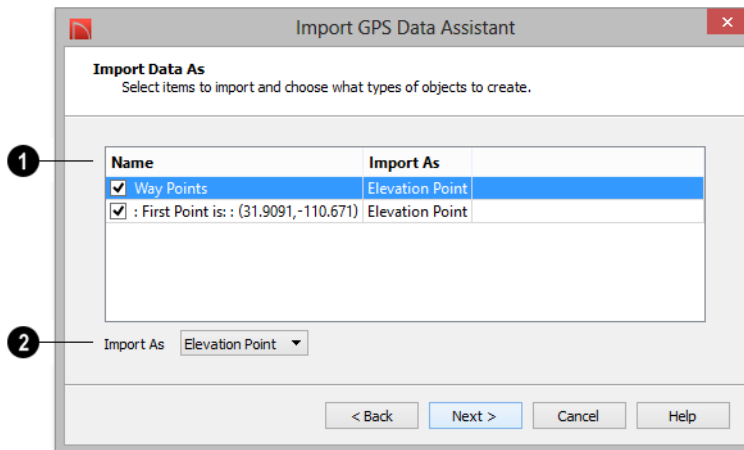
- Click the **Browse** button to locate a **.gpx** file on your computer. See “Importing Files” on page 47.
- If a file has been selected, its full path-name displays here for reference; if a file

has not been selected, the directory of the last file imported displays.

Note: Not all GPS programs use the standard .gpx file format; however, only files using the standard format can be imported.

Click **Next** to continue.

Import Data As



- ### 1
- Specify which items you want to import by checking the box to the left of the **Name**. Items with unchecked boxes are not imported.

- ### 2
- Specify what you would like the selected item to **Import As** from the drop-down list.

- Only Way Points have elevation data associated with them. To import this data, import them as “Elevation Points”.
- Select “Marker” to import either Way Points or Track Points as location markers. Markers have no elevation data associated with them.
- Select “Polyline” to create an open CAD polyline based on the position of Way Points or Track Points. The points themselves are not imported. Polylines have no elevation data associated with them.
- Select “Terrain Perimeter” to create a closed Terrain Perimeter polyline based on the position of either Way Points or Track Points. The points themselves are not imported. A Terrain Perimeter has no elevation data associated with it. See “Terrain Perimeter” on page 289.




Way Points are typically imported as “Elevation Data”, while Track Points are imported as “Markers”, “Polylines”, or “Terrain Perimeter”.

Click **Next** to continue.

Transform Coordinates

- 1 Lower Elevation Data by:**
 - Specify the amount that you would like to lower all imported elevation data.
- 2 Rotate North Counterclockwise:**
 - Specify an amount to rotate the terrain data counterclockwise, or to the left.
- 3 Map this point to the origin.**
 - Specify a point in the imported terrain data, defined by degrees **Latitude** and **Longitude**, that you would like to locate at the origin in the Home Designer Suite plan.

Click **Next** to finish.

If you do not see the imported terrain, select **Window> Fill Window** .

Roads, Driveways and Sidewalks

Roads and sidewalks are modeled in 3D like other terrain objects in Home Designer Suite. Because they have much in common with terrain objects and rely upon terrain data to be viewed in 3D, it is helpful to be familiar

with terrain modeling before using these tools. See “Terrain” on page 289.

Chapter Contents

- Road, Driveway and Sidewalk Tools
- Displaying Road Objects

Road, Driveway and Sidewalk Tools



Road objects can be drawn in floor plan view, camera views and overviews, but only when a Terrain Perimeter exists in the plan. See “Terrain Perimeter” on page 289.

Road objects created with the Road Tools have a consistent width that can be defined in their specification dialogs. See “Road Specification Dialog” on page 320, “Terrain Feature Specification Dialog” on page 305, and “Terrain Path Specification Dialog” on page 309.

Driveways and Parking Lots are actually Terrain Features. See “Terrain Feature Tools” on page 295. They are drawn as rectangles but can be edited to any shape. See “Editing Closed-Polyline Based Objects” on page 96.

Roads and sidewalks are flat along their widths, which makes it easy to create roads on sloping terrain. Driveways and Parking Lots follow the contours of the terrain rather than cut into them.

Once road objects have been placed, they can be edited individually or as a group. See “Editing Road Objects” on page 319.

Straight Road



To place a road without any curves, select **Terrain> Road> Straight Road** and click and drag to draw a line in floor plan view. The ends of multiple road sections can be connected together.

Roads are edited along their center line like CAD lines and polylines. See “Editing Line Based Objects” on page 88.

Spline Road



Use **Terrain> Road> Spline Road** to draw a curved road. Spline roads are drawn and edited like CAD splines. See “Splines” on page 433.

Straight Sidewalk



To create a sidewalk with no curves, select **Terrain> Road and Sidewalk> Straight Sidewalk**, then click and drag from end to end to draw a line. The ends of multiple sidewalk sections can be connected together.

Sidewalks are edited along their center line like line- and polyline- based objects. See “Editing Line Based Objects” on page 88.

Sidewalks can be edited in their specification dialog. See “Terrain Path Specification Dialog” on page 309.

Spline Sidewalk



Use the **Spline Sidewalk** tool to create a curved sidewalk. Select **Terrain> Sidewalk> Spline Sidewalk**. Spline roads are drawn and edited like CAD splines. See “Splines” on page 433.

Driveway Area



A **Driveway Area** is a terrain feature with a concrete material assignment. To create a driveway, select **Terrain> Road and Sidewalk> Driveway Area**, then click and drag from corner to corner to draw a rectangle. See “Draw Polyline” on page 432.

Height, thickness and material information can be specified in a driveway's specification dialog. See "Terrain Feature Specification Dialog" on page 305.

Driveways can be edited like other closed polylines. See "Editing Closed-Polyline Based Objects" on page 96.

To place a parking lot, select **Terrain> Road and Sidewalk> Parking Lot**, then click and drag from corner to corner to draw a rectangle. See "Draw Polyline" on page 432.

Height, thickness and material information can be specified in a parking lot's specification dialog. See "Terrain Feature Specification Dialog" on page 305.

Parking Lot



A **Parking Lot** is a terrain feature with an asphalt material assignment.

Displaying Road Objects




Roads and sidewalks display in floor plan and 3D views based on the settings in the **Display Options** dialog. See "Layers" on page 73.

roads and sidewalks will not display, either: even if their layers are turned on.

By default, terrain rebuilds automatically when road objects are added, removed or edited. If it does not, you can select **Terrain>**

In 3D Views

Road objects display in 3D views within the Terrain Perimeter. If the display of the Terrain Perimeter is turned off in 3D views,

Build Terrain . See "Terrain Perimeter" on page 289.



Editing Road Objects



Road objects can be selected in 2D and 3D views and edited using the edit handles, the edit toolbar and their specification dialogs.



"Editing Line Based Objects" on page 88.

Using the Mouse

The edit handles available for a selected road object depend on the type of object selected.

- **Straight Roads**  and **Straight Sidewalks**  are edited along their centerline like a line or open polyline. See

- **Spline Roads**  and **Spline Sidewalks**  are edited along their centerline like CAD splines. See "Splines" on page 433.

- **Driveway Areas**  and **Parking Lots**  are edited like other closed polyline based objects. See "Editing Closed-Polyline Based Objects" on page 96.

In the Specification Dialog



Road objects can be customized in their specification dialogs. See “Road Specification Dialog” on page 320, “Terrain Feature Specification Dialog” on page 305, and “Terrain Path Specification Dialog” on page 309.

Using the Edit Tools

A selected road object can be edited in a variety of ways using the buttons on the edit toolbar. See “The Edit Toolbar” on page 26.

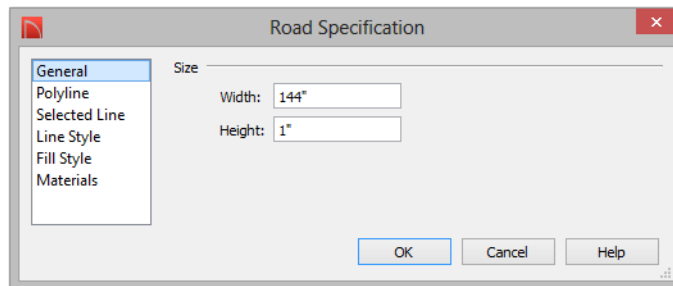
Road Specification Dialog



To open the **Road Specification** dialog, select a Straight Road or Spline Road and click the **Open Object** edit button.

Many of the settings in this dialog are similar to those in the **Terrain Path Specification** dialog.

General Panel



Size - Specify the **Width** and **Height** of the road relative to the terrain.

Polyline Panel

The Polyline panel lists the length of the road’s Perimeter, Area and Volume. For more information, see “Polyline Panel” on page 438.

Selected Line/Arc Panel

The Selected Line panel is available when a Straight Road is selected. For more information, see “Line Panel” on page 434.

The Selected Arc panel is available when the curved segment of a Straight Road is selected. See “Arc Panel” on page 436.

Line Style Panel

This panel is the same as the Line Style panel in many other specification dialogs. See “Line Style Panel” on page 434.

Fill Style Panel

The settings on the Fill Style panel affect the appearance of the selected object in floor plan view. For information about these settings, see “Fill Style Panel” on page 439.

Materials Panel

The settings on the Materials panel affect the appearance of the selected object in 3D

views. For information about these settings, see “Materials Panel” on page 364.

The material selected here is not calculated in the Materials List. See “Materials Lists” on page 491.

Plants and Sprinklers


The Plant Tools and sprinklers from the Library Browser allow you to create planting designs and irrigation systems in your terrain.

The Terrain Tools are discussed in their own chapter. See “Terrain” on page 289.


Chapter Contents


- Plant Tools
- Plant Chooser Dialog
- Hardiness Zones
- Plant Image Specification Dialog

Plant Tools

 Select **Terrain> Plant** to add plants to your landscaping plan. Plants can also be placed in a plan directly from the library. See “Placing Library Objects” on page 354.

Plant objects are actually images, which provide realism while avoiding high 3D surface count. Once created, plant images can be selected and edited much like other image objects. See “Editing Images” on page 452.


 Select **Terrain> Plant> Plant Chooser** to open the **Plant Chooser** dialog and find plants based on their characteristics and requirements. See “Plant Chooser Dialog” on page 324.

 Select **Terrain> Plant> Create Plant Image** to create a plant image. Once a plant image is created, it can be added to the library for future use. See “Creating Images” on page 450.


 Select **Terrain> Plant> Show Hardiness Zones** to access regional

climate zone maps. See “Hardiness Zones” on page 326.

Garden Beds

 Garden Beds are special **Terrain Features** with material and height attributes typical of planting beds. In addition, you can choose to distribute copies of a plant image within a Garden Bed. See “Garden Bed Tools” on page 296.


Plants Library Catalogs

 In the Library Browser, browse to Home Designer Core Catalogs> Plants to access a selection of plant images. Select the library object you want, then click in any view to place it in the plan. See “The Library” on page 341.

A selection of Bonus Catalogs of plants is also available for download. See “Home Designer Bonus Catalogs” on page 347.

In addition, you can add plants to the library. See “Adding Library Content” on page 350.

Plant Chooser Dialog

 Select **Terrain> Plant> Plant Chooser** to open the **Plant Chooser** dialog or click the **Plant Chooser** button at the bottom of the Library Browser window.

Use the **Plant Chooser** to search the library for plant images and symbols that meet your

search parameters. You can search using any or all of the options in this dialog.

The search parameters in the **Plant Chooser** dialog correspond to the settings on the Plant Information panel of the **Plant Image Specification** dialog. See “Plant Information Panel” on page 328.

The screenshot shows the 'Plant Chooser' dialog box. It has a title bar with a red close button. The main area is divided into several sections, each with a numbered callout:

- 1**: Name section with fields for Common Name (filled with 'cilantro'), Variety Name, Scientific Name, and Pronunciation.
- 2**: Type section with checkboxes for Annual, Perennial/Biennial, Tree, Shrub, Bulb, and Cactus/Succulent.
- 3**: Sub-Type section with checkboxes for Fruit, Vegetable, Herb, Nut, Turf, Ornamental Grass, Evergreen, Deciduous, Houseplant, Groundcover, Climber, and Aquatic.
- 4**: Needs section with icons for Sun, Water, and Soil pH, and a Hardiness Zone range from 1 to 15.
- 5**: Flowers and Foliage section with color and bloom time selection icons.
- 6**: Height section with dropdowns for 'From' (0"-12") and 'To' (24+), and input fields for 'Height at Maturity' (0") and 'Age at Maturity' (0 months).
- 7**: Special Characteristics section with checkboxes for Easy To Grow, Fast Growing, Self-Sowing, Container, Fragrant, Attracts Birds & Butterflies, Deer Resistant, Winter Interest, Cut Flowers, US Native/Wildflower, Fall Color, and Attractive Foliage.
- 8**: Search button.
- 9**: Number of Items: 3, with radio buttons for Common Name (selected) and Scientific Name.
- 10**: View Item button.

At the bottom right, there are Close and Help buttons.

- 1** Type the **Name** of a plant that you would like to find..
- Specify the plant's **Common Name**, **Scientific Name**, or its **Variety Name**.
- A **Pronunciation** field is also provided. In the Plant Image Specification dialog, it is populated with a phonetic pronunciation guide for the plant's scientific name.
- 2** Check one or more boxes to indicate selected plant **Type** to search for.
- 3** Check one or more boxes to specify the selected **Sub-Type** to search for.
- 4** Specify the plant **Needs** to search for. These include the **Sun**, **Water**, **Soil pH**, and **Hardiness Zone** range. See "Hardiness Zones" on page 326.
- 5** **Flowers and Foliage** -
 - Specify the **Flower Color** to search for. Multiple colors can be selected.

- Specify the **Leaf Color** to search for. Multiple colors can be selected
 - Specify the **Bloom Time** to search for, which is the season when the plant produces flowers.
- 6 Specify the plant **Height** at maturity to search for.
 - An average mature height range can be entered using the **From** and **To** drop-down lists.
 - A specific **Height at Maturity** to search for can be entered in the text field.
 - A specific **Starting Age**, in months, can be entered in the text field.
 - A specific **Age at Maturity**, in months, can be entered in the text field.
 - 7 Check one or more boxes to search for plants with **Special Characteristics**.

8 Click the **Search** button at the bottom of the dialog to search for plants that meet your search criteria. The search results display to the right.

9 Your search results display here.

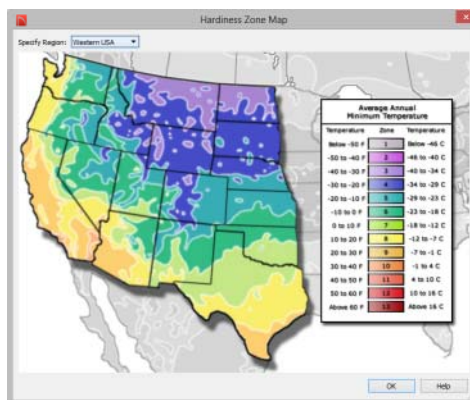
- The **Number of Items** that match your search criteria is stated.
- Specify whether you want the search results to use the **Common Name** or **Scientific Name**.
- Click on the name of a plant in the list to see its location in the Library Browser.

10 Click the **View Item** button to see more information about the selected plant in the **Plant Information** dialog. See “Plant Image Specification Dialog” on page 327.


Hardiness Zones




Select **Terrain > Plant > Show Hardiness Zones** to view a selection of regional **Hardiness Zone Maps**. Click the drop-down list at the top left to select various regions.



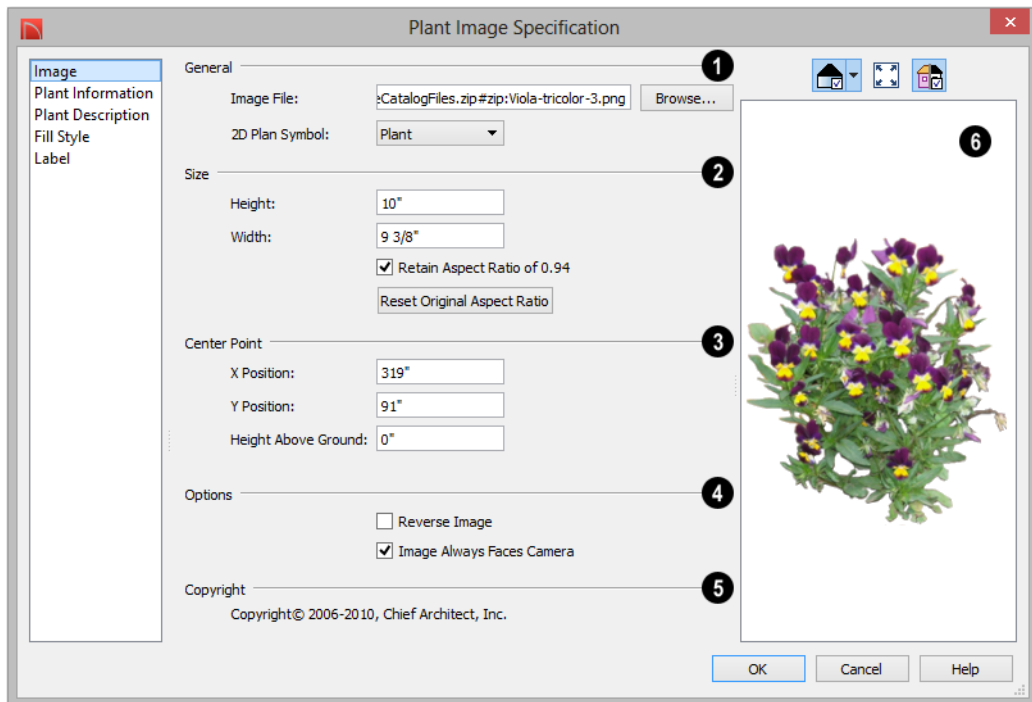
Plant Image Specification Dialog

 Select a plant in a floor plan or 3D view and click the **Open Object** edit button to open the **Plant Image Specification** dialog.

This dialog can also be accessed by selecting **Terrain > Plant > Create Plant Image** .

The Plant Information and Plant Description panels are also found in the **Plant Information** dialog, which can be accessed from the **Plant Chooser** dialog. See “Plant Chooser Dialog” on page 324.

Image Panel



1 General -

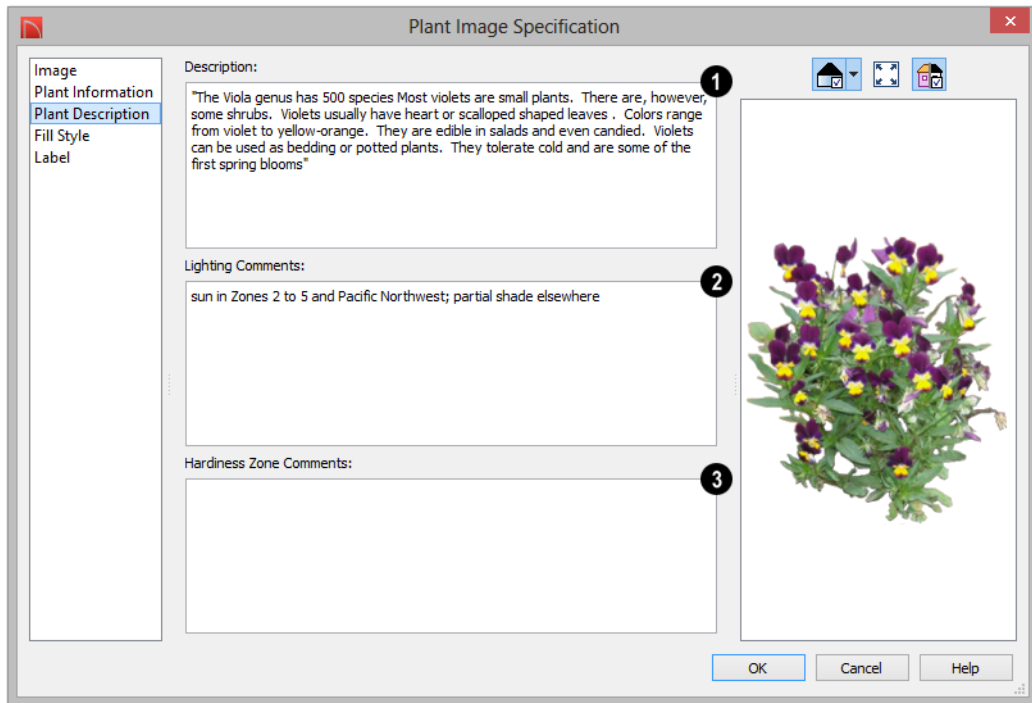
- The path and name of the selected plant's **Image File** displays here.
- Click **Browse** to specify the saved location on your computer of the image that represents the plant in 3D views.
- A number of **2D Plant Symbols** are available to represent the image in floor plan view. Select one from the drop-down list.

- 2 Specify the **Size** of the plant image, as seen in 3D views.
 - Enter a **Height** for the image.
 - Enter a **Width** for the image.
 - When **Retain Aspect Ratio of** is checked, if you change either the Height or Width, the other value changes to maintain this ratio. If this is unchecked and you resize the plant image, it may become distorted.
 - Click **Reset Original Aspect Ratio of** to reset the image's original aspect ratio and remove any distortion caused by resizing.
- 3 Specify the location of the selected plant image's **Center Point**.
 - Position the selected plant image in reference to the plan coordinates by specifying its **X Coordinate** and **Y Coordinate**.
- Specify the selected plant image's **Height Above Ground**.
- 4 **Options** -
 - Check **Reverse Image** to reflect the appearance of the image about an imaginary vertical line through its center.
 - Check **Do not rotate in 3D view** to prevent the plant image from rotating with the camera.
- 5 If the selected plant image has been copyrighted, its **Copyright Information** displays here.
- 6 A preview of the selected sprinkler symbol displays here. The Glass House Rendering Technique is not available for plant images. See "Dialog Preview Panes" on page 29.

Plant Information Panel

The settings on the Plant Information panel correspond to the search parameters in the **Plant Chooser**. See "Plant Chooser Dialog" on page 324.

Plant Description Panel



- 1 A detailed **Description** of the plant displays in this text field.
- 2 Information in the **Lighting Comments** fields describes the plant's light requirements.
- 3 **Hardiness Zone Comments** are given here. See "Hardiness Zones" on page 326.

information about the settings on this panel, see "Fill Style Panel" on page 439.

If the plant's 2D Plan Symbol does not form a closed shape, the settings on the Fill Style panel will have no effect on the appearance of the plant in floor plan view.

Fill Style Panel

The Fill Style panel controls the appearance of the selected plant's 2D Plant Symbol in floor plan view. By default, plant images' fill style is None (Transparent). For

Other Objects

Home Designer Suite has additional objects that can be used to customize your design.

Chapter Contents

- General Shapes
- Soffits
- Special Applications for Soffits
- Soffit Specification Dialog

General Shapes



Items in the Home Designer Core Catalogs> Shapes library catalog allow you to create a variety of custom objects using basic geometric shapes. These shapes can be used individually or

combined to create a wide variety of custom objects.

General Shape objects are placed and edited much like other library objects. See “Editing Box-Based Objects” on page 98.

Soffits



Soffits typically fill the space between the tops of wall cabinets and the ceiling, but they are very versatile and can be used to create almost any other object that can be modeled as a 3D box. Select **Build> Cabinet> Soffit** to activate this tool.

Soffit Defaults

The default settings for soffits are set in the **Soffit Defaults** dialog. The settings in this dialog are similar to those in the **Soffit Specification** dialog. See “Soffit Specification Dialog” on page 334.

For best results when placing soffits above wall cabinets:


- The default soffit should be the same width as and 1" (20mm) deeper than the default wall cabinet. See "Cabinet Defaults" on page 272.
- The default soffit **Floor to Bottom** value should equal the sum of the default wall cabinet's Floor to Bottom value plus its Height. See "General Panel" on page 334.
- The default soffit **Height** should be equal to or greater than the space between the ceiling and the top of the wall cabinets.

If the sum of the default soffit's Floor to Bottom value and Height is larger than the ceiling height of the room in which a soffit is placed, the Floor to Bottom value will be retained and its Height will be adjusted so that it fits under the ceiling.

The maximum soffit width is 250 feet (48m), and the minimum width is 1/16" (1 mm).

Once a soffit is placed in a plan, you can change its size and position to meet a variety of needs.

Placing Soffits

Soffits can be created in both 2D and 3D views by simply clicking with the **Soffit**  tool active. See "Click-to-Create" on page 80.

They can be assigned materials that are calculated in the Materials List, but by default they use the material assigned to the default wall. See "Wall Defaults" on page 116.

When positioned against a wall in a room, soffits will display any moldings present in that room that are at the same height as the soffit. See "Moldings Panel" on page 158.

To create a corner soffit, click as close to an inside wall corner as possible. A corner soffit retains its shape when it is moved, edited, or copied.

When a soffit is created, it is placed on the "Cabinets, Soffits" layer. See "Displaying Objects" on page 74.

Special Applications for Soffits

Nearly any object with straight, flat sides can be represented by one or more Soffits. They can be resized to as small as 1/16" (1mm) per side, or as large as 250 feet (48m).

Soffits can have materials applied to them to represent simple mirrors, posts, chimneys and so on. Following are some additional examples.

Coffered Ceilings

Soffits can be used to create coffered ceilings. When placed against a wall, a soffit will display any moldings assigned to the room it is in that are at its height.



Accent Tiles

A material such as ceramic tile can be assigned to one or more soffits applied to the walls above tubs or in showers.



Masonry Veneer

You can use a soffit to create a brick or stone veneer over part of a wall. Specify a soffit

depth equal to the masonry material to be used.



Soffits automatically stop at the floor platform when moved downward or at the ceiling platform when moved upward - even when the soffit is not located in a room. To more or resize a soffit through a floor or ceiling platform, select it and hold the Ctrl key down while dragging its edit handles. See “Unrestricted Movement” on page 106.

Calculating Materials on Soffits


The number of bricks, tiles, shingles, shakes or other materials applied to a soffit is calculated using the following rules:

- If the soffit depth is less than the larger of 4 inches (10 mm) or 1 ½ times the material thickness, then only the front area of the soffit is used. Thus if a soffit is 48"x48"x4" thick, and the Dark Red brick material is used (3"x 8" with 3/8" mortar joint) the front of the soffit is 48"x48"=2304 square inches. Including the mortar joint, each brick requires 3 3/8" x 8 3/8" = 28.26 square inches. 2304 sq. in. divided by 28.26 sq. in. per brick gives 81.5 bricks.

- If the soffit depth is greater than both 4 inches (10 mm) and 1 ½ times the material thickness, then the surface areas of the soffit back, sides and top are used in addition to the front, if these surfaces are not attached to a wall or other soffit. However, only those portions of the sides, top and bottom remaining after subtracting twice the material thickness are used. So, for Dark Red brick, which has a depth of 4", the sides, top and bottom surface areas cannot contribute to the brick count unless the soffit depth is greater than 8 inches.
- If surface materials such as brick are applied to a large soffit, the soffit center is assumed to be hollow, with only a single layer of the material applied to each applicable face.
- For shingles and shakes, the overlap amount should be subtracted from the height, as opposed to brick or tile, where the joint width is added to the size.
- For materials in the area category, the soffit area calculation above is used, with the material thickness treated as zero.
- For materials in the volume, concrete or earth categories, the true volume of the soffit is used.

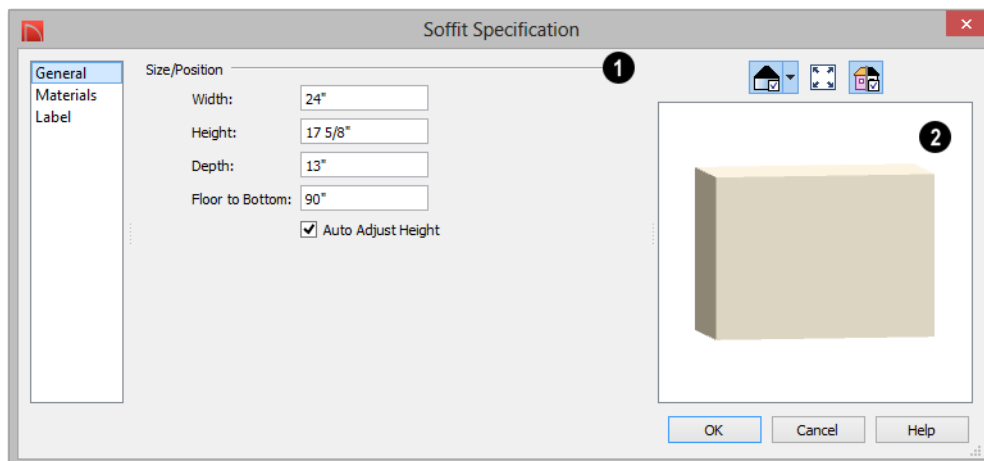
Soffit Specification Dialog



To open the **Soffit Specification** dialog, select the soffit and click the **Open Object** edit button or double-click on a soffit using the **Soffit**  tool.

The settings in this dialog are similar to those in the **Soffit Defaults** dialog, but affect only the selected object(s).

General Panel



- 1 Define the **Size** and **Position** of the selected soffit relative to the floor or terrain.
 - Specify the **Width** of the soffit.
 - Define the vertical **Height** of the soffit.
 - **Depth** - Define the distance between the front and the back of the soffit. When selected in floor plan view, the front of a soffit has a “V,” and the back of the soffit has a triangular rotation handle.
 - If the selected soffit is a corner soffit, the **Width** controls its left side width, and **Depth** controls its right side width.
 - **Floor to Bottom** - Specify the distance from the bottom of the soffit to the floor. This is sometimes more easily done by positioning the soffit in a 3D view.
 - When the selected soffit is outside a room and **Auto Adjust Height** is checked, its Floor to Bottom height is measured relative to the terrain height. When this is unchecked, the Floor to Bottom height is measured from the default floor height of

Floor 1. See “Terrain Height vs Floor Height” on page 290 of the Reference Manual.

- 2 A preview of the soffit displays on the right side of the dialog box. See “Dialog Preview Panes” on page 29.

Materials Panel

For information about the settings on this panel, see “Materials Panel” on page 364.

Label Panel

Soffit labels display in floor plan view when the “Cabinets, Labels” layer is turned on and use the Text Style assigned to that layer. The Automatic Label for Soffits is blank, but you can specify a custom label.

For more information about the settings on this panel, see “Label Panel” on page 429.

Architectural Blocks

A selection of pre-arranged rooms is available in the Library Browser at Home Designer Suite Content > Interiors > Pre-Arranged Rooms. These pre-arranged rooms are a collection of fixtures, furnishings and accessories that are grouped together so that they can be placed and moved as a single object.

3D objects that are grouped together like this are referred to as Architectural Blocks. Although blocked together, these objects retain many of their own attributes, such as materials.

Architectural blocks can also be exploded so that the individual sub-objects become independent of one another.

Chapter Contents

- Displaying Architectural Blocks
- Editing Architectural Blocks
- Architectural Blocks and Sub-Objects

Displaying Architectural Blocks

Architectural blocks are placed on the “Architectural Blocks” layer and can be displayed in all views. The display of architectural blocks, including their

bounding box, is controlled in the **Display Options** dialog. See “Displaying Objects” on page 74.

Editing Architectural Blocks

Architectural blocks can be selected and edited in 2D and 3D views. See “Selecting Objects” on page 86.

Once selected, an architectural block can be edited using its edit handles and edit toolbar buttons.

Using the Edit Handles

A selected architectural block displays a Move handle and a Rotate handle.

Architectural blocks cannot be resized, but the individual objects in the block can be.

Using the Edit Tools

A selected architectural block or blocks can be edited in a variety of ways using the buttons on the edit toolbar. See “The Edit Toolbar” on page 26.

Editing Sub-Objects

The individual objects included in an architectural block can also be selected and edited. See “To select a sub-object” on page 339.

Explode Architectural Block



You can break an architectural block to make its objects independent.

Select the architectural block and click the **Explode Architectural Block** edit button.

Note: If you open a plan created in another version of Home Designer and an architectural block includes an object that you cannot create in your version of the software, you cannot unblock it or edit its components.

Once exploded, an architectural block cannot be made into a single object again.



Architectural Blocks and Sub-Objects

An architectural block is composed of a group of sub-objects that have been blocked together. For example, a kitchen island architectural block may consist of cabinets, appliances, and other accessories.



Each of the sub-objects in an architectural block may contain additional parts called components. The cabinets in a kitchen island, for example, may contain handles, hinges, and drawer glide.

Sub-Objects

Certain attributes of an architectural block can be edited at the sub-object level. A sub-object can be edited by accessing its specification dialog in either of two ways:

- Explode the architectural block, select the sub-object, and click the **Open Object**  edit button.
- Select the sub-object while it is part of the architectural block and click the **Open Object**  edit button. Some attributes may not be editable while the object is part of a block. See “Editing Architectural Blocks” on page 338.

To select a sub-object

1. Click the **Select Objects**  button, then click on the sub-object that you would like to edit.
2. With the architectural block selected, click the **Select Next Object**  edit button or press the Tab key.

The selection switches to the individual object and it can be edited using its edit handles, edit toolbar and specification dialog.

The options for editing a sub-object may be more restricted than if the object were independent. If more extensive editing is required, the architectural block must be exploded.

The Library

Home Designer Suite's library offers thousands of symbols, materials, and images that can enhance any plan.


New library catalogs and enhancements are made available by Chief Architect on a continuing basis and are available for download for the current program version.

You can also customize items from the library or import new items from outside the program and then save them in the library for future use.



Chapter Contents

- The Library Browser
- Searching the Library
- Library Content
- Downloading Library Content
- Importing Library Catalogs
- Adding Library Content
- Organizing the Library
- Exporting Library Catalogs
- Placing Library Objects
- Select Library Object Dialog
- Displaying Library Objects
- Editing Library Objects
- Symbol Object Specification Dialogs

The Library Browser

 The Home Designer Suite Library Browser allows you to manage the contents of the library as well as add library content to your drawings.

To open the Library Browser:


- Select **View > Library Browser** .
- Click the **Library Browser** button .
- Press **Ctrl + L** on your keyboard.


By default, the Library Browser is docked to the right side of the program window, but can be undocked or docked to another side. See “Docking the Library Browser” on page 345.

The Library Browser has four sections:

- The search options at the top.
- The Directory and Search Results Pane.
- The Selection Pane.
- The Preview Pane.

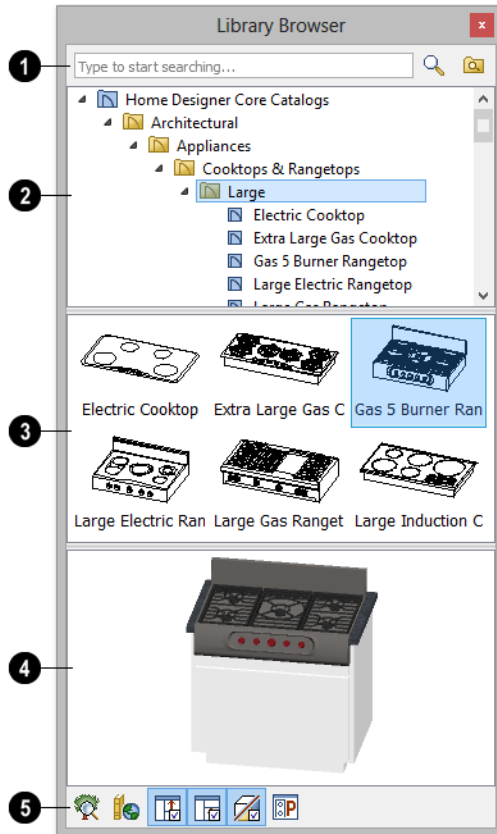
To adjust the height or width of a section, place the pointer over the split bar you want to move. When the double-headed arrow \leftrightarrow displays, click and drag.

 You can control the configuration of the Library Browser panes in the Preferences dialog. See “Library Browser Panel” on page 61.

You can work on your drawing with the Library Browser open. To close the Browser, click the Close  button or double-click on an object in the Selection Pane.

The library directory is presented in a tree list with five categories: Home Designer Core




Catalogs, Home Designer Bonus Catalogs, Manufacturer Catalogs, User Catalog and Trash. See “Library Content” on page 346.



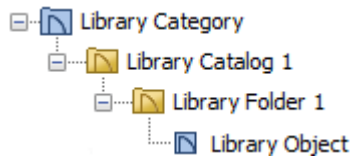
1 Search the library using keywords and optional search filters. See “Searching the Library” on page 345.

- Begin typing in the text field to search for library items. As you type, search results will display in the Directory Pane.
- Right-click on an item in the Search Results list and select **Show in Browser**

to view the item's location in the Directory list.



- Click the **Browse**  button to stop searching and restore the Directory list.
- Click the **Search**  button to display the search results for your search entry.
- Click the **Search Filtering Options**  button to customize your search parameters.

2 The library **Directory** and **Search Results** display here. The basic structure of the directory tree is:



Library items are always placed in alphabetical order within their hierarchy.

The Library Browser includes a Trash bin, where deleted items are moved until you choose to Empty Trash. See “Deleting Library Items” on page 353.


Navigate the Directory Pane using the mouse. Click the gray Expand arrow  beside a catalog or folder to display its contents. Once expanded, you can click the black Collapse arrow  to close it again. You can also browse the list using the arrow keys on your keyboard.

Click on an item to select it. Preview images display in the Selection and Preview Panes and basic information about it also displays in the program's Status Bar. See “The Status Bar” on page 30.


3 The **Selection Pane** shows a thumbnail image of the item selected in the Directory Pane.

When an item is selected in the Directory Pane, a basic line-based representation of the item displays in the Selection Pane.

- If the selected item is a single object, a preview of that object displays in the Preview Pane. You can move your cursor into the drawing area to place the item. See “Placing Library Objects” on page 354.
- If the selected item is a folder, a thumbnail image displays, representing each item inside. Move your pointer over an item in this pane to see a Tool Tip with the item's name. Click on a folder in the Selection Pane to display its contents here and make it the item selected in the Directory Pane.
- Some folders may have too many items to display useful thumbnails for each; when this is the case, they do not display.

Click the **Show/Hide Selection Pane**  button to toggle the Selection Pane on and off.

4 When an individual object is selected in either the Directory or Selection Pane, an image of it displays in the **Preview Pane**.

You can click the **Toggle Display**  button at the bottom of the browser window to switch between preview images in high and low detail.

If the selected object is a 3D symbol, you can rotate and zoom in or out on the Preview using the mouse.

If you have rotated a view in the Preview Pane, you can restore the default angle either by clicking in the Selection Pane or by right-clicking on the Preview Pane and selecting **Reset Preview**.

Click the **Show/Hide Preview Pane**  button to toggle the Preview Pane on and off.

5 The toolbar at the bottom of the browser aids in searching, displaying panes, and managing library content.



Click the **Plant Chooser** button to open the **Plant Chooser** dialog. See “Plant Chooser Dialog” on page 324.



Click the **Get Additional Online Content** button to launch your default web browser to the Home Designer Suite web site, where additional library content is available for download.



Click the **Show/Hide Selection Pane** button to toggle the Selection Pane on and off.



Click the **Show/Hide Preview Pane** button to toggle the Preview Pane on and off.



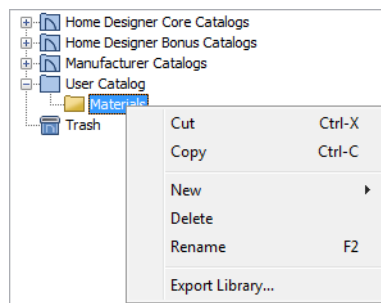
Click the **Toggle Display** button to switch between high and low detail images of a selected library object in the Preview Pane.



Click the **Preferences** button at the bottom of the Library Browser to open the **Preferences** dialog, where display properties for the Library Browser can be controlled. See “Library Browser Panel” on page 61.

Using the Contextual Menus

A number of important library functions can be accessed using the contextual menus. Right-click on an item in the Library Browser to open a contextual menu displaying options related to that item. See Contextual Menus.



The options in the contextual menu vary depending on the item selected, but may include:

- Cut/Copy/Paste
- Paste Shortcut
- Rename
- Delete
- Export Library
- Open
- Reset Preview
- Expand All/Collapse All
- Show in Browser

Keyboard Commands

The Library Browser can be navigated using the arrow keys on your keyboard.

- The right and left arrow keys expand and collapse folders.

- The up and down keys change which library object is currently selected.
- Select an item and press F2 to rename it.
- Select an item and press the Delete key to delete it.

Expand/Collapse All

When a library category or folder is selected in the Directory Pane, **Expand All** and **Collapse All** are available in the contextual menu, allowing you to expand or contract its contents in the tree view.

Docking the Library Browser

Initially, the Library Browser side window is docked to the right side of the main Home Designer Suite program window. To undock it, click and drag its title bar towards the center of the program window. Once undocked, it can be moved and redocked in

the same manner. See “Side Windows” on page 25.



When moved to the top, bottom, or side of the program window, it automatically docks in a vertical or horizontal orientation, depending on its location.

- Holding down the **Ctrl** key while dragging the Library Browser from docking.

To return the Library Browser to its original position and size, click the **Restore Position/Size** button in the **Preferences** dialog. See “Reset Options Panel” on page 66.

Closing the Library Browser


The Library Browser can be closed in either of two ways:

- Click the **Close**  button at the top right corner of the browser window.
- Select **View > Library Browser** .

Searching the Library




The Library Browser filtering options let you focus your searches to meet parameters that you define.

To search the Library Browser

1. Select **View > Library Browser**  and click in the Search field at the top of the Library Browser.
2. Begin typing a keyword to search for.
3. As you type, the search results will populate in the Directory Pane below.
4. If you move your mouse pointer over the Search field, a Tool Tip will state the number of results of your search.
5. Right-click on an item in the Search Results list and select **Show in Browser** to view the item’s location in the Directory list.

Substrings are not included. For example, searching for “windows” will not produce “window” as a search result. On the other hand, searching for “window” will produce “windows” as a search result.

To search using custom filters

1. Click the **Turn on search filtering options**  button.
 - Check **Match Keyword** to match the entered search keyword with an object's search attributes.
 - Check **Match Entire Word** to match the entire keyword or words with the complete name of the object.
 - Check **Match Folders** to include library folders in your search.
2. Check **Filter by** to enable additional filtering options, which display below.
3. Select a filtering option from the drop-down list on the left, then choose what to include in the filter from the drop-down list on the right:
 - Select **Type**, then select a category of library item to include in your search.
 - Select **Style**, then choose a design style to restrict the search results to objects of that style.
 - Select **Manufacturer**, then choose the name of a manufacturer to include in your search. Manufacturer catalogs that were imported during the current program session will not be listed until you exit out of and restart Home Designer Suite.
4. Multiple filters can be created and used at the same time:
 - Click the **Add**  button to the right of a filter to make copy of that filter.
 - Specify a new **Type**, **Style**, and/or **Manufacturer** for the new filter.
 - Click the **Delete**  button to the right of a filter to remove that filter.

Note: Your custom search settings are not retained when you end the current program session.

Library Content

The Home Designer Suite library has five categories: Home Designer Core Catalogs, Home Designer Bonus Catalogs, Manufacturer Catalogs, User Catalog and Trash. See Getting Started Guide, “Deleting Library Items” on page 353.

Home Designer Core Catalogs


The Home Designer Core Catalogs category contains a wide selection of 3D symbols, images, and materials. When you install the

program from DVD, this library content will also be installed; if you download the software, you will be able to download the Core Catalogs separately, after the program is installed.

When you launch the program for the first time, it will ask if you want to download the Core Catalogs. Click Yes to begin the download. If you click No, you can download at any time by selecting **Library> Install Core Content** from the menu.

Home Designer Bonus Catalogs


Chief Architect regularly posts new library catalogs available for download. Select **Library> Get Additional Content**

Online  from the menu to access the bonus catalogs and content.

Manufacturer Catalogs

A variety of name brand library catalogs are available for download on the Home Designer web site with content ranging from materials to fixtures.

Select **Library> Get Additional Content**

Online  to access these Manufacturer Catalogs.

The User Catalog

The User Catalog is the location for items that you add to the library either from a drawing or by importing. See “Adding Library Content” on page 350.

You can create and organize custom library folders and imported items such as symbols, images, backdrops, and materials. See “Organizing the Library” on page 351.

Updating Library Catalogs

The Home Designer Core Catalogs, Bonus Catalogs, and Manufacturer Catalogs are updated periodically to include new and improved content. You can update your installed catalogs to include the latest content by selecting **Library> Update Library Catalogs** at any time.

The program will gather information about the content in each of these three categories,

and then download and replace any content that is not up to date, and you may see a progress indicator at the bottom of the Library Browser while it is doing so. See “Download Progress” on page 348.


Backing up Library Content

The Home Designer Suite User Catalog File, User_Library.calib, is located in the Home Designer Suite 2015 Data folder. See “Home Designer Suite Data” on page 39.

The best way to back up your custom library content is to export the items in your User Catalog, as this will ensure that the textures used by custom materials or imported symbols are not lost. See “Backing Up Your Files” on page 43.

Exported libraries use the **.calibz** file format: a zipped file type that can include textures and images along with other library data.

To back up your custom library content

1. Launch Home Designer Suite and select **View> Library Browser**  from the menu.
2. Right-click on a folder or item in the User Catalog.
3. Select **Export Library** from the contextual menu.
4. The **Export Library Data** dialog is a typical Save dialog. See “Exporting Files” on page 43.
 - Notice that the file type in the Save as type field is “Library File with Textures/Images (*.calibz)”.

Downloading Library Content

The Home Designer Core Catalogs, Home Designer Bonus Catalogs, Manufacturer Catalogs are all available for internet download.


Core Catalogs

When you launch Home Designer Suite for the first time, you will be asked if you want to download the Core Catalogs. Click Yes to begin the download.

If you click No, you can download at any time by selecting **Library> Install Core Content** from the menu.

Bonus and Manufacturer Catalogs

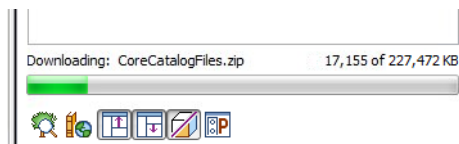
Bonus and Manufacturer Catalogs can be downloaded from our web site, www.homedesignersoftware.com. Select **Library> Get Additional Content**

Online  to launch your default internet browser to our Content Resources page.

Download Progress

When library content is downloading, a green progress bar will display at the bottom of the Library Browser. If you choose to download the Core Catalogs while the library is not open, the Browser will open so the progress indicator can display.

Click on the progress bar to display the name of the current file being downloaded, the total amount of data to be downloaded in KB, and the amount downloaded so far.



Pausing and Resuming

Library downloads can only take place while Home Designer Suite is running. If you close the program while a download is in progress, a dialog will confirm whether you wish to stop the download.

- Click **Stop Download and Close Program** to stop the download and close the program.
- Click **Cancel** to leave the program open and continue downloading.

Most catalogs are composed of a single file. If you stop the download midway, none of the downloaded data will be retained.

The Core Catalogs, on the other hand, contain a large volume of data saved in multiple files. If you close the program and stop the Core Catalogs download midway, only data associated with the file currently being downloaded will be lost. You can resume the download beginning with that file at a later time by selecting **Library> Install Core Content**.

Download Errors

If any problems occur during the library download process, a dialog box will notify you at the end of the download. Click **Retry Download** to repeat the download and

correct any errors or click **Cancel** to discard the downloaded catalog.

Importing Library Catalogs

Home Designer Suite library files have two different file extensions: **.calib** and **.calibz**. Both files can include any combination of Home Designer Suite library items; in addition, **.calibz** files are able to save data associated with textures and images. Both file types can be imported into the Home Designer Suite library.

There are several ways to import a **.calib** or **.calibz** file into the program library:

- Double-click on the file in an operating system window.
- Drag the file from an operating system window and drop it into the Home Designer Suite program window.
- Select **Library > Import Library** from the program menu.

To import library files into the library

1. Select **Library > Import Library** to display the **Import Library Data** dialog.
2. Browse to the **.calib** or **.calibz** file that you want to import and select the files so that its name displays in the **File Name** field.
3. Click the **Open** button.
4. A progress bar will display, telling you the progress of each library data file as it is imported. Once imported, each file will be located in the User Catalog.

When a **.calib** or **.calibz** file is imported into the program, its contents are automatically

placed in the User Catalog. Any images or textures saved in a **.calibz** file will be copied into the Home Designer Suite 2015 Data\Images and Textures folders for backup purposes. The program will only reference these copies if it cannot locate the files in their original locations. See “Home Designer Suite Data” on page 39.

Legacy Library Conversion

You can import **.calib** and **.calibz** files created in Home Designer versions 2012, 10, or 9 for use in version 2015 at any time. See “Exporting Library Catalogs” on page 353.

Note: Library content exported from Home Designer Suite 2012 will not include catalog names. Any subscribed content from version 10 that has not been downloaded will not be included, either.

In addition, legacy **.alb** files created in Home Designer versions 8.0 and prior can be converted for use in version 2015.

To convert legacy library files

1. Select **Library > Convert Legacy (.alb) Library Files**.
2. In the **Select a Legacy Library File Folder** dialog, select an **.alb** file that you want to bring in to Home Designer Suite 2015.
3. The selected file’s name will display in the **File name:** field.


4. Click the **Open** button to import the prior version third party **.alb** file into the User Catalog.
5. Organize the imported content to suit your needs. See “Organizing the Library” on page 351.

Adding Library Content

In addition to downloading Home Designer Suite Content and importing entire catalogs into the library, you can also add a variety of individual objects to the library.

Add to Library

Nearly any object imported into a plan or placed from the Library Browser can be added to the User Catalog in the library.

- Check **Add to Library** in the **Import 3D Symbol** dialog. See “Importing 3D Symbols” on page 473.
- Select an object in your plan and click the **Add to Library**  edit button.

In addition, some Home Designer Suite objects that are not symbols, such as cabinets, terrain objects, architectural blocks, doorways, and windows can be added to the library. See “Native Objects vs Symbols” on page 358.

An object created using a drawing tool in Home Designer Suite will automatically be added to the User Catalog using the name of that tool, whereas a symbol imported will automatically use the Symbol Name. These objects can be renamed after adding them to the Library, either before or after moving them to their appropriate user created folder in the User Catalog. See “Renaming Library Items” on page 352.

Adding Materials and Images


New materials, images, and plant images can be created in the User Catalog. Right-click on the User Catalog or a folder within it, select **New>** from the contextual menu, then select the type of item you wish to create from the submenu.

Home Designer Suite can use materials and images in a variety of file formats and provides several means of adding new material and image files to the library. For more information, see “Creating Materials” on page 366 and “To create an image in the Library Browser” on page 451.

Adding New Backdrops

A backdrop is an image, typically of an exterior view, that displays in the background of 3D views to help place the model into a realistic setting and add a sense of perspective. See “3D Backdrops” on page 460.

A new backdrop image can be created using a variety of graphic file formats and can be imported into Home Designer Suite in several ways:


- Select **File> Import> Backdrop**  to open the **Import Backdrop File** dialog, which is similar to the **Import Picture File** dialog. See “Importing Pictures” on page 454.


- Right-click on the User Catalog and select **New> Backdrop** from the contextual menu.
- Copy and paste an image into Home Designer Suite. See “Copying and Pasting Objects” on page 81.

Creating a Customized Library Item

You can customize an existing library object and save your changes for future use by first copying the item into an unlocked library.

To customize a library object

1. Right-click on a library item and select **Copy**  from the contextual menu.

2. Browse to the User Catalog or a folder within it and right-click on it.
3. Select **Paste** from the contextual menu to make a copy of the library item in this new location.
4. Right-click on the copied item and select **Open**  from the menu.
5. The item’s specification dialog opens, and you can make any changes that you wish to the item.
6. Make any needed changes to the item, then click OK. Your changes will be saved with this item for use in any plan.

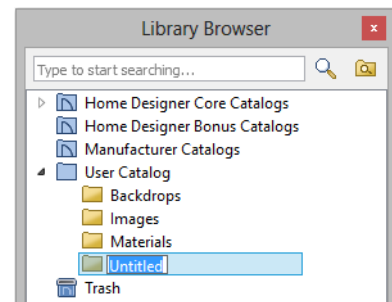
Organizing the Library

Library folders and objects can be copied, pasted, moved, and deleted: allowing you to organize your User Catalog to best suit your work style and needs.

Adding New Folders

New folders can be added to the User Catalog or to any folder located within it. To add a new folder, right-click on User Catalog or one of its sub-folders and select **New> Folder** from the contextual menu.

The new folder is created inside the library item you right-clicked on and is initially named “Untitled”. Type a short, descriptive name and press Enter.



Selecting Library Items

To select a library object, folder, or category, simply click on it.

When an item is selected, preview images display in the Selection and Preview Panes and basic information about it also displays in the program’s Status Bar. See “The Status Bar” on page 30.

A selected library item can be modified in a number of ways to help meet your organizational needs.

Renaming Library Items

Only folders and objects in the User Catalog can be renamed. There are several ways to do this from the tree list:

- Right-click on the item, select **Rename** from the contextual menu, and type a new name.
- Click once on the item, press F2 on your keyboard and type a new name.
- Click once on the item, pause for a moment, then click a second time and type a new name.

Library names are case-sensitive and can contain up to 63 characters. While you can have more than one library item that uses the same name, it is best to use short, descriptive and unique names.

Moving Library Items

Folders and objects in the User Catalog can be moved to new locations within the User Catalog. Folders and library objects are always organized alphabetically within each hierarchy.

To move an item to a different location, select it in the tree list, then click and drag it to the new location in the list. Directories and folders are able to accept new content highlighted as your mouse pointer moves over them. Release the mouse button to relocate the selected library item in the highlighted location.

You can also cut a library item from one location and paste it in another. When an

item is cut, it is removed from its current location and saved to the Windows Clipboard. To cut an item:

- Right-click on it and select **Cut** from the contextual menu.
- Click on the library item and press Ctrl + X on your keyboard.

To **Paste** the item, click on a library catalog or folder in the Library Browser tree view and either:

- Right-click on the new location and select **Paste** from the contextual menu.
- Press Ctrl + V on your keyboard.

Copying Library Items

All library folders and library objects can be copied and pasted to new locations in the User Catalog.

There are two ways to copy a library item to the Windows Clipboard:

- Right-click on it and select **Copy** from the contextual menu.
- Click on the library item and press Ctrl + C on your keyboard.

To **Paste** the item, click on a library catalog or folder in the Library Browser tree view and either:


- Right-click on the new location and select **Paste** from the contextual menu.
- Press Ctrl + V on your keyboard.

When a library item is copied and pasted, the new item that results is independent of the original item. If you make changes to it, the original item is unaffected. Similarly, changes to the original item do not affect the copy.

Library Shortcuts

In addition to copying and pasting to create new, independent library items, you can copy and paste to create Library Shortcuts. Library Shortcuts are not independent items - they are linked to the original item and are affected if changes are made to the original.

Library Shortcuts are advantageous because you can place a given library item in multiple locations to suit your organizational style without increasing the size of the library database and without having to maintain multiple copies of the same item.

To create a Library Shortcut, copy a library item to the Windows Clipboard. Then, right-click on the location where you would like to create a copy and select **Paste Shortcut** from the contextual menu. Library Shortcuts use the same name as their source item but use the Library Shortcut  icon.

To locate a Library Shortcut's source item, right-click on it in the tree list and select **Locate Shortcut Source**

If you move or delete an item from the library, any shortcuts to it will not be updated or removed. If you try to use a "hanging" shortcut, a message about its status will display in the library preview panes.

Deleting Library Items

The five installed library categories: Home Designer Core Catalogs, Home Designer


Bonus Catalogs, Manufacturer Catalogs, User Catalog, and Trash cannot be deleted.


Catalog level folders in all categories can be deleted; however, individual subfolders and objects can only be deleted out of the User Catalog.

Items in the library that are eligible for deletion can be deleted in either of two ways:


- Right-click on it and choose **Delete** from the contextual menu.
- Select it and press the **Delete** key on your keyboard.

When items from the User Catalog are deleted, they are moved to the Library

Browser Trash . Items in the Trash can be retrieved by clicking and dragging them into any location in the User Catalog.

To empty the Trash , right-click on it and select **Empty Trash** from the contextual menu.

Depending on how much content is in the Trash, emptying it can be time consuming. You can click the **Cancel** button to end the process if you wish.

 The Empty Trash command is both immediate and permanent. It cannot be undone, so use care when using it. You should back up all your library files regularly. See "Backing up Library Content" on page 347.

Exporting Library Catalogs

Exporting library files allows you to:

- Back up your custom library content.
- Transfer library content between computers.

Exporting is often preferable to simply copying library files because it allows you to include images and textures in the exported library.

To export content from the library

1. Locate an object, folder, or catalog that you want to export, right click on it, and select **Export Library**.
2. In the **Export Library Data** dialog.
 - Choose the appropriate **Save in:** location for your exported library file.

- Type a short, descriptive name for your library file in the **File Name** field.
- Click the **Save as type:** drop down list and select whether or not you want the library to include Textures/Images.



If any of the items being exported are images or use textures, be sure to select the .calibz file type.

- Click **Save**.
3. Your exported library file can now be copied to a network location or storage device in an operating system window.

Placing Library Objects

Library objects are subject to placement restrictions based upon typical real-life placement. Most library objects require sufficient free space at the location where they are placed, for example, and some library objects have additional requirements.

Library windows and doors, for example, must be placed in a wall just like standard windows and doors, and some fixtures are designed to be placed in cabinets.

Library symbols have placement restrictions that are determined when the symbol is created but can be changed later. See “Native Objects vs Symbols” on page 358 and “Symbol Specification Dialog” on page 59.

If a warning message displays when placing a library object, it will indicate where the object can be placed.

There are three main categories of items available in the Library Browser:

- Stand-alone objects that can be placed directly into a plan. Examples include cabinet modules, furnishings and images.
- 3D objects designed to be inserted into another 3D object. Examples include cabinet fixtures, windows and doors. Some items, such as cabinet doors and fixtures and fence panels, can be inserted into another object or placed as stand-alone objects.
- Materials, which cannot stand alone and must be assigned or applied to another object.


Stand-Alone Objects

Most library categories contain objects that can be selected in the Library Browser and placed directly in a 2D or 3D view.

- Most stand-alone objects are designed to rest on the floor or terrain.

- Some objects will rest on top of a cabinet, shelf, furniture or roof plane object if one is located at the point where they are first placed.
- A few objects, notably some light fixtures, will mount on the bottom of a wall cabinet or on the ceiling.
- In addition, some objects will attach to a wall if one is nearby.

To place a stand alone library object

1. Click on an object in the tree view or Selection Pane of the Library Browser to select it for placement. See “The Library Browser” on page 342.
2. Move your cursor into the view area and notice that it displays an icon indicating the type of object selected instead of an arrow icon.
3. Click to place the selected object at that location.
4. Continue clicking to place as many instances of the selected object as needed. When you are finished, click the **Select Objects**  button.

Once a stand-alone object has been placed, it can be edited in a variety of ways. See “Editing Library Objects” on page 357.


Inserted Objects

Some objects cannot stand alone and must be placed into other objects in a plan. For example, doors and windows must be inserted into a wall, while some appliances and plumbing fixtures must be placed inside a base cabinet. See “Doors” on page 161,

“Windows” on page 177 and “Cabinets” on page 271.

An inserted object can only display in a 2D or 3D view if the object that contains it is set to display. This is the case even if the inserted object’s layer is turned on. See “Displaying Library Objects” on page 357.

To insert a library object

1. Click on an object in the tree view or Selection Pane of the Library Browser to select it for placement. See “The Library Browser” on page 342.
2. Move your cursor into the drawing area.
3. Click on the object into which you wish to insert the selected library item. The library item is inserted into the object.
4. Continue clicking to place as many instances of the selected item as needed. When you are finished, click the **Select Objects**  button.

Assigned Items

Some library items, such as materials, are not objects in themselves but can be applied to objects in a variety of ways.

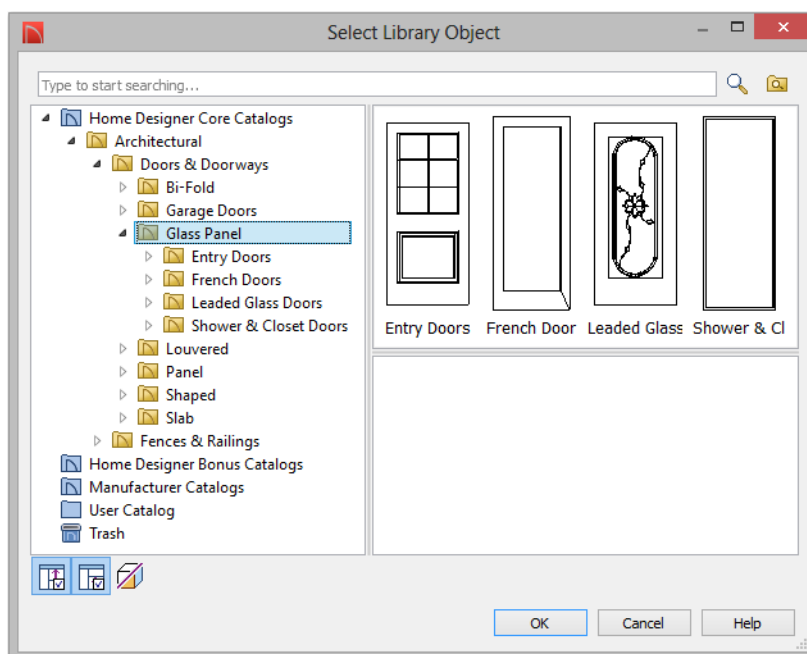
- Using the specification dialog of the containing object. See “Select Library Object Dialog” on page 356.
- By selecting the item in the library and then clicking on the containing object in floor plan view.
- Materials can be assigned to objects directly from the library in 3D views by selecting the material and then clicking on an object’s surface. See “The Material Painter” on page 362.

Select Library Object Dialog

The **Select Library Object** dialog is a modal version of the Library Browser that is accessible from object specification dialogs that display the **Library...** button.

Click this button to select and apply items from the library to the selected object. See “Specification Dialogs” on page 29.


The **Select Library Object** dialog only displays categories that are related to the selected object. For example, this is how the dialog looks when accessed from the General panel of the **Door Specification** dialog:




To make your selection, highlight the desired object and click **OK**, or simply double-click on the object in the Selection Pane to close the **Select Library Object** dialog.

The **Select Library Object** dialog has most of the same functionality that the Library Browser has, including the search and search filtering options, and resizable Preview and

Selection Panes. See “The Library Browser” on page 342.

If the **Select Library Object** dialog is opened by clicking the **Select Material** button on the Materials panel of any specification dialog or using the **Material Painter** , two additional options are available:

- Click the **Add New Material**  button to open the **Define Material** dialog and create a new material.
- Check **Use Default Material** to apply the default material for the selected object, if

one exists. See “Material Defaults” on page 369.

See “Materials Panel” on page 364 or “The Material Painter” on page 362.

Displaying Library Objects

The display options available for library objects depend on the type of object in question, as well as the view.

If the display of an object is turned off in a 2D or 3D view, any objects inserted into it will not display in that view, either - even if the inserted object’s layer is turned on. See “Inserted Objects” on page 355.

In Floor Plan View

All library objects except materials, doors and drawers applied to cabinets, and backdrops can display in floor plan view. Library objects are represented in floor plan view by 2D symbols that resemble the size and shape of the object when viewed from above.

As with other architectural objects, the display of library objects is controlled by layer in the **Display Options** dialog. Each library category has its own layer. See “Display Options Dialog” on page 75.

Object Labels

Fixtures, Furnishings, Geometric Shapes, Hardware, Millwork and Plants can display labels in floor plan view when the appropriate layer is set to display in the **Display Options** dialog. For example, fixture labels are placed on the “Fixtures, Labels” layer. See “Object Labels” on page 429.

You can specify a custom label for many library objects in the **Symbol Object Specification** dialog. See “Symbol Object Specification Dialogs” on page 359.

In 3D Views

All library objects can display in 3D views.

By default, images rotate to face the camera in 3D views. For information about turning off image rotation, see “Image Specification Dialog” on page 452.

Editing Library Objects

Like native Home Designer Suite objects, library objects can be customized to suit your design needs. There are three approaches to editing library objects:

- Select an object in the User Catalog, edit it using any of the options in its contextual menu, and your changes will be reflected when you next place this library object in a drawing.



- Place an object in a drawing and then edit it using the various edit tools available for it. This will not affect the original object still saved in the library.
- Place an object in a drawing, edit it using the available edit tools, and then add it back to the library for future use. This will not replace the original object still saved in the library. See “Add to Library” on page 350.

Library objects placed in a drawing can be selected individually or as a group, like other objects in Home Designer Suite. See “Selecting Objects” on page 86.

Once selected, library objects can be edited in a variety of ways using the edit handles, the edit toolbar buttons and the specification dialog. See “Symbol Object Specification Dialogs” on page 359.

Any changes made to objects like fixtures and furniture will not be reflected in their Materials List Description, although they may be seen in other columns, such as Size. See “Materials Lists” on page 491.

Native Objects vs Symbols

In Home Designer Suite, objects created using the program’s standard tools, such as the **Door Tools**  and **Cabinet Tools** , are referred to as native objects.

On the other hand, objects placed from the library, such as fixtures and furnishings, are symbols. Symbols are typically more limited than native objects in how they can be edited.

In addition to the symbols available in the library, you can import additional symbols into the program from 3D **.obj**, **.3ds** or **.skp** files. See “Importing 3D Symbols” on page 473.

Using Edit Handles

Most library symbols are box-based objects and can be edited as such once placed in a drawing. See “Editing Box-Based Objects” on page 98. Depending on the type of view and the surface selected, the edit handles a symbol displays will vary.

When a furnishing or fixture symbol is selected in floor plan view or on the top surface in a 3D view, up to ten edit handles display. They are the Move handle at the center, the Rotate handle just outside the front indicator (a V) and a Resize handle on each edge and at each corner.

When a symbol is selected on a side in a 3D view, it displays five edit handles: the Move handle and a Resize handle on each edge.

Fixtures and furniture placed in a plan are subject to bumping/pushing behavior when moved. See “Bumping/Pushing” on page 106.


Deleting Built-in Fixtures and Appliances

A fixture installed into the front of a cabinet becomes a cabinet face item, like a door or drawer. It can be resized or deleted like other face items in the **Cabinet Specification** dialog. See “Front Panel” on page 282.

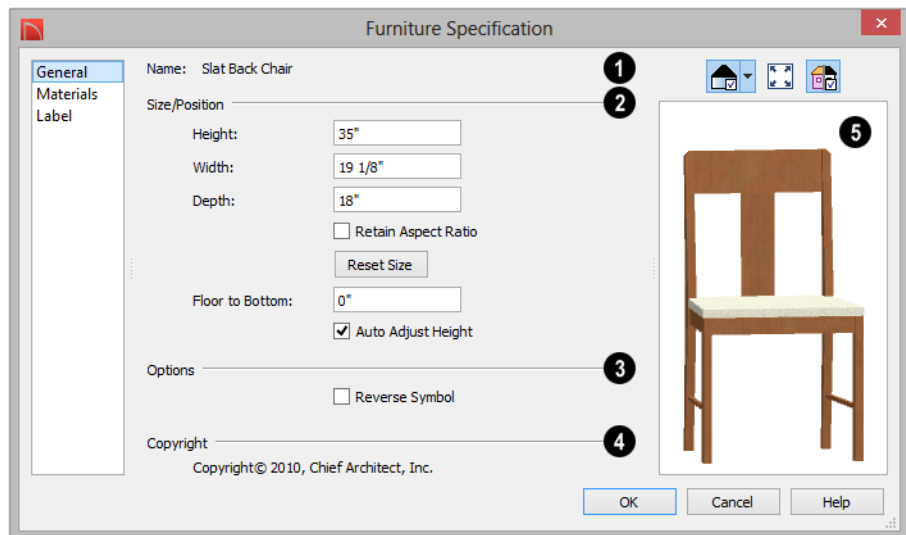
Symbol Object Specification Dialogs



The **Fixture, Furniture, Geometric Shape, Hardware, and Millwork Specification** dialogs all feature the same options. The actual name of the dialog is determined by the type of object that is currently selected.

For example, selecting a library object placed from the Interiors Core Catalog and clicking the **Open Object**  edit button opens the **Furniture Specification** dialog.

General Panel



- 1 The **Name** of the selected symbol object displays here.
- 2 **Size/Position** -
 - Specify the **Height, Width, and Depth** of the object.
 - Check **Retain Aspect Ratio** to maintain the ratio between the object's Height, Width, and Depth when it is resized in the specification dialog. Does not affect the behavior of the object's edit handles.

- Click **Reset Size** to reset the symbol's original, unmodified size. The Floor to Bottom value, below, is not affected by this button.
- **Floor to Bottom** - Enter the distance from the floor to the bottom of the object. A value of zero rests the object on the floor.
- If the selected symbol is ceiling mounted, **Height Above Ceiling** will be available instead of Floor to Bottom. Specify the selected object's height above the ceiling.

Enter a negative value to offset the symbol below the ceiling, or uncheck **Follow Ceiling** if you prefer to specify the object's Floor to Bottom height instead.

- When the selected object is outside a room and **Auto Adjust Height** is checked, its Floor to Bottom height is measured relative to the terrain height. When this is unchecked, the Floor to Bottom height is measured from the default floor height of Floor 1. See “Terrain Height vs Floor Height” on page 290 of the Reference Manual.
- 3 Check **Reverse Symbol** to reverse the object's appearance, so that features on its left are positioned on its right, and vice versa. This turns a right-hand refrigerator, for example, into a left-hand refrigerator. This option has no effect on objects that are symmetrical.
 - 4 If the selected object has a **Copyright**, information about it displays here.

- 5 A preview of the selected library object displays here and updates with changes. See “Dialog Preview Panes” on page 29.

Materials Panel

For information about the settings on this tab, see “Materials Panel” on page 364.

Label Panel

A variety of library objects can display labels in floor plan view. Labels use the Text Style assigned to the layer they are on.

For information about the settings on this tab, see “Label Panel” on page 429.

Manufacturer Panel

If the selected symbol or material is from a Manufacturer's catalog, the Manufacturer panel lists contact information about the manufacturer. See “Manufacturer Catalogs” on page 347.

Materials

The objects used in Home Designer Suite have a variety of 3D properties. These objects - walls, windows, doors, cabinets, roof planes, lot perimeters, etc. - can have materials assigned to them so that they look realistic in 3D views. These materials can also be used to generate materials lists that can help with cost estimations.

Designing with objects that look correct in 3D and calculate properly in the Materials List requires that you use realistic material definitions and apply them appropriately to objects in your plan.

Home Designer Suite comes with many materials that are ready for use. From siding, roofing, flooring, masonry, tile, and paneling, to grass, water, and wood materials, Home Designer Suite has materials for every application, inside and out. If you cannot find

a material that suits your needs, you can customize the materials provided or create your own.



Redefining only the visual properties of a material may create unexpected results. For example, changing the image of a brick material to represent siding does not cause the material to be considered as siding during material calculations.

Chapter Contents

- About Materials
- The Material Painter
- Materials Panel
- Editing Materials
- Creating Materials
- Define Material Dialog
- Material Defaults
- Select Color Dialog


About Materials

The materials that are assigned to objects in Home Designer Suite perform two important

roles:

- They determine what the surfaces of objects look like in 3D views.
- They influence how objects are calculated in the Materials List. See “Materials Lists” on page 491.


Materials are stored in the Materials library in the Library Browser and can be applied to objects in either of two ways:

- Using the **Material Painter** .
- In an object’s specification dialog. See “Materials Panel” on page 364.


Textures


In Home Designer Suite, materials have textures associated with them that determine how they look in 3D views.

Textures are created using special image files that tile seamlessly when applied to surfaces.

In 3D views, you can turn the display of textures on and off by selecting **3D> Render View Options> Toggle Textures** . When textures are turned off, materials are represented using solid colors.






The Material Painter

 Select **3D> Material Painter** to access the **Material Painter Tools**, which are used to apply materials to object surfaces in 3D views.


The **Material Painter**  tool can also be activated by selecting a material in the library while a 3D view is active.

Material Painter Modes

There are five Material Painter Modes. Each mode specifies how broadly or narrowly the selected material will be applied to surfaces in your plan.

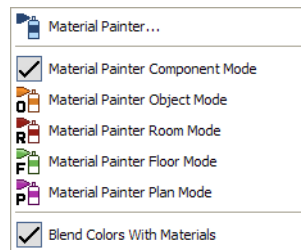
- The **Material Painter Component Mode**  is the default mode. This applies the selected material to an object component. Using this tool is the same as opening an object for specification and changing the material for one of its components on the Materials panel. See “Materials Panel” on page 364.
- The **Material Painter Object Mode**  applies a material to all components of an object that share the same material assignment.
- The **Material Painter Room Mode**  applies a material to all the objects in the room that currently have the same material. For example, if you apply a material to a dining room chair, this mode applies the material to all other objects in the room with the same original material, such as other chairs and the dining table.
- The **Material Painter Floor Mode**  applies the selected material to all surfaces on the floor that currently have the same material. For example, if you apply a material to the kitchen countertops using this mode, the bathroom countertops on the same floor also have the material applied.
- The **Material Painter Plan Mode**  applies the selected material to all sur-

faces in the entire plan that currently have the same material. For example, if you have the same carpet on all floors in a plan, applying a selected material while this mode is active will change all carpet on all floors.

When the **Material Painter**  tool is active, the Material Painter Mode toolbar buttons display in the edit toolbar, allowing you to quickly change modes.




You can also specify the active mode by selecting **3D> Material Painter**. A check displays next to the active mode in the submenu.






Blend Colors With Materials









In addition to the Material Painter Modes, the **Blend Colors With Materials** option allows you to apply a solid color to a surface displaying a pattern and blend the two.

Blend Colors With Materials  works in all five Material Painter Modes. See “Blending Materials” on page 367.


To use the Material Painter tool

1. Create a 3D view in which the patterned material is visible.
2. Select **3D> Material Painter> Material Painter** .
3. Select a solid color material from the **Select Library Object** dialog. See “Select Library Object Dialog” on page 356.
 - Check **Use Default Material** at the bottom left of the dialog to apply the default material to any object that has a defaults dialog. See “Material Defaults” on page 369.
4. Select a Material Painter Mode from the edit toolbar, which displays on the left side of the program window when the Material Painter is enabled.
5. Click the **Blend Colors With Textures**  edit button to turn this feature on or off depending on your needs.
6. Note that the name of the material being painted displays on the left side of the Status Bar at the bottom of the program window. See “The Status Bar” on page 30.
 - Move your pointer over a surface in the 3D view. The Status Bar now states both the material being painted and the current material on the target surface.
7. Click on the surface to apply the selected material to that surface. The material is applied to surfaces in the model based on the active Material Painter Mode.
 - When both the **Material Painter**  and **Blend Colors With Textures** are

active, the cursor displays a paint roller icon .

- When the **Material Painter**  is active and **Blend Colors With Textures**  is not, the cursor displays a spray can icon .
8. If either the **Component**  or **Object Mode**  is active, you can continue to click on surfaces to apply the selected material. When you are finished, select a different tool.


Material Painter and Walls

As a general rule, the **Material Painter**  cannot be used to apply a material to an individual wall. Rather, it applies the material to an entire room, to all the rooms on the floor, or to all the rooms in the entire plan, depending on which Material Painter Mode is active.

There are a couple of exceptions to this rule that apply when the wall surface being painted faces an exterior room such as a porch and/or the Exterior Room. See “Room Types” on page 147.

- If the **Material Painter Room Mode**  is active, the selected material is applied

to the entire exterior room. If any walls defining this room also define other exterior rooms, their entire lengths are also affected.



- If the **Material Painter Component Mode**  is active, the entire length of the individual wall is painted. Other walls defining the exterior room(s) are unaffected.

Material Eyedropper




The **Material Eyedropper** tool allows you to load the material assigned to an existing object and apply that material to other objects.

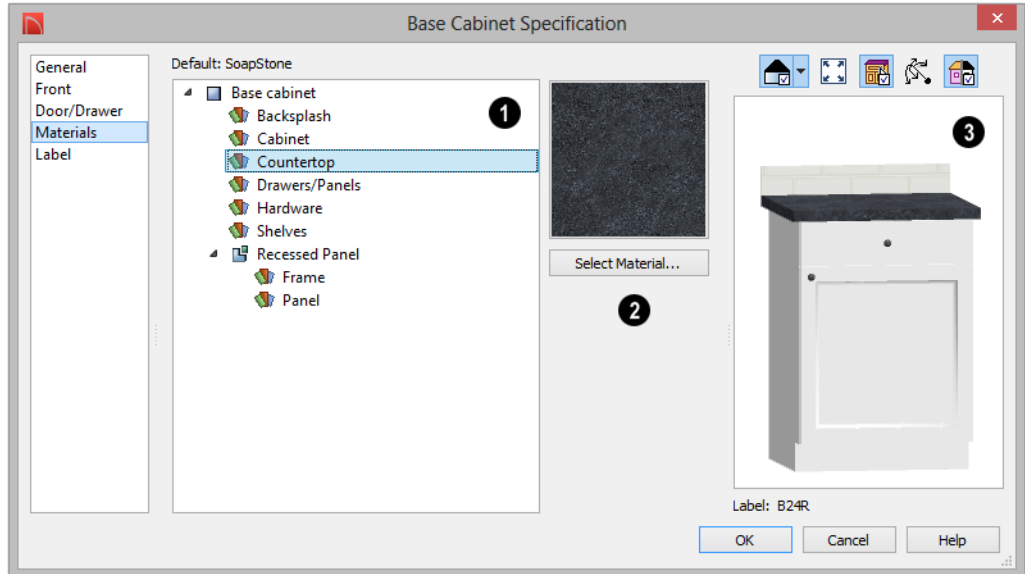
In a 3D view, select **3D> Material Painter>**

Material Eyedropper  and then move your mouse pointer over a surface in the view. The name of the material on that surface is stated on the left side of the Status Bar. Click on the surface to load its material assignment. The pointer then changes to indicate that the material is ready to be applied to another object using the **Material Painter**  tool. Depending on the currently active **Material Painter Mode**, you can continue to apply the material to the surfaces of other objects.

Materials Panel

The specification dialogs for most objects include a Materials panel. Select an object and click the **Open Object**  edit button to open the specification dialog for that selection.

On the Materials panel, you can specify material assignments for the components that make up that object. When a new material is assigned, the appearance of the preview image on the right side of the dialog updates.



- 1 The tree list on the left side of the panel lists the components of the selected object that can be assigned unique materials. Some objects may have only one component while more complex objects may have many. In addition, some components contain additional sub-components, which display separately in the components tree list.
 - Click on a component in the tree list to select it and assign a new material to it.
- 2 The box to the right of the tree list displays a preview of the material assigned to the selected component. If “No Texture” displays in the preview window,


either the material has no texture assigned or the texture file could not be found on the system.

- Click **Select Material** to open the **Select Library Object** dialog. Select a material and click **OK** to assign that material to the selected component. See “Select Library Object Dialog” on page 356.
- 3 A preview of the selected object displays on the right side of the panel. To view material textures, select **Standard** as the View Type. See “Dialog Preview Panes” on page 29.

Editing Materials

Much like objects, materials in Home Designer Suite can be edited so that they

better suits your design needs. There are two approaches to material editing:

- Select a material in an unlocked library in the Library Browser, edit it, and your changes will be used when you next use the material in any plan. Changes made in this manner do not affect materials already in use in a plan.
- Apply a material to an object in a plan and then edit that applied material using the **Adjust Material Definition**  tool. Changes made in this way will affect any instances of that material in the current plan only.


Editing the material applied to an object is not the same as applying a different material to that object. See “The Material Painter” on page 362.

Library Browser


Right-click on a material in an unlocked library and select **Open** from the contextual

menu to open the **Define Material** dialog for that material. See “Define Material Dialog” on page 367.

Adjust Material Definition

 The **Adjust Material Definition** tool is useful for changing plan materials directly from a 3D view.

Select **3D> Materials> Adjust Material**

Definition  and then click any surface in a 3D view to modify the material currently assigned to that surface in the **Define Material** dialog. See “Define Material Dialog” on page 367.

Changing a material definition with this tool affects all objects in the current plan that are using that material but does not affect any materials saved in the library or materials used in other plans. See “Adding Library Content” on page 350.

Creating Materials

Home Designer Suite provides a wide variety of materials - including numerous name brand material catalogs - that are ready to download and use. If you cannot find a suitable material, you can edit an existing material or create a new one. See “Editing Materials” on page 365.

Note: Adding a material to a plan is not the same as adding it to the library. If you want a new material to be available for use in other plans, create it in the Library Browser.

In the Library Browser

Materials can be created in the Library Browser, making them available for use in any plan. See “Adding Library Content” on page 350.

In the directory pane of the Library Browser, right-click on an unlocked folder and select **New> Material** from the contextual menu. See “Using the Contextual Menus” on page 344.


The **Define Material** dialog opens, allowing you to specify the new material’s attributes. See “Define Material Dialog” on page 367.

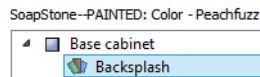
Blending Materials



In 3D views, you can create a new material by blending a solid color such as a paint color with a textured material. Select **3D> Material Painter> Blend Colors With Materials** to toggle this feature on or off. See “Blend Colors With Materials” on page 363.

The result is a new material that is saved in the current plan.

Materials created using the **Blend Colors With Materials**  tool are given the name of the patterned/textured material with the extension “--PAINTED:” followed by the name of the solid color material.



Stretch to Fit

Some special textures, often used for artwork, stretch across any surfaces that they are applied to. Materials that behave this way are specified as **Stretch to Fit** in the **Define Material** dialog.


To display an artwork texture, first place a wall or desk frame in your plan. A selection of both are available in the library. See “Placing Library Objects” on page 354.

Next, simply apply a material specified as **Stretch to Fit** to the center portion of the frame. See “The Material Painter” on page 362.

For more information about creating and using custom materials, see “Materials Tutorial” on page 115 of the User’s Guide.

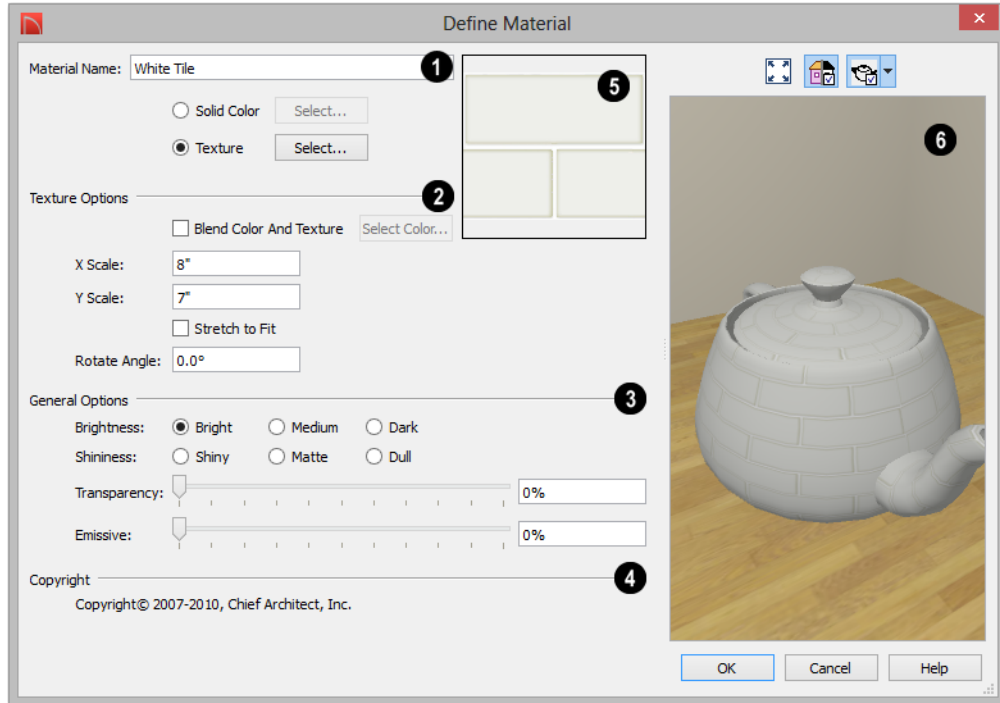
Define Material Dialog

The **Define Material** dialog allows you to adjust how materials look in 3D views and can be accessed in a number of ways:

- Use the **Adjust Material Definition**  tool. See “Adjust Material Definition” on page 366.
- Right-click on a material in an unlocked library in the Library Browser and select **Open** from the contextual menu. See “Using the Contextual Menus” on page 344.
- You can also right-click on an unlocked library and select **New> Material**.

Manufacturer Panel


If the selected material was copied from the Manufacturer library category, the Manufacturer panel lists contact information. See “Manufacturer Catalogs” on page 347.



1 The **Material Name** displays here. In this field, you can type a new name if you wish. Renaming the material does not create a new material: it redefines the existing material in the current plan.

- Click the **Solid Color** radio button to specify the material as a solid color, then click the **Select** button to open the **Select Color** dialog and select a new color. See “Select Color Dialog” on page 370.
- Click the **Texture** radio button to specify a texture for the material instead of a solid color, then click the **Select** button to open the **Select Texture File** dialog, a standard Open File dialog, and specify an image saved on your computer to serve as the texture.

2 The **Texture Options** are only enabled when Texture is selected, above.

- Check **Blend Color and Texture** to blend the selected texture with a solid color, then click the **Select Color** button to specify the color you would like to blend it with. When a new material is created using the **Blends Color With Materials**  tool, the resulting material has this box checked. See “Blend Colors With Materials” on page 363.
- Specify the **X** and **Y Scale** for the chosen texture in inches (mm). If you specify **x** and **y** values of 30”, the pattern repeats every 30 inches in both directions along a surface.

- Check **Stretch to Fit** to stretch the texture image over the entirety of each surface it is applied to. This is useful when you wish to create a painting or photo material to display in a frame. See “Stretch to Fit” on page 367.

Note: Changing the scale or selecting Stretch to Fit can cause textures to appear distorted if they are mapped to a surface using a different aspect ratio than they were originally created with.

- **Rotate Angle** - Specify how the texture is rotated on the surface it is applied to.

3 General Options -

- **Brightness** controls how bright the material appears relative to other materials.
- **Shininess** controls the sheen of the material when it is rendered with a point or spot light source on it. Shiny materials such as metal will reflect light when viewed at the right angle.

- **Transparency** controls the opacity of the material. A transparency value of 0 results in a completely opaque material, while a value of 100 creates a material that is completely invisible.
- Use the **Emissive** slider bar or text field to control how bright a material appears independent of the lighting in the scene. It can be used to simulate surfaces that are glowing with their own light, such as the glass on a light fixture.

4 Any **Copyright** information about the material displays here.

5 A preview of the selected texture or color displays in the square pane.

6 A preview of the material applied to an object displays here and updates as changes are made to the material definition. Various options allow you to view different aspects of the material’s attributes:

- Zoom and orbit the object in the view.
- Toggle **Color** on or off.
- Select an object shape: Cube, Sphere, or Teapot.

Material Defaults



Most objects in the program have defaults dialogs which allow you to set up a variety of attributes, including materials, before the objects are created. Default Settings are accessed by selecting **Edit> Default Settings**. See “Preferences and Default Settings” on page 55.


The **Material Defaults** dialog serves two purposes. It allows you to:

- Set the default materials for objects that do not have a defaults dialog. Fireplaces and furnishings from the library are examples of objects that do not have a defaults dialog.
- Set the initial materials that can then populate a variety of defaults dialogs for objects that do have them. **Door**, **Window**, and **Cabinet Defaults** are examples of defaults dialogs that can draw their mate-

rial assignments from the **Material Defaults** dialog.

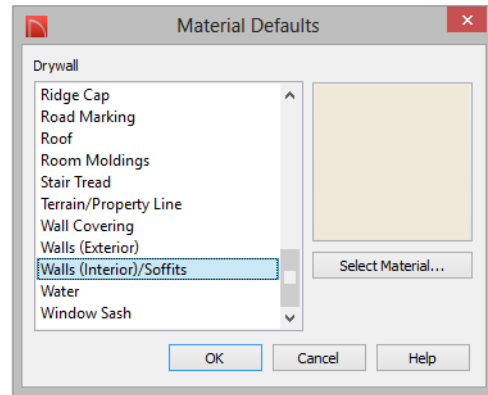
Because material defaults are Dynamic Defaults, you can also use the **Material Defaults** dialog to apply a material to multiple objects that share similar components. For example, the “Room Moldings” Material Default applies to the base, crown, and chair rail moldings that can be assigned to rooms, as well as to interior door and window casing. If you change this Material Default, all of these objects in the plan can be affected. See “Dynamic Defaults” on page 57.

Material Defaults Dialog

Select **Edit> Default Settings**  from the menu, select “Materials”, and click the **Edit** button to open the **Material Defaults** dialog.

The settings here are similar to those on the Materials panel found in object specification

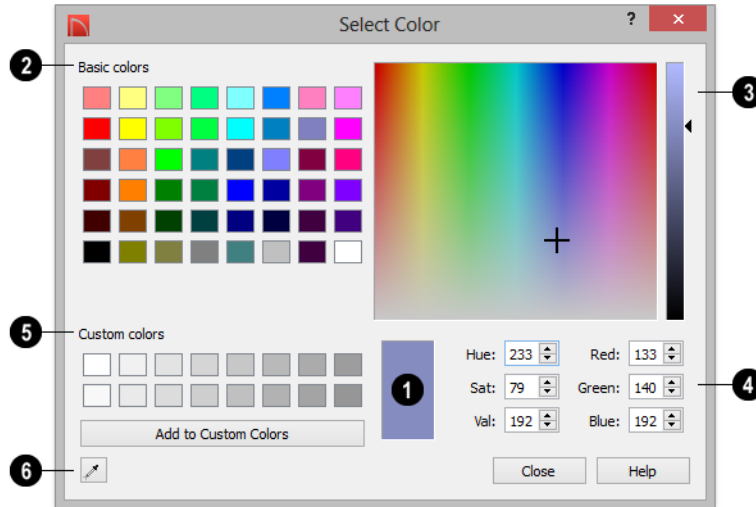
dialogs throughout the program. See “Materials Panel” on page 364.



- Select a category from the scrollable list.
- Click the **Select Material** button or material preview box to open the **Select Library Object** dialog. See “Select Library Object Dialog” on page 356.

Select Color Dialog


The **Select Color** dialog can be opened by clicking on the color bar that can be found in many dialogs throughout the program.



- 1 The currently selected color displays in the rectangle at the lower center of the dialog. There are a number of ways to select a color in this dialog:
- 2 Click in any one of the **Basic colors** boxes to select it.
- 3 Click anywhere in the color palette area to select a color. The location of the selected color is identified by a crosshairs.
 - Click anywhere in the vertical bar or drag the arrow to the right to adjust the selected color's darkness.
- 4 Define the selected color by specifying its **Hue, Saturation, and Value** (HSV) or its **Red, Green, and Blue** (RGB) values.
- 5 Click in one of the **Custom colors** boxes to either select it as the new color

or to specify it as the box for a new custom color to be defined.

- Click the **Add to Custom Colors** to add the currently selected color to the Custom Colors group.
- 6 Click the **Color Chooser Eyedropper**, then click anywhere on your monitor to select the color displaying at that location.

 You can select a color from any program window. Before opening the Color Chooser dialog, make sure the desired color can be seen onscreen by tiling Home Designer Suite and the other program window.

Click OK to apply the currently selected color to the object's line or fill style, or to the material's pattern color.

View and Window Tools

The View and Window Tools let you control how views of your drawing are shown on screen, as well as toggle useful drawing aides on and off.

There is no limit to the number of plan files that can be open. The name of the file and the type of view displays at the top of each view window in its title bar.

Chapter Contents

- View Tools
- Zoom Tools
- Undo Zoom
- Fill Window
- Panning the Display
- Working in Multiple Views
- Closing Views

View Tools

The **View Tools** allow you to open and close the program's side windows, as well as toggle a variety of references and drawing aides. Select the **View** menu to access these tools.



Refresh Display redraws the current window to clean up extra lines, show missing items, and correct random on-screen effects caused by changes to the model. See "Refresh Display" on page 105.



Library Browser opens and closes the Library Browser side window. See "The Library" on page 341.

Tool Palette opens and closes the Tool Palette, which will display related tools. See "Child Tool Palette" on page 70.



Scrollbars displays and suppresses scrollbars on view windows. See "View Windows" on page 24.



Color toggles the display of color in the current view. See "Color On/Off" on page 104.





Reference Grid toggles the display of the Reference Grid in all views in the current plan or layout file. See "Grid Snaps" on page 79.

Zoom Tools



Zoom is used to magnify any given area on the plan or 3D view. Select **Window > Zoom**, then click and drag a marquee around an area on screen. When you release the mouse, the selected area expands to fill the screen.

When the zoom is complete, whatever tool was active prior to selecting the **Zoom**  tool automatically becomes active again. If another zoom is needed, click the **Zoom**  tool again.



Zoom In - Click to zoom in towards the screen center by a factor of two.



Zoom Out - Click to zoom out from the screen center by a factor of two.



Undo Zoom - Reverse the last zoom operation.



Fill Window - Fits all visible items on screen.



Fill Window Building Only - Fits all walls and railings on the current floor on screen.

Zooming With the Mouse Wheel




Use the mouse wheel to zoom in and out in plan and 3D views. Scrolling the mouse wheel one click up or down zooms in or out, centering on the location of your pointer and changing the zoom by about 10%.

Note: Depending on the configuration of your mouse, it may be necessary to hold down the Ctrl key while turning the mouse wheel. If zooming in and out are not working correctly, contact the manufacturer of your mouse and mouse driver for their assistance.



Zooming in 3D Views

Zooming in 3D views does not change the camera's location or field of view. Instead, the extents of the view are expanded or cropped.


Undo Zoom

 Select **Window> Undo Zoom** to reverse the last zoom operation.



Note: Undo and Redo do not affect zoom.


Zoom  and **Undo Zoom**  are also available through the contextual menu. See “Contextual Menus” on page 27.

Fill Window


 In floor plan view or an Elevation view, select **Window> Fill Window** or press the **F6** key to view nearly everything on screen that is visible, including the Reference Display. CAD Points are the only objects that are not included when Fill Window is used.

If you are zoomed in so that only a portion of the drawing displays on screen, selecting **Fill**



Window  zooms out so that the entire view fits on the screen. If you are zoomed out so that the entire drawing is smaller than the screen, selecting **Fill Window**  zooms in until the drawing fills the screen.

When the drawing sheet is shown, **Fill Window**  zooms to the sheet borders.

Fill Window Building Only

 **Window> Fill Window Building Only** is similar to **Fill Window**, but zooms in or out so that all walls and railings in the view fill the current window. Other objects are ignored.

In 3D Views

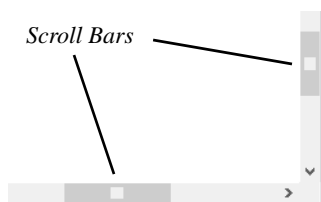
In 3D views, **Fill Window**  and **Fill Window Building Only**  adjust the camera's Field of View is adjusted so that all surfaces in the 3D view are included.

Panning the Display

There are four ways to pan the display without changing the zoom factor.

Using the Scroll Bars

One method is to use the scroll bars on the right and bottom edges of the window.




- Drag the square button in the bar itself in order to pan a larger distance.
- Click the end arrow keys on the scroll bars to shift the display in 12" increments.
- The 12" increment is defined in the **Plan Defaults** dialog under **Inches Scrolled by Arrow Key**. See “General Plan Defaults Dialog” on page 57.

Using the Arrow Keys

In floor plan view, the arrow keys on the keyboard work exactly like clicking the arrow buttons on the scroll bar. They shift the display according to the number of inches defined in the **Plan Defaults** dialog.

Using the Mouse

If you have a wheel mouse, you can pan the display by pressing the middle mouse button,

or wheel, and moving the mouse in the direction you would like to pan. When the middle mouse button is held down, the pointer changes to a hand  icon.

In the Mac version of Home Designer Suite, you can pan using the left mouse button and Command key.

Mouse drivers sometimes have other functions assigned to the wheel and buttons. These override the Home Designer Suite setting.



Using a Mac Trackpad

In the Mac version of Home Designer Suite, you can two finger drag to pan the display. See “Using a Trackpad” on page 24.

Using the Pan Window Tool



The **Pan Window** tool works much like the mouse wheel method.

Select **Window > Pan Window** . The pointer changes to a hand  icon. Click and drag to pan the window. The program reverts to the previously active tool when you release the mouse button.

Working in Multiple Views

There is no limit to the number of plan files that can be open, nor is there a limit to the number of plan view windows that can be open. The name of the file and the type of

view is stated at the top of each view window in its title bar as well as in its tab.

By default, Home Designer Suite uses a tabbed document interface, which means that

when more than one view window is open in the program window, each open window will have a tab that displays in a row above the currently active view.

- Each tab states the name of file the view type. Click on a tab to make it the active view.
- If there is not enough room in the program window to display all tabs, left and



right arrow buttons allow you to scroll through the tabs.

There is no limit to the number of 3D view windows that you can have open at a given time; bear in mind, though, that each window demands use of your computer's resources and that you may see poor performance if too many views are open. See "3D Views" on page 381.

Tiling Views



As an alternative to tabbed views, windows can be instead be tiled. Tiling allows you to display multiple views in a single Home Designer Suite window so you can see the results of changes in floor plan view in 3D or vice versa. It can also be useful for copying objects from one plan to another.

- Click and drag a view window's title bar or tab into the part of the drawing area that you would like it to be. When a highlighted space is created, release the mouse button.
- Select **Window> Tile Horizontally**  to display views in a horizontal orientation, one above the other.
- Select **Window> Tile Vertically**  or press Shift + F6 on the keyboard to display views in a vertical, side by side, orientation.

Views are tiled left to right or top to bottom in the order in which they were last active: the most recent view is on the left or at the top, while least recent is on the right or on the bottom.

To activate a view, click on its title bar or anywhere in the view window. Note that any

changes you make in the active window are reflected in other views as well.

To end window tiling, select **Window> Tab Windows**.





Floor plan view and a camera view Tiled Vertically

Multiple Program Windows

To create a second program window, click and drag the title bar or tab of a view window completely out of the current program window: for example, onto a second monitor. A second Home Designer Suite program window will be created with its own menu and toolbars.

Swapping Views

There are a number of ways to switch between open view windows:

- Click on a view window's tab.
- Select **Window > Next Window**  or **Window > Previous Window**  to cycle through all open views in the order you prefer.

- In Windows, press the Ctrl + Tab (Next Window) or Ctrl + Shift + Tab (Previous Window) keys to cycle through all open views.
- On a Mac, press the Ctrl + } (Next Window) or Ctrl + Shift + { (Previous Window) keys to cycle through all open views.
- A list of all the views currently open is located at the bottom of the Window menu. Each view is identified by its name and what type of view it is. A checkmark is beside the view that is currently active. Select one to go directly to that view.

If more than eight view windows are open, **More Windows** will be the last item in the Window menu. Select this option to open the **Select Window** dialog:

Select the name of a view in the list and click **OK** to make it the active view.

Closing Views

If a view is still needed, swap to a different view without closing the current views. If, however, a view is no longer needed, it can be

closed. See “Closing Views and Files” on page 52.

3D Views

Little preparation is needed to create a 3D view of a model: simply click a button to create an overview or click and drag to create a camera elevation view.

To improve the quality of the rendering and create a custom look, you can adjust lighting and edit the materials used in the plan. You can create Final views that are even more realistic. See “3D Rendering” on page 399.

Many objects can be placed and edited in 3D views, and any camera view or overview can be saved or even used to record a walkthrough. See “Pictures, Images, and Walkthroughs” on page 449.

Chapter Contents

- OpenGL and Hardware
- Backdrop Dialog
- 3D View Tools
- Creating Camera Views
- Creating Overviews
- Elevation Views
- Displaying 3D Views
- Repositioning Cameras
- Editing 3D Views
- Cross Section Slider
- Working in 3D
- Saving and Printing 3D Views
- Camera Specification Dialog

OpenGL and Hardware

Home Designer Suite features an easy to use rendering engine that makes use of OpenGL rendering technology, which has good hardware support on most video cards.

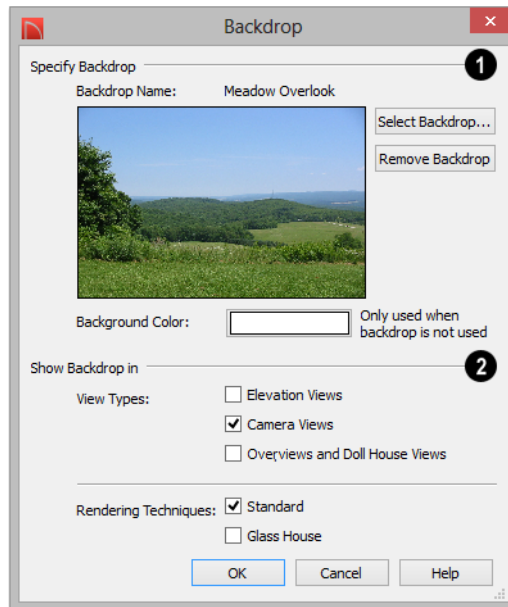
To take full advantage of the rendering capabilities of Home Designer Suite, a graphics card or chipset that supports OpenGL 2.1 or higher hardware acceleration is required.

Backdrop Dialog



Select **3D > 3D Backdrop** from the menu to open the **3D Backdrop** dialog. This dialog allows you to specify a

solid color or picture file of your choice to use as a background for 3D views. See “3D Backdrops” on page 460.



- 1 **Specify Backdrop** -A preview of the selected backdrop image is shown here.
- **Backdrop Name** - The name of the selected backdrop image displays for reference.

- Click **Select Backdrop** to choose a backdrop image from the library. See “Select Library Object Dialog” on page 356.
- Click **Remove Backdrop** to use a solid color instead of a backdrop image in all 3D views, then specify the color below.

- Click the Color bar to select the **Background Color** that displays when a backdrop image is not being used. See “Select Color Dialog” on page 370.
- 2 The **Show Backdrop in** options let you specify the conditions under which the selected backdrop image displays.
- Specify in which **View Types** a backdrop image is used. By default, only Camera Views are set to use a backdrop. See “3D View Tools” on page 383.
- Specify in which **Rendering Techniques** a backdrop image is used. See “Rendering Techniques” on page 402.

3D View Tools

Select **3D> Create Camera View** to display the Camera View Tools.

Camera Views



The **Full Camera** tool creates multi-floor views of the 3D model. It can be used to create interior and exterior perspectives, and is good for displaying cathedral ceilings, roofs, lofts, stairwell openings, and other variation in floor and ceiling levels.



The **Floor Camera** tool creates perspective views of the current floor only. Nothing above the ceiling surface is generated, and neither is anything below the floor.



The **Glass House Camera** tool creates full camera view of the 3D model using the Glass House Rendering Technique. See “Glass House” on page 403.

Overviews



The **Full Overview** tool creates views of the entire model including all floors, ceilings, and the roof.



The **Doll House View** tool creates views of the current floor without a roof or ceiling.



The **Framing Overview** tool creates views of the framing in the model. See “Framing Overview” on page 385.

Elevation Views




The **Wall Elevation** tool creates views similar to the traditional, orthographic views often used in drafting. See “Elevation Views” on page 385.

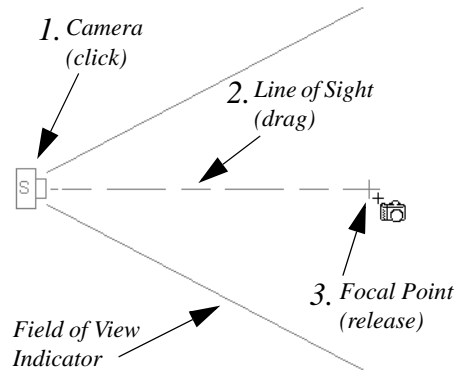
- When an interior view is created, an elevation of a wall on a single floor and in a single room is shown.
- When an exterior view is created, the entire model is shown.

Creating Camera Views

Full and floor camera views are created using the same method.

To create a camera view

1. In floor plan view, select the desired camera tool. The mouse pointer displays the camera  icon.
2. Click and drag a line to define the view direction.
 - Where your line begins is the camera's position.
 - The line that you drag defines the direction the camera is pointed.
 - The end of the line is the focal point of the view, the point the camera rotates around.
 - By default, the field of view is 45°, which is similar to what the human eye sees or a 50mm camera lens.



3. When you release the mouse button, a view generates in a new window.
4. Return to the floor plan view. A camera symbol now displays in floor plan view. See “Working in Multiple Views” on page 376.

Creating Overviews

Overviews generate as soon as you select the tool and are always created at the same angle. The focal point is always located at the center of the model; however, the position of the camera will vary depending on the size of the 3D model. The larger or more spread out the model, the further away the camera will be from the focal point so that the entire model can be seen in the view.

Once generated, an overview window's title bar indicates its view type and a camera symbol representing the overview displays in floor plan view. The overview 'camera' can be edited much like regular camera views can. See “Editing 3D Views” on page 391.

Full Overview



Select **3D > Create Camera View > Full Overview** to generate an exterior view of the entire model.



Doll House View





Select **3D > Create Camera View > Doll House View** to create a view of

the current floor with the ceiling removed and all floors beneath it visible.

Doll House Views are an effective tool for illustrating traffic flow and the relationships between spaces.



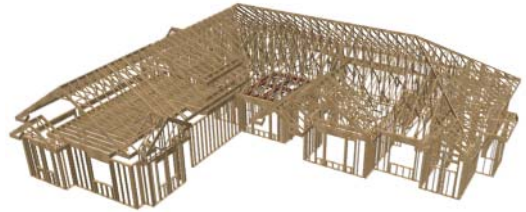
To see a different floor, select **Tools> Reference Floors> Up One Floor**  or **Down One Floor** . You can also return to floor plan view and make another floor

current before generating the Doll House View.

Framing Overview



Select **3D> Create Camera View> Framing Overview** to create a view of the entire model, displaying only framing and the foundation.





Framing overviews include all floor, wall, and roof framing as well as foundations.

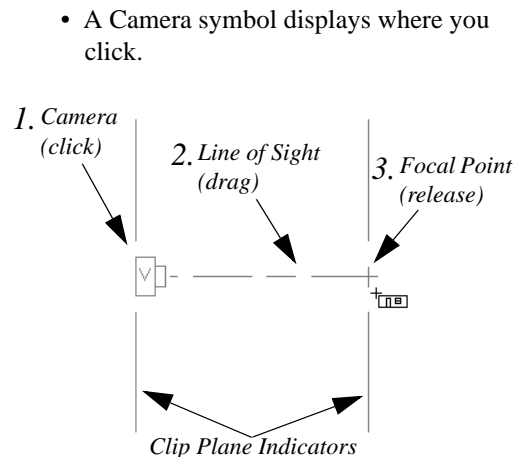
Elevation Views



The **Elevation** tool produces views in which all lines and dimensions are their true lengths, regardless of their distance from the camera.

To create an Elevation view

1. Select the **Elevation**  tool. The pointer changes to a  with crosshairs marking the position of the pointer.
 - Click in the building's interior to create an elevation of a wall on a single floor and in a single room.
 - Click outside of the building to create a view of the entire model.
2. Click and drag a line in floor plan view.



3. Drag in the direction of the Line of Sight to draw a camera arrow.
 - Always drag the camera arrow perpendicular to the wall to be viewed.

- When you release the mouse button, the view generates in a new window.

If the Line of Sight does not cut through a 3D object, such as a window shown in elevation,

the object retains its 3D definition and can be selected, moved, stretched, or otherwise modified in the view. The 3D model is updated in all views.

Displaying 3D Views

A variety of tools and settings allow you to control the appearance of your 3D views. There are also numerous ways to adjust the position, focal point and field of view of a 3D view. See “Editing 3D Views” on page 391.

The name of the current plan file and the type of view displays at the top of each view window in its title bar.

There is no limit to the number of 3D view windows that you can have open at a given time; bear in mind, though, that each window demands use of your computer’s resources and that you may see poor performance if too many views are open. See “Working in Multiple Views” on page 376.

Display Options

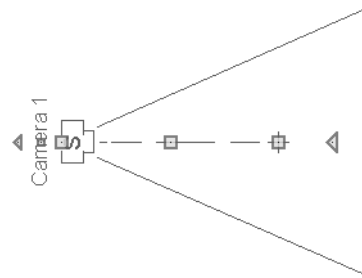


Which objects display in a 3D view is controlled in the **Display Options** dialog. See “Display Options Dialog” on page 75.

Different view types use different layer sets when they are created. See “Layer Sets” on page 74.

In Floor Plan View

3D cameras are represented in floor plan view by symbols that indicate the camera’s position, field of view and focal point.




The symbols for Elevation views and Full Overviews display on all floors, while those for Full and Floor Cameras and Doll House Views display only on the floor where the view was created. See “Creating Camera Views” on page 383.




Active cameras can have labels indicating the cameranumber. Camera labels are located on the “Cameras, Labels” layer. They are numbered sequentially in each plan in the order they were created.

Camera symbols are an on-screen reference: they do not print unless **Print Image** is used.

In Rendered Views

There are a number of factors that contribute to the appearance of rendered 3D views:

- Select **3D> Toggle Textures**  in a 3D view to turn off the display of material textures. See “About Materials” on page 361. Not available in Glass House Views.

- Select **3D> Lighting> Adjust Sunlight**  to open the **Default Sun Light Specification** dialog. See “Default Sun Light Specification Dialog” on page 402.
- Select **3D> Lighting> Toggle Sunlight** to turn on and off the light source that represents the sun. This feature can be used to simulate day vs. night exterior views. User defined exterior lights are turned off in day views and turned on in night views. See “Default Sun Light” on page 401.
- Select **3D> Final View**  or **Final View with Shadows**  to regenerate the 3D view with improved quality and/or shadows. See “Previews vs Final Views” on page 400

3D Backdrops

A backdrop is an image, usually of an exterior view, that displays in the background of 3D views to help place the model into a realistic setting and add a sense of perspective. If a backdrop is not specified, Home Designer Suite applies a background color. See “3D Backdrops” on page 460.

Delete 3D Surface



The individual surface of an object can be temporarily removed from any 3D view by selecting **3D> Delete Surface** and then clicking on a surface. When the pointer is over a surface, that surface will become highlighted.

Surfaces removed in one view are removed in all 3D views, but are not permanently removed from the model. Continue clicking surfaces to remove them, then select another tool when you are finished.

Surfaces in 3D views are composed of multiple triangles. Hold the Alt key while clicking to delete one triangular face at a time rather than all triangles forming a surface.

Select **3D> Delete Surface** or click the toolbar button to restore the most recently deleted surface. All surfaces can be restored by selecting **Build> Floor> Rebuild Walls/Floors/Ceilings** or by exiting the 3D view and reopening it.

Rebuild 3D



Select **3D> Rebuild 3D** to regenerate all 3D data associated with the current plan. All open views will remain open.

Repositioning Cameras

Once a 3D view is created, there are many ways to manipulate the camera location and the direction of its line of site using the mouse, the keyboard, and the menus.

When the keyboard or menu commands are used to move or rotate a camera, the adjustments occur in regular increments. The

size of these increments is specified in the **Camera Specification** dialog:

- The **Incremental Move Distance** controls Panning movement and forward and backward Dolly movement.

- The **Incremental Rotate Angle** controls Orbit movement, Tilt movement, and side to side Dolly movement.

See “Camera Specification Dialog” on page 396.






Each time you move the camera, the view is updated. If you are using either the toolbar or keyboard to move the camera, you can hold down the Shift key, suppressing the redraw of the view until the Shift key is released and allowing you to move multiple increments more quickly.

Move Camera with Mouse



An active camera’s position can be edited using the mouse. Select **3D> Move Camera With Mouse** to access the

Move Camera with Mouse modes. These tools are not available in Elevation views.

	Hotkey	Description
	Alt + O	Mouse-Orbit Camera lets you move the mouse to rotate the camera around its focal point. The camera’s position and direction both change. To continuously rotate the camera around its focal point, click in the 3D view, drag the mouse, and release the mouse button to “throw” the view. Click again in the view to stop it from rotating.
	Alt + P	Mouse-Pan Camera lets you move the mouse to move the camera up, down, left and right. The camera’s position changes, but its direction does not.
	Alt + D	Mouse-Dolly Camera lets you move the mouse up and down to move the camera forward and backward. Move the mouse left or right to rotate the camera side to side.
	Alt + T	Mouse-Tilt Camera lets you move the mouse to tilt the camera in any direction while staying in the same location.
		3D Center Camera on Point lets you focus the camera at a particular point in the scene. This also sets the camera center so that future use of Mouse-Orbit Camera rotates around that point. To use the 3D Center tool, activate the tool and then click on any object in the scene.

Move Camera with Arrow Keys

An active camera’s position can be changed using the arrow keys on your keyboard.

Select **3D> Move Camera with Arrow Keys** to access Move Camera with Arrow

Key modes. These tools are not available in Elevation views.

These modes use the **Incremental Move Distance** and **Incremental Rotate Angle** set in the active 3D view's **Camera Specification** dialog.







- **Arrow-Orbit Camera** lets you use the arrow keys to rotate the camera around the current focal point. The camera's position and direction both change.
- **Arrow-Pan Camera** lets you move the camera up, down, right, and left using the
- **Arrow-Dolly Camera** lets you move the camera forward and back using the up and down arrow keys, and rotate side to side using the left and right arrow keys.
- **Arrow-Tilt Camera** lets you use the arrow keys to tilt the camera up, down, or side to side to change the focal point. The camera's direction changes, but its position does not.

Move Camera Tools



Select **3D> Move Camera** in a 3D view to access these tools. These tools change the active camera's position, but not its direction and are not available in Elevation views.

These tools use the **Incremental Move Distance** set in the active 3D view's **Camera Specification** dialog.

	Hotkey	Description
	F	Move Camera Forward moves the camera and its focal point forward.
	B	Move Camera Back moves the camera and the focal point back.
	L	Move Camera Left moves the camera and the focal point to the left in a line perpendicular to the line of sight.
	R	Move Camera Right moves the camera and the focal point to the right in a line perpendicular to the line of sight.
	U	Move Camera Up moves the camera and the focal point up.
	D	Move Camera Down moves the camera and the focal point down.







Orbit Camera Tools



Select **3D> Orbit Camera** in a 3D view to access these tools. Orbiting the camera rotates it about the focal point using the **Incremental Rotate Angle** set in

the active view's **Camera Specification** dialog.

These tools are not available in Elevation views.

	Hotkey	Description
	I	Move Camera In moves the camera closer to the focal point along the line of sight. The camera cannot move past the focal point using this tool.
	O	Move Camera Out moves the camera away from the focal point along the line of sight.
		Orbit Camera Upward rotates the camera up about the focal point. The camera cannot rotate past a vertical line looking straight down on the focal point.
		Orbit Camera Downward rotates the camera down about the focal point. The camera cannot rotate past a vertical line looking straight up at the focal point.
		Orbit Camera Left rotates the camera to the left about the focal point.
		Orbit Camera Right rotates the camera to the right about the focal point.





Tilt Camera Tools



Select **3D> Tilt Camera** to access these tools. Tilting keeps the camera in one place and pivots the camera about its vertical or horizontal axis. This movement uses the **Incremental Rotate Angle** set in the active view's **Camera Specification**

dialog and is similar to tilting your head up and down or turning it side-to-side.


These tools are not available in Elevation views.


	Hotkey	Description
		Tilt Camera Upward tilts the camera up while keeping it in the same location. The camera cannot tilt beyond the vertical position.
		Tilt Camera Downward tilts the camera down while keeping it in the same location. The camera cannot tilt beyond the vertical position.
		Turn Camera Left turns the camera to the left while staying in the same location.
		Turn Camera Right turns the camera to the right while staying in the same location.

Editing 3D Views

In addition to its position and direction, there are other ways to modify a 3D view.


In the Specification Dialog

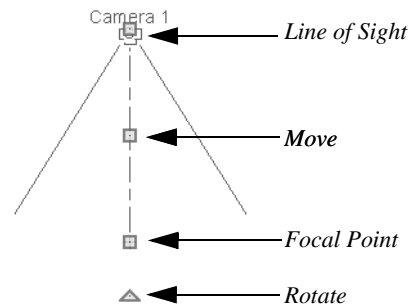
 You can make adjustments to a camera view or overview in the **Camera Specification** dialog. This dialog is particularly helpful for making fine adjustments to the camera's position, appearance, and other attributes. See "Camera Specification Dialog" on page 396.

 Tile a 3D view and the floor plan view and use the camera movement tools to see how they affect the camera. See "Tiling Views" on page 377.

Using the Edit Handles

Return to floor plan view without closing the 3D view. See "Working in Multiple Views" on page 376.

Using the **Select Objects**  tool, select the camera object. When a camera symbol is selected it displays four edit handles.



- Drag the **Line of Sight** handle to change the camera angle without moving the focal point.
- Drag the **Move** handle to relocate the camera while maintaining its relative angle.

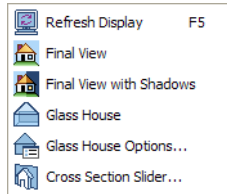
- Drag the **Focal Point** handle to reposition the focal point and change the line of sight without moving the camera.
- Drag the **Rotate** handle to rotate the camera's line of sight about its center.

The 3D view corresponding to the camera symbol reflects changes made to the symbol in floor plan view.

Multiple camera symbols can be selected; however, their editing options are limited to being moved, rotated, and deleted.

Using the Contextual Menu

In a 3D view, right-click in an empty space in which the backdrop or background color displays to access the contextual menu. See “Contextual Menus” on page 27.



These options are a selection of tools and toggles specific to 3D views.

Up One Floor/Down One Floor

You can move a camera to a different floor. While the camera view is active, select **Tools> Reference Floors> Up One Floor** or **Down One Floor** .

The position and movement of a camera is affected by its location within the model. When the camera is outside a building, its height is relative to the terrain and follows

the terrain as it is moved. When inside a building, the camera height is relative to the floor of the room it is drawn in.

If the camera is on an upper floor and you move the camera outside of the building, the camera remains at the same height relative to the floor it was created on.

Zooming



The **Zoom Tools** are available in all 3D views. See “Zoom Tools” on page 374.

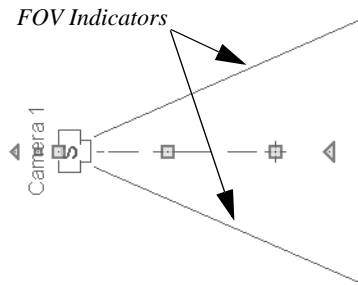
Selecting **Window> Zoom In** , **Zoom**

Out or **Fill Window** does not change the camera's location or field of view. Instead, the extents of the view are expanded or cropped.

Field of View

The **Field of View** refers to a camera's field of vision. A wider field of view makes the focal point appear further away, as more of the image is included in the same view window.

In floor plan view, the angled lines of a camera symbol indicate its field of view.



A camera's field of view can be adjusted in the **Camera Specification** dialog. See "Camera Specification Dialog" on page 396.

The field of view can also be adjusted while in a camera view using the keyboard:

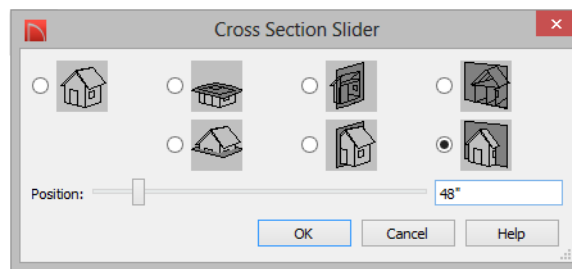
- **W** - Increase camera Field of View.
- **N** - Decrease camera Field of View.

Cross Section Slider



Select **3D > Cross Section Slider** when a camera view or overview is

active to open the **Cross Section Slider** dialog.



To use the Cross Section Slider

1. Click on the radio button beneath one of the cross section angles to select it.
 - The option at top right turns off the cutting plane, so no cross section is made.
2. Move the **Position** slider to adjust the position of the cutting plane.
3. You can position the cutting plane with accuracy using the text field to the right of the slider.
 - This value is measured from the edge of the model that is cut first by the selected cross section angle.
4. Click **OK** to close the dialog. If the active camera is saved, its Cross Section Slider settings will also be retained. See "Saving 3D Views" on page 395.

Working in 3D

A variety of tools are available in 3D views that allow you to edit your 3D model.


Creating Objects in 3D Views

You can place windows, doors, and most library objects directly into 3D views. To do this, select the appropriate tool and click in the 3D view. You can then edit the object's size and placement.

When created in 3D, most objects must be placed against a wall, on a floor platform, or within the Terrain Perimeter.

You can also click and drag to draw some objects such as terrain features and road, in camera views and overviews views.

Selecting and Editing Objects in 3D Views

Most objects can be selected and edited in 3D views. Select **Edit> Select Objects**  and click on the surface of an object to select it. Once selected, objects can be edited using their edit handles, buttons on the edit toolbar, and the object's specification dialog. See "Editing Objects" on page 85.

When you select an object, edit handles and a handle surface display. The handle surface is a rectangle around the perimeter of the object that indicates the overall height and width of the selected surface. The edit handles that display depend on the type of object selected. Walls, for example, display two resize edit handles when selected while a slab displays ten handles, allowing you to move, resize and reshape it.

Note: If the wall height of the Exterior Room is adjusted in a 3D view, the default Floor or Ceiling Height of the entire floor is changed. See "Floor and Room Defaults" on page 144.

All moving or resizing is in the plane of the handle surface. You cannot move an object directly towards or away from the camera, for example, because that surface plane cannot be seen in the view.

By default, object movement is restricted to one inch or 10 mm increments. See "Grid Snaps" on page 79.

Unrestricted positioning can also be enabled by holding down the Ctrl key while moving or resizing an object. See "Unrestricted Movement" on page 106.

Temporary dimension lines display when many objects are selected to help you resize the object and determine its height.

Because Elevation views are orthogonal and display objects at their actual dimensions, they are sometimes more suitable for editing objects than camera views or overviews. See "Elevation Views" on page 385.

When several 3D views are open, changes made in the plan automatically rebuild the model in all views. Because of this, it is typically faster to make changes to your plan with as few windows open as possible.

Editing Materials in 3D Views



Select **3D> Materials> Adjust Material Definition**, then click on a surface in the 3D view to open the **Define**

Material dialog for that material. See “Adjust Material Definition” on page 366.



Select **3D> Material Painter** to apply materials to surfaces in the view using the Material Painter Tools. See “The Material Painter” on page 362.



Select **3D> Material Painter> Material Eyedropper** to apply the material on a surface in the view to other

surfaces in the view. See “Material Eyedropper” on page 364.

Rebuild 3D



As changes are made to your plan, a 3D view automatically updates to reflect any changes visible in the view. If you find that a view is not updating as expected, select **3D> Rebuild 3D** to rebuild the entire 3D model.

Saving and Printing 3D Views

3D camera views, overviews and Elevation views can be saved with the plan in which they are created, exported and saved as image files, as well as printed.

Saving 3D Views





Select **3D> Save Active Camera** to save the current camera in the plan. You can also save a camera view by checking the **Saved** box in the **Camera Specification** dialog. See “Camera Specification Dialog” on page 396.


Saved cameras can be closed and re-opened for later use, and retain their Cross Section Slider and Glass House settings. See “Cross Section Slider” on page 393 and “Rendering Techniques” on page 402

Activating Saved Views

There are three ways to open a saved 3D view:

- Select the camera symbol in floor plan view and click the **Open View**  edit button.

- Double-click the camera symbol using the **Select Objects**  tool.
- Right-click on it and select **Open View** from the contextual menu.

Unsaved cameras that are open in another view window can also be activated using the **Open View**  edit button.

If you open a saved camera view and then modify its location or direction using any of the tools available in that view, the program will confirm whether you want to re-save the camera using these new settings when you close it. See “Repositioning Cameras” on page 387.

Exporting 3D Views



All 3D views can be exported and saved as .bmp, .jpg, .png, or .tif files. Select **File> Export> Picture** to save the current screen image as an image file. See “To export a picture” on page 454.

Once saved, a picture can be opened and converted into many other formats using a graphics program.

When a picture is exported, it is assigned the same size as it displays on screen. You can change the size of the view window to create a smaller or bigger picture.

Printing 3D Views



Since 3D views are created using pixels instead of lines, **File> Print> Print Image** must be used when printing.

Print Image is a special Home Designer Suite function that prints the screen in picture format. The entire view prints, including images such as plants and textures.

The quality of your print image is affected by your current window size and screen resolution. To maximize the quality of your printed image, generate it in full screen size and use the maximum screen resolution.

Camera Specification Dialog

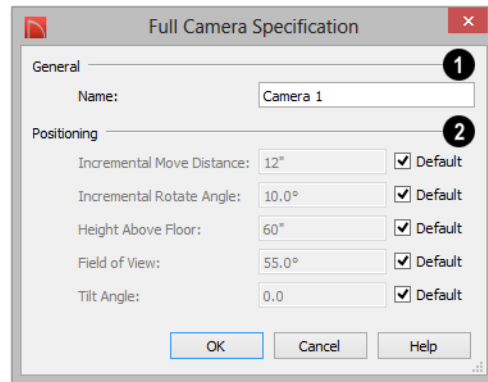


The **Camera Specification** dialog can be accessed in floor plan view by selecting a camera symbol and clicking the **Open Object** edit button. See “In Floor Plan View” on page 386.

This dialog can also be accessed while a camera view or overview is active by selecting **3D> Edit Active Camera** .

The selected view’s specific type is indicated in the dialog’s title bar: the specification dialog for a **Full Camera** , for example, is named **Full Camera Specification**.

Note: Elevation views do not have a specification dialog. See “Elevation Views” on page 383.



To change a setting, first uncheck **Default**, then type a new value in the text field.

- 1 Specify the **Name** that displays in the camera label in floor plan view.
- 2 The **Positioning** settings determine the position and orientation of the camera. See “Repositioning Cameras” on page 387.
 - The **Incremental Move Distance** controls how far the camera moves each time you Pan in any direction or Dolly forwards or backward. For interior views a small number is good, but for exterior you may want a larger increment.

- The **Incremental Rotate Angle** defines how many degrees the camera rotates each time you Tilt, Orbit, or Dolly side to side. A setting of 90° would make one full rotation in four moves.
- The **Height Above Floor** defines the height that the camera is above the floor level for the current floor.
- The **Field of View** defines the camera's field of vision in angular degrees. See "Field of View" on page 392.



You can increase a camera's Field of View when the view is active by pressing the W key, or decrease the Field of View by pressing the N key.

- The **Tilt Angle** determines the vertical angle that the camera is tilted. The camera maintains its focal point and position in floor plan view, but if the camera is tilted, the focal point is above or below the current camera height.

3D Rendering

There are a variety of tools available to create 3D views of a model: simply click a button to create an overview, or click and drag to create a camera or elevation view. See “3D Views” on page 381.

To improve the quality of the rendering and create a custom look, you can adjust lighting, edit the materials used in the plan, choose from several rendering techniques and fine-tune 3D view quality settings. From most 3D

views, you can create Final views of even higher quality.

Chapter Contents

- Rendering Tips
- Lighting
- Displaying Lights
- Default Sun Light Specification Dialog
- Speeding up 3D View Generation

Rendering Tips

There are a variety of factors which affect the appearance and quality of rendered 3D views. You can use these tools and settings to achieve renderings that meet your needs.

Lighting

Lighting is extremely important in most 3D renderings. Lighting controls the visibility of objects in a view, affects the appearance of surfaces, and influences the appearances of colors and textures on those surfaces. Even

small changes to light intensity, direction and color can have a large impact on image quality. See “Lighting” on page 400.

Reflections

Reflections are another aspect of lighting that can increase a 3D view’s realism. When a flat surface is assigned a Mirror material, it can display the reflections of other objects in the scene.

Note that a Mirror surface cannot display the reflection of another mirror. When one mirror can be seen in another, its material is shown rather than a reflection.

Reflections can slow down 3D view generation and responsiveness considerably and are turned off by default in rendered Previews. They can be turned on and off for both Previews and Final Views in the **Preferences** dialog. See “Render Panel” on page 63.

Material Textures

Textures are graphic files that represent contoured surfaces of objects such as carpet, bricks, tile, and wood in 3D views. Textures are assigned to materials which in turn are assigned to objects. See “Textures” on page 362.

The display of materials in 3D views is controlled by settings in the **Define Material** dialog. See “Define Material Dialog” on page 367.

Brightness, shininess and transparency control how light sources affect the display of surfaces in 3D views. See “Lighting” on page 400.

If no texture is selected for a material or if the display of textures is turned off, affected surfaces are a solid color instead.

Images

Images are very important for the appearance of 3D views. Images are picture files that represent individual objects such as trees, flowers, cars, and people. See “Placing Images” on page 450.



Backdrops

A backdrop is an image, usually of an exterior view, that displays in the background of 3D views to help place the model into a realistic setting and add a sense of perspective. If a backdrop is not specified, Home Designer Suite applies a background color. See “3D Backdrops” on page 460.

Previews vs Final Views

When a rendered 3D view is first created, it uses quality settings that allow the view to generate quickly but with reasonable quality.

Final Views produce much higher quality images that are more suitable for printing or saving as graphics files. Final Views often take significantly longer to generate than Previews, so the 3D view reverts back to the Preview settings as soon as anything is changed within the view.

When you have finished making adjustments in the 3D view, select **3D> Final View**  or **Final View with Shadows** .

Lighting

In 3D views, lighting is calculated on a room-by-room basis; only the light sources in the room containing the camera are used.

When the camera is outside a building, the program normally uses sunlight for lighting calculations and turns off all other light sources. You can turn the sunlight off and use

all the other exterior lights to simulate night time views.

The maximum number of light sources that can be turned on in a view at the same time is determined by your video card. If your video card's maximum number of lights is eight, the program only uses the eight light sources closest to the camera's position.

There are three ways to create light sources for 3Dviews:

- Default Lights
- Light Fixtures
- Default Sun Light

Default Lights

If you create an interior 3D view of a room and no lights have been placed there, the program creates a Default Light source within that room. The Default interior light acts like a central point light source.

The Default Light cannot be adjusted in any way. If you want to control the light in an interior 3D view, you must add a light to the

room that you are rendering by placing a lighting fixture.


Light Fixtures


An electric symbol that represents a Light Fixture has a light source associated with it. When a light is placed in a room, it will be used as a light source in 3D views instead of the Default Light. In large rooms, more than one light fixture may be needed for sufficient light.

Default Sun Light

If you create an exterior 3D view, the program creates a **Default Sun** light source.

The Default Sun can be modified in a 3D view by selecting **3D> Lighting> Adjust**

Sunlight . See "Default Sun Light Specification Dialog" on page 402.

Select **3D> Lighting> Toggle Sunlight**  turn the Default Sun on or off to simulate either daytime or nighttime exterior lighting.

Displaying Lights



The display of light fixtures in floor plan and 3D views is controlled in the **Display Options** dialog. See "Display Options Dialog" on page 75.



In addition, they can serve as sources of light in rendered 3D views. They can be turned on and off, as well.

Light fixtures are placed on the "Electrical" layer. See "Displaying Objects" on page 74.

In floor plan view, light fixtures can display labels when the "Electrical, Labels" layer is turned on.

To turn a light on or off

There are several ways to turn a light fixture on or off:

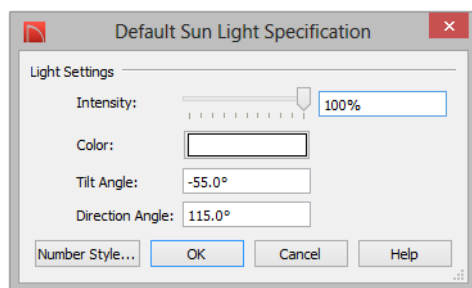
- Select one or more fixtures and click the **Turn Light(s) Off in 3D**  or **Turn Light(s) On in 3D**  edit button.

Default Sun Light Specification Dialog

The **Default Sun Light Specification** dialog allows you to control the intensity, direction and color of the Default Sun light source. See “Default Sun Light” on page 401.

While in a 3D view, select **3D> Lighting>**

Adjust Sunlight . See “Default Sun Light” on page 401.



- Use the **Intensity** slider bar or text field to control how bright the default sun light appears in 3D views. An intensity of 0% is the same as turning the sun light off. An intensity of 100% is the maximum brightness allowed.

- Click the **Color** bar to define the color of the light being modeled. Colored sun light may be used to achieve special lighting effects, but may alter the appearance of your material colors and textures.
- Specify the **Tilt Angle**, which is the angle of the sun light with respect to the horizon. A value of 90° means that the light points straight up, while a value of -90° means that the light points straight down. 0° is parallel to the horizon.
- Specify the **Direction Angle**, which is the direction that the sun light points toward. Zero degrees is measured horizontally on screen, pointing to the right. Positive values rotate in a counter-clockwise direction from there, while negative values rotate clockwise.

The Default Sun light color is pure white, which has the least effect on the material colors and textures.

Rendering Techniques

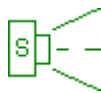


Any camera view, elevation view, or overview can be generated using either of two Rendering Techniques. When a 3D view is active, select **3D> Rendering Techniques** to access these tools.

Standard Rendering



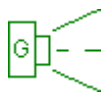
Standard rendering is a photo-realistic technique that represents materials using textures, models lighting, and can also display shadows. Lighting is limited to the room containing the camera and the capabilities of your video card.



In floor plan view, the camera symbol for a view using the **Standard** technique displays an S in its center. See “Displaying 3D Views” on page 386.

Glass House

Glass House rendering uses different shades of a single color to display the model with surface edge lines and semi-transparent surfaces. Lighting and shadows are not modeled, and materials are not represented, so textures are not used.

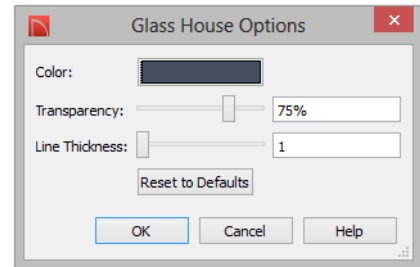


In floor plan view, the camera symbol for a view using the **Glass House** technique displays a G in its center.

Glass House Options



You can modify the appearance of Glass House Views by selecting **3D> Rendering Techniques> Glass House Options**.



- Click the **Color** bar to select a color for the semi-transparent surfaces and lines in a Glass House view. See “Select Color Dialog” on page 370.
- Specify the **Transparency** of the surfaces in Glass House view. For example, to create a wireframe line drawing of your structure, turn transparency to full and minimize line thickness.
- Specify the **Line Thickness** of surface lines in Glass House view.
- Click **Reset to Defaults** to restore the default settings used when the Glass House view was first created.

Speeding up 3D View Generation

Depending on the speed of your processor, how many cores your processor has, and

your computer’s video memory, a 3D view may generate in a few seconds or less.

When you have a large, complex model with a lot of detail, it may take a few minutes to generate a 3D view of everything in the model. During this process, progress information may display in the Status Bar and in a message window.

There are several ways to speed up the generation time of views.

Turn Off Layers



The display of objects in 3D views can be turned on or off by layer in the **Display Options** dialog. Turning off the display of unneeded objects in 3D views can speed up 3D view generation time. See “Display Options Dialog” on page 75.

Halt Generation with Esc Key

Using the Esc key, you can interrupt the modeling process at any point and display the incomplete model “as is.” This is particularly helpful when you just need to

reorient a model on the screen for a specific angle or view.

The Esc option allows you to place the view quickly, then press the F5 function key to refresh the display with all 3D faces intact.

Faster Rendering

To increase rendering speed, consider turning off some or all of the following options in the **Preferences** dialog. Bear in mind that render quality may be affected. See “Render Panel” on page 63.

Use **Optimizations** - Many video cards with OpenGL are capable of optimizing 3D views for subsequent redraws. The effects of this option varies from video card to video card.

In general, you should leave this option turned on unless you are experiencing crashes when rendering.

Dimensions

Home Designer Suite provides a variety of dimensioning tools for measuring walls, doors, windows, and many other objects.

Dimensions can be used to accurately position objects relative to other objects. In addition, dimension lines and extensions can be selected and customized.

Chapter Contents

- Dimension Unit Defaults
- Dimension Defaults Dialog
- The Dimension Tools
- Displaying Dimension Lines
- Editing Dimension Lines
- Editing Extension Lines
- Moving Objects Using Dimensions
- Dimension Line Specification Dialog

Dimension Unit Defaults

All plan files save measurements in either Imperial or metric units. The type of unit used is determined when the file is first

created and cannot be changed later. See “Creating a New Plan” on page 40.

Dimension Defaults Dialog

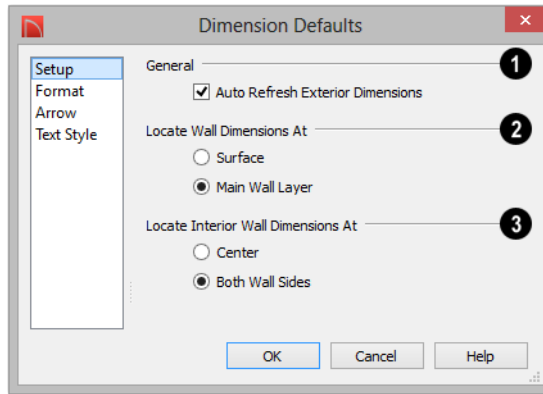


Select **Edit > Default Settings**, select “Dimension”, and click the **Edit** button to open the **Dimension Defaults** dialog.

The settings in this dialog are dynamic defaults, which means that any changes

made here may affect existing dimension lines in the drawing that are using default values. See “Dynamic Defaults” on page 57.

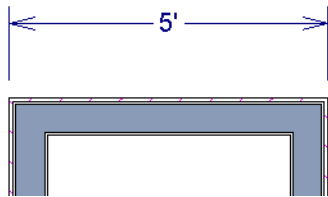
Setup Panel



1 Uncheck **Auto Refresh Exterior Dimensions** to prevent Auto Exterior Dimensions from being regenerated as changes are made to the plan. When checked, Auto Exterior Dimensions will be created when walls enclose a room area and will refresh whenever walls, doors, or windows are added or moved. See “Auto Exterior Dimensions” on page 409.

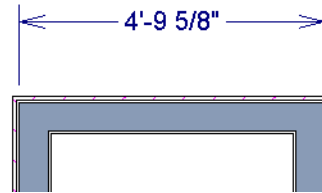
2 Specify how Manual and Auto Exterior Dimension lines locate both interior and exterior walls.

- Select **Surfaces** to have dimensions locate the outer surfaces of walls.



Dimensions locating wall Surfaces

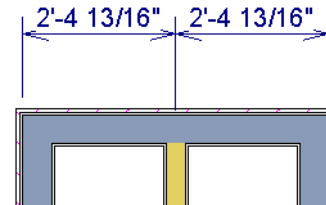
- Select **Main Wall Layer** to have dimensions locate the structural layer of exterior walls.



Dimensions locating walls' Main Wall Layers

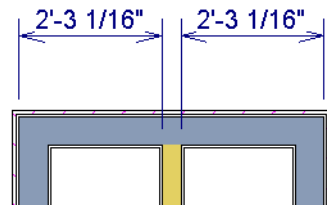
- 3** Specify how Manual and Auto Exterior Dimension lines locate interior walls.

- Select **Centers** to have exterior dimensions locate the centers of interior walls.



Dimensions locating an intersecting wall's center

- Select **Both Wall Sides** to have dimensions locate both sides of interior walls. Either the wall Surfaces or both sides of the Main Wall Layers will be located, depending on your selection above.



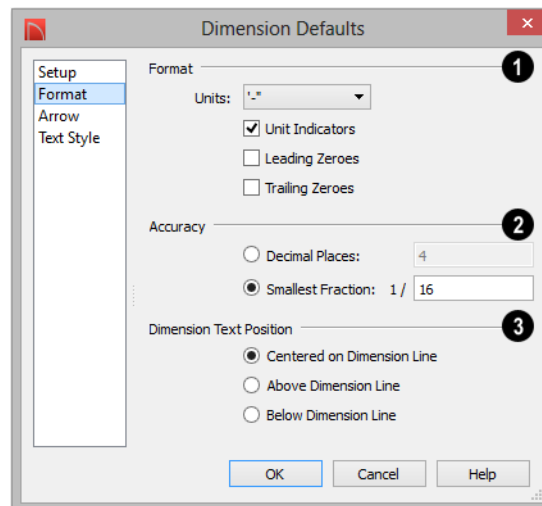
Dimensions locating an interior wall's Main Wall Layer

You can always change the object or surface that a dimension locates after it has been created. See “Editing Extension Lines” on page 413.

Format Panel

The settings on the Format panel allow you to specify the units, degree of accuracy, and position of dimension numbers.

The settings on this panel also control the format of numbers indicating object length in the Status Bar. See “The Status Bar” on page 30.



- 1 Specify the numbering **Format** for dimension numbers.

- Select the **Units** of measurement to be used by dimensions from the drop-down list.

- Check **Unit Indicators** to display the unit of measurement along with the dimension number.
 - Check **Leading Zeros** to include the zero before a decimal less than 1 or to display 0' or 0" when the ft-in or '-'" unit formats is used.
 - Check **Trailing Zeros** to display trailing zeros at the end of decimal values. When the ft-in or '-'" unit format is used and fractional inches are specified, 0" will be included.
- 2** Specify the degree of **Accuracy** used by dimension numbers.
- Select the **Decimal Places** radio button for dimension numbers in decimal format. In the text field, specify the number of decimal places to use, from 0 to 20. If 0 is used, no decimal places are used.
 - Select the **Smallest Fraction** radio button for dimension numbers using whole numbers and fractions. In the text field, specify the largest denominator to use, from 1 to 128. If 1 is entered, whole numbers are used.
- 3** Specify the **Dimension Text Position**, which is the location of dimension numbers relative to the dimension line.
- **Center** primary dimension numbers on the dimension line. If two formats are used, the primary format is placed above the line and the secondary format, beneath it.
 - Position dimension numbers **Above Line**.
 - Position dimension numbers **Below Line**.

Arrow Panel

For information about the Arrow panel, see "Arrow Panel" on page 435.

Text Style Panel

The settings on the Text Style panel control the size, font and other attributes of automatic, manually drawn, and temporary dimension line labels. See "Dimension Labels" on page 411.

For information about the settings on this panel, see "Text Style Panel" on page 428.

Temporary dimension labels always use the color assigned to their layer - not the color specified in the **Dimension Defaults** dialog.


The Dimension Tools




Select **CAD> Dimensions** to access the Dimension Tools. Manually drawn dimensions are created by clicking and dragging like other line-based objects and can be drawn in floor plan view.

The zoom factor of the current view affects whether objects drawn close together are


dimensioned or not. If you try to dimension an array of objects but the dimension line locates only the first and last objects along its

path, **Zoom**  in on the objects and try again. Similarly, if you want to dimension between two objects but the dimension locates unwanted objects between them,

Zoom  out. See “Zoom Tools” on page 374.


Once created, both manually drawn and automatically generated dimension lines can be selected and edited. See “Editing Dimension Lines” on page 411.

Manual Dimensions


 To display the distance between two objects, select **CAD> Dimensions> Manual Dimension** and drag a dimension line near or through the objects.

Manual Dimensions locate walls as specified in the **Dimension Defaults** dialog. See “Dimension Defaults Dialog” on page 405.


End-to-End Dimensions


 Use the **End-to-End Dimension** tool to dimension between any two defined objects in floor plan view.

Select **CAD> Dimensions> End-to-End**


Dimension , then click and drag the dimension from the first object to the second object. The dimension line snaps to each object, ignoring any other objects located between either end.


Interior Dimensions


 Draw **Interior Dimension** lines parallel to walls in floor plan view to create interior dimensions.

The **Interior Dimension**  tool locates interior wall surfaces only. It does not dimension between layer surfaces in the same wall, and it does not locate walls unless it actually intersects them.

Auto Exterior Dimensions


 The **Auto Exterior Dimension** tool generates dimensions around a plan’s exterior in floor plan view. These dimension lines locate walls as specified in the **Dimension Defaults** dialog. See “Dimension Defaults Dialog” on page 405.


 Auto Exterior Dimensions do not generate properly if there is a gap in the exterior walls or if they do not connect properly.


If you edit an **Auto Exterior Dimension**  line, it will be converted to a manual dimension, so if Auto Exterior Dimensions are later regenerated, your changes will not be lost.


There are a maximum of three rows of automatically generated dimensions per exterior wall direction. The innermost dimension line locates exterior walls, interior walls, and all openings in exterior walls. The second dimension line locates exterior and interior walls. The outermost dimension line is the overall exterior dimension.

Auto Interior Dimensions

 The **Auto Interior Dimensions** tool creates a set of interior dimensions in each room that measures each wall on the current floor. It can be used in floor plan view in either of two ways:

- Select one or more rooms and click the **Auto Interior Dimensions**  edit tool to generate interior dimensions that measure each wall defining the selected room(s).

- Select **CAD > Dimensions > Auto Interior Dimensions**  to generate a set of interior dimensions in every room on the current floor.

Auto Interior Dimensions  lines are generated inside of the rooms they measure and do not recognize the **No Locate** setting for walls. If a wall is specified as No Locate, Auto Interior Dimensions will locate it anyway. See “No Locate” on page 127.

Temporary Dimensions

Temporary Dimensions display when an object is selected and show the distance between the object’s selected edge and other objects.

As with other dimension lines, Temporary Dimensions only locate objects that are parallel or nearly parallel to one another. They will also locate the endpoints of CAD lines and the corners of objects located past


the end of the selected edge, within 4 feet (1200 mm) of the point where you click to select the object.

A temporary dimension will not display when an object is selected if a manually drawn dimension line is already present that shows the same information.

Tape Measure



Use the **Tape Measure** tool to draw a temporary dimension line between any two points in the drawing area. The tool will place temporary markers at the start and end points of the dimension line. These points and the line both disappear when you release the mouse button. If an object is located by the temporary line, you can snap to it.

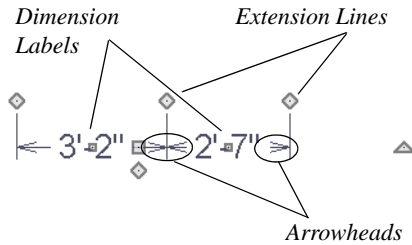
The **Tape Measure**  tool can be used in Elevation views as well as in floor plan view. See “Elevation Views” on page 385.

Displaying Dimension Lines

The display of dimension lines is controlled in the **Display Options** dialog. See “Displaying Objects” on page 74.

Dimension lines created by any of the dimension tools share the same components.

- **Dimension Lines** run parallel with the distance being measured.
- **Extension Lines** are perpendicular to dimension lines, indicating what they locate. If a dimension line locates more than two objects, extension lines divide the dimension line into segments.
- **Arrowheads** display at the intersections of dimension and extension lines.
- **Dimension Labels** display at the midpoint of dimension line segments and indicate the distance that each segment measures.



If a manual dimension line is on a layer that is turned off and you select an object located by that dimension line, it will display for reference in grey.

Dimension Labels

Manually drawn, automatic and temporary dimension labels use the Text Style specified in the **Dimension Defaults** dialog. Unlike

many objects that use Text Styles, by default dimensions use a Text Style specified in the defaults dialog rather than the Text Style assigned to their layer. See “Text Style Panel” on page 408.

Dimension Arrowheads

You can specify the style, color and size of dimension arrows in the **Dimension Defaults** and **Dimension Line Specification** dialogs. See “Arrow Panel” on page 435.

The arrow at the end of a dimension line will not display if it is close enough to another dimension arrow that the two will overlap. A typical example of this is where two sections of an Interior Dimension locate two sides of an interior wall.

Editing Dimension Lines

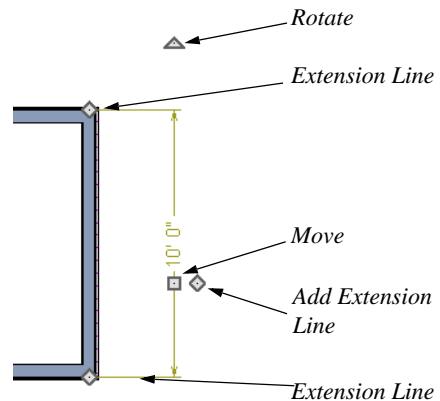
With the exception of Temporary Dimensions, dimension lines can be selected and edited using the mouse and the edit toolbar buttons.

If an Auto Exterior Dimension line is edited, it will no longer be considered an automatic dimension line and will not be deleted and replaced the next time the **Auto Exterior**



Dimensions  tool is used.

Using the Mouse

When a dimension line is selected, its edit handles can be seen. There are four types of dimension line edit handles. More than one of some types display, depending on how many extension lines are present.



- The **Extension Line** handles mark the location being dimensioned and are used to move or delete extension lines. See “Moving Extension Lines” on page 413.

- The **Add Extension Line** handle displays to the side of the Move handle and is used to add extension lines to the dimension line. Dimension lines do not extend unless an object can be located. See “Adding Extension Lines” on page 413.
- The small, square **Move Dimension Label** handle is located at the center of the selected label. Use this handle to move the dimension number for each dimension line section. The pointer changes to a four-headed arrow  when moved over this handle.
- The **Move** handle is located where you clicked to select the dimension line and is used to move the entire dimension line, including any subsections, perpendicular to itself. Extension lines are resized as appropriate. The pointer changes to a two-headed arrow  when moved over this handle.
- The **Rotate** handle is located one plan foot past the end of the dimension line and is used to rotate the dimension line.

Using the Edit Tools

Dimension lines can be repositioned, copied, and deleted using the edit toolbar buttons just like other objects in the program can. See “The Edit Toolbar” on page 26.

Dimension Number Size

The initial size of dimension numbers is specified in the **Dimension Defaults** dialog. See “Dimension Defaults Dialog” on page 405.

You can specify number height for individual dimension lines in the **Dimension Line**

Specification dialog. See “Dimension Panel” on page 416.

As with text and other objects, dimension number size is subject to scaling when or printed.


Copying and Pasting Dimension Lines

Dimension lines can be copied and pasted into any view type that supports dimensions. If a dimension line is copied independent of the objects it originally locates, the pasted dimension line will locate point markers.

Deleting Dimension Lines

There are several ways to delete dimension lines.

You can select any manual or automatic dimension line or group of dimension lines, then press the Delete key or click the

Delete  edit button. See “Deleting Objects” on page 111.

The **Delete Objects** dialog allows you to delete all manually drawn and/or automatic dimension lines at once. See “Delete Objects Dialog” on page 111.

Individual dimension line segments located between extension lines can also be deleted. If a segment is located between two other segments along the same dimension line, that dimension will be broken in two.

To delete a portion of a dimension line

1. Select any **Dimension Tool** aside from Auto Exterior Dimensions.

- Manually draw a dimension line over the segment that you wish to remove,

dragging from extension line to extension line.

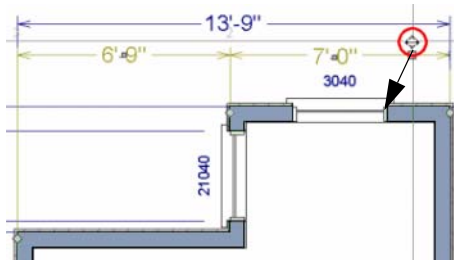
Editing Extension Lines

Extension lines can be added, edited, and deleted using the mouse.

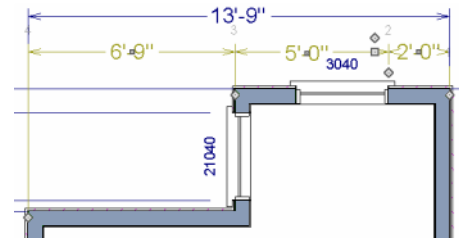
Adding Extension Lines

To add an extension line

- Select the dimension line.
- Click the diamond-shaped Add Extension Line edit handle which displays near the Move edit handle. The pointer changes to a two-headed arrow \leftrightarrow .
- Drag the handle to the object that you want to locate with a new extension handle. This example adds an extension line to the window edge.



- Release the mouse button to add an extension line.

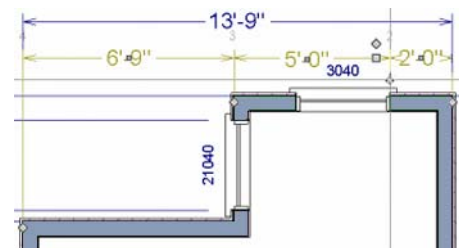


Moving Extension Lines

Extension lines can be moved to locate the centers, sides, or surfaces of most objects. In this example an extension line is moved from the windows edge to the center.

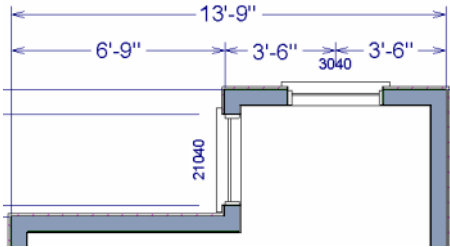
To move an extension line


- Select the dimension line it is connected to, not the extension line itself.
- Click the Extension Line edit handle. The pointer changes to a two-headed arrow \leftrightarrow .



- Drag the handle to a new location. The extension line snaps to possible marks as the handle is moved.

4. Release the mouse button at the new location.



 Not all library symbols can be located by a dimension line as it is drawn. Once a dimension is drawn, however, you can move or add an extension line to locate the library object.

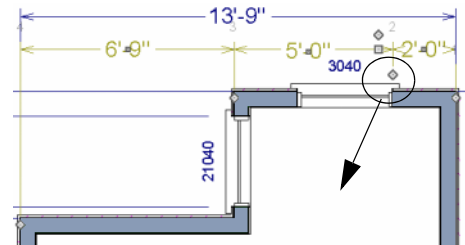
Deleting Extension Lines

When an extension line is deleted, the remaining dimensions update. If a dimension

line has only two extension lines, they cannot be deleted.

To remove an extension line

1. Select the dimension line it is connected to, not the extension line itself.
2. Click the Extension Line edit handle.



3. Drag it perpendicular to the direction of the arrows, away from any dimension-able object, and release the button when the extension line disappears.

Moving Objects Using Dimensions

Most objects can be moved by changing an automatic, manual or temporary dimension value that locates it. This technique can be applied in nearly any situation where dimensions are present. See “Moving Objects” on page 106.

In addition, some objects can be resized using dimensions. See “Resizing Objects” on page 108.

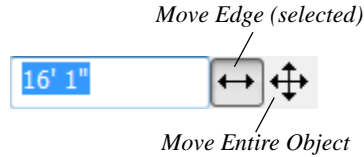
Your pointer indicates which dimensions can be used to relocate the selected object by changing to a pointing hand icon.

Another way to tell is to select an object and drag it in the desired direction. As you drag, note which dimensions update. These

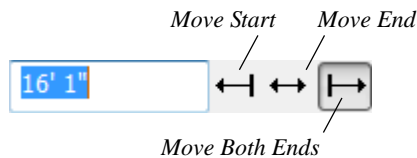
dimensions are the dimensions that can be used to move that object.

To move an object using dimensions

1. Select the object and click on a dimension line that locates it. An inline text field opens at the location where you clicked.
 - The actual distance displays in the text field.
 - If the dimension is locating two different objects, the **Move Edge** and **Move Entire Object** buttons display to the right of the text field.



- If the dimension describes a selected wall's length, the **Move Start**, **Move End** and **Move Both Ends** buttons display to the right instead.



2. Click the **Move** button of your choice.
3. Enter a new value in text field.
 - To use a different unit, include its indicator after the value. To move the selected object past a second object, to its opposite side, enter a negative value.
4. The selected object moves or resizes when you press the Enter key or click outside of the text field.

To resize an object using dimensions

1. Select the object along the edge that you would like to move. See “Selected Edge” on page 86.
2. Click on a dimension line that indicates its distance from the object's opposite side.
3. In the inline text field, enter a value.
4. Click **Move edge** to move the selected edge only.
5. The selected edge moves, resizing the object, when you press the Enter key.



You can cancel a move or resize operation using dimensions at any time by pressing the Esc key.



Resizing a House Using Exterior Dimensions

When resizing a house using dimensions, it is important to work your way around the house in one direction. Relocate one wall at a time in succession so that you do not redefine the same dimension more than once.

For more information, see “Measuring Walls” on page 126.

Dimension Line Specification Dialog

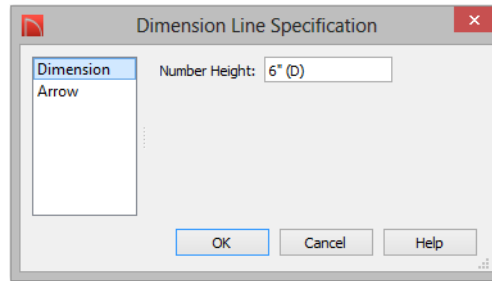


To open the **Dimension Line Specification** dialog, double-click a dimension line using the **Select Objects**  or **Manual Dimension**  tool, or select a

dimension line and click the **Open Object** edit button.

The settings in this dialog are dynamic defaults. See “Dimension Defaults Dialog” on page 405.

Dimension Panel



Specify the **Number Height** for the selected dimension. Type "d" in the box to reset the number size to the default.

Arrow Panel

For information about the settings on this panel, see "Arrow Panel" on page 435.

Text

Text is an ideal way to draw attention to special details of your drawings in floor plan view.

Text lines with arrow can be attached to text objects, allowing you to direct attention to specific plan details.

Chapter Contents

- Text Defaults
- Fonts and Alphabets
- The Text Tools
- Creating Text
- Displaying Text
- Rich Text Specification Dialog
- Text Specification Dialog
- Editing Text
- Copying and Pasting Text
- Text Arrows
- Text Styles
- Object Labels

Text Defaults



Text Defaults can be accessed by selecting **Edit > Default Settings** in any view in which text can be created. See “Default Settings vs Preferences” on page 56.

The default settings for Rich Text determine what these objects look like when they are first created. Text Style Defaults determine

the appearance of text associated with things like dimensions and object labels.


Text Style Defaults

Select “Text Style” from the list in the **Default Settings** dialog and click the **Edit** button to open the **Saved Text Style Defaults** dialog.



The **Text Style Defaults** dialog allows you to specify the attributes of the various Text Styles in use in the current file. See “Text Styles” on page 427.

Rich Text Defaults


The **Rich Text Defaults** dialog is similar to the **Rich Text Specification** dialog. See “Rich Text Specification Dialog” on page 420.

Text Lines with Arrows  use the same default layer as Rich Text, so by default they have the same color, line weight and line style. See “Layers” on page 73.

Arrow Defaults

The settings in the **Arrow Defaults** dialog determine the initial settings for arrows drawn using the **Text Line with Arrow**  and **Line With Arrow**  tools. These settings also determine the initial appearance of arrows when they are added to CAD lines, arcs, and polylines.


The **Arrow Defaults** dialog looks almost the same as the Arrow panel of the **Line/Polyline Specification** dialog. See “Arrow Panel” on page 435


 Avoid typing any text in the Rich Text Defaults dialog unless you want it to be present in all text objects you create.

Fonts and Alphabets

Home Designer Suite allows you to use any font found in your Windows Fonts directory.

International Alphabets

The **Rich Text**  tool supports unicode alphabets and characters. In order to use a unicode alphabet or characters, the appropriate language support must be installed on your computer.

Special characters can be added to any **Rich Text**  object by:

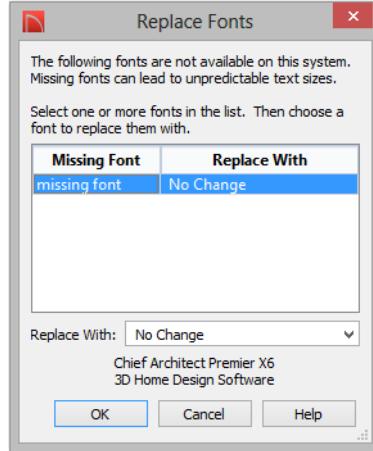
- Copying and pasting the character from another application;

- Copying and pasting the character from the Windows Character Map;
- Typing the keystroke associated with the character.

See “Copying and Pasting Text” on page 425.

Missing Fonts

If you open a plan file that uses a font that is not installed on the current computer, the program will give you an opportunity to replace it in the **Replace Fonts** dialog.



The table lists all missing fonts and how they will be replaced.

- Click on a font name in the list to select it. Use the Shift or Ctrl key to select multiple fonts. See “Shift and Ctrl Select” on page 87.
- Select a replacement font from the **Replace With** drop-down list, or leave “No Change” as the selection to maintain the file’s association with the missing fonts.
- A preview of the selected font displays below the **Replace Width** list.

If you do not plan to return the file to the computer where it was created, you may want to replace missing fonts with the fonts you normally use. On the other hand, if you do intend to return the file, you may prefer to not replace any missing fonts.

The Text Tools



Select **CAD> Text** to access the **Text Tools**. These tools are available in floor plan view only.



The **Rich Text** tool is used to create text objects.



The **Text Line with Arrow** tool is used to connect text and another object with an arrow. See “Text Arrows” on page 426.



The **Text with Arrow** tool places a Rich Text object with an arrow attached.

Creating Text

Text can be created in floor plan view only.

Once created, text can be selected and edited in a variety of ways. See “Editing Text” on page 423.

To create Rich Text

1. Select **CAD> Text> Rich Text** .

2. Type or paste the desired text into the Text Field.
3. Use the options to change the font, style and size of any portion of the text.

Note: If you do not type anything in the Text Field, a text object will not be created when you click outside of it.

You can also create lines with arrows connecting the text that you create to items in the drawing. See “Text Arrows” on page 426.

Displaying Text


As with other types of objects, the display of Text objects is controlled in the **Display Options** dialog. All Text objects, including Text Lines with Arrows, are located on the “Text” layer. See “Display Options Dialog” on page 75.


Text objects can only be displayed in floor plan view.

The display attributes of each individual text object can be controlled independent of the layer it is placed on. See “Rich Text Specification Dialog” on page 420.

Rich Text Specification Dialog



The **Rich Text Specification** dialog opens if you select the **Rich Text**  tool and then click once in the drawing area.

You can also open this dialog by selecting a **Rich Text**  object, then clicking the **Open Object** edit button.

The **Rich Text Specification** dialog is similar to the **Rich Text Defaults** dialog but affects the selected text rather than all subsequently created text objects. See “Text Defaults” on page 417.

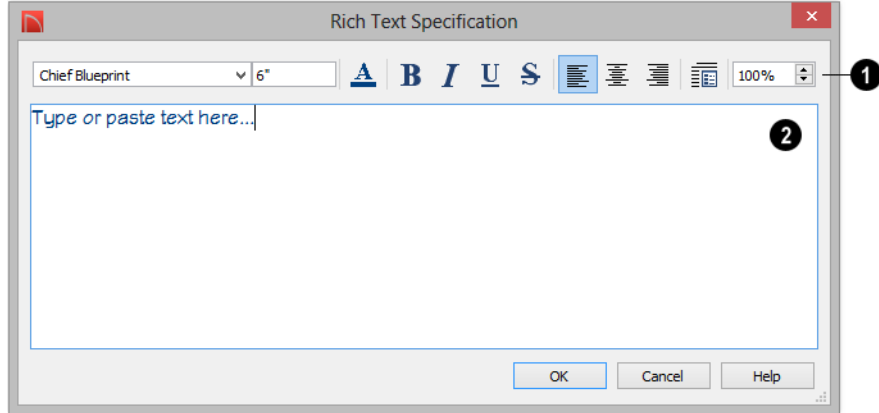
Text Panel

The settings on the Text panel allow you to type the selected Rich Text object’s content and control many aspects of its appearance, including its font, size, color and style.

You can specify the appearance of the text before typing, and can also select and change the attributes of all or portions of the text content after it is typed. To change text that already exists, simply highlight it using the






mouse and/or the Shift + arrow keys and then make any needed changes to its attributes.





Note: If you do not type anything in the text field on this panel when creating a new object, no object will be created when you click OK. On the other hand, if you remove the text from an existing object and click OK, an empty text box will result.



- 1 Use the options on the Edit Bar, which displays above the Text Entry field, to change the font, style and size of the text.

Select the desired options before typing to affect the text as it is typed, or select some or all of the text and then specify which options to apply to it.

- Select a **Font** from the drop-down list.
- Specify the **Text Size** in drawing units.
- Click the **Color**  button to specify the color of the selected or subsequently typed text. See “Select Color Dialog” on page 370.
- Click the **Bold**  button to specify text as bold.
- Click the **Italic**  button to specify text as italic.
- Click the **Underline**  button to specify text as underlined.
- Click the **Strikethrough**  button to selected or specify text as stricken-through.

- Click the **Align Left** , **Align Center** , or **Align Right**  button to specify the how text is aligned.
- Click the **Paragraph Options**  button to specify the selected paragraph’s alignment, spacing and bullets or numbering in the **Paragraph Options** dialog.
- Specify the **Zoom** factor of the selected text by typing a percentage value in the text field or clicking the up/down arrows. This setting only affects the text as it appears in this dialog.

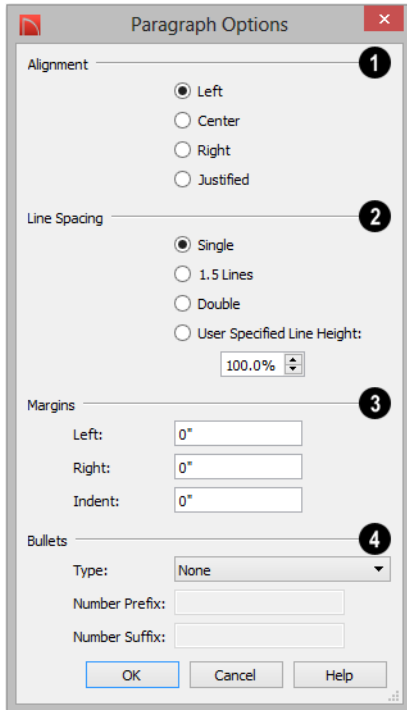
Note: Some fonts cannot be drawn at certain zoom factors. When this is the case, the appearance of the text will not change.

- 2 Type or paste text in the Text Entry field. See “Copy, Cut and Paste” on page 425.

Right-click in the Text Entry field to access a contextual menu from which you can select Undo, Redo, Cut, Copy, Paste and Select All. See “Contextual Menus” on page 27.

To edit text in the entry field, click and drag to highlight any portion of it and then use the tools on the Edit Bar as needed.


Paragraph Options Dialog



- 1 Specify the **Alignment** of the selected paragraph(s). See “Aligning Text” on page 425.
- 2 Specify the **Line Spacing** of the selected paragraph(s).
- Click the radio button beside **Single**, **1.5 Lines**, **Double** or **User Specified**.

- If you select **User Specified Line Height**, type the desired height for each line of text in the selected paragraph(s). For best results, this value should be at least as much as the largest character size used in the selected paragraph(s).
- 3 Specify the appearance of the side **Margins** of the selected paragraph(s), as measured in from edges of the text box. Only positive Margin values can be used.
- Specify the **Indent**, which is measured from the left side margin. A negative value can be used if a left Margin has been specified.
- 4 Specify the appearance of **Bullets** and numbering in the selected paragraph(s).
- Select the desired bullet, numbered, or lettered **Type** from the drop-down list.
- Specify the **Number Prefix**, which are any characters that you would like to display before the selected paragraph’s number or letter. Does not affect paragraphs using circle or square bullets.
- Specify the **Number Suffix**, which are any characters that you would like to display after the selected paragraph’s number or letter and before its actual text. Does not affect paragraphs using circle or square bullets.

Text Specification Dialog

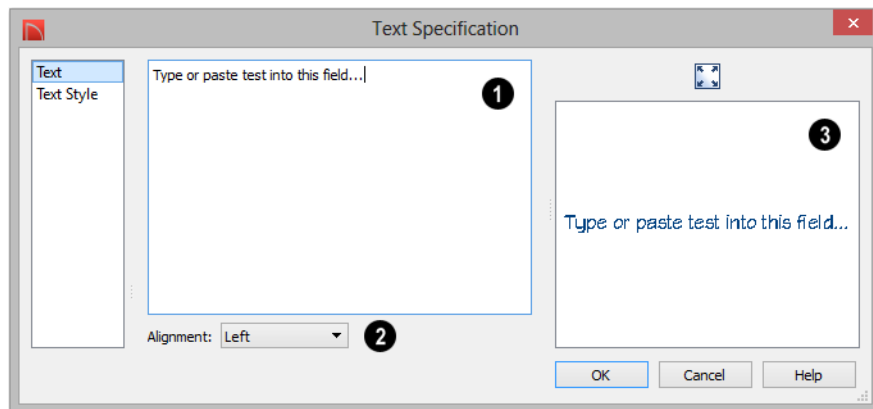
 The **Text Specification** dialog opens if you select a Room Label or a simple **Text** object in a legacy plan file created in Version 8 or prior and click the **Open Object** edit button. See “Compatibility with Other Programs” on page 38.

Settings in the **Text Specification** dialog can also be found in other dialogs in the program, including the **Room Label Specification** and the **Dimension Defaults** dialogs.

Text Panel

The settings on the Text panel allow you to type the selected Text object’s content. Text

cannot be added to a selected Room Label, however.



1 Enter text in the **Text Entry** field. This field is not available if the selected object is a Room Label. See “Room Labels” on page 149.

2 Select an **Alignment** option from the drop-down list to apply to the text.

3 A preview of the selected text object displays on the right.

Text Style Panel

The Text Style panel is available for a variety of objects in the program and control the appearance of the selected object’s text. See “Text Style Panel” on page 428.

Editing Text


Once created, **Rich Text**  objects can be

selected individually or as a group and edited using the edit handles and the edit toolbar



buttons Individual text objects can also be edited in the **Rich Text Specification** dialog. See “Rich Text Specification Dialog” on page 420.

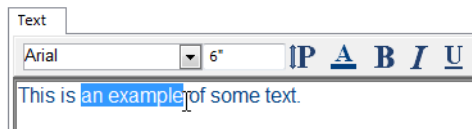
Editing Text Attributes

Most text attributes, including the font, size, style, and the content itself, are edited in the **Rich Text Specification** dialog.

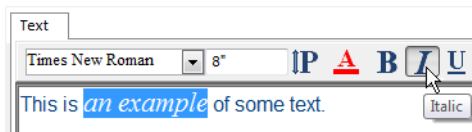
In order to edit the attributes of an existing **Rich Text**  object, you must select some or all of the text before making changes. See “Text Panel” on page 420.

To edit Rich Text attributes

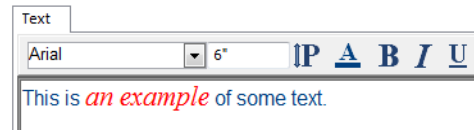
1. Select a **Rich Text**  object and click the **Open Object**  edit button.
2. On the Text panel of the **Rich Text Specification** dialog, click and drag to select some or all of the text typed into the Text field.




3. With some or all of the text selected, change any of the attributes available along the top of the panel, including the font, size, color, and style.

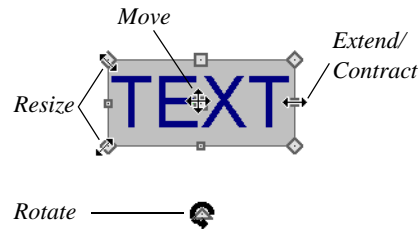


4. As changes are made, the selected text updates. Only the selected text is modified.





Using the Mouse

A selected **Rich Text**  object has the same edit handles as other box-based objects. See “Editing Box-Based Objects” on page 98.




As a text box’s width is made narrower or wider using an edit handle, its height may increase or decrease so that none of the text becomes hidden. The opposite is not true, however: a text box’s height cannot be resized smaller than the height of the rows of text it currently contains.

Using the Edit Tools

A selected **Rich Text**  or **Text**  object can be edited in a variety of ways using the buttons on the edit toolbar. See “The Edit Toolbar” on page 26.

Resizing Text





The default character height of **Rich Text**  objects can be specified as can the character height for individual objects, in their specification dialogs. See “Text Defaults” on page 417.

Scaling Text

As with the size of other objects, text size is subject to the current drawing scale specified in the **Page Setup** dialog. See “Drawing Sheet Setup Dialog” on page 479.

Aligning Text

Text can be aligned in a couple of ways.

- The text content of a text object can be aligned to the left, right, center or justified in the **Rich Text Specification** dialog. See “Text Panel” on page 420.
- The text content of a text object can be also be aligned by clicking the **Align Left** , **Align Right** , **Center** , or **Justify**  edit button.

Copy, Cut and Paste

Copy, Cut and Paste of text into and out of the **Rich Text Specification** dialog can be accomplished using keyboard hotkeys:

- Press **Ctrl + X** to Cut the selected text and save it to the system clipboard.
- Press **Ctrl + C** to Copy the selected text and copy it to the system clipboard.
- Press **Ctrl + V** to paste your last cut or copied selection in a new text object.

For more, see “Copying and Pasting Objects” on page 81.

Copy, Cut and Paste use the system clipboard, making it possible to transfer text between text objects, between Home Designer Suite files, from a plan into another application, or vice versa.

Copying and Pasting Text

The Copy, Cut and Paste commands use the system clipboard, making it possible to transfer text between text objects, between Home Designer Suite files, from a plan into another application such as a text editor or spreadsheet program, or vice versa. See “Copying and Pasting Objects” on page 81.

All or selected portions of the Materials List can also be copied and pasted into a text object, as well as into a word processing or spreadsheet program. See “Materials Lists” on page 491.

Cut, Copy, and Paste can also be accessed from the Edit menu of many applications, including Home Designer Suite. These menu commands are not available when the text

specification dialogs are open, but you can use the associated hotkeys.

To Copy, Cut and Paste text

1. On the Text panel of either text specification dialog or in another program altogether, highlight the text you wish to cut, copy or paste.
2. Press **Ctrl + X** to **Cut** the selected text out of its original location and save it to the system clipboard.
3. Press **Ctrl + C** to **Copy** the selected text to the system clipboard without removing it from its original location.
4. Open the text object or a file in another application and click to place your cur-

sor in the Text field, writing area, or spreadsheet cell.


5. Press **Ctrl + V** to **Paste** the copied text at the location of your cursor.


Bear in mind that when text is copied and pasted, its formatting is not always retained. The results depend on the program or type of text object in which the content was created as well as the type of text object into which it is pasted.

Pasting into Rich Text



Text pasted into a **Rich Text** object from another source will retain most of its custom formatting.

Text pasted into a **Rich Text**  object from a spreadsheet program retains basic column and row information. Column width cannot be adjusted; however, as you add or remove text from a cell, row height will increase or decrease to accommodate your changes.

The background colors of two or more cells copied from a spreadsheet application will be retained if pasted in to **Rich Text** ; however, once pasted background color cannot be edited.

Text Arrows

Text arrows, which are simply CAD lines with arrows drawn on the “Text” layer, can be used to connect text objects to details of interest in your drawing. See “Draw Lines” on page 431.

Text arrows can be snapped together to form open or closed polylines. If two lines with arrows meet within the bounding box of a text object, however, they will not join. This allows you to attach multiple, separate text arrows to a single text object. See “Editing Line Based Objects” on page 88.

Lines with arrows can be independent or attached to other objects. Arrows attach to closed polyline-based objects along their edges, but can attach to an architectural object anywhere within its 2D symbol in floor plan view. If an arrow is attached to text or another object, deleting either the text or the object will also delete the arrow.

Text with Arrow




The **Text with Arrow** tool places a text object with an arrow already attached. This arrow can be selected and edited like any other arrow.


Text Line with Arrow





Text Lines with Arrow can be attached to text, CAD and architectural objects by selecting **CAD>**

Text> Text Line with Arrow  and then clicking and dragging to draw a line. There is no limit to the number of text lines with arrows that can be attached to an object.

The endpoints of **Text Lines with**

Arrows  can be joined to form polylines with corners that can be adjusted using the edit handles. See “Polylines” on page 438.

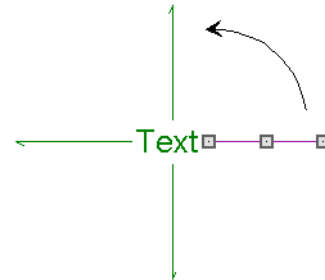
A **Text Line with Arrow**  behaves like a **Line With Arrow**  with one exception: Text Lines with Arrow are initially placed on the “Text” layer, not the “CAD, Default”. See “Layers” on page 73.

Auto Positioning Arrows

There are four auto position locations on a text object: one at the midpoint of each side.

The following image illustrates the behavior of auto positioning. When the head of the line with arrow is moved, the tail of the

arrow snaps to different auto position locations on the text object, maintaining its connection.



Text Styles

In Home Designer Suite, a Text Style is a set of attributes assigned to any object that displays text, such as Dimensions and object labels.

Note: Because of its ability to use multiple attributes in the same object, Rich Text does not use Text Styles. See “Rich Text Specification Dialog” on page 420.

There are three Text Styles in Home Designer Suite. You can edit these Text Styles to suit your needs in the **Text Style Defaults** dialog

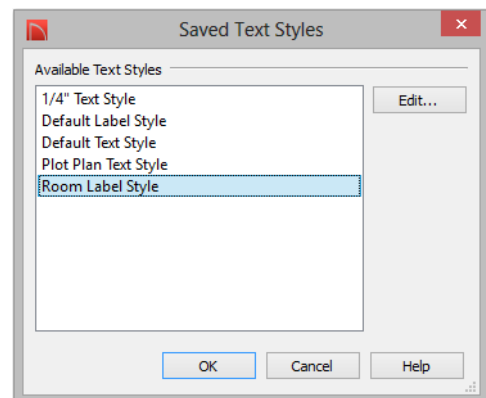
- The Default Label Style affects the appearance of labels for objects such as doors and windows;
- The Default Text Style controls the appearance of legacy Text objects, and dimension line labels, unless specified otherwise.
- The Default Room Style controls the appearance of room labels.

Text Style Defaults



Select **Edit > Default Settings**, click on “Text Styles” and click **Edit** to open the **Text Style Defaults** dialog. The **Saved Text Style Defaults** dialog will open, allowing you to select which Saved Text Style Defaults you would like to edit.

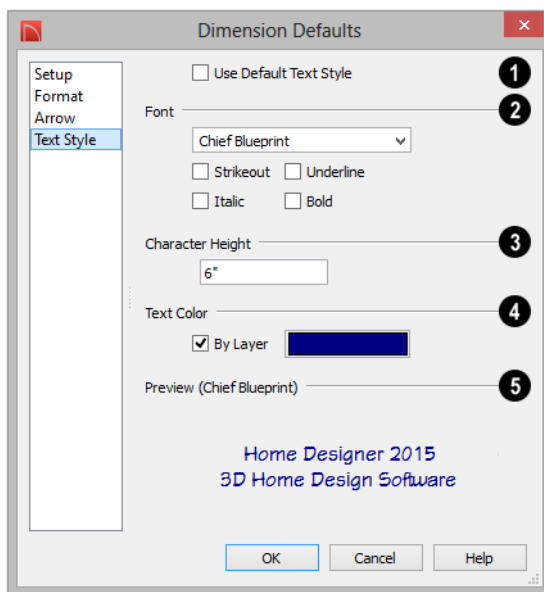
Saved Text Style Dialog



- Select the **Name** of one of them from the drop-down list. This is the currently selected Text Style.
- Click the **Edit** button to open the defaults dialog for the selected Text Style so that you can edit it.
- Click **OK** to close the **Saved Text Style Defaults** dialog and save any changes you made in the defaults dialog.
- Click **Cancel** to close the **Saved Text Style Defaults** dialog without saving any changes that you may have made in the defaults dialog.

The settings in the **Text Style Defaults** dialog are similar to those on the Text Style panel of object specification dialogs in the program but affect all objects using that style rather than an individual selected object.

Text Style Panel



- 1 Check **Use Default Text Style** to use the default style for the selected object type, or uncheck this box to enable the settings below and define a custom style.

The settings that follow are only editable when **Use Default Text Style** is unchecked. When it is checked, information about the Text Style that is assigned to the selected object displays for reference.

- 2 Specify the attributes of the selected Text Style's **Font**.
 - Select a font from the drop-down list.
 - The text styles **Bold**, **Underline**, **Italic**, and **Strikeout** are available. Check any of the boxes to apply that style.
- 3 Specify the **Character Height** of text using the selected Text Style.

- Enter the **Character Height** in drawing units. This height is subject to the current drawing scale.
- 4 Specify the selected Text Style's **Text Color**. When Use Custom Text Style is not selected above, a Text Color does not display here for reference.
- When **By Layer** is checked, text uses the line color assigned to the layer that the object it is assigned to is located on. See "Displaying Objects" on page 74.
- Uncheck **By Layer**, then click the **Color** bar to select a different color. See "Select Color Dialog" on page 370.
- 5 A preview of the Text Style currently assigned to the selected object displays here.

Object Labels

Object labels can display in floor plan view for a variety of different object types.

- Automatic Labels provide basic information about the object, such as its type, size, or name.
- You can create a custom label for an object in its specification dialog using text. See "Label Panel" on page 429.

Automatic Labels

Most objects that can display labels have an Automatic Label created by the program that states basic information about it. When **Automatic Labels** is selected in the object's specification dialog, this is usually the label that will be used; however:

- If a user-defined label is specified in the object's defaults dialog, that label will be used instead of the Automatic Label.

- Fixtures and appliances inserted into cabinets do not have labels of their own.

Displaying Labels



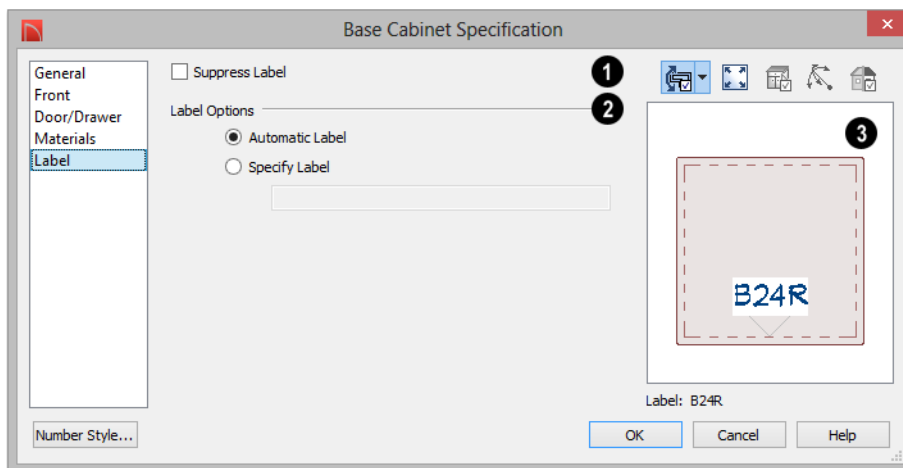
The display of object labels can be controlled by layer in the **Layer Display Options** dialog. Label layer names begin with the object type, followed by the word **Label**: for example, cabinet labels are located on the "Cabinets, Labels" layer. See "Display Options Dialog" on page 75.

You can choose to suppress the label for an individual object on the Label panel of its specification dialog.

Object labels use the "Default Label Style" Text Style. See "Text Styles" on page 427.

Label Panel

The Label panel is found in the specification and defaults dialogs for a variety of different objects.



1 Most objects have a **Suppress Label** option. Check this box to prevent the selected object's label from displaying in floor plan view.

Bay, Box and Bow Windows and Mulled Window units have several settings for controlling **Multiple Component** labels. See “Window Labels” on page 183.

- Select **Suppress All Labels** to display no label in floor plan view. Individual components are counted in the Materials List.
- Select **Show Component Labels** to produce labels for each component in floor plan view. Individual components are counted in the Materials List.
- Select **Show Single Label for Entire Unit** to produce one label for the unit and suppress component labels. When this option is selected, the settings that follow on the Label panel become enabled.

These settings also affect how Bay, Box and Bow Windows and Muller Window units are

counted in the Materials List. See “Window Labels” on page 183 and “Displaying Muller Units” on page 182.

2 The **Label Options** control what information is contained in the label. See “Displaying 3D Views” on page 386.

- Select **Automatic Labels** to use the default label for the selected object. See “Automatic Labels” on page 429.
- Select **Specify Label** to replace the selected object's Automatic Label with whatever you type in the text field below.

When Specify Label is chosen, the selected object's Automatic Label initially populates the text field

3 In most specification dialogs, a preview of the selected object displays here. In the preview pane, labels can be seen in Plan View only. See “Dialog Preview Panes” on page 29.

CAD Objects

The CAD Tools are used to add information to 2D views of your model. CAD objects do not affect 3D objects or display in camera views or overviews, but they can be used to add details to floor plan view.

CAD objects are edited much like other objects in Home Designer Suite. See “Editing Objects” on page 85.

Chapter Contents

- The CAD Drawing Tools
- Line Specification Dialog
- Arc Specification Dialog
- CAD Circle/Oval/Ellipse Specification Dialog
- Polylines
- Polyline Specification Dialog
- Box Specification Dialog
- Displaying CAD Objects

The CAD Drawing Tools



The CAD drawing tools can be accessed by selecting **CAD> CAD** or by clicking the **CAD Tools** button.





The CAD drawing tools can be accessed by selecting **CAD> CAD** or by clicking the **CAD Tools** button.

Draw Lines



Select **CAD> Draw Line** or **CAD> Draw Line With Arrow** to draw lines with or without arrows.


To draw a line or line with arrow

1. Select **CAD> CAD> Draw Line**  or **Draw Line With Arrow** .
2. Click and drag in the drawing area to draw a line.
3. Continue drawing lines as needed, then select another tool when you are finished.


Once a line is created, it can be edited. You can snap the ends of lines together to form

polylines. See “Editing Line Based Objects” on page 88 and “Line Specification Dialog” on page 434.

Draw Arc

 Select **CAD > CAD> Draw Arc** to draw an arc.


To draw an arc

1. Select **CAD> Arcs> Draw Arc** , then click at the arc’s start point.
2. Move the pointer along the desired curve while dragging to curve the arc.
3. Release the mouse button at the end point to complete the arc.

Once an arc is created, it can be edited. See “Editing Arc Based Objects” on page 90 and “Arc Specification Dialog” on page 436.

You can snap the ends of arcs together with other arcs or with lines to form polylines. See “Polylines” on page 438.


Draw Polyline

 Select **CAD > CAD> Draw Polyline** to draw a rectangular polyline in either of two ways:

- Click in the drawing area to place a 24” x 24” square polyline at that location.
- Click and drag from corner to corner to draw a rectangle of any size.


Once drawn, a rectangular polyline can be edited into any shape. See “Editing Closed-Polyline Based Objects” on page 96 and “Polyline Specification Dialog” on page 438.


Draw Box

 Select **CAD > CAD> Draw Box** to draw a box.

CAD boxes are drawn from corner to corner, forming a rectangle that can then be edited. Unlike a polyline, a box always has four 90 degree corners. See “Editing Box-Based Objects” on page 98 and “Box Specification Dialog” on page 440.


Draw Circle

 Select **CAD > CAD> Draw Circle** to draw a circle.

Draw a **Circle**  by dragging across the diameter, in any direction.

If a small circle is needed, draw a larger circle and then resize it. See “Editing Circles, Ovals and Ellipses” on page 102 and “CAD Circle/Oval/Ellipse Specification Dialog” on page 437.


Ovals

 Select **CAD > CAD> Draw Oval** to draw an oval, which is a four-arc approximation of an ellipse.

Draw an oval, by clicking and dragging at an angle to define its maximum height and width.


Once an oval is created, it can be edited. See “Editing Circles, Ovals and Ellipses” on page 102 and “CAD Circle/Oval/Ellipse Specification Dialog” on page 437.

Ellipses

 An **Ellipse** is a set of points with a constant combined distance from two

points called foci. An ellipse looks like a stretched circle, or a circular surface viewed at an angle.

To draw an ellipse, select **CAD> CAD>**

Draw Ellipse  and drag at an angle to define its maximum height and width.

Once an ellipse is created, it can be edited. See “Editing Circles, Ovals and Ellipses” on page 102 and “CAD Circle/Oval/Ellipse Specification Dialog” on page 437.

Splines




A Spline is a curve that passes smoothly through a set of points.

Select **CAD> CAD> Draw Spline** to draw connected line segments that form a spline.

Once created, a spline can be selected and edited. See “Editing Spline Based Objects” on page 100 and “Polyline Specification Dialog” on page 438.

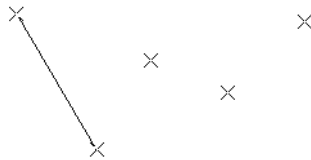
To use the Spline tool

1. Select **CAD> CAD> Spline** .
2. Draw the first spline segment just as you would a line. A single spline segment looks identical to a line.

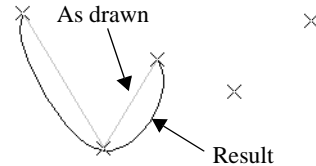
You may need to turn off **Angle Snaps**



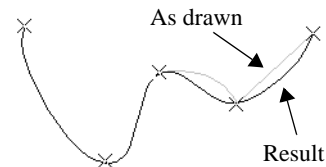
to draw freely. See “Angle Snaps” on page 79.



3. Draw the second segment from the end of the first at a different angle.



4. As soon as two straight spline segments connect end-to-end, the straight segments become a curve that passes through the endpoints defined by the original segments. Each point is called a vertex.
5. Draw a few more segments, connecting each to the free end of a previously drawn segment.
6. Notice as additional segments are drawn that the curvature of the previous segment changes to create a continuous curve between the last three points.



The result is an irregular curve that flows smoothly through each vertex.

You can also form a closed spline by drawing a segment between its two free ends.


Dimension Tools




Select **CAD> Dimensions** to access the Dimension Tools. The **Dimension Tools** can be used with CAD and architectural objects and are discussed in

their own chapter. See “Dimensions” on page 405.

Text Tools

 Select **CAD> Text** to access the Text Tools. The Text Tools are discussed in their own chapter. See “Text” on page 417.

Line Specification Dialog

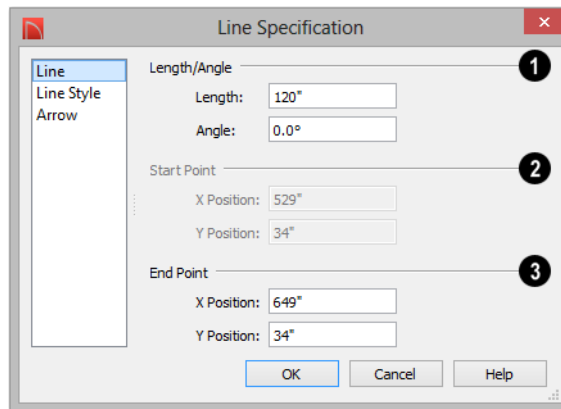
 Select a CAD Line, Line With Arrow, or Text Line With Arrow and click the **Open Object** edit button to open the **Line Specification** dialog.

The settings on the panels in this dialog are found in the specification and defaults dialogs for a variety of different objects in the program.

Line Panel

The information on the Line panel of the **Line Specification** dialog is similar to that

found on the Selected Line panels of various specification dialogs in the program.



- 1 Specify the **Length** and **Angle** of the selected line.
- 2 The **X** and **Y Position** coordinates of the selected line's **Start Point** display for reference but cannot be changed here.

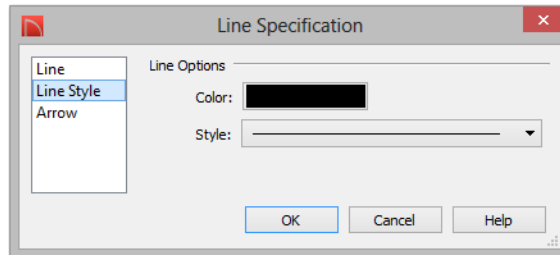
The Start Point can be changed using the line's edit handles, however. See “Editing Line Based Objects” on page 88.

- 3 Specify the **X** and **Y Position** of the selected line's **End Point**.

Line Style Panel

The Line Style panel is found in the specification dialogs for many different

objects. The settings here control the appearance of the lines and/or arcs that make up an object.

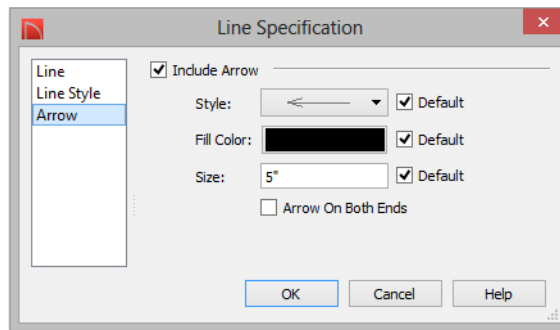


- Click the **Line Color** box to specify a new line color. See “Select Color Dialog” on page 370.
- Click the **Line Style** drop-down list to select from a variety of available line styles.

Arrow Panel


The Arrow panel is available for any line, arc, open polyline, or spline that can have an arrow. The defaults for arrows are set in the **Arrow Defaults** dialog.

Closed polylines and Electrical connections are examples of objects that cannot have arrows.



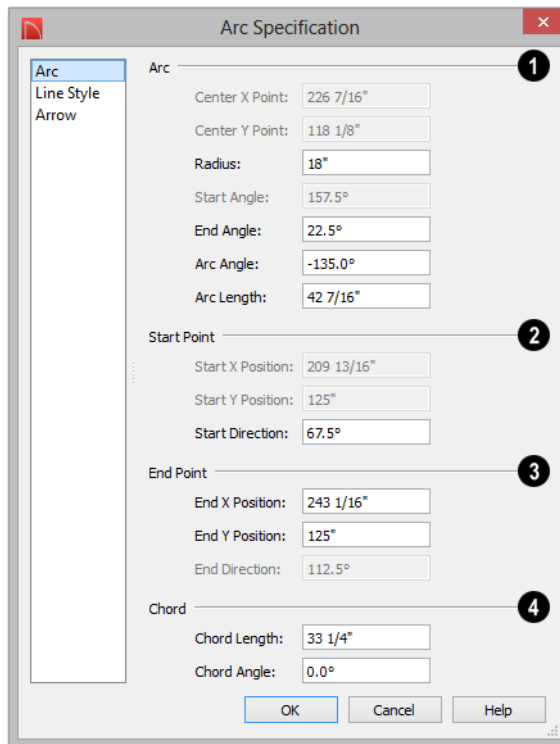
- Check **Include Arrow** to create an arrowhead at the end of the selected line, arc, or open polyline.
- Select an arrowhead **Style** from the drop-down list.
- Click the **Fill Color** box to select a color for the arrowhead to be used if a solid Style is selected. See “Select Color Dialog” on page 370.
- Specify the arrowhead’s **Size**.
- Check the box beside **Arrow On Both Ends** to create a two-headed arrow.
- Place a check in any of the **Default** boxes to restore that setting to the default.

Arc Specification Dialog

 Select an arc and click the **Open Object** edit button to open the **Arc Specification** dialog.

Arc Panel

The settings on the Arc panel are also found on the Selected Arc panels for many objects.



Section	Parameter	Value
Arc (1)	Center X Point:	226 7/16"
	Center Y Point:	118 1/8"
	Radius:	18"
	Start Angle:	157.5°
	End Angle:	22.5°
	Arc Angle:	-135.0°
Start Point (2)	Start X Position:	209 13/16"
	Start Y Position:	125"
	Start Direction:	67.5°
End Point (3)	End X Position:	243 1/16"
	End Y Position:	125"
	End Direction:	112.5°
Chord (4)	Chord Length:	33 1/4"
	Chord Angle:	0.0°

1 These settings define the **Arc**. Some values are listed for reference only and cannot be directly changed here. They can, however, be changed using the edit handles and edit tools. See “Editing Arc Based Objects” on page 90.

- The **Center X and Center Y Points** are the X and Y coordinates of the center of the arc and display for reference. They may update as changes are made to other settings in this dialog.

- **Radius** - Specify the distance between the center of the arc and the arc surface.
 - **Start Angle** - The angle of a line drawn from the arc center to the arc start points. This displays for reference only but may update as changes are made to other settings in this dialog.
 - **End Angle** - Specify the angle of a line drawn from the arc center to the arc end.
 - **Arc Angle** - Specify the angle between the center of the arc and each end.
 - **Arc Length** - Specify the length of the arc along its curve.
- 2 **Start Point** - Specify information about the starting point of the selected arc.
- The **Start X** and **Start Y Position** coordinates display for reference. They may update as changes are made to other settings in this dialog.
 - **Start Direction** - Specify the angle of a tangent line at the start of the arc.
- 3 **End Point** - Specify information about the end point of the selected arc.
- **End X** - Specify the X coordinate for the end of the arc.
 - **End Y** - Specify the Y coordinate for the end of the arc.
 - **End Direction** - The the angle of a tangent line at the end of the arc displays for reference. This displays for reference only but may update as changes are made to other settings in this dialog.
- 4 Define the selected arc's **Chord**, which is the straight line between its start and end points.
- **Chord Length** - The straight line distance between the two ends of the arc.
 - **Chord Angle** - Specify the angle of the chord.

Line Style Panel

For information about the Line Style panel, see “Line Style Panel” on page 434.

Arrow Panel

For information about the Arrow panel, see “Arrow Panel” on page 435.

CAD Circle/Oval/Ellipse Specification Dialog



Select a circle, oval or ellipse and click the **Open Object** edit button to open the **CAD Circle, Oval or Ellipse Specification** dialog.

The **CAD Circle, Oval and Ellipse Specification** dialogs are almost exactly the same.


Line Style Panel

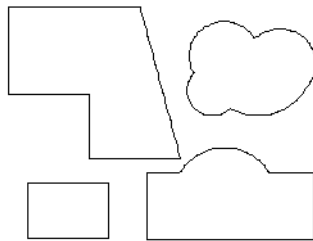
For information about the Line Style panel, see “Line Style Panel” on page 434.

Fill Style Panel

For information about the Fill Style panel, see “Fill Style Panel” on page 439.

Polylines

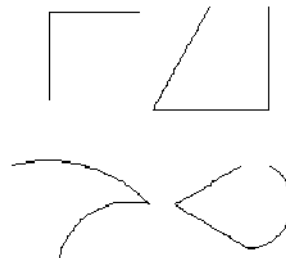
 A polyline consists of two or more line and/or arc segments that are attached at their endpoints. Select **CAD>CAD> Rectangular Polyline**, then click and drag from corner to corner to create a rectangular-shaped, closed polyline. A closed polyline measuring 2' x 2' (600 mm x 600 mm) can also be created by clicking once while the **Rectangular Polyline** tool is active.



Closed Polylines

Polylines can be copied, moved, reshaped, or resized as a single unit.


You can also create a polyline by drawing lines and/or arcs end-to-end, allowing the end of each new object to snap to the end of the previous one. Line- and arc-based objects will only snap together to form a polyline if they are on the same layer and share identical attributes such as color, line style, and arrow specifications. If one end of the polyline is connected to the other, it becomes a closed polyline.



Open Polylines

Once created, polylines can be edited in a variety of ways. See “Editing Open Polyline Based Objects” on page 93 and “Editing Closed-Polyline Based Objects” on page 96.

Polyline Specification Dialog

 Select an open polyline, closed polyline, spline or Electrical connection and click the **Open Object** edit button to open the **Polyline Specification** dialog.

Polyline Panel

The Polyline panel indicates the **Length/Perimeter**, enclosed **Area**, and **Volume** of a

selected polyline and is found in the specification dialogs for open- and closed-polyline-based objects throughout the program.

If the polyline is not closed, the Area and Volume are described as “Not closed”. The Volume of a 2D polyline will always be 0, even if it is closed.

Selected Line Panel

The Selected Line panel is available when the selected edge of the polyline is a line as opposed to an arc. This panel is not available if the selected object is a spline. See “Editing Line Based Objects” on page 88.

Moving the End of a line segment moves the start of the next connected line, if there is one.

This panel is similar to the Line panel of the **Line Specification** dialog. See “Line Panel” on page 434.

Selected Arc Panel

The Selected Arc panel is available when the selected segment of the polyline is an arc as opposed to a line. This panel is not available if the selected object is a spline.

This panel is similar to the Arc panel of the **Arc Specification** dialog. See “Arc Panel” on page 436.

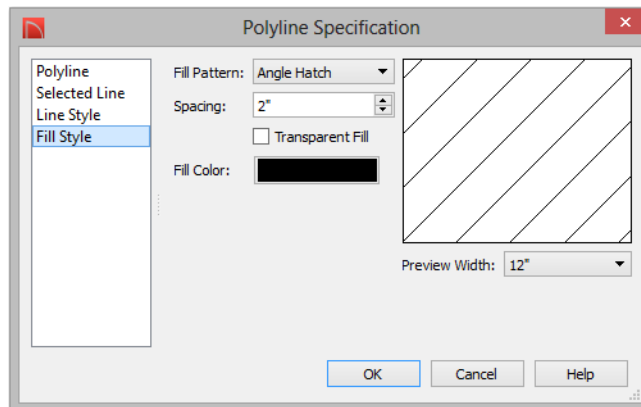
Line Style Panel

This panel is similar to the Line Style panel in the **Line Specification** dialog. See “Line Style Panel” on page 434.

Fill Style Panel

The information on the Fill Style panel for closed polylines is similar to that for many other objects in the program, including closed CAD shapes and a variety of architectural objects.

The Fill Style panel is not available for Electrical Connections as this tool cannot be used to form closed shapes.



Specify the characteristics of the selected object’s fill **Pattern**. When “None” is the selected pattern Type, the rest of these settings are disabled.

- Choose a pattern **Type** from the drop-down list.
- Specify the **Spacing** of the selected fill pattern. Not available for “Solid” fill.

- Check **Transparent Fill** to make the spaces between fill pattern lines transparent, allowing any objects behind the fill pattern to be visible through it. Not available for “Solid” fill.
- **Specify** the **Color** of the lines that make up the fill pattern, or the fill color of “Solid” fill, by clicking the color bar. The layer color is used by default. See “Select Color Dialog” on page 370.
- Choose a **Preview Width** from the drop-down list. This value controls how large an area the preview represents. The selected value indicates the length of each side of the preview in actual plan inches (mm).

A preview of the selected pattern displays to the right. As changes are made to the settings on this panel, the preview will update.

Arrow Panel

The Arrow panel is available for most open polylines and splines and is similar to the Arrow panel of the **Line Specification** dialog. See “Arrow Panel” on page 435.

The Arrow panel is not available for closed polylines or Electrical Connections.

Box Specification Dialog



Select a CAD box and click the **Open Object** edit button to open the **Box Specification** dialog. See “Draw Box” on page 432.

Line Style Panel

For information about the Line Style panel, see “Line Panel” on page 434.

Fill Style Panel

For information about the Fill Style panel, see “Fill Style Panel” on page 439.



Splines




A Spline is a curve that passes smoothly through a set of points. Splines are typically used in situations where there is an irregular curve. A contour line is a typical example. Splines are useful wherever a free-flowing curve is needed.

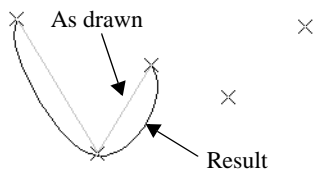
Once created, splines can be selected and edited. See “Editing Spline Based Objects” on page 100 and “Polyline Specification Dialog” on page 438.

To use the Spline tool

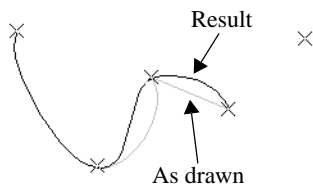
1. Select **CAD> Spline** .
2. Draw the first spline segment just as you would a line. A single spline segment looks identical to a line. You may need to turn off **Angle Snaps**  to draw freely.



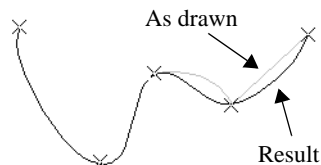
3. Draw the second segment from the end of the first at a different angle. **Object Snaps**  should be on to assure that new segments attach correctly to the ends of previous segments.



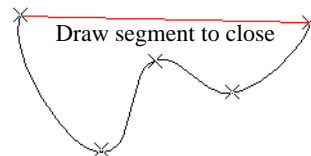
4. As soon as two straight spline segments connect end-to-end, the straight segments become a curve that passes through the endpoints defined by the original segments. Each point is called a vertex.
5. Draw a few more segments, connecting each to the free end of a previously drawn segment.



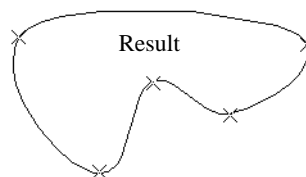
6. Notice as additional segments are drawn that the spline changes the curvature of the previous segment to create a continuous curve between the last three points.



7. Form a closed spline by drawing a segment between its two free ends.



8. The result is an irregular curve that flows smoothly through each vertex.



Spline-based objects will only snap together to form a single spline if they are on the same layer and share identical attributes such as color, line style, and arrow specifications.

Displaying CAD Objects

As with architectural objects, the display of CAD objects is controlled in the **Display Options** dialog. See “Display Options Dialog” on page 75.


CAD objects can be drawn in floor plan view. They are 2D objects only, though, so

they cannot be seen in any view other than the one they are drawn in and are never visible in camera views or overviews. See “Architectural vs CAD Objects” on page 78.

Room boxes can now be arranged into a floor plan.

Placing Room Boxes

In addition or as an alternative to the room boxes created for you by the **Space Planning Assistant**, you can create your own room boxes. To do so, select **Tools>**

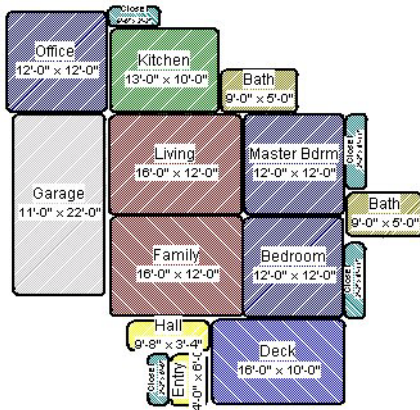
Space Planning , then choose the desired room type from the submenu. Click in floor plan view to place a room box of the selected type at that location.






Displaying Room Boxes

Room boxes and their labels are located on the “Space Planning Boxes” layer. Space Planning Box labels use the Text Style assigned to that layer, as well. See “Displaying Objects” on page 74.


Editing Rooms

Once created, room boxes can be edited in a variety of ways.






- Select room boxes using the **Select Objects**  tool just like other objects in Home Designer Suite. See “Selecting Objects” on page 86.
- Room boxes can be resized, rotated, and rearranged. See “Editing Box-Based Objects” on page 98.
- Try to line up the rooms so that they are just touching. Excessive overlaps may cause your rooms to form incorrectly. Closets are the exception. You can overlap a room with a closet, or place inside another room box.
- Rooms can be copied and pasted using the **Copy/Paste**  edit button and deleted using the **Delete**  edit button.
- Select **Tools> Space Planning**  to access the room box tools and place additional room boxes in your plan. Select a tool and click in the plan to place a room box of that type.
- Select **Tools> Space Planning> Toggle Room Boxes**  to hide or show the room boxes.

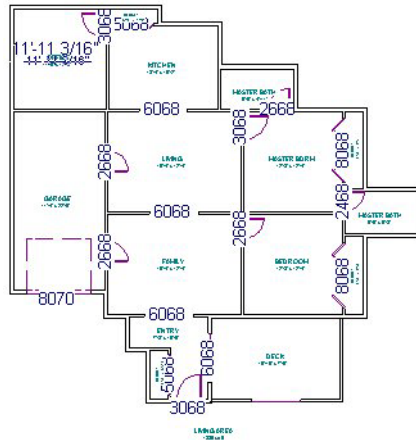
Build House

When the rooms are in place, select **Tools> Space Planning> Build House**  to convert the rooms into a building model. Walls and doors are inserted between the rooms that you arranged.

Multiple Floors

If you specified a two-story house, follow these steps:

1. Edit and arrange the room boxes on Floor 1 as desired.
2. Select **Tools> Space Planning> Build House**  tool to create the walls on the first floor.
3. Go **Up One Floor**  and notice that the positions of the walls on Floor 1 display in red as a reference.
4. Arrange the rooms on Floor 2 as desired, using the reference display as a guide.
5. On the second floor, select **Tools> Space Planning> Build House**  to complete the second floor.



When you Build House, the “Space Planning Boxes” layer is automatically turned off. The room boxes that you created are not deleted, however.

Plan Check

Plan Check checks the floor of your plan currently shown on screen for anything that appears to violate common building practices. Plan Check may not find all the problems in a plan, but does it point out areas that may need improvement.




As your plan evolves, a number of things that may become incorrect can be fixed using Plan Check. For example, doors that change from exterior to interior as you add new rooms are redrawn without the threshold line that marks an exterior door. A cabinet, fixture or furniture item that is against a wall because the wall was moved

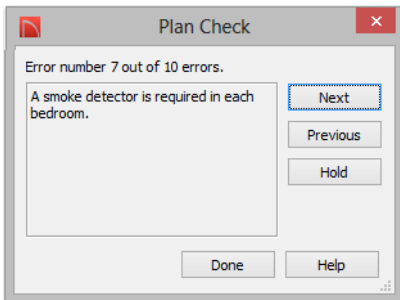
into it, as opposed to the item moving, are attached to the wall.



Disclaimer: The Plan Check feature in Home Designer Suite compares your plan with common building practices. Plan Check does not claim to detect all building code and design requirements. Always have your plans checked by a licensed professional before beginning actual construction.

To run Plan Check, select **Tools> Plan Check** .

Plan Check Dialog



- 1 The current error number, along with the total number of errors found.
 - 2 A description of the current error displays here.
 - 3 Options for navigating Plan Check are found on the right side.
- Click **Next** to ignore the current error and proceed to the next.
 - Click **Previous** to return to the previous error.
 - Click **Hold** to suspend Plan Check so you can fix the current error. Select **Tools> Checks> Plan Check** again and the check starts where it left off.
 - Click **Done** to terminate Plan Check.


Potential plan errors found are usually highlighted in floor plan view. To ensure the highlighted item is on-screen, make sure the entire plan is shown in the window before



you run **Plan Check** .

If this dialog obscures the floor plan view, drag its title bar to move it. It remembers its new position and displays there the next time

Plan Check  is run.

Room Types

Plan Check  can do a much better job of checking for problems if it knows what the rooms in your plan are to be used for, so you should assign a Room Type to each room in your plan. See “Room Types” on page 147.

The first time **Plan Check**  runs in a plan, it automatically assigns a room type to as many undesigned rooms as it can. Some rooms are determined by their size and shape, and others by their contents. For example, a shelf in a small room indicates a closet; a stove or refrigerator indicates a kitchen; or a bed, a bedroom. If the program cannot assign a room type, **Plan Check**  highlights it and suggests that you do so manually.

Loan Calculator



Select **Tools> Loan Calculator** to open the **Loan Calculator** dialog. This dialog lets you calculate different aspects of

a loan for the current plan based on a variety of parameters.

The screenshot shows a 'Loan Calculator' dialog box with the following fields and values:

- Calculate:** Monthly Payment (dropdown), Reset (button)
- Result:** The Monthly Payment is: \$665.30, = (button)
- Required Fields:**
 - Loan Amount: \$100,000.00
 - Term: 30.0 yrs.
 - Interest Rate: 7.0%
 - Monthly Payment: \$665.30
- Optional Fields:**
 - Property Taxes: \$0.00 / yr.
 - Homeowner's Insurance: \$0.00 / yr.
 - Private Mortgage Insurance (PMI): \$0.00 / yr.
 - Other Fees: \$0.00 / yr.
- Buttons:** Done, Help

1 Specify what aspect of the loan you would like to calculate from the **Calculate** drop-down list:

- Monthly Payment
- Loan Amount
- Term
- Interest Rate

2 The calculation **Result**, based on the information you provide, displays here.

If you make changes to any of the fields in the dialog, click the = button to refresh the **Result**.

3 The **Required Fields** are the same as the options in the **Calculate** drop-down list. The option selected under **Calculate** will be inactive under **Required Fields**.

- Specify the desired **Loan Amount**.
- Specify the desired **Term**, in years.
- Specify the desired **Interest Rate**.
- Specify the desired **Monthly Payment**.

4 The **Optional Fields** allow you to include additional information in your loan calculation.

- Specify the expected **Property Taxes** per year.
- Specify the expected **Homeowner's Insurance** cost per year.
- Specify the expected **Private Mortgage Insurance (PMI)** cost per year.
- Specify the cost of any expected **Other Fees**.

When Monthly Payment is calculated, each Optional value is divided by twelve (months) and then added to the total payment.

When a Calculate option other than Monthly Payment is selected, these values are divided by twelve (months) and then subtracted from the specified Monthly Payment value. The result, which does not display, is then used to determine the Loan Amount, Term or Interest Rate.

Pictures, Images, and Walkthroughs

Home Designer Suite uses picture files in a variety of ways to enhance your drawings.

The Library Browser contains images of real world objects like plants, vehicles, and people that can display in 3D views.

Picture files can also be imported into Home Designer Suite and shown in most views.

You can save any view using a variety of picture file formats. In addition, Home Designer Suite allows you to create virtual tours that can be saved as **.avi** files, shared with others, and played back later.

Chapter Contents

- Picture Files vs Pictures and Image Objects
- Images
- Displaying Images
- Editing Images
- Image Specification Dialog
- Pictures
- Picture File Box Specification Dialog
- Metafiles
- Metafile Box Specification Dialog
- PDF Files
- PDF Box Specification Dialog
- Displaying Pictures, Metafiles, and PDF Boxes
- Editing Pictures, Metafiles, and PDF Boxes
- Copy Region as Picture
- 3D Backdrops
- Walkthroughs

Picture Files vs Pictures and Image Objects

In common computer language, picture files, pictures and images are more or less synonymous. In the Home Designer Suite environment, however, there are some notable differences between these terms.

In Home Designer Suite, a two dimensional image file such as a .bmp, .jpg, .gif, or .png is referred to as a picture file or an image file. Examples of these files are saved on most computers and can be opened in a variety of applications.

A Picture, on the other hand, is a file that has been imported into the program. Pictures can be imported into floor plan view and Elevation views. They are two-dimensional

only and do not display in camera views or overviews.

An Image object is also based on a picture file, but it does display in both 2D and 3D views. Images have 3D width and height data associated with them, as well as a 2D symbol which displays in floor plan view.



Picture files have additional uses in Home Designer Suite, as well:

- Backdrops are picture files that display behind 3D views. See “3D Backdrops” on page 387.
- Textures are picture files that realistically represent materials in 3D views. See “About Materials” on page 361.

Images

Images add realistic detail to 3D views without adding many surfaces to the model. For example, a tree image with a single surface can be used instead of a tree symbol with thousands, dramatically improving realism without compromising drawing time.

There are two types of Images in Home Designer Suite:

- **Images**  rotate so that they always face the camera in 3D views.
- **Billboard Images**  do not rotate to face the camera. An example of when this may be useful is an image of a trellis, which might look awkward when facing a camera from a side view.

Placing Images



A selection of Images are available in the Library Browser. Select one and click in a floor plan view, camera view or overview to place it. See “Placing Library Objects” on page 354.



Creating Images



Custom Images can be added to the Library Browser, as well as created in plan files. Home Designer Suite can use any image with a *.bmp, *.jpg, *.png, *.gif, *.tif, *.pcx, or *.tga extension.

Generally, .png files work best as Images because this format has good compression and allows for the Image to contain transparency information.

To create an Image in floor plan view

1. In floor plan view, select **Build> Image> Create Image**  or **Billboard Image**  to open the **Image Specification** dialog. See “Image Specification Dialog” on page 452.
2. On the Image panel:
 - Click the **Browse** button to select a picture file on your computer or enter the path to a valid picture file in the **Image File** field.
 - Select a **2D Plan Symbol** from the drop-down list or click the **Library** button and select a symbol from the library. The selected symbol represents the image in floor plan view. See “Image Panel” on page 453.
 - Specify the **Size** and **Position** of the image.
3. Specify transparency information on the Transparency panel.
4. Click OK to close the **Image Specification** dialog.

5. Click to place the new Image in floor plan view.

To create an image in the Library Browser

1. In the Library Browser, right-click on an unlocked folder.
2. Select **New> Image** from the contextual menu to open the **Image Specification** dialog.
3. Browse to the image file you want to add and select your other options. See “Image Specification Dialog” on page 452.
4. Once created, the image is listed in the library folder that you right-clicked on. Size and other data is saved.

Using Paste Image



You can also import an image by first copying it to the Windows Clipboard, then navigating to a Home Designer Suite window and selecting **Edit> Paste> Paste** from the menu. See “Paste Special” on page 83.

Displaying Images



The display of images in floor plan and 3D views is controlled in the **Display Options** dialog. See “Displaying Objects” on page 74.

Images are placed on the “Images” layer.

In Floor Plan View


In floor plan view, most images are typically represented by an Image  symbol. You can specify a different symbol to represent an

image if you wish. See “Image Specification Dialog” on page 452.

In 3D Views

The actual picture associated with an image object can be seen in 3D views, as can any transparency data associated it. See “Image Specification Dialog” on page 452.

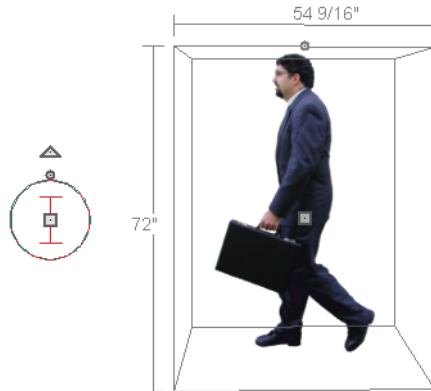
Images can be set to either rotate so that they always face the camera or remain stationary, like billboards. See “Images” on page 450.

Editing Images

Images can be selected in 2D and 3D views and edited using the edit handles, edit tools and the **Image Specification** dialog.

Using the Mouse

In floor plan view, a selected image rotated, moved, and resized. In 3D views, a selected image only has one edit handle: the circular Resize handle.



When an image is resized using the edit handle, its aspect ratio is retained and 2D symbol resizes proportionally.

Using the Edit Toolbar

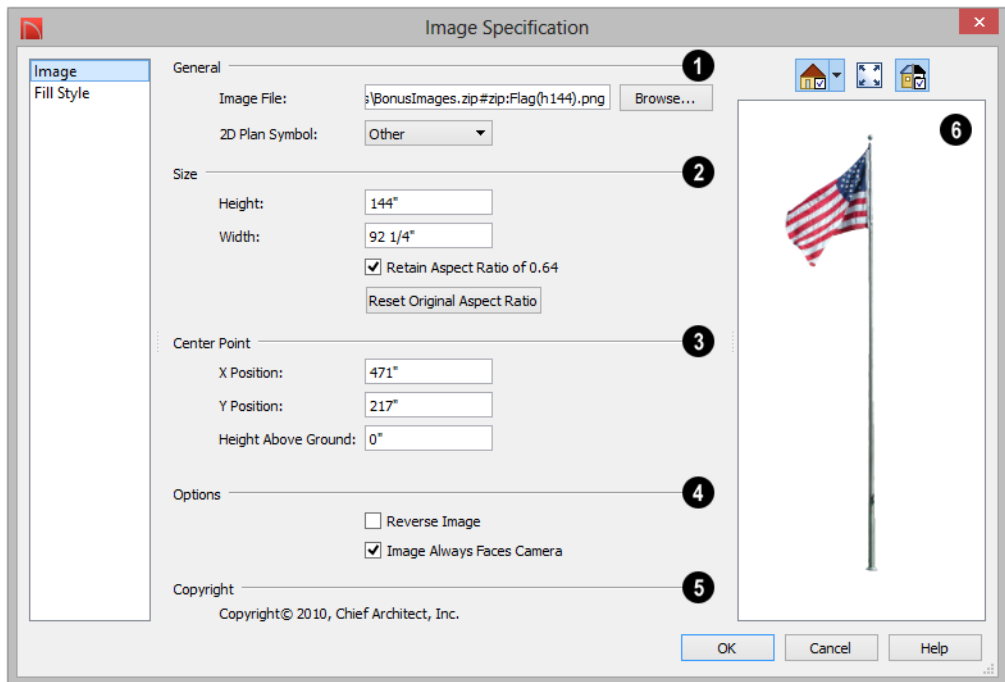
A selected image or images can be edited in a variety of ways using the buttons on the edit toolbar. As with most objects, images can be copied, replicated, moved, deleted, etc. See “The Edit Toolbar” on page 26.

Image Specification Dialog



Select an image and click the **Open Object** edit button to open the **Image Specification** dialog.

Image Panel



- 1 **General** information about the selected Image can be specified here.
 - The **Image File** associated with the Image can be specified. Click **Browse** to choose a file saved on your computer or type the file's full pathname in the text field.
 - Select a **2D Plan Symbol** from the drop-down list to represent the Image in floor plan view. See "Displaying Images" on page 451.
- 2 Specify the **Size** of the image as it displays in 3D views.
 - Enter a **Height** for the selected image.
 - Enter a **Width** for the selected image.
- 3 Specify the location of the selected Image's **Center Point**.
 - Enter **X** and **Y** coordinates for the image's center point.
 - Enter **Height Above Ground** for the image's height above the ground level.
- 4 Specify **Options** for the image.
 - Check **Retain Aspect Ratio of X** to maintain the image's original aspect ratio when resizing. This checkbox does not affect editing performed outside of this dialog and is an action rather than a state: the next time you open this dialog, it will be checked.
 - Uncheck **Retain Aspect Ratio of X** if you would like to modify the Height or Width without affecting the other value. If you do this, the image may appear distorted.
 - Check **Image Always Faces Camera** to ensure the image always faces the camera.
- 5 Specify the **Copyright** information for the image.
 - Enter the copyright information in the text field.
- 6 Preview the image in the 3D view.
 - The image is displayed on a flagpole in the 3D view.

- Specify the image's **Height Above Ground**.
- 4 Options -**
- Check **Reverse Image** to reflect the appearance of the image about an imaginary vertical line through its center.
 - Check **Image Always Faces Camera** to prevent the image from rotating to face the camera in 3D views. This box is unchecked for Billboard Images. See “Images” on page 450.

5 Any **Copyright** information associated with the selected Image will be stated here.

6 A preview of the selected Image displays here. The Glass House Rendering Techniques is not available for images. See “Dialog Preview Panes” on page 29.

Fill Style Panel

For information about the settings on this panel, see “Fill Style Panel” on page 439.

Pictures


A variety of picture file types can be imported into and exported out of Home Designer Suite.

Metafiles are also types of picture files that can be imported and exported. See “Metafiles” on page 455.


Exporting Pictures




Using the **Export Picture** tool is similar to creating a screen capture of everything in the current Home Designer Suite view window. Pictures can be saved in various file formats and used in other applications.

Export Picture  is best suited for 3D views. When exporting a line-based view, best results can be achieved by saving it as a Metafile. See “To export a metafile” on page 455.

To export a picture

1. Open the view that you would like to export as a picture file.
2. Zoom, pan or otherwise adjust the view so that what you see on screen suits your needs. See “Displaying 3D Views” on page 386.
3. Select **File > Export > Picture (BMP, JPG, PNG)**  in any view to open the **Export Picture File** dialog. See “Exporting Files” on page 43.

The **Copy Region as Picture**  tool also lets you create a picture file based on the current view, but allows you to specify what portion of the view is exported. See “Copy Region as Picture” on page 459.


Importing Pictures




Pictures can be imported into and displayed in floor plan view. Pictures do not display in camera views or overviews.

See “Displaying Pictures, Metafiles, and PDF Boxes” on page 458.

There are several ways to import a Picture into Home Designer Suite:

- Select **File> Import> Picture (BMP, JPG, PNG)**  to open the **Import Picture File** dialog, which is a typical open file dialog. See “Importing Files” on page 47.
- Click and drag an image file from an operating system window into the Home Designer Suite window.

- In any application, copy an image to the Windows Clipboard, then select **Edit> Paste> Paste**  from the Home Designer Suite menu in an eligible view window. See “Paste Special” on page 83.

Note: Importing large, or multiple, Pictures into a plan file can result in program slowness.

An imported picture is placed in the center of the current view. Once imported, pictures can be selected and edited. See “Editing Pictures, Metafiles, and PDF Boxes” on page 458.

Picture File Box Specification Dialog



Select an imported picture file and click the **Open Object** edit button to open the **Picture File Box Specification** dialog.

The settings in this dialog are similar to those on the Line Style panel in numerous other

dialogs, with one exception: uncheck **Show Outline** to turn off the display of the picture’s border polyline.

See “Line Style Panel” on page 434.

Metafiles

A metafile (**.emf**, **.wmf**) is a special picture file format made up of vectors (lines) that allow the image to be rescaled without loss of quality. High resolution pictures of line-based views can be exported as a metafile.

Note: Metafiles are not supported in Mac operating systems and cannot be imported or exported in Mac versions of the software.


Exporting Metafiles




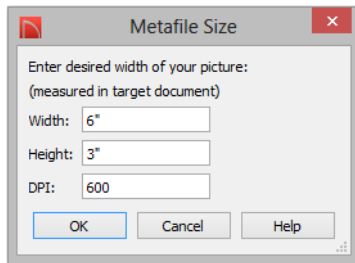
An enhanced metafile (**.emf**) can be exported from floor plan view.

Only objects that display on screen are included in an exported metafile.

To export a metafile

1. Accurately position the view on screen.
2. Select **File> Export> Metafile (EMF)** .

3. Drag a marquee  from corner to corner, defining the area that will included in the metafile.
4. Release the mouse to open the **Metafile Size** dialog.



5. Specify the desired **Width** or **Height** of the metafile. When one value is edited, the other changes to maintain its aspect ratio.

Specify, too, the desired **Dots Per Inch (DPI)** for the metafile. A larger value results in a higher quality metafile, but also a larger file size.

6. Click OK to open the **Export Metafile** dialog, which is a typical Save As dialog. See “Saving, Exporting, and Backing Up Files” on page 41.


7. Enter a name and location on your computer for the metafile, then click **Save**.

Importing Metafiles



Metafiles can be imported into and displayed in floor plan view. Metafiles do not display in camera views or overviews. See “Displaying Pictures, Metafiles, and PDF Boxes” on page 458.

There are two ways to import a metafile into Home Designer Suite:

- Select **File> Import> Metafile (EMF,WMF)**  to open the **Import Metafile** dialog, which is a typical open file dialog. See “Importing Files” on page 47.
- You can also click and drag a metafile file from an operating system window into the Home Designer Suite window to import it.

An imported metafile is placed in the center of the current view. Once imported, metafiles can be selected and edited. See “Editing Pictures, Metafiles, and PDF Boxes” on page 458.

Metafile Box Specification Dialog



Select an imported metafile and click the **Open Object** edit button to open the **Metafile Box Specification** dialog.

The settings in this dialog are similar to those on the Line Style panel in numerous other

dialogs, with one exception. Uncheck **Show Border** to turn off the display of the picture’s border polyline.

See “Line Style Panel” on page 434.

PDF Files

Portable Document Format (**.pdf**) files are a special type of file that can be viewed on nearly any computer and can include a wide variety of visual information.

You can import **.pdf** files into Home Designer Suite in floor plan view. Once imported, PDF boxes behave and can be edited similar to imported pictures and metafiles. See “Editing Pictures, Metafiles, and PDF Boxes” on page 458.

Some **.pdf** files can contain both 2D and 3D information; however, Home Designer Suite

can only support 2D data in an imported **.pdf** file. When a 3D **.pdf** file is imported, it may display text, a static image of the 3D model, or it may not import at all.



You can also create a 2D **.pdf** from any view by printing. See “Printing to a PDF File” on page 483.

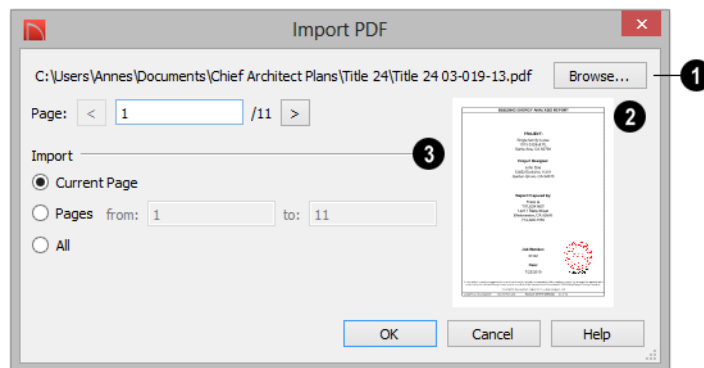
Note: Importing large, or multiple, **.pdf** files into a plan or layout file can result in program slowness.

Importing PDF Files



To import a **.pdf** file, select **File> Import> Import PDF**.

You can also import a **.pdf** file by dragging it from an operating system window into the Home Designer Suite window.



- 1 The full **Filename** of the **.pdf** file displays here.
- Click the **Browse** button to choose a new **.pdf** file or to relink to a missing file.
- Specify the **Page** of the **.pdf** file that displays in the preview on the right. Type a

- page number in the text field or use the arrow buttons to browse the pages sequentially.
- 2 A preview of the page selected above displays here.

- 3 Specify how much of the **.pdf** file you wish to **Import**. When multiple pages are imported, a separate PDF box is created for each one.
- Select **Current Page** to import only the page specified above and shown in the preview to the right.

- Select **Pages**, then specify the starting page in the **From** field and the ending page in the **To** field.
- Select **All** to import the entire **.pdf** file.

PDF Box Specification Dialog



Select an imported PDF box and click the **Open Object** edit button to open the **PDF Box Specification** dialog.

The settings in this dialog are similar to those on the Line Style panel in numerous other

dialogs, with one exception: uncheck the **Show Outline** box to turn off the display of the PDF box's border polyline.

See "Line Style Panel" on page 434.

Displaying Pictures, Metafiles, and PDF Boxes



The display of Pictures, Metafiles, and PDF Boxes is controlled in the **Display Options** dialog. See "Displaying Objects" on page 74.

Pictures, Metafiles, and PDF Boxes are placed on the "CAD, Default" layer.

Pictures, Metafiles, and PDF Boxes can be imported into and displayed in floor plan view. A Picture, Metafile, or PDF Box can only be seen in the view where it was

imported and cannot be imported into a camera view or overview.

Drawing Groups

Imported pictures are placed in the Back Drawing Group, and imported metafiles and PDF Boxes are placed in the Default Drawing Group. See "Drawing Groups" on page 105.

Editing Pictures, Metafiles, and PDF Boxes

Pictures, Metafiles, and PDF Boxes can be selected and edited using the edit handles, the edit toolbar, and their specification dialogs.

In the Specification Dialog

Pictures, Metafiles, and PDF Boxes can be customized in their specification dialog. See:

- "Picture File Box Specification Dialog" on page 455

- “Metafile Box Specification Dialog” on page 456
- “PDF Box Specification Dialog” on page 458

Using the Mouse

Pictures, Metafiles, and PDF Boxes have edit handles similar to other box-based objects. See “Editing Box-Based Objects” on page 98.

- The corner Resize handles behave do not behave the same for Pictures, Metafiles, and PDF Boxes as they do for CAD boxes, however. If you drag a corner handle of one of these objects while the Default Edit Behavior is active, its contents will resize and height to width ratio will be retained.
- If you drag an Extend handle along a Picture, Metafile, or PDF Box’s edge, the contents of the box will not be resized. If you resize it larger, an empty space will be created between that edge and the contents; if you resize it smaller, the contents will be cropped.

To resize a picture or metafile

1. Find two items on the imported picture or metafile that are separated by a

known horizontal or vertical distance, such as two walls or plot lines.

2. Draw parallel CAD lines to represent these two items and use dimensions to position the lines so that they are the known distance between the two items in the imported picture. See “The CAD Drawing Tools” on page 431.
3. Click and drag one of the imported picture’s corner edit handles to resize it concentrically until the two items are aligned with the two CAD lines.

Using Dimensions

Pictures, Metafiles, and PDF Boxes can be relocated relative to other objects with precision using dimensions.

To avoid changing the selected object’s aspect ratio, make sure you choose to move the entire object rather than the selected edge. See “Moving Objects Using Dimensions” on page 414.

Using the Edit Tools

A selected Picture, Metafile, or PDF Box can be edited in a variety of ways using the buttons on the edit toolbar. See “The Edit Toolbar” on page 26.



Copy Region as Picture



You can copy any portion of the screen and save it as a picture file using the **Copy Region as Picture** tool. See “Exporting Pictures” on page 454.

To use Copy Region as Picture

1. Open the view that you would like to copy all or part of as a picture.

2. Select **Edit > Copy Region as Picture** . Your pointer displays a marquee  icon.
 3. Click and drag a rectangular selection marquee around the desired region.
 4. The selection is copied to the Windows clipboard.
- If the current view is vector-based, the **Metafile Size** dialog displays because metafiles are better suited for line-based pictures. See “Metafiles” on page 455.
 - If the current view is a 3D view, the region is sent directly to the Windows clipboard.
5. From there, the picture can be pasted into another view or another program.

3D Backdrops

A backdrop is an image, typically of an exterior view, that displays in the background of 3D views to help place the model into a realistic setting and add a sense of perspective.



The backdrop in this view includes hills and clouds

A selection of backdrop images is available in the Library Browser. You can also create your own backdrop images and import them into the library. See “Adding New Backdrops” on page 350.



Backdrops automatically adjust to fit each view window, so they look best when they are created with a height to width ratio that is similar to the window you are working in.



You can create digital photos of a building site for use as a backdrop.

Specifying a Backdrop

You can select a backdrop image for a plan from the library in either of two ways:

- In any view, select **3D > 3D Backdrop**  to open the **Backdrop** dialog. See “Backdrop Dialog” on page 382.
- In a 3D view, open the Library Browser. Select a Backdrop image, then move your mouse pointer  into the view window. Click anywhere in the view to apply the selected backdrop.


Regardless of how it is selected, only one backdrop can be used in a plan at any given time. If a backdrop is not applied, Home Designer Suite applies a background color.

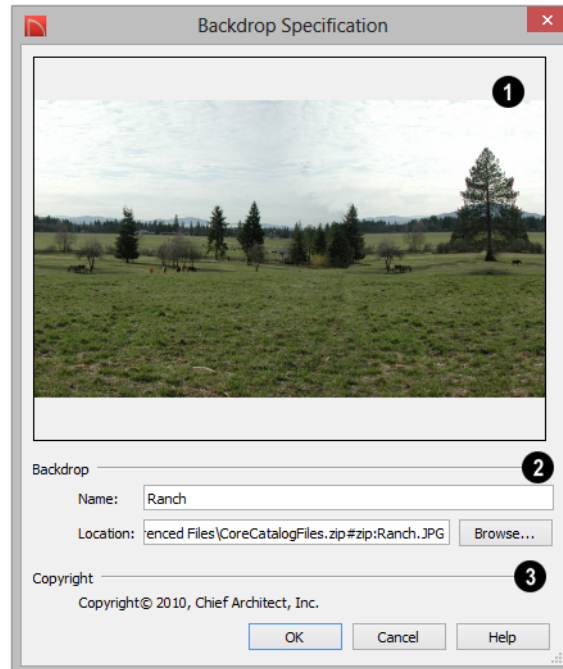
You can specify which view types and Rendering Techniques use the selected backdrop in the **Backdrop** dialog.

Backdrop Specification Dialog



To open the **Backdrop Specification** dialog, select **File> Import> Backdrop** or right-click on the User Catalog in the Library Browser and select **New> Backdrop** from the contextual menu. See “Adding New Backdrops” on page 350.

You can also open this dialog by right-clicking on a backdrop image in the User Catalog in the Library Browser and selecting **Open**  from the contextual menu.



- 1 A preview of the selected image displays here.
 - 2 **Backdrop** - Specify backdrop's Name and the image file associated with it.
- Type a **Name** for the selected backdrop, to be used in the Library Browser and **3D View Defaults** dialog.
 - In the **Location** field, type the full pathname of the image file or click the **Browse** button and browse to the file on your computer.
 - 3 If the selected image has a **Copyright**, information about it will display here.

Walkthroughs



A 3D Walkthrough is a series of pictures saved as an **.avi** file that can be played like a video by other applications such as Windows Media Player.




There are two approaches to recording a walkthrough of a plan:

- Draw a path in floor plan view, then direct the program to record a walkthrough along that path.
- Create a 3D view, then begin recording and use the Move Camera tools to navigate through the view.

Create Walkthrough Path

There are several ways to record a walkthrough along a path, but the **Create Walkthrough Path** tool is the fastest and most flexible option.

To create a Walkthrough Path

1. In floor plan view, select **3D> Walkthroughs> Create Walkthrough Path** , then click and drag to draw a Walkthrough Path. See “To use the Spline tool” on page 440.
2. Edit the direction and curvature of the spline’s segments, as needed. See “Editing Spline Based Objects” on page 100.
3. Add **Key Frames**  to the path and modify their specifications.
4. Select the path and click the **Record Walkthrough Along Path**  edit button. See “Record Walkthrough Along Path” on page 463.



Walkthrough Paths can follow stairs and ramps to span multiple floors. See “Walkthrough Paths and Stairs” on page 463.

You can also create a walkthrough based on a regular CAD polyline or spline by selecting it and clicking the **Record Walkthrough Along Path** edit button. This was the only way to record a walkthrough along a path in Home Designer Suite versions and does not provide as many options as using a Walkthrough Path.

Walkthrough Paths display in floor plan view when the “Walkthrough Paths” layer is turned on. When displayed, Walkthrough Paths display in front of other objects and will print. They are included in views exported to **.dxf**. See “Layers” on page 73.


Key Frames

Key Frames are points along a Walkthrough Path that allow you to change:

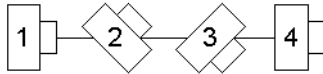
- Camera direction, tilt angle, and height;
- Changes in walkthrough speed;
- The floor that the walkthrough is on.

These changes are applied as the camera moves along the Walkthrough Path from one Key Frame to another.


To add a Key Frame to a Walkthrough Path, select the path and click the **Add Key**

Frame  edit button. Then click on the path to add a Key Frame at that location.



In floor plan view, each Key Frame is represented by a camera symbol centered along the walkthrough path. It displays the frame number, is pointed in the direction of its **Camera Angle**, and its position along the path corresponds to the **Time** setting.



Key Frame positions and other properties can be edited in the **Walkthrough Path Specification** dialog. See “General Panel” on page 466.

You can also use the **Edit Key Frames**  edit tool to enable Move and Rotate edit handles for each Key Frame on the selected Walkthrough Path.


To use the Edit Key Frames edit tool

1. Select a Walkthrough Path and click the **Edit Key Frames**  edit tool.
2. Each Key Frame on the selected Walkthrough Path will display a Move and Rotate edit handle.
 - Click and drag the square Move handle to reposition the Key Frame along the path.
 - Click and drag the rectangular Rotate handle to change the Key Frame’s direction angle
3. When you are finished adjusting the Key Frames, click the **Main Edit Mode**  edit tool to restore the Walkthrough Path’s normal edit handles.

Walkthrough Paths and Stairs

If you draw a Walkthrough Path up or down a staircase or ramp, it will follow the height of the stairs or ramp and continue on the next floor.


To create a multiple floor walkthrough

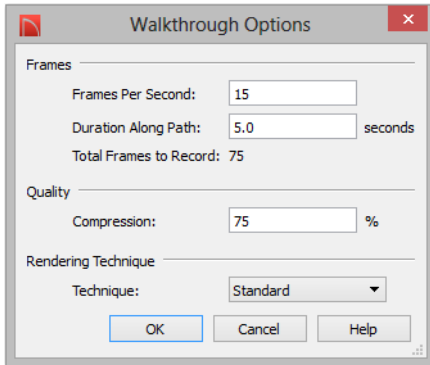
1. Draw a Walkthrough Path so that it extends into a staircase or ramp in the same direction as its Direction Arrow. See “Displaying Stairs and Landings” on page 237.
 - Do not drag the Walkthrough Path across the entire length of the stairs or ramp. If you do, its height will remain relative to the current floor.
2. When you release the mouse button, the program will automatically display a dashed line with an arrow extending past the last Key Frame on the current floor.
 - If it follows stairs or a ramp going upward, the path will also extend to the top end of the staircase or ramp.
3. Go up or down one floor, select the Walkthrough Path, and resize and reshape it as needed. You can use the **Create Walkthrough Path**  tool to draw more segments and additional Key Frames can be added, as well.

Record Walkthrough Along Path

Once a Walkthrough Path has been drawn, you can use it to record a walkthrough video.

To record a walkthrough along a path

1. In floor plan view, select a Walkthrough Path or a CAD polyline or spline.
2. Click the **Record Walkthrough Along Path**  edit button or select **3D> Walkthroughs> Record Walkthrough Along Path** from the menu.
3. An Information message displays, reminding you that while a walkthrough is being recorded along a path, you should avoid using your computer.
4. In the **Save Video As** dialog, specify a name and saved location for your **.avi** walkthrough file. See “Exporting Files” on page 43.
5. In the **Walkthrough Options** dialog:



- Specify the desired number of **Frames Per Second**, between 1 and 100. A higher number results in a higher quality recording but also a larger **.avi** file.
- Specify a **Duration Along Path**, in seconds.
- The **Total Frames to Record** displays for reference and equals the Frames Per Second times the Duration along Path.


- Specify a **Compression** percentage between 0 and 100. A value of 0 gives the highest quality images and largest file sizes.
- From the drop-down list, select the **Rendering Technique** you would like the walkthrough to use. See “Rendering Techniques” on page 402.
- Click **OK**.

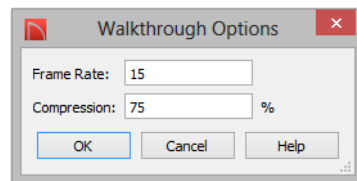
To cancel the recording as it is being created, press the ESC key on your keyboard.

Frame by Frame Walkthroughs




You can also create a walkthrough by recording it frame by frame. Although time-consuming, creating a walkthrough in this manner lets you see exactly what is being recorded as you record it.


To record a walkthrough frame by frame

1. Create a camera view. This view is the first frame of the walkthrough.
2. From the view, select **3D> Walkthroughs> Record Walkthrough** .
3. Specify a location and name for the walkthrough in the **Save Video As** dialog and click **Save**.
4. In the **Walkthrough Options** dialog:



- Select a **Frame Rate** between 1 and 100. The value entered is the number of frames per second.


- Select a **Compression Percent** between 0 and 100. A value of 0 gives the highest quality images and the largest file size.
 - Click OK.
5. Use the camera movement tools to create additional views. Each time the screen redraws, that view is recorded as the next frame in sequence. See “Editing 3D Views” on page 391.
 6. To move the camera without saving a view, select **3D> Walkthroughs> Pause Recording**  to temporarily stop recording.
 - You can then select **3D> Walkthroughs> Save Frame**  button to control what views are saved.
 - You can start recording again by selecting **Pause Recording**  once more.

7. When the walkthrough sequence is complete, select **3D> Walkthroughs> Stop Recording**  or close the view.

Note: Zooming in and out and using the scroll bars does not change the viewpoint and does not produce a frame for the walkthrough.

If you resize the current view window while recording a walkthrough, the program will stop recording.

To play a walkthrough

1. Select **3D> Walkthroughs> Play Walkthrough**  to open the **Select Video File** dialog.
2. Browse to an **.avi** file on saved on your computer. Your default video application plays the walkthrough video.

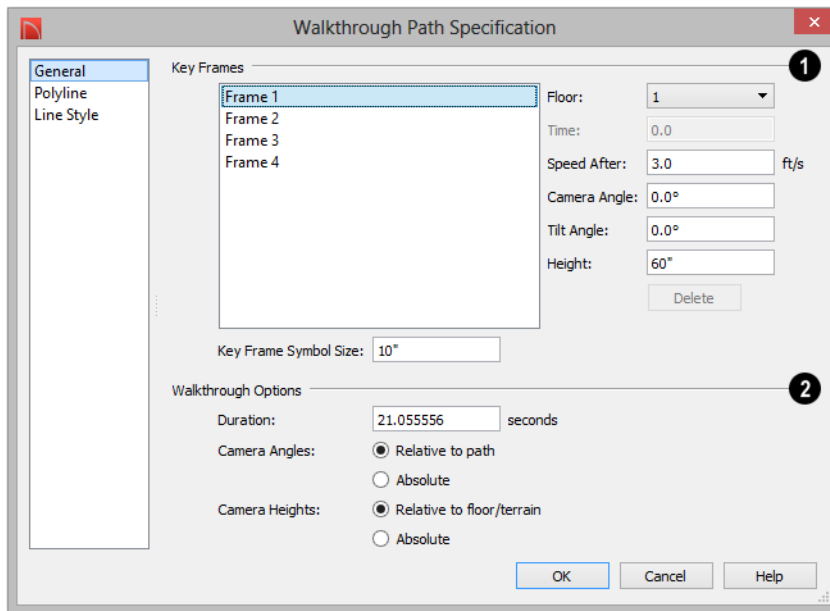
Walkthrough Path Specification Dialog



Select a Walkthrough Path and click the **Open Object** edit button to open

the **Walkthrough Path Specification** dialog. See “Walkthroughs” on page 462.

General Panel



- 1** A list of the selected path's **Key Frames** displays on the left. Click on a Frame in the list to select and edit it using the settings on the right. When the dialog is opened, the last key frame edited in the current program session will be selected automatically. See “Key Frames” on page 462.
- Specify the **Floor** that the selected Key Frame is located on. See “Multiple Floors” on page 199.
 - Specify the **Time** in seconds at which the selected Key Frame is found in the duration of the walkthrough. Frame 1 is always at 0.0 and cannot be moved; similarly, the last frame is always at the end of the walkthrough Duration.
 - Specify the **Speed After (ft/s)**, which is how fast the camera moves along the walkthrough path from the current Key

Frame to the next. Not available if the last Key Frame is selected.

- Specify the **Camera Angle** at the selected Key Frame.
- Specify the **Tilt Angle** of the camera at the selected Key Frame.
- Specify the **Height** of the camera at the selected Key Frame.
- Click the **Delete** button to remove the selected Key Frame from the path.
- Specify the **Key Frame Symbol Size**, which is the size of the symbols representing the selected walkthrough path's Key Frames in floor plan view. See “Key Frames” on page 462.

2 **Walkthrough Options** -

- Specify the **Duration**, or total length of the walkthrough video in seconds.

Specify how **Camera Angles** are measured:

- Select **Relative to Path** to measure each camera angle relative to the direction of the walkthrough path at each Key Frame location.
- Select **Absolute** to measure each camera angle relative to the plan's X, Y, and Z axes. See "3D Drafting" on page 21.

Note: When Relative Angles are used, a Camera Angle of 0° points in the direction of the walkthrough path. When Absolute Angles are used, 0° always points in the positive direction along the X axis.

Specify how **Camera Height** is measured:

- Select **Relative to Floor/Terrain** to measure camera height relative to the floor or terrain at each Key Frame location.
- Select **Absolute** to measure camera height relative to the plan's Z axis.

Polyline Panel

The Polyline panel indicates the path's **Length/Perimeter**. The **Area** and **Volume** of a walkthrough path will always be described as "Not closed". See "Polyline Panel" on page 438.

Line Style Panel

This panel is similar to the Line Style panel in the **Line Specification** dialog. See "Line Style Panel" on page 434.

Importing and Exporting

Importing is the process of opening a file that was produced in a different program in Home Designer Suite. Exporting, on the other hand, is the process of saving information in a Home Designer Suite file to a format that can be read by another program.

Home Designer Suite allows you to import and export a variety of information from and to other applications. This chapter focuses on importing and exporting 2D .dxf files and a variety of 3D file formats. Other importing and exporting options are described in the chapters in which those objects or settings are discussed.

Chapter Contents

- Import Room Planner File
- DXF File Format
- Exporting 2D DXF Files
- Additional 2D Export Information
- 3D Data Import Requirements
- Importing 3D Symbols
- 3D Symbols and Materials

Import Room Planner File



Select **File> Import> Import Room Planner File**, then log in to your account on the Chief Architect web site to

select and download a Room Planner 2.0 and higher file from the cloud.

DXF File Format

.dxf (Drawing eXchange Format) is a standard file format created by Autodesk for the transfer of data between other programs.

Many design programs can read and write **.dxf** files. The **.dxf** file format interprets data as CAD objects such as lines, polylines, and circles.

Exporting 2D DXF Files

Line-based 2D files can be exported from Home Designer Suite in **.dxf** file format. You can specify the version of AutoCAD® to export to. Compatibility with other software may vary.

There are two ways to export a 2D drawing file in Home Designer Suite: Export Current View and Export All Floors.

Export Current View



To export a floor plan view that is currently active, select **File> Export> Current View (DXF)**.

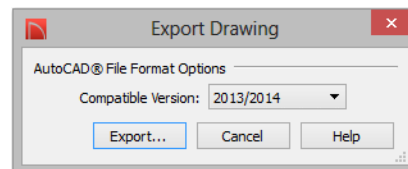
Export All Floors



To export the floor plan view for all floor plans simultaneously, select **File> Export> All Floors (DXF)** from any floor of the plan. The floor plans are exported to a single **.dxf** file.

If you choose to export all floors, the file will contain all floors superimposed on each other. Upon export, each layer in your Home Designer Suite drawing is divided into separate layers: one for each floor. For example: “Electrical-2” contains objects on Floor 2 that were originally on the “Electrical” layer.

Export Drawing File Dialog



Specify which **Compatible Version** of AutoCAD® you want your **.dxf** file to be compatible with.

Click the **Export** button to save the exported file as a **.dxf** file. See “Exporting Files” on page 43.

Additional 2D Export Information

The export process converts high level Home Designer Suite objects (doors, windows, etc) into simple, CAD-based objects (lines, arcs, etc). Home Designer Suite exports all data to AutoCAD®'s Model Space.

Supported Entities

The following entity types are currently supported for 2D export:

Line - The simplest entity. In AutoCAD®, lines are 3 dimensional with the Z coordinate set to zero.

Arc - Arcs have a start angle, end angle and radius.

Circle - Fully Supported.

Multi Line Text - If exporting to an AutoCAD® release that supports multi-line text, Home Designer Suite writes the file as multi-line text. If exporting to a version that does not support multi-line text, the file is written as simple text.

Polylines - Polylines are a collection of points with lines or arcs connecting them. Home Designer Suite supports both lines and arcs. Arcs are referred to as bulges in AutoCAD®.

Block Insert - A block insert is a reference to a block, which is a named collection of entities. A block can also contain block inserts.

Dimensions

Each dimension has an associated block containing a representation of the dimension

as it is drawn in Home Designer Suite. It also contains all the data to recreate that information.

- When an exported dimension is modified in AutoCAD® or other CAD program, its appearance changes.
- Home Designer Suite does not support arrowhead styles or fonts.
- Three kinds of dimensions are generated: Aligned, Rotated and 3 Point Angular.
- Please refer to AutoCAD® documentation for more information.

Note: Uncheck "Use Associative Dimensions" in the Export Drawing File dialog if the CAD program you are using does not support AutoCAD® Associative dimensions. See "Export Drawing File Dialog" on page 470.

Layers

Layers in other systems are similar to Home Designer Suite layers, but there are some subtle differences. Layer information is mapped as follows:

Home Designer Suite	Other Systems
Name	Name
Color	Nearest AutoCAD® Color. Home Designer Suite uses the default AutoCAD® color table to determine this mapping.
Display	On

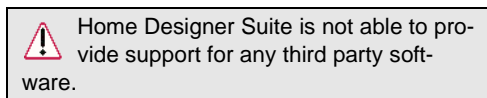
Size	Line Weight. In AutoCAD®, line weights are determined by a table of mm line widths. Home Designer Suite maps to the closest match in this table based the current view's Line Weight Scale. See "Drawing Sheet Setup Dialog" on page 479.
Style	Line type
Lock	Lock

Line Types

A line type, or line style, is used by layers and entities to determine how lines are drawn. Home Designer Suite line types installed with the program are supported on export.

3D Data Import Requirements

Importing a symbol that can be used by Home Designer Suite is a relatively simple process that begins with previously created 3D data. This 3D data often comes from a program other than Home Designer Suite. If you use another 3D modeling program to create the 3D data, be aware of the following requirements before attempting to create symbols.



There are a number of requirements that must be met before any 3D data can be used to create a symbol in Home Designer Suite:

- The 3D data must be stored in an, object (.obj), 3D Studio® Mesh (.3ds), or SketchUp version 8 and prior (.skp) file format. If you have 3D data in another format, you must convert it into one these formats first.
- Geometry and material information stored in .3ds files are imported; cameras and lights are not.
- The 3D model must be composed of 3DSOLID solid entities, or face data. Faces are typically referred to as 3D faces, polygonal faces, or poly meshes. Other types of entities such as lines, curves, circles, polylines, and free form surfaces can exist in the file but are not imported when the symbol is created. This is true for all (.obj/.3ds/.skp) file types.
- The face data should be assigned to different layers so that you can map them to the correct materials when viewing them in 3D. It is helpful to name your layers using a convention that identifies that materials should be assigned to each sub-component.
- Pay attention to the origin and orientation of the 3D data when designing symbols. Home Designer Suite allows some adjustment when creating the symbol, but it is easier to build the 3D data correctly before importing it into Home Designer Suite. For more information about defining the origin, see "Symbol Origin" on page 71.

- If a symbol with faces that have more than four vertices is imported, the faces are truncated, resulting in an object that appears to have holes. The best remedy is to re-export the model from the original application using only triangular or quadrilateral faces.
- Home Designer Suite does not support grouped objects in symbols imported from **.3ds** files.

Surface Normals

If you use third party software to create a **.dxf/.obj/.3ds/.skp** files that will be imported as a symbol, you should be familiar with the concept of surface normals.

If you use third party software to create an **.obj/.3ds/.skp** file that will be imported as a symbol, you should be familiar with the concept of surface normals.



A surface normal is a vector that is perpendicular to the plane of a surface. This vector points in one direction, determined by the way the face is drawn.

If a face is drawn clockwise, the surface normals are directed outward; if a face is drawn counter-clockwise, the surface normals point inward. Home Designer Suite assumes that the face on the positive side of the normal vector is the outside face.


Many objects can be drawn using only one side of each face. A cube is a good example: the inside of a cube is not visible, so it is not necessary to create its inside faces. When inside faces are not calculated, 3D views in Home Designer Suite can generate more quickly.

Importing 3D Symbols



Home Designer Suite supports the import of 3D surface and 3D solid objects saved in **.3ds**, **.obj**, and **.skp** formats.

There are two ways to import a 3D symbol into Home Designer Suite:

- By dragging and dropping the file from an operating system window into floor plan view.
- Using the **Import 3D Symbol**  tool.

Symbols imported by clicking and dragging are imported for use in the current plan, while those imported using the **Import 3D Symbol** dialog are also saved in the library. See “The Library” on page 341.

To drag and drop a 3D symbol file

1. Open the plan in which you would like to import a 3D symbol and remain in floor plan view.

2. Open an operating system window in front of the Home Designer Suite program window.
3. Resize and position the window so that the Home Designer Suite program window can be seen behind it.
4. Click on the desired **.3ds**, **.obj** or **.skp** file and drag it into the Home Designer Suite program window.
5. When your cursor changes to a +, click in the drawing area to place as many copies of the symbol as desired. When you are finished, select a different tool.

Import 3D Symbol Dialog



Select **File> Import> 3D Symbol** to open the **Import 3D Symbol** dialog.

The **Import 3D Symbol File** dialog is a typical **Open File** dialog in which multiple files can be group-selected for import. See “Importing Files” on page 47.

The **Import 3D Symbol** dialog, which opens next, allows you to specify additional information about the symbol.

Home Designer Suite supports the import of 3D surface and 3D solid objects saved to **.3ds**, **.obj** and **.skp** formats. Home Designer Suite treats imported symbols as stand alone fixtures.

Note: SKP files are always imported using inches, regardless of the default units used in the plan file. See “Creating a New Plan” on page 40.

3D Symbols and Materials

When a symbol is imported into Home Designer Suite, material definitions may be included with it. How material information is included depends on the symbol’s file format. See “About Materials” on page 361.

OBJ Files

Material definitions for most **.obj** files are saved in a separate file with the **.mtl** file extension. If such a file exists, the materials associated with the **.obj** file display in the list on the left side of the Materials panel of its specification dialog.

If Home Designer Suite does not receive material definition information in an accompanying **.mtl** file, default material properties are assigned.

Material definitions for **.obj** files can also include texture information in the form of image files (**.jpg**, **.png**, etc).

In order to properly import an **.obj** file, Home Designer Suite needs the **.obj** file, the **.mtl** file, and any referenced texture files. If a texture file is not available, the material it is associated with is created without a texture.

The material definitions associated with an imported **.obj** symbol are not available for use by other objects in Home Designer Suite until that symbol has been placed into a plan. The associated texture files are then copied to the user’s Textures folder. See “Home Designer Suite Data” on page 39.

3DS and DAE Files

Material definitions for **.3ds** files refer to texture information in separate image files.

In order to properly import a **.3ds** file, Home Designer Suite needs these referenced image files. If a texture file is not available, the material it is associated with will be created without it. The associated texture files are copied to the user's Textures folder.

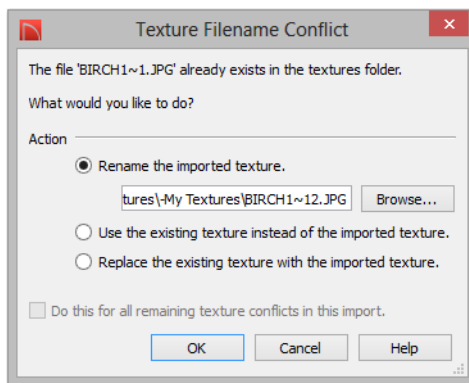
SKP Files

The textures associated with a **.skp** file are saved in the file. After you import a symbol and either place it in a plan or add it to the Library, these textures are saved in the Home Designer Suite Textures folder.

Home Designer Suite does not support deformed textures. If a texture associated with a **.skp** file is deformed, it will be imported without the deformations.

Texture Filename Conflict

If a texture of the same name already exists in the plan when an **.obj**, **.3ds** or **.skp** file is imported, the **Texture Filename Conflict** dialog displays.



- Select **Rename the imported texture**, then click the **Browse** button to create a copy of the texture's image file with a new name that you specify.
- Select **Use the existing texture instead of the imported texture** to keep the existing texture.
- Select **Replace the existing texture with the imported texture** to replace the texture already present in the plan with the new, imported one.
- Check **Do this for all remaining textures in this object** to use the same selection for all textures with filename conflicts associated with this symbol.

Printing

Home Designer Suite provides a variety of printing options, from printing scaled plan views and 3D perspectives, to a set of templates that can be assembled into a 3D model.

Home Designer Suite also allows you to save your drawings in **.pdf** file format that can then be sent to a printing service.

Note: Screen captures are provided for illustrative purposes only and are not an endorsement of any products.

Chapter Contents

- Introduction to Printing
- The Printing Tools
- Drawing Sheet Setup Dialog
- Print Preview
- Printing to Scale
- Printing Across Multiple Pages
- Printing to a PDF File
- Print View Dialog
- Print Image Dialog
- Print Model

Introduction to Printing

Home Designer Suite offers printing options to suit a variety of needs. It is helpful to be familiar with these options and choose the one that makes the most sense for the project at hand.

Output Options

Printing a View - Floor plan and elevation views can be printed to scale. See “The Printing Tools” on page 479.

Printing an Image - Any view of your plan can be printed as an unscaled image. See “Print Image Dialog” on page 486.

Printing to PDF - Plans can be printed to a .pdf file and printed remotely. See “Printing to a PDF File” on page 483.

Print Model - Creates a set of templates that can be used to create a 3D model of your design. See “Print Model” on page 487.

Terminology

Paper Size - The dimensions of the paper to be printed on. Specifying a paper size that is smaller than the scaled drawing allows large drawings to be printed across multiple pages.

Drawing Scale - Drawings are often printed to scale for accuracy. $\frac{1}{4}'' = 1'$ and $1\text{ m} = 50\text{ m}$ are examples of common scales. You can specify this scale in the **Drawing Sheet Setup** dialog. See “Drawing Sheet Setup Dialog” on page 479.

When a particular scale is not important, drawings can also be sized to fill a particular area. See “Printing to Scale” on page 481.

Printing Problems

If you encounter difficulties when trying to print, see “Troubleshooting Common Technical Issues” on page 504.

Printer Drivers

A printer driver is a program that allows a printer to communicate with the rest of the computer system. Drivers are usually created by the printer manufacturer, are typically updated regularly, and can usually be downloaded free of charge from the manufacturer’s web site.

In addition to interpreting between the printer and the rest of the system, printer drivers save default page size, orientation, margin size, and other information that Home Designer Suite refers to unless you specify otherwise. See “Print View Dialog” on page 483.

If you experience printing problems, consider installing updated drivers for your printer. Visit your printer manufacturer’s web site for more information.



Options available with one driver may not be available with another. Printers supported in one operating system may not be supported by the manufacturer in another.

Clearing Printer Information

Some information specific to individual printers, such as available paper sizes, is saved with each plan file. You can select **File> Print> Clear Printer Info** to clear the

printer-specific information stored with the plan file.

Displaying Objects



You can control the display of objects when printing directly from a view in

the **Display Options** dialog. See “Display Options Dialog” on page 75.

Objects must be visible in order for them to print; however, not all items that are visible will print. See “Print Preview” on page 481.

The Printing Tools



Select **File> Print** to view the Print Tools submenu. These tools fall into two categories.

Print Setup Tools



Drawing Sheet Setup - Opens the **Drawing Sheet Setup** dialog. See “Drawing Sheet Setup Dialog” on page 479.



Scale to Fit - Automatically selects a scale that fits your plan to the printer page. See “Printing to Scale” on page 481.



Center Sheet - Automatically centers the drawing sheet on your drawing. See “Center Sheet” on page 481.



Print Preview - Shows on screen how the current view will appear printed, based on the current scale and other settings. See “Print Preview” on page 481.

Print Tools



Print - Prints the current floor plan to a specified scale. See “Print View Dialog” on page 483.



Print Image - Prints the current view including images, textures, and backdrop. Views printed with Print Image are not scaled. See “Print Image Dialog” on page 486.



Print Model - Opens the **Print Model** dialog, allowing you to print templates for making a physical model of your plan. See “Print Model” on page 487.

Clear Printer Info - Clears the printer information associated with the current page setup.

Drawing Sheet Setup Dialog

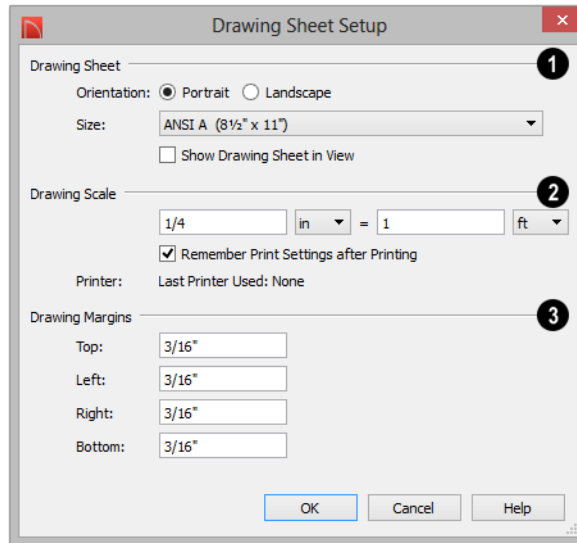


Select **File> Print> Drawing Sheet Setup** to open the **Drawing Sheet Setup** dialog.

The **Drawing Sheet Setup** dialog is only available when floor plan view or an Elevation view is active. When a perspective

view is active, **Drawing Sheet Setup**  is not available.

The settings in this dialog are specific to the current floor plan view and are saved with the .plan file..



1 Specify the **Orientation** and **Size** of the **Drawing Sheet**, which is the final printed output.

2 Specify the **Drawing Scale** for the active view. This scale is applied only when the view is printed.

The scale is specified in two parts, which by default are ¼ inch = 1 ft or 1 m = 50 m. Both imperial and metric units of measurement are available and can be selected independently.

3 Specify the **Drawing Margins**, which define the extents of the printable area of the active view’s Drawing Sheet.

- Specify the width of the desired **Top**, **Left**, **Right**, and **Bottom** margins.

Clearing Printer Information

Select **File > Print > Clear Printer Info** to clear the printer-specific information stored in the **Drawing Sheet Setup** dialog.

Print Preview



Print Preview and its related display toggles allow you to get a sense of


what the current view will look like when it is printed.


Print Preview



Select **File> Print> Print Preview** for an on-screen representation of how the current view will appear when printed. Print Preview is only available in floor plan view. See “Printing to Scale” on page 481.

The printer page displays as a solid white rectangle, and blue lines along the edges of the printer page indicate the edges of the printable area, as defined by the currently selected printer. See “Drawing Sheet Setup Dialog” on page 479.

Objects such as camera symbols, and the Reference Grid that do not print do not display in **Print Preview** . Text and dimension objects appear on-screen as they will on the printed page.

When **Print Preview**  is enabled, color will display depending on whether **Print in Color** is selected in the **Print View** dialog. See “Print View Dialog” on page 483.

The Reference Display does print if it is visible. See “Reference Floor Display” on page 205.

Color

The **Color** toggle turns the on-screen display of color on or off in all views.

Reference Grid

The **Reference Grid** is an on-screen grid composed of regular squares that can be used to convey a sense of scale while drawing. It does not print, and its size can be specified in the **General Plan Defaults** dialog. See “General Plan Defaults Dialog” on page 57.

Center Sheet



Select **File> Print> Center Sheet** to center the printer page on the drawing. This moves the printer page relative to the drawing but does not affect the coordinates of objects in the drawing. The location of the printer page is independent for each floor of the model.

Printing to Scale

Several different print scaling options are available. The type of view that you are printing determines which options you may choose from.

Orthogonal Views


Floor plan views are orthogonal views, which means:

- Your line of sight is at a right angle to all objects in the view.

- Objects do not appear to decrease in size as their distances from the viewer increase.

Orthogonal views can be printed to scale.

The scale set in the **Page Setup** dialog is inherited by the **Print** dialog. This scale can be overridden on an individual basis in the **Print** dialog. See “Print View Dialog” on page 483.


Select **File> Print> Scale to Fit**  in an orthogonal view to select a suitable scale and re-center the printer page so that everything fits on the page.

Imperial drawing scales are typically noted in inches per foot. Larger scales, such as 1 inch = 50 feet or 1:200m, are often used for property layouts.

Perspective Views

Camera views and overviews display the model much the way the eye would see it and cannot be scaled.


- Objects in the view may be at any angle relative to your line of sight.
- Objects seem to decrease in size as their distances from the viewer increase.


Perspective views can only be printed using the **Print Image**  tool. See “Print Image Dialog” on page 486.

Printing Across Multiple Pages



When printing directly from a floor plan view it is possible to print at a scale that does not fit the drawing on one page.

To see on-screen what the drawing will look like when printed, select **File> Print> Print**


Preview  and then **Window> Fill**

Window . Grey lines across the drawing sheet indicate where the page breaks will occur. See “Print Preview” on page 481.

To print across multiple pages

1. Select **File> Print> Print Preview**  to display the white rectangle representing the printer paper. See “Print Preview” on page 481.
2. Click the **Select Objects**  button, then click near an edge of the printer paper rectangle to select it.

When selected, the printer paper is highlighted in pale grey and a square Move edit handle displays at its center.

3. Click and drag the Move edit handle to position the printer paper so that the portion of your drawing that you would like to print on your first page is located within the printable area of the page.
4. Select **File> Print> Print** . In the **Print** dialog, make sure **To Scale** is selected, then click OK. See “Print View Dialog” on page 483.
5. Select the printer paper rectangle and move it so that the desired contents of your second printed page are within the printable area and print **To Scale**.
6. Continue moving the printer paper and printing as needed.

When printing multiple pages, it is generally a good idea to leave some overlap on the edges of each page to make sure that information near those edges is not left off the printed pages by mistake.

Printing to a PDF File

Portable Document Format, or **.pdf** files, are one of the most universally compatible and efficient file formats and can be viewed and printed on most computer platforms.

You can save any view as a **.pdf** file by selecting **Save as PDF** as the Destination printer **Name** in either the **Print View** or **Print Image** dialog. See “Print View Dialog” on page 483 and “Print Image Dialog” on page 486.

If you have a **.pdf** writer installed on your system, you can use it to create a **.pdf** file instead. To print to **.pdf**, simply select it as your printer in the **Print View** or **Print Image** dialog.

When you either save as or print to **.pdf**, you will be asked to create a file name and choose a destination automatically. For more information, see “Saving, Exporting, and Backing Up Files” on page 41.

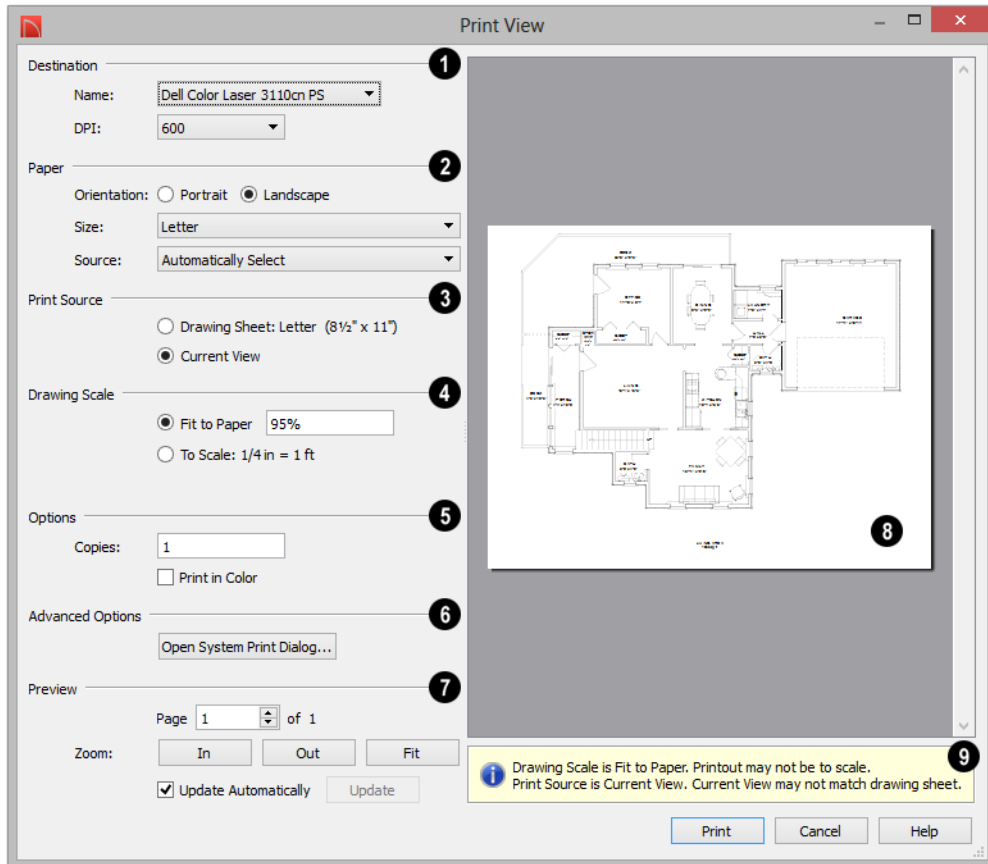
Print View Dialog



To print from floor plan view and the Materials List, select **File> Print> Print**. The **Print View** or or **Print Materials**

List dialog opens. The settings that are available will vary depending on which version of the dialog is open.

Note: 3D views can be printed using Print Image.



- 1 Select the **Name** of the **Printer** that you would like to use from the drop-down list. To print to **.pdf**, select “Save as PDF” from the list, or choose a **.pdf** writer installed on your system. See “Printing to a PDF File” on page 483.
 - Select the **DPI**, or Dots Per Inch to use when printing, from the drop-down list.

The available options may vary depending on the selected printer.

- 2 Select the **Paper Orientation**, **Size**, and **Source**. The available Size and Source options are controlled by the selected printer’s driver.

- When possible, the program will automatically set the Size and Orientation to match those of the Drawing Sheet.
- ③ Specify the **Print Source**. Not available in the **Print Materials List** dialog.
- Select **Drawing Sheet** to print the entire sheet even though you may be zoomed in on a portion of the view.
- Select **Current View** to print only that portion of the active view that is currently visible on screen. If you are zoomed out, any blank space outside of the printable objects in the view is ignored.
- ④ Specify the **Drawing Scale** of the printed output. Not available in the **Print Materials List** dialog or in camera views or overviews.
- **Fit to Paper** prints the view on one page. The program uses whatever scale is necessary to fit the plan on one page.
- When **Fit to Paper** is selected, specify the percentage of the paper to be used. The default value is 95%.

Note: The Fit to Paper percentage value is global - affecting all views in all files, and is retained between sessions.

- Select **To Scale** to print at the scale specified in the **Drawing Sheet Setup** dialog. See “Drawing Sheet Setup Dialog” on page 479.
- ⑤ **Options** - Specify the number of **Copies** you would like to print.

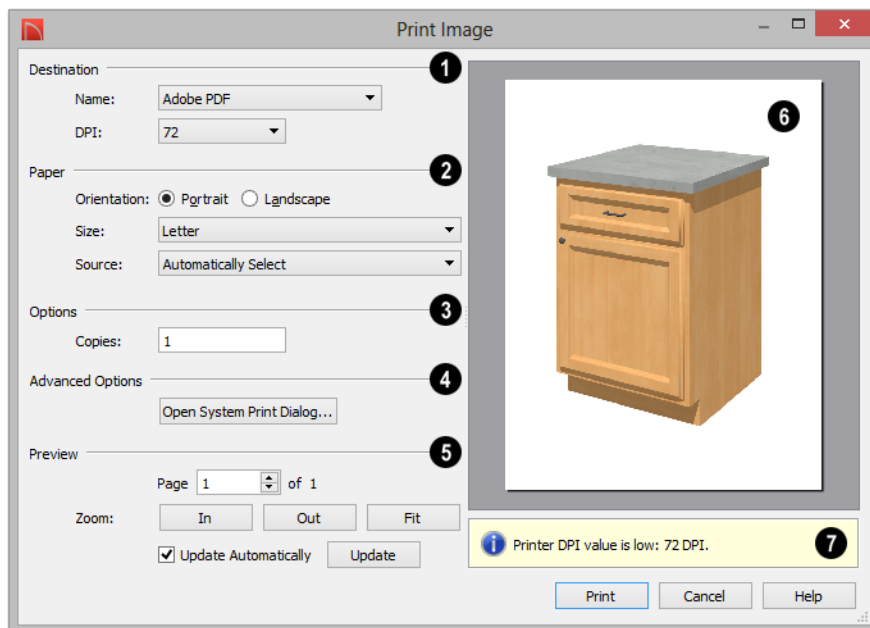
- ⑥ **Advanced Options** - Click the **Open System Print Dialog** button to close the **Print View** dialog and print using your operating system’s Print dialog instead. Not available when No Printer is selected.
- ⑦ Control the appearance of the print job **Preview** on the right side of the dialog.
 - Specify the **Page** that displays in the Preview area.
 - Click the buttons to **Zoom In**, **Zoom Out**, or **Fit** the selected Page to the extents of the Preview area.
 - Uncheck **Update Automatically** to turn off the print job Preview and prevent it from updating as changes are made to the settings in this dialog.
 - Click the **Update** button to update the print job Preview to reflect the current settings in this dialog. If Update Automatically is unchecked, clicking Update may force the Preview to be blank.
- ⑧ When Update Automatically is checked, a preview of the current print job displays here. The drawing sheet displays as a white rectangle, and if multiple sheets are required, you can scroll through them. If the print job is large, a progress dialog may display briefly as the preview draws or updates.
- ⑨ To help prevent unwanted printed output, information messages regarding page size, resolution, and scale may display here, depending on the settings in this dialog.

Print Image Dialog



Any view can be printed by selecting **File > Print Image**. This is the only way to print 3D views. See “3D Rendering” on page 399.

The **Print Image** dialog is similar to the **Print View** dialog; however, the printing process is different. **Print Image** prints individual pixels as opposed to vectors (lines).



1 Select the Name of the **Printer** you wish to use from the drop-down list. To print to **.pdf**, select “Save as PDF” from the list, or choose a **.pdf** writer installed on your system. See “Printing to a PDF File” on page 483.

2 Select the **Paper Orientation, Size, and Source**. The available Size and Source options are controlled by the selected printer’s driver. See “Printer Drivers” on page 478.

3 Specify the number of **Copies** you would like to print.

4 **Advanced Options** - Click the **Open System Print Dialog** button to close the **Print View** dialog and print using your operating system’s Print dialog instead. Not available when No Printer is selected.

5 Control the appearance of the print job **Preview** on the right side of the dialog.

- Specify the **Page** that displays in the Preview area.
- Click the buttons to **Zoom In, Zoom Out, or Fit** the selected Page to the extents of the Preview area.


- Uncheck **Update Automatically** to turn off the print job Preview and prevent it from updating as changes are made to the settings in this dialog.
 - Click the **Update** button to update the print job Preview to reflect the current settings in this dialog. If Update Automatically is unchecked, clicking Update may force the Preview to be blank.
- 6 When Update Automatically is checked, a preview of the current print job displays here. If the print job is large, a progress dialog may display briefly as the preview draws or updates.
 - 7 To help prevent unwanted printed output, information messages regarding page size and resolution may display here, depending on the settings in this dialog.

Print Model



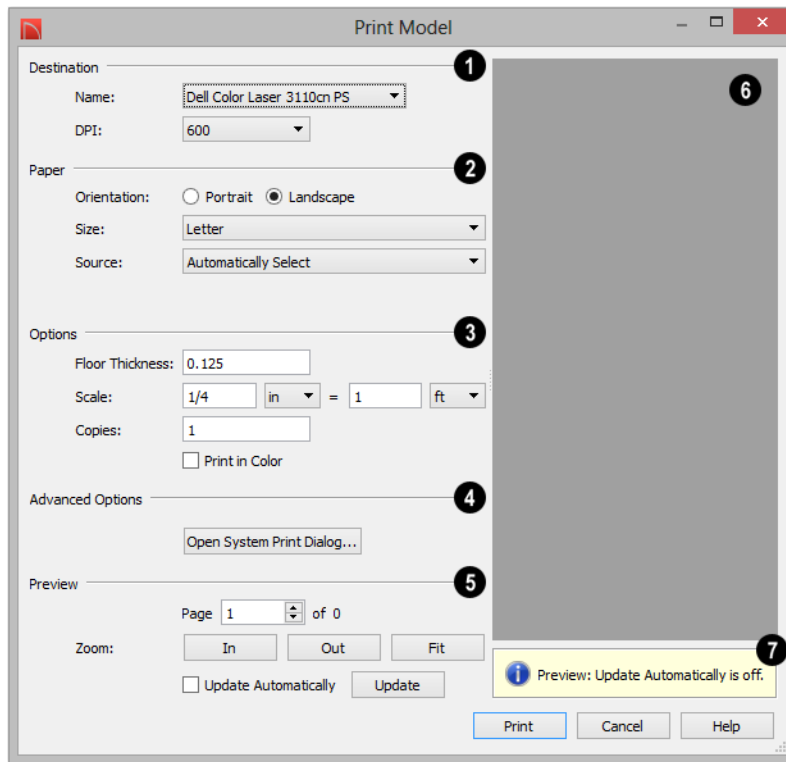
The **Model Maker** allows you to print scaled drawings of wall and roof surfaces in your plan that can be assembled into a 3D model. Three types of prints are created: walls, roof planes, and a floor plan wall layout template.

Printing the Model

To print the model templates, choose **File> Print> Print Model** . The **Print Model** dialog opens.

A good way to understand which options best meet your needs is to make a very simple two story plan and try them out.

Print Model Dialog



1 Select the **Name** of the **Printer** that you would like to use from the drop-down list. To print to **.pdf**, select “Save as PDF” from the list, or choose a **.pdf** writer installed on your system. See “Printing to a PDF File” on page 483

2 Select the **Paper Orientation, Size, and Source**. The available Size and Source options are controlled by the selected printer’s driver. See “Printer Drivers” on page 478.

- Larger page sizes and Landscape orientation are usually best for Print Model.
- Select **All** to print the entire drawing.

3 **Options** -

- Specify the **Floor Thickness**, which is the thickness of the material you plan to use for the model’s floor platform.
- Specify the **Scale** to be used when printing the model.
- Specify the number of **Copies** to be printed.
- Check **Print in Color** to print in color.

4 **Advanced Options** - Click the **Open System Print Dialog** button to close the **Print Model** dialog and print using your

operating system's Print dialog instead. Not available when No Printer is selected.

- 5 Control the appearance of the print job **Preview** on the right side of the dialog.
 - Specify the **Page** that displays in the Preview area.
 - Click the buttons to **Zoom In**, **Zoom Out**, or **Fit** the selected Page to the extents of the Preview area.
 - Check **Update Automatically** to have the print job Preview display and update as changes are made to the settings in this dialog. This is not unchecked by default because updating the Preview in the Print Model dialog can be time-consuming.
 - Click the **Update** button to update the print job Preview to reflect the current settings in this dialog. If Update Automatically is unchecked, clicking Update may force the Preview to be blank.
- 6 A preview of the current print job displays here. The drawing sheet for each page displays as a white rectangle, and you can scroll through the pages. If the print job is large, a progress dialog may display briefly as the preview draws or updates.
- 7 To help prevent unwanted printed output, information messages regarding page size and resolution may display here, depending on the settings in this dialog.

Assembling the Model

Once the templates have been printed, they can be assembled. You need scissors, an

adhesive, and a rigid material like cardboard or foamboard that can be easily cut and glued to provide support for the 3D model.

The Model Maker produces templates of wall and roof surfaces in the model, but does not include tabs or other means of connecting them together. If you wish, you can leave extra paper beyond the template edges as you cut them out for use assembling the model.

Wall Layout Template

Begin by laying out the Wall Layout template. If it printed on multiple sheets, they should be combined into one. Make sure that exterior and interior wall surfaces line up where the sheets join together.

Fasten the Wall Layout Template to a sturdy surface to provide support for your walls.

Walls

Walls should be cut and fixed to a rigid backing so that they can stand on their own and support the weight of the roof or floors above them. How they are cut and assembled varies depending on the desired final appearance of the model and how they were printed.

Roofs

Roof planes are joined together when possible before printing. For each roof surface, the fascia and soffit surfaces are attached at the eave.

Materials Lists

Home Designer Suite can calculate a Materials List in three ways: **From All Floors, From Area, or From Room.**

Materials Lists can be created, edited, and printed directly from the program. They can also be exported as text files for use in other programs.



The Materials List is based on certain assumptions that may not match your building style. Home Designer Suite makes no representation as to the accuracy or reliability of the Materials List generated by Home Designer Suite. Always compare the Materials List with a manual take-off before providing a quote or ordering materials for a job.

Chapter Contents

- The Materials List Tools
- Creating an Accurate Materials List
- Structural Member Reporting
- Organizing Materials Lists
- Materials List Display Options Dialog
- Editing Materials Lists
- Printing and Exporting the Materials List
- Conditioned Area Totals

The Materials List Tools



Select **Tools> Materials List** to access the Materials List tools.

A Materials List is like a snapshot of the current plan at the time that the list is made. Any changes made to the model after a Materials List is generated are not included in that list. Create a new Materials List if you would like it to include these changes.

It is not necessary to wait until the plan is complete to generate a Materials List. In fact, you can create a series of Materials Lists reflecting costs at various stages of a project.



For comparison, generate Materials Lists with and without a proposed plan modification.

Calculate from All Floors



Select **Tools> Materials List> Calculate From All Floors** to generate a Materials List for the entire model.

Materials lists calculated from all floors can be lengthy, and only a portion of the list may display on your screen at one time. Use the scroll bars to scroll through the complete list. Move the pointer to cells in the list and click to make changes.


Calculate From Area



In floor plan view only, select **Tools> Materials List> Calculate from**

Area to produce a Materials List for the portion of a plan on a single floor that is included within a temporary rectangular Materials Polyline.

To use Calculate from Area


1. In floor plan view, select **Tools> Materials List> Calculate from Area** .
2. Click and drag a rectangle around the area of the current floor that you would like to produce a Materials List for.
3. When the mouse button is released, a Materials List for the area within the rectangle will display.

Calculate From Area rectangles are temporary and do not display in floor plan view after the list is created.

Calculate From Room



To create the Materials List for a room, select the room, then select **Tools> Materials List> Calculate From Room**.

Calculate From Room  is also available on a selected room's edit toolbar. See "Editing Rooms" on page 146.

A Materials List calculated from a room is created for only the contents of that room: wall materials are not included.

Creating an Accurate Materials List

In order to take full advantage of Home Designer Suite's Materials List capabilities, there are several things to keep in mind.

- The accuracy of your Materials List is directly related to the accuracy of your model. Floor and ceiling heights, wall lengths, and structural settings all directly affect Materials List calculations.
- It takes more than just making your drawing look right to generate an accurate Materials List. If, for example, you use CAD lines to draw an item on a floor plan, that item will not be included in the Materials List. A better way would be to use a symbol or structural element. See

“Architectural vs CAD Objects” on page 78.


- Bear in mind that using generic objects like geometric shapes from the library to represent objects that aren't available in Home Designer Suite can result in items being calculated in the Materials List in a manner that you might not expect.

Framing in the Materials List

You can specify whether framing materials are calculated by lineal foot, as a cut list, or as a buy list in the **Structural Member Reporting** dialog.

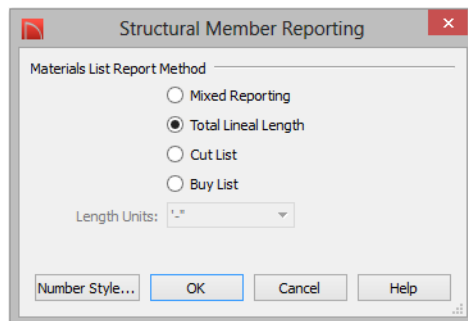
Structural Member Reporting

The **Structural Member Reporting** dialog allows you to specify the method used to calculate framing members in the Materials List.

To open the **Structural Member Reporting** dialog, select **Edit > Default Settings** , then select “Structural Member Reporting” from the tree list and click the **Edit** button. See “Default Settings vs Preferences” on page 56.

You can create a list of the framing member sizes that you wish to purchase, and if an item in The Materials List is the same length as or shorter than one of these defined lengths, it will be described using the defined length rather than its actual length.

Structural Member Reporting Dialog



Choose a **Materials List Report Method**.

The selected method will affect subsequently created Materials Lists, but not any that may already exist.

- Select **Mixed Reporting** to calculate framing materials using a combination of lineal lengths and piece counts.
- Select **Total Lineal Length** to calculate the framing materials of the different structural components of the plan in linear feet.
- Select **Cut List** to calculate the framing materials of the different structural com-

ponents of the plan by counting the individual pieces present in the model.

- Select **Buy List** to calculate the framing materials of the different structural components of the plan by counting individual pieces and matching them to common board lengths.
- Specify which **Length Units** you want to use from the drop-down list. The selected unit(s) are used in the Materials List when either **Cut List** or **Buy List** is the selected method of reporting. Not available when **Mixed Reporting** or **Total Lineal Length** is selected.

Organizing Materials Lists

You can control what items are calculated in the Materials List by specifying which categories are used.

There are some parts of a model that cannot be excluded from the Materials List. Floor and ceiling platforms are prime examples. If

you need to generate a Materials List for only part of a plan, such as an addition, consider making a copy of the plan file. In the copy, delete the as-built portion of the plan and then generate a Materials List.

ID	Floor	Size	Description	Count	Extra	Unit	Price	Total Cost	Comment
General									
GN1	1		thermal envelope - ceiling area	72.00	0.00	sq ft		\$0.00	
GN2	1		thermal envelope - floor area	66.00	0.00	sq ft		\$0.00	
GN3		0 37 1/2 high Wall	8" Concrete Stem Wall	36		0 ft		\$0.00	
GN4	1	109 1/8 high Wall	Siding-6	37		0 ft		\$0.00	
GN5	1		thermal envelope - wall area - North	87.00	0.00	sq ft		\$0.00	
GN6	1		thermal envelope - wall area - East	69.00	0.00	sq ft		\$0.00	
GN7	1		thermal envelope - wall area - South	87.00	0.00	sq ft		\$0.00	
GN8	1		thermal envelope - wall area - West	69.00	0.00	sq ft		\$0.00	
								Subtotal:	\$0.00
Foundation									
FO1		0 8" thick	Concrete	2.74	0.00	cu yd		\$0.00	
FO2		0 16" thick	concrete footing - concrete	1.16	0.00	cu yd		\$0.00	
FO3	0		foundation bolts	12	0			\$0.00	
								Subtotal:	\$0.00

Categories

The line items in the Materials List are organized into a set of predefined categories, such as Electrical and Framing, which display in the **ID** column.

To specify a line item's category

1. Create a Materials List.

2. Click in the cell in the ID column for a line item.
3. Select the desired category from the drop-down list that becomes available.

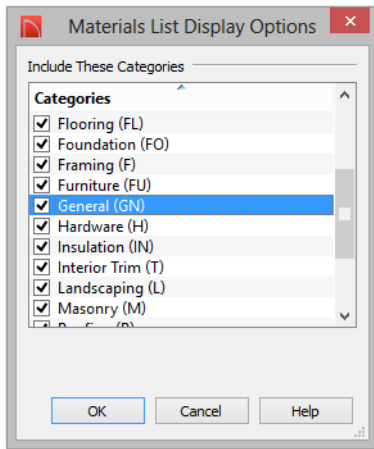
The categories that are available cannot be altered; however, you can specify which categories are included for individual lists in the **Materials List Display Options** dialog.

Materials List Display Options Dialog



When a Materials List is open, select **Tools > Display Options** to open the

Materials List Display Options dialog for the current list.



The Categories listed here appear in the ID column of the Materials List in the order they are presented here. Check the box beside the

name of each category that you want to display in the currently active Materials List.

Note: The information in a suppressed category is still part of the Materials List. If the Materials List is exported, suppressed categories are exported, as well.

Editing Materials Lists

Materials lists can be edited in a variety of ways. You can adjust the width of a column by clicking and dragging the bar on the right side of the column name.

Adding Information

You can enter information in the Price and Comment columns for each item.

Adding price or other information for any item is straightforward. Simply click in the cell and type the desired information.

Changing Information

You can change the information in any column in an individual Materials List. As with added information, click in a cell to

select the existing text, then type in the desired text.

To move an item in a Materials List to a new category, select the cell in the **ID** column and choose a new category from the drop-down list that becomes available. See “Categories” on page 495.


Total Cost

Total Cost is calculated using the Count, Unit, Price, %Markup, Labor and Equipment columns to calculate the cost. The formula used is:

$$(\text{Count} + \text{Extra}) * \text{Price} * (1 + (\% \text{Markup}/100)) + ((\text{Count} + \text{Extra}) * \text{Labor}) + ((\text{Count} + \text{Extra}) * \text{Equipment})$$

If a column does not appear, 0 is used for the value of that column with the exception of Count and Price, which are always used in the calculation even if they are not shown.

Copying Information

Portions of a Materials List can be copied and then pasted into a **Text**  object or into

a word processing program or spreadsheet program using the standard Windows Copy (Ctrl + C), Cut (Ctrl + X), and Paste (Ctrl + V) commands. See “Copying and Pasting Text” on page 425.

Printing and Exporting the Materials List



To print a Materials List, select **File> Print** while the Materials List window is active. See “Print View Dialog” on page 483.



A Materials List can also be exported into a tab delimited text (.txt) file that can be opened directly by most spreadsheet programs. In a Materials List window, select **File> Export Materials List**.

The **Write Materials Export File** dialog will open. This is a typical File Save dialog. See “Exporting Files” on page 43.

Estimating Software

You can export a Materials List to a word processor or spreadsheet program to arrange

it in your estimating format. You can also export the Materials List to a number of commercial estimating programs in whose databases you can keep your current pricing and generate reports based on this data.

Before purchasing an estimating software program, be sure that the program supports the direct import of Chief Architect Materials Lists.

Any questions regarding estimating software packages and how they interact with Home Designer Suite should be directed toward the company providing the estimating software. Home Designer Suite is unable to provide any technical support for third party programs.

Conditioned Area Totals

Conditioned Area is the space within a building that is heated and/or air conditioned, and a Thermal Envelope is a three dimensional boundary built around the Conditioned Space that separates it from the unconditioned space around it. Thermal

Envelopes are composed of floor platforms, ceiling platforms, walls, doors, and windows.

When a Materials List is created, Home Designer Suite calculates the total areas of the components that make up a structure’s Thermal Envelope and lists them in the

General category of the Materials List. See “Categories” on page 495.

Doors are always categorized as doors rather than as windows. This is the case even when a door is specified as a Glass Door or when it is part of a mulled unit.

Conditioned area totals can be entered into third party programs such as **REScheck**[™] to determine whether the plan meets the energy code in use in your area.



Home Designer Suite does not check plans for compliance with building or energy codes.

Conditioned Area

With the exception of Unspecified rooms, rooms that are assigned an interior Room Type are included in the Conditioned Area. “Open Below” rooms are also included; however, other hybrid Room Types as well

as exterior Room Types are not. See “Room Types” on page 147.

Building Orientation

Walls, doors, and windows are categorized as north-, south-, east-, or west-facing for the purposes of conditioned area totals. The definition of North in a plan is straight up on screen in floor plan view.

- If a wall is oriented at 45° or less to north in a plan, it will be categorized as a “North” wall. Any doors and windows in this wall will also be categorized as “North”.
- Similarly, walls, doors, and windows oriented within 45° of south, east, or west will be classified as “South”, “East” or “West”, respectively.

The orientation of a curved wall is based on the direction of its chord.

Additional Resources


Home Designer Suite offers a variety of resources to help you become familiar with the many features it offers.

- Reference Manual
- User's Guide
- Home Designer Web Site
- HomeTalk Online User Forum
- Technical Support

Reference Manual

The Home Designer Suite Reference Manual is a comprehensive source of information for Home Designer Suite 2015. Chapters are organized by subject, beginning with the fundamental concepts and progressing to the more advanced features. The Reference

Manual is presented in .pdf file format and includes a Table of Contents and Index. This manual is available online by selecting

Help > View Reference Manual  from the program menu.

User's Guide

Written for new Home Designer Suite users, but a helpful reference for users of all experience levels as well, the User's Guide features a series of tutorials designed to introduce the basics of using the program.

The Home Designer Suite User's Guide is organized by topic and walks you through

the process of creating a complete model, from the first wall to the interior design and landscaping.

This guide is available online by selecting **Help > View User's Guide** from the program menu.

Online Help Videos

Another resource designed to illustrate Home Designer Suite's powerful tools is the set of tutorial videos available on our web site.

To view the online videos, select **Help> View Online Help Videos** from the program menu or visit video.homedesigner.chiefarchitect.com/videos.

Home Designer Web Site

If you have questions that the online Help feature has not answered, feel free to turn to our web site.

A database of common technical support questions and answers related to Home

Designer Suite is available through a searchable interface.

Select **Help> Visit Home Designer Web Site**  from the menu to launch your default internet browser to www.HomeDesignerSoftware.com.

HomeTalk Online User Forum

The HomeTalk Bulletin Board offers several ongoing discussions about a variety of topics related to the use of Home Designer Suite. It's rich with useful tips and available free of charge to all registered Home Designer Suite users.

- Discussions are initiated and carried out by users.

- Experienced users share knowledge with each other and beginners.
- Home Designer Suite Staff members post announcements, advice and technical information.

To visit the HomeTalk forum, select **Help> HomeTalk** or go to: HomeTalk.HomeDesignerSoftware.com.

Technical Support

Chief Architect takes pride in offering world class technical support services that can be accessed by telephone or on our web site. Select **Help> Technical Support** from the program menu to visit: www.HomeDesignerSoftware.com.

Before contacting Technical Support, take a moment to see if the answer to your question is found in the Help resources, tutorial videos, or in our on-line Knowledge Base at www.HomeDesignerSoftware.com.

When you contact us, Technical Support will refer you to these resources if the answer can be found there.

So that our Technical Support specialists can assist you as efficiently as possible, please

refer to “Technical Support Services” on page 503 for additional trouble-shooting suggestions and information that will be needed before placing your call.

Upgrade to Chief Architect

Chief Architect is a premium, professional residential drafting and 3D design program that allows builders, architects and other professionals in the building and interior design trades to produce construction documents and high quality 3D renderings of their plans.

Chief Architect can open and edit plans created in Home Designer Suite. In addition,

Home Designer Suite can open plans created in Chief Architect for viewing, as well.

To learn more, select **Help > Upgrade to Chief Architect.** to launch your default web browser to www.chiefarchitect.com.

Technical Support Services

Chief Architect is committed to providing world-class technical support to complement our products.

The primary function of technical support is to make sure our software is functioning

correctly and to help you quickly resolve problems that prevent its normal use. Our technical support professionals are eager to work with you to make certain our software is functioning as designed.

Reference and Training Resources

Chief Architect offers a variety of reference options in addition to the resources that come standard with the program.

Online Knowledge Base

The Home Designer online **Knowledge Base** contains a variety of articles describing how to resolve common technical problems and achieve specific design goals.

The Knowledge Base is found in the Technical Support section of the Web site and can be referred to again and again at your

convenience at www.HomeDesignerSoftware.com.

Online Help Videos

Chief Architect has developed a collection of training videos that contain in-depth training on a wide range of topics. These videos are available on our Web site, www.HomeDesignerSoftware.com.

User Forum

Our HomeTalk User Forum is a great place to discuss and exchange ideas with other

Home Designer Suite users. Here you can post questions, read discussions from other users, and post suggestions to improve our product. In addition to our regular users, from time to time our support and

engineering teams monitor the forum and provide input and discussion on current topics. This resource is available free of charge at HomeTalk.HomeDesignerSoftware.com.

Troubleshooting Common Technical Issues

Chief Architect strives to make certain our software works correctly; however, from time to time issues arise that prevent its normal operation.

Installation Issues

The following are common reasons for installation failure of Home Designer Suite and other software:

- Anti-virus software is enabled and interfering with installation. Anti-virus software is the most common cause of installation failures for any type of software. Refer to your anti-virus software's documentation for details on how to disable the software and re-enable it once installation is complete.
- The recommended minimum system requirements are not met. See "System Requirements" on page 7.
- The computer has a CD drive but not a DVD drive. A standard CD drive will not read DVD discs.

- The DVD has fingerprints, scratches, or other defects. Sometimes a small fingerprint can prevent the program from installing. Clean the disk with soft cotton cloth. Be sure to use soft cotton rather than paper products on disks to avoid scratching.



If you see visible cracking on a CD or DVD, do not insert it in your CD/DVD drive. Cracked disks can fly apart and cause damage to your drive.

- You do not have sufficient rights to install the software. Verify that you have administrative rights and the administrative password during the installation process. If you are on a corporate network, consult your network administrator for assistance.

Refer to the on-line **Knowledge Base** for solutions to common installation problems. If the answer to your question is not found there, contact our Technical Support department for assistance.

Troubleshooting Printing Problems

Printing problems fall into two main categories: those that prevent the printer from working in any program and problems


printing from Home Designer Suite. To determine if the problem is specific to Home Designer Suite, try the following:

1. Begin by clicking on the Windows **Start** button, and select **Printers**.
2. Right-click the printer that is not functioning properly in the **Printers** folder.
3. Click **Properties** from the menu that appears.
4. On the **General** tab, click the **Print Test Page** button.

If the printer does not produce a test page, the problem is not one that Chief Architect Technical Support can solve. Follow these suggestions:


- Check the connection between the computer and the printer.
- Check your printer documentation for troubleshooting printer problems.
- Contact your printer's manufacturer or check their Web site for support information.

Your printer manufacturer is the best resource for solving problems of this type. Chief Architect Technical Support is not able to help diagnose and solve problems that prevent printing from any program.

 It is a good idea to keep the Owner's Manual for your printer close at hand. Write inside the Owner's Manual the various phone numbers for technical support for that printer – for the original manufacturer and for your local dealer.

Printers vary widely in how they function. Sometimes a faulty cable can be a problem. Often, solving a printing problem is as simple as downloading and installing an updated printer driver. See “Printer Drivers” on page 478.

If you can print from Home Designer Suite but are not satisfied with the output, refer to “Printing” on page 477 for information on how to set up and use the printing functions in the program. Legacy users should bear in mind that each release has new features and enhancements, so techniques that were used in prior versions may not work in the current version.

Make sure that you use **Print Preview**  before printing. Print Preview displays the printed paper, or drawing sheet, as a white rectangle on screen, and shows how the sheet is scaled and positioned relative to your drawing. If the drawing is not on the drawing sheet on-screen, it will not be on the sheet when you print. See “Print Preview” on page 481.

Make sure that your scaling is correct for the paper size. If the plan is much smaller or much larger than the drawing sheet, you may need to change your Scale. See “Printing to Scale” on page 481.

64 Bit Versions of Windows

Some printers may not function correctly on 64 bit Windows operating systems. If you are experiencing a printing problem while using a 64 bit version of Windows, please contact the printer's manufacturer to verify that you have the correct driver installed.


Printing to a legacy parallel printer port on a Windows 64 bit machine may not work correctly when using a hardware lock. USB printers should not be affected.

Clearing Printer Information

Some information specific to individual printers, such as available printer paper sizes, is saved with each plan file.

If you are encountering problems when printing, or unexpected options in the **Page Setup** dialog, select **File> Print> Clear Printer Info** to clear the printer-specific information stored with the plan file.

After using **Clear Printer Info**, select **File> Print> Page Setup** . Make sure the

settings in the **Page Setup** dialog are correct, and then click OK and **Save**  the file.

Online Knowledge Base

For answers to frequently asked questions regarding printing and other topics, select **Help> Visit Home Designer Suite Web Site**  and browse the Technical Support section of our Web site, www.HomeDesignerSoftware.com. Our Technical Support specialists post new articles periodically to help resolve problems you may encounter.

Error Messages

Most common error messages have a known cause and simple resolution. When you encounter an error or warning message in Home Designer Suite, you can click the **Check Knowledge Base** button in the message box to launch your default internet browser to the Home Designer Knowledge Base on our Web site, www.HomeDesignerSoftware.com.

If an article discussing the message is available it will display, providing information about the message and how best to avoid it.

It is important that abnormal errors be reported to Chief Architect Technical Support so that we can identify and resolve any problems.

The content of an error message is useful in diagnosing its cause. If you encounter an error message, read it carefully and write down the error number and the exact text of the error message.



Press the Print Screen key on your keyboard to capture a picture of the error message. Open a new word processing document or e-mail message and choose **Edit> Paste** to paste a copy of the error message into the document for later reference.

If you encounter the error more than once, make a note of your steps prior to receiving the message.

Before you report an error, check the Knowledge Base to see if the error is already documented by typing the error message or part of the error message into the search form.

Finally, check to see if there are program updates available. These updates are provided free for the current version of Home Designer Suite and contain enhancements and other changes that allow the program to perform at an optimum level. Select **Help> Download Program Updates**

from the Home Designer Suite menu and follow the instructions on our Web site, www.HomeDesignerSoftware.com.

Error Reporting

When an error occurs, you may have the option in the message box to send the report to Chief Architect.

No personal information is sent. When you click **Send**, your default internet browser launches and a Web page appears on screen. This message confirms that the report was sent successfully and may give you further instructions on how to proceed.

Contacting Technical Support

Before contacting Technical Support, take a moment to see if the answer to your question is found in the Reference Manual, Help index, or in our on-line Knowledge Base. When you contact us, Technical Support will refer you to these resources if the answer can be found there.

Chief Architect's world-class technical support is available Monday through Friday from 6 AM to 5 PM Pacific Standard Time and can be reached at (208) 292-3375 or via our Web site, www.HomeDesignerSoftware.com.

There are several things you can do to ensure a speedy answer to your question when you contact Technical Support.

- Before contacting Technical Support, select **Help> About Home Designer Suite** and make a note of the first characters of your Product Key and the exact version of Home Designer Suite you are using. Technical support is available to the owners of software licenses. When you contact Technical Support, be prepared to verify that you are the owner of the software license.
- Before contacting Technical Support, check to see if there are program updates

available for download. Our engineering team periodically creates updates to the program to resolve functionality or program issues that were unknown at the time of release. These updates are provided free of charge for the current released version and can be accessed by selecting **Help> Download Program Updates** from the menu.

- When you first encounter a problem or error message, copy the exact wording of the message or a detailed description of the problem. This helps us isolate the problem and provide you with a solution as quickly as possible.
- When placing a call to Technical Support, be at the computer or work station that is experiencing the problem and have Home Designer Suite running. If you do not have access to the problem computer at the time of the call, the technician may be unable to reproduce the issue and/or suggest a remedy that can be implemented and verified immediately.
- Be prepared to reproduce the problem when you contact us. If the problem cannot be reproduced, there is a reduced

chance that we will be able to resolve the problem on your first phone call.

Online Information

Home Designer Suite has a variety of support resources available on our Web site. These include our **Technical Support Knowledge Base**, the **How do I...? Solution Finder**, downloadable program updates, and ways to contact our Technical Support department. To access these resources, visit: www.HomeDesignerSoftware.com.

Our support team is happy to assist you in finding the best resource to answer your questions, and can resolve most issues in just a few minutes. In order to allow us to quickly answer your calls, we ask that you limit yourself to one question per support call.

Online Support

Questions can be answered online by the Technical Support department. To submit a technical inquiry online, visit the Technical Support section of our Web site and use the [Online Support Center](#).

This route ensures that your question is delivered to the first available support professional. Requesting assistance of an individual specialist is not recommended, since that person may not be available to answer your question in a timely manner.

Telephone Support

Our Technical Support team is committed to answering your questions as quickly as possible and in the order received. Your call is important to us; however, there are times when we get more calls than expected and you may have to wait a few minutes before speaking to a technician.

Program Paths Dialog

Some technical issues can be caused by problems with support files used by Home Designer Suite. In the event of such an issue, Chief Architect Technical Support may direct you to the **Program Paths** dialog. This dialog displays a list of files utilized by the software along with the pathname of each.

To avoid unintended problems that could prevent you from using the software, it is strongly recommended that you make no changes to any of the files in this list except with the direct assistance of Technical Support.

Index

Numerics

3D	
Data Import.....	472
Delete Surface.....	387
Symbols, Importing.....	473
3D Roof Designer	223
3D Views	
Display.....	386
Doll House.....	384
Editing.....	394
Framing Overview.....	385
Full Overview.....	384
Generation, Speed up.....	403
Overviews.....	383
Save.....	395
Working in.....	394
3D Wall Designer	122

A

Adding	
to the Library.....	350
Adjust	
Material Definition.....	366
Align	
Curved Stairs Between Floors.....	108
Curved Walls Between Floors.....	131
Objects.....	107
Text.....	425
Walls.....	130
Alphabets	
International.....	418
Unicode.....	418
Angle Snaps	79
Angle Style	

Dialog.....	66
Appearance Preferences	59
Appliances	
Built into cabinets.....	274
Arc	
Panel.....	436
Specification Dialog.....	436
Architectural Blocks	
Displaying.....	338
Edit Sub-Objects.....	338
Explode.....	338
Sub-objects.....	339
Archive Files	44
Area	
Living Area calculation.....	148
of a Polyline.....	438
of Rooms.....	149
Arrow	
Auto Positioning.....	427
Panel.....	435
Text Line With.....	426
Artwork	
Creating textures.....	367–368
Attic	
Floor.....	205
Rooms.....	148
Walls.....	132
Auto	
Archive.....	44
Dormers, Editing.....	228
Floating Dormer.....	227
Interior Dimensions.....	409
Place Outlets.....	149, 259
Roof Returns.....	230
Save Files.....	44
Stairwell.....	246
Auto Rebuild	

Foundation.....	210
Roofs.....	221
Automatic	
Exterior Dimensions	409

B

Backdrops	460
Definition	460
Background Color	60
Backup	
Entire Plan.....	51
Files	43
Balusters	139
Definition	234
Base	
Cabinets	273
Basements	
Daylight	213
Walkout	213
Bay Windows	178
Bay/Box Window	
Specification Dialog.....	196
Blend Colors with Materials	363
Blind Cabinets	280
Bonus	
Library Catalogs.....	347
Rooms.....	205
Bow	
Window Specification	196
Bow Windows	179
Box	
Windows.....	179
Break	
Line	109
Line, partial	110
Wall.....	122
Build	
Foundation.....	202, 208
House.....	444
New Floor	201
Roof Dialog.....	221

Terrain.....	300
Bumping/Pushing	106

C

Cabinet	
Defaults	272
Designer	271
Modules Library.....	273
Specification Dialog.....	280
Tools	272
Cabinets	
Angled front	278
Backsplash.....	282
Base	273
Blind	280
Built-in appliances	274
Corner	279
Delete face items.....	283
Door/drawer style	273
Doors, diagonal	284
Doors, glass	285
Editing	277
End cabinets	278
Fillers.....	274
Front Indicators	276
Front Panel	282
Full Height	273
General Defaults	272
Glass doors.....	285
Island.....	280
Minimum Width.....	272
Module Lines.....	276
Moving, with Wall	277
Normal.....	279
Peninsula radius.....	278
Radius end.....	278
Resize Increment.....	272
Reverse Appliance.....	284
Shaped	278
Special shapes	278, 281
Wall	273
CAD	
Angle Snaps.....	79
Circles	432
Drawing Tools	431

Ellipses	432	Line to arc.....	239
Move to Front of Group	105	Chimneys	217
Ovals.....	432	Circle	
Polyline	432	Specification Dialog.....	437
Polylines.....	438	Circles	432
Rectangle	432	Ovals.....	432
CAD Box		Click Stairs	234
Specification Dialog	440	Close	
CAD Objects		Plans and Views.....	52
Displaying.....	442	Program.....	53
Calculate		Views	379
From All Floors	492	Color	
From Room.....	492	Off/On	104
Loan.....	446	Color Chooser	
Materials on soffits.....	333	Eyedropper	371
Camera		Colors	
Activating	395	Selecting.....	370
Change Settings	396	Compatibility	
Create Views	383	with other programs.....	38
Field of View.....	392	Connect	
Move Tools.....	389	Electrical.....	260
Move Up/Down One Floor.....	392	Walls	124
Orbit Tools.....	390	Contextual Menus	60
Specification Dialog	396	In Render views	392
Tilt Tools	390	Copy	
Casing		Folders and Library Objects	352
Door.....	173	Region as Picture.....	459
Cathedral Ceilings	153	Copy/Paste	
Ceiling		Main Edit Mode	83
Break Lines	154	Sticky Mode	83
Heights.....	151	Corner	
Ceilings		Boards.....	266
Cathedral.....	153	Windows	180
Lowered	153	Corner Board	
Over this room	158	Specification Dialog.....	267
Special	153	Create	
Tray	154	New Plan Dialog.....	40
Center		Plant Image	327
Doors	166	Cross Hairs	63
Object edit tool.....	107	Mouse	107
Sheet	481	Turn On/Off.....	63
Text.....	425	Cross Section Slider	393
Change		Current	
Door Swings	166		
Floor/Reference	204–205		

Floor.....	204
Floor, Delete	202
Curved	
Deck Edge	118
Deck Railing	118
Stairs.....	234
Walls, Draw	124

D

Deck	151
Designer	118
Edges	118
Railing	118
Roof Over	151
Decks	151
Default	
Lights	401
Default Sun Light	
Specification Dialog.....	402
Defaults	
Cabinet.....	272
Defined.....	56
Dimension.....	405
Door	161
Dormer	220
Dynamic	57
Floor.....	144, 200
Foundation.....	208
General Plan.....	57
Material	369
Roofs.....	220
Room.....	144
Settings	56
Structural Member Reporting	493
Wall.....	116
Window.....	178
Define Material Dialog	367
Delete	
3D Surface.....	387
Built-in Fixtures and Appliances	358
Current Floor.....	202
Floors	202
Foundation.....	211
Gable Over Opening.....	224

Library Content.....	353
Objects	111
Roof Planes	221, 223
Wall Hatching.....	121
Dimension	
Defaults	405
Tab	416
Tools	408
Dimension Defaults	405
Dialog	405
Dimension Line	
Specification Dialog	415
Dimensions	
Auto Interior	409
Editing	411
End to end	409
Exterior	409
Interior	409
Locating railings	136
Move Objects Using.....	414
Moving Labels	412
Number Height	416
Tape Measure	410
Temporary.....	410
Zeroes in.....	408
Display	
3D Views.....	386
CAD Objects	442
Drawing Groups.....	105
Electrical	260
Foundations	209
Images.....	451
Objects	74
Room labels	149
Terrain	299
Walls, Railings, and Fences	125
Display Options Dialog	75
Distributed Object Tab	306
Doll House View	384
Door	
Defaults	161
Specification Dialog	170
Tools	162
Doors	
Arched	173

Elevation Views	385
Ellipse	432
Specification Dialog	437
End	
Cabinets	279
To-End Dimensions	409
Enhanced Metafiles	455
Error Messages	506
Estimating Software	497
Exit Program	53
Expand/Collapse All	345
Explode	
Architectural Blocks	338
Export	
2D Drawings	470
All Floors	470
Current View	470
Drawing File Dialog	470
EMF	455
From the Library	353
Materials List	497
Picture Files	454
Windows Metafiles	455
Windows Metafiles Dialog	455
WMF	455
Extend	
Slope Downward	132
Extension Lines	
Adding	413
Deleting	414
Editing	413
Extension Snaps	79
Exterior	
Dimensions	409
Room types	148
The Exterior Room	145
Walls	119

F

F6 Key	
Fill Window	375
Faster Rendering	404

Fence Designer	119
Field of View	392
File	
Backing Up Your Files	43
Create New	40
Management	37
Open	45
Organization	38
Fill	
Patterns	439
Window	375
Window Building Only	375
Fill Style Panel	439
Filter	
Library Search	346
Final View	400
with Shadows	400
Find Plan Wizard	47
Fire Box Panel	216
Fireplace	
Direction facing	214
Interior wall	214
Library	217
Masonry	214
Prefabricated	217
Specification Dialog	215
Symbol	217
Fireplaces	213
Chimneys	217
Foundations	215
Freestanding	214
In walls	214
Types	213
Fixtures	
Lights	258
Floating Auto Dormer	227
Floor	
3D Overview	383
Build New Floor	201
Camera	383
Defaults	144, 200
Heights	151
Overview	383
Tools	200

Floor Plan	
Drawing.....	31
View.....	33
Floors	
Adding.....	201
Attic.....	205
Change Floor/Reference.....	204–205
Current Floor.....	204
Deleting.....	202
Floor Up/ Floor Down.....	204
Maximum number.....	201
Reference Floor.....	205
Swap Floor/Reference.....	206
Folders Preferences	62
Fonts	418
and Alphabets.....	418
Footings	208
Foundation	
Auto Rebuild.....	210
Defaults.....	208
Walls.....	120
Foundations	
Build.....	208
Daylight Basement.....	213
Delete.....	211
Display.....	209
Garage.....	211
Mixed Types.....	209
Room supplies floor.....	158
Stem Wall.....	208
Stepped.....	213
Walkout Basement.....	213
Framing	
3D Overview.....	385
Structural Member Reporting.....	493
Full	
Height Cabinets.....	273
Overview.....	383–384

G

Gable	
Over Door/Window.....	224
Garage	

Door Tool.....	163
Garages	
Foundation.....	211
Garden Bed	
Kidney Shaped.....	297
Polyline.....	297
Round.....	297
Tools.....	296
General	
Cabinet Defaults.....	272
Preferences.....	62
Getting Help	34
GFCI Outlet	258
Glass House	
Options Dialog.....	403
GPS	
Importing.....	313
Grid	
Snaps.....	58, 79
Ground Fault Circuit Interrupt	258

H

Half	
Walls.....	139
Half-Walls	117
Hardiness Zone Maps	326
Hardware	
for Doors.....	174
Hatch	
Fill Patterns.....	439
Wall.....	121
Height	
Railings.....	140
Help	
Tool Tips.....	34
Hill / Valley	
Specification Dialog.....	304
Hill/Valley	295
Holes	
In terrain.....	296
Home Designer	

Product Key	34
Version Number	34
Hotkeys	26, 71
House Wizard	
Editing Rooms.....	444
Multiple Floors	445
Placing Rooms	444

I

Image	
Specification Dialog.....	452
Images	400
Adding to Library	451
Creating.....	451
Displaying.....	451
Editing.....	452
Place	450
Printing.....	486
Import	
3D Data	472
3D Symbols	473
GPS Data	313
PDF.....	457
Terrain Assistant	311
Terrain Data.....	311
Interior	
Dimension Tool	409
Dimensions, Auto	409
Fireplace, wall.....	214
Room types.....	148
Invisible Walls	120

K

Key Frames	462
Keyboard	
Commands	26, 71, 344
Kidney Shaped	
Garden Bed	297
Pond.....	297
Terrain Features.....	296
Kitchen Island	280

Knee Walls	133, 137
-------------------------	----------

L

Label Panel	429
Labels	429
Displaying	429
Door	165
Electrical.....	261
Room.....	149
Window	183
Landing	240
Unlocked.....	241
Landings	
Custom Shapes	240
Height.....	241
Locked.....	241
Landscape Designer	289
Layer	
Layer Sets.....	74
Layers	
Primary and Secondary.....	74
Turn off to speed up 3D views	404
Left Mouse Button	
Definition.....	23
Library	
Adding Folders	351
Bonus Catalogs	347
Content	346
Deleting Content.....	353
Export	353
Manufacturer Libraries	347
Renaming Libraries.....	352
Search	345
Shortcuts	353
Trash	353
Library Browser	342
Adding Items	350
Docking.....	345
Panels	342
Preferences.....	61
Library Object	
Specification Dialog	359
Library Objects	

Editing.....	357
Placing.....	354
Light Sources	400
Default Lights	401
Default Sun Light	401
Fixtures	401
Lights	
Fixtures.....	258, 401
Turn On/Off	401
Line	
Color.....	435
Panel.....	434
Specification Dialog	434
Line Style	435
Panel.....	434
Lites	
Craftsman.....	188
Diamond.....	188
Doors	173
Normal	188
Prairie	188
Living Area	150
and Room Types.....	148
Calculation	150
Delete label	150
Label.....	150
Restore label	150
Show.....	59
vs. Footprint	150
Loan Calculator	446

M

Main	
Edit Mode.....	83
Manual	
Dimensions.....	409
Manufacturer Libraries	347
Marquee Select	87
Masonry	
Fireplace	214
Material	
Defaults.....	369

Eyedropper	364
Material Painter	362
and Walls.....	364
Blending	363
Modes	362
Using.....	363
Materials	
Add to Library	350
Artwork	367–368
Blending	367
Brightness	369
Calculating amounts	333
Color	368
Creating.....	366
Define Material Dialog	367
Editing	365
On Soffits.....	333
Panel.....	364
Textures	400
Walls	125
Materials List	491
Calculate from All Floors.....	492
Calculate from Room	492
Conditioned Areas.....	497
Display Options Dialog	495
Editing	496
Estimating software	497
Export.....	497
Menus	26
Message Boxes	
Reset.....	30
message URL http //www.homedesignersoftware.com/ useraccess/content.html	348
Metafile Size Dialog	456
Metafiles	455
Middle Mouse Button	23, 374
Minimum	
Alcove	222
Model Maker	
Printing.....	487
Wall Layout Template	489
Molding	
in Rooms	158
Moldings Tab	

for Rooms	158
Monolithic Slab	208
Mouse Buttons	
Using	23
Move	
Along Rails	128
Folders and Library Objects	352
Object Using Dimensions	414
Objects	106
Restrictions	106
to Front of Group	105
Walls with Cabinets Attached	277
Mulled Unit	
Specification Dialog	184
Mulled Units	
Labels	430
Mullions	
Window	187
Multiple	
Select	87
Muntins	
Window	187

N

Newels	
Definition	234
Newels/Balusters Tab	140
No Locate Wall	136

O

Object	
Based Design	21
Object Snaps	78
Extension Snaps	79
One-Click Auto Dimension	409
One-Click Stairs	234
Open	
Below	148
Object	29
Plan Files	45

View	395
OpenGL	382
Optimizations On	65
Organizing	
your Files	38
Orthogonal Views	481
Outlets	258
Above cabinet	258
Automatic	259
Dishwasher	258
GFCI	258
Manually placed	258
Place	259
Sink	258
WP	258
Oval	432
Specification Dialog	437
Overview	19
Full	384

P

Page Setup Dialog	479
Painting	
Over Materials	367
Pan	
Pan Window Tool	376
the Display	375
Using the Keyboard	376
Using the Mouse	376
Using the Scroll Bars	376
Paragraph Options Dialog	422
Partition Tool	273
Pass-Through	179
Paste	82
Hold Position	83
in Place	83
Special	83
PDF	457
Importing	457
Print to	483
Peninsula Radius Cabinets	280

Specification Dialog 268
Quoins 267

R

Radius
 End Cabinets 280
Rail Style Tab 138
Railings 117
 Balusters 139
 Bottom Rail 139
 Decks 118
 for Stairs 251
 Glass 119
 Half Walls 117
 in a Doorway 170
 Locate with dimensions 136
 Middle Rail 139
 Newels 140
 No Rail 139
 Open 139
 Openings 169
 Solid 139
 Stairs 245
 Type 139
Raised / Lowered Region
 Specification Dialog 305
Rebuild 221
 3D 395
 Roofs 221
Rectangular Polyline 432
Redo 113
Reference
 Display Options 205
 Grid 58
Remove
 Backdrop 382
Render
 Graphics card 382
 Light Sources 400
 Preferences 63
 Status 65
 Tips 399
Rendering Techniques 402

Reset
 Message Boxes 30
 Preferences 66
Reshape objects 109
Resize
 House using Dimensions 415
 Objects 108
Restrictions
 Moving objects 106
Retaining Wall 299
Reverse
 Plan 111
Rich Text
 Defaults 418
 Specification Dialog 420
 Text Color 421
Right Button Definition 23
Road
 Specification Dialog 320
Road Objects
 Different Types 318
Roads
 Displaying 319
Roof 219
 Extend Slope Downward 137
 Full Gable Wall 137
 Over this room 158
 Panel 136
 Pitches in Degrees 231
 Second pitch 137
 Styles, Automatic 221
 Tools 220
Roof Designer 220
Roof Hole/Skylight
 Specification Dialog 225
Roof Planes
 Delete 223
Roofs 219, 221
 Auto Rebuild 221–222
 Auto Roof Return 137
 Build Roof Dialog 221
 Defaults 220
 Dormers 227
 Hole for skylights 224

Knee walls	133
Min. Alcove.....	222
Overhang	223
Pitch.....	132
Returns	230
Skylights.....	224
Story-and-a-half	133
Room	
Defaults.....	144
Specification Dialog	155
Room Labels	149
Display	149
Edit	149
Interior room area	149
Interior room dimensions	149
Room area.....	149
Standard room area	149
Rooms	
Area	149
Attic	148
Auto Place Outlets	149
Below Stairs	247
Ceiling over	158
Editing.....	146
Exterior types	148
Foundation floor definition	158
Interior	148
Interior area.....	149
Interior dimensions.....	149
Living Area	148
Name for PlanCheck	446
Open Below	148
Roof over.....	158
Room Definition	144
Room Types	148
Selecting	145
Standard area.....	149
The Exterior Room	145
Types	147
Rotate objects	110
Round	
Garden bed	297
Pond	297

S

Sample Plans	47
Save	
3D Views	395
and Save As	41
Plan.....	41
Plan Thumbnail	44
Scale	
Picture Files.....	458
Printing to	481
Terrain Data.....	313
Text Size	425
to Fit.....	482
Schematics, Wiring	260
Scroll Bars	376
Seat	
in Bay Window	193
Select	
Backdrop	382
Components of Blocked Units	181
Ctrl+Click.....	87
Library Object Dialog	356
Marquee	87
Multiple Objects	87
Next Object	87
Objects button.....	86
Objects in 3D Views	394
Room.....	145
Selected Edge.....	86
Shift+Click	87
Similar Objects.....	86
Select Color Dialog	370
Selection Fill Color	61
Service Data Tab	262
Shelf	273
Shelf Tool	273
Shelf/Partition	
Specification Dialog.....	286
Shift Key	
Marquee selection	87
Select multiple objects.....	87
Shininess	369
Shortcut Keys	26, 71

Show		
Living Area.....	59	
Reference Grid.....	58	
Shutters	191	
Sidewalk	318	
SidewalkTools	318	
Skylights	221, 224	
Sliding Doors	162	
Snap Behaviors	78	
Angle Snaps	79	
Extension Snaps	79	
Grid Snaps.....	58, 79	
Object Snaps	78	
Soffit		
Defaults	331	
Specification Dialog.....	334	
Soffits	273, 331	
Calculating Materials	333	
Corner	332	
Special applications.....	332	
Space Planning	443	
Special		
Shaped Cabinets.....	278	
Specification Dialogs		
Arc	436	
Bay/Box Window	196	
Bow Window	196	
Cabinet.....	280	
CAD Box.....	440	
CAD Circle.....	437	
CAD Ellipse	437	
CAD Oval.....	437	
Camera.....	396	
Corner Boards.....	267	
Default Sun Light.....	402	
Dimension Line	415	
Door	170	
Dormer	228	
Electrical Service	262	
Elevation Line	304	
Elevation Point.....	303	
Elevation Region	304	
Fireplace.....	215	
Hill / Valley	304	
Image	452	
Library Object.....	359	
Line	434	
Plant Image.....	327	
Polyline.....	438	
Quoins	268	
Raised/Lowered Region	305	
Rich Text	420	
Road.....	320	
Roof Hole/Skylight	225	
Room.....	155	
Shelf/Partition.....	286	
Soffit.....	334	
Stair Landing.....	253	
Staircase.....	248	
Terrain	301	
Terrain Feature	305	
Terrain Path	309	
Text	423	
Wall	134	
Wall Hatch	141	
Window.....	184	
Speed		
3D View Generation.....	403	
Splines	440	
Split		
Level Entries	203	
Level Floor Plans.....	203	
Walls	122	
Stacked Windows	181	
Stair		
Landing Specification Dialog	253	
Tools	234	
Stair Designer	234	
Stair Landing		
Specification Dialog	253	
Stair Landings		
Custom Shapes	240	
Height.....	241	
Locked.....	241	
Stair Railing		
Solid	245	
Stair Treads		
Automatic.....	249	
Depth.....	250	
Lock Number.....	249	

Lock Tread Depth	249
Number	250
Overhang	251
Thickness	251
Staircase	
Specification Dialog	248
Stairs	
Align Curved Stairs	108
Auto Stairwell	246
Change Line/Arc	239
Click	234
Curved	234, 236
Deck to ground	236
Direction	235
Down	236
Edit Handles	237
Editing	237
Landings	240
Landings, unlocked	241
Large Stringer Base	251
Make Reach	248
Merge Sections	238
Railings	245
Reach Next Floor	248
Rooms Below	247
Section Width	249
Stairwell	245
Starter Treads	243
Straight	234
Stringers	250
Subsections	248
Terminology	234
Tread Depth	242
Treads	248
Wrapped	244
Stairwell	
Automatic	246
Startup Options	20
Status Bar	30
Angle style	66
Stem Walls	208
Stepped Foundations	213
Stepping Stones	298
Sticky Mode	83
Story-and-a-half	133

Straight	
Deck Edge	118
Stairs	234
Streams	297
Structural Member Reporting	493
Sunlight Toggle	387
Swap	
Views	376
Work-Reference	206
Switch	
Three way	260
Symbol	
Surface Normals	473
vs. Native Objects	358

T

Tab Key	87
Tape Measure	410
Technical Support	503
Contact	507
Error Messages	506
Installation Issues	504
Online	508
Online Articles	508
Telephone	508
Temporary	
Dimensions	410
Temporary Dimensions	410
Terrain	
and 3D Draw Time	300
Build	300
Displaying	299
Editing	300
Elevation Data Tools	291
Feature Tools	295
Hill	295
Holes	296
Modifier Tools	294
Specification Dialog	301
Valley	295
Wall and Curb Tools	298
Terrain Data	

Import.....	311
Terrain Feature	
Specification Dialog.....	305
Terrain Features	
Clip.....	305
Height.....	305
Terrain Modeler	
3D Views.....	300
Terrain Path	
Specification Dialog.....	309
Terrain Perimeter	289
Text	
Aligning.....	425
Arrows.....	426
Bullets.....	422
Copy, Cut and Paste.....	425
Creating.....	419
Displaying.....	420
Editing.....	423
Layer.....	420
Line Spacing.....	422
Lists.....	422
Move.....	424
Numbering.....	422
Paragraph Options.....	422
Printed Size.....	425
Reshape.....	424
Resize.....	424
Rotate.....	424
Scaling.....	425
Specification Dialog.....	423
Text Style Defaults Dialog	427
Text Styles	427
Texture	
Filename Conflict Dialog.....	475
Textures	400
Thumbnails	44
Creating.....	44
Tiling Views	377
Toolbars	26
Drop-Down.....	69
Edit.....	26
Hide.....	69
Parent-Child.....	69

Transom Windows	170
Transparency	369

U

Undo	113
Files.....	45
Undo Zoom.....	375
Unrestricted Movement	106

V

Valley	295
Vents	181
Video Card	
Memory.....	382
OpenGL.....	382
Status.....	65
Videos	
View Online Help Videos.....	500
Views	
Tiling.....	377
Virtual Graph Paper	57–58
Visual CAD Snaps	57
Volume	
Of a Polyline.....	438

W

Walkthroughs	462
Along a Path.....	462
Create Path.....	462
Key Frames.....	462
Pause Recording.....	465
Playing.....	465
Recording.....	464
Save Frame.....	465
Stop Recording.....	465
Wall	
Assemblies.....	133
Cabinets.....	273

Defaults.....	116	Winders	
Specification Dialog	134	Definition	234
Tools.....	116	Window	
Wall Hatch		Defaults	178
Specification Dialog	141	Seat	193
Walls		Specification Dialog.....	184
Align between floors.....	131	Windows	
Align colinear.....	130	Bay and Bow dimensions.....	192
and Material Painter.....	364	Bay, Box, Bow.....	192
Attic Walls	132	Bench Seat	193
Connecting	124	Component	193
Curved	124	Corner	180
Curved, align between floors	131	Gables Over.....	224
Delete hatching.....	121	Labels	183
Display surfaces only	125	Library	179
Drawing.....	122	Match roof	189
Editing.....	127	Mulled Units.....	181
Exterior and Interior	119	Mullions	187
Flip layers.....	123	Muntins.....	187
Foundation	120	Pass-Through	179
Full Gable Wall	137	Shape.....	189
Grid snapping	123	Shutters.....	191
Half	139	Special Shapes	180
Half Walls	117	Stacked	181
Hatching.....	121	Transom	170
Heights.....	129	Trapezoid	189
Interior, fireplace in	214	Types	178
Invisible.....	120	Vents.....	181
Knee Wall.....	137	Windows Metafiles	455
Length.....	129	Wiring Schematics, Creating	260
Materials	125	Wrapped	
Move Along Rails	128	Openings	169
No Locate.....	136	Stairs.....	244
No Room Def.....	135		
Opening with Railing	170		
Openings in	123		
Removing Breaks.....	124		
Resizing Using Dimensions	415		
Retaining Wall	299		
Reverse Layers.....	123		
Solid Railings.....	139		
Thickness	129		
Water Features	297		
Water Proof Outlet	258		

Z

Zero	
in Dimensions	408
Zoom	
Fill Window	374
Mouse Wheel	23, 374
Tools	374
Undo Zoom	375

